David Poole

Linear Algebra

A MODERN INTRODUCTION

4th edition

Linear Algebra

A MODERN INTRODUCTION

Fourth edition

David Poole
Trent University

CENGAGE Learning®
Australia • Brazil • Mexico • Singapore • United Kingdom • United States

CENGAGE Learning

Linear Algebra
A Modern Introduction, 4th Edition
David Poole

Product Director: Liz Covello

Product Team Manager: Richard Stratton

Content Developer: Laura Wheel

Product Assistant: Danielle Hallock

Media Developer: Andrew Coppola

Content Project Manager: Alison Eigel Zade

Senior Art Director: Linda May

Manufacturing Planner: Doug Bertke

Rights Acquisition Specialist: Shalice Shah-Caldwell

Production Service & Compositor: MPS Limited

Text Designer: Leonard Massiglia

Cover Designer: Chris Miller

Cover & Interior design Image: Image Source/Getty Images

Library of Congress Control Number: 2013944173

ISBN-13: 978-1-285-46324-7

ISBN-10: 1-285-46324-2

Cengage Learning
200 First Stamford Place, 4th Floor
Stamford, CT 06902
USA

Printed in the United States of America
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 17 16 15 14 13

Dedicated to the memory of
Peter Hilton, who was an
exemplary mathematician,
educator, and citizen—a unit
vector in every sense.

Contents

Preface vii
To the Instructor xvii
To the Student xxiii

Chapter 1 Vectors 1

1.0 Introduction: The Racetrack Game 1
1.1 The Geometry and Algebra of Vectors 3
1.2 Length and Angle: The Dot Product 18
Exploration: Vectors and Geometry 32
1.3 Lines and Planes 34
Exploration: The Cross Product 48
Writing Project: The Origins of the Dot Product and Cross Product 49
1.4 Applications 50
Force Vectors 50
Chapter Review 55

Chapter 2 Systems of Linear Equations 57

2.0 Introduction: Triviality 57
2.1 Introduction to Systems of Linear Equations 58
2.2 Direct Methods for Solving Linear Systems 64
Writing Project: A History of Gaussian Elimination 82
Explorations: Lies My Computer Told Me 83
Partial Pivoting 84
Counting Operations: An Introduction to the Analysis of Algorithms 85
2.3 Spanning Sets and Linear Independence 88
2.4 Applications 99
Allocation of Resources 99
Balancing Chemical Equations 101
Network Analysis 102
Electrical Networks 104
Linear Economic Models 107
Finite Linear Games 109
Vignette: The Global Positioning System 121
2.5 Iterative Methods for Solving Linear Systems 124
Chapter Review 134

Chapter 3 Matrices 136

3.0 Introduction: Matrices in Action 136
3.1 Matrix Operations 138
3.2 Matrix Algebra 154
3.3 The Inverse of a Matrix 163
3.4 The *LU* Factorization 180
3.5 Subspaces, Basis, Dimension, and Rank 191
3.6 Introduction to Linear Transformations 211
Vignette: Robotics 226
3.7 Applications 230
Markov Chains 230
Linear Economic Models 235
Population Growth 239
Graphs and Digraphs 241
Chapter Review 251

Chapter 4 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors 253

4.0 Introduction: A Dynamical System on Graphs 253
4.1 Introduction to Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors 254
4.2 Determinants 263
Writing Project: Which Came First: The Matrix or the Determinant? 283
Vignette: Lewis Carroll's Condensation Method 284
Exploration: Geometric Applications of Determinants 286
4.3 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors of $n \times n$ Matrices 292
Writing Project: The History of Eigenvalues 301
4.4 Similarity and Diagonalization 301
4.5 Iterative Methods for Computing Eigenvalues 311
4.6 Applications and the Perron-Frobenius Theorem 325
Markov Chains 325
Population Growth 330
The Perron-Frobenius Theorem 332
Linear Recurrence Relations 335
Systems of Linear Differential Equations 340
Discrete Linear Dynamical Systems 348
Vignette: Ranking Sports Teams and Searching the Internet 356
Chapter Review 364

Chapter 5 Orthogonality 366

5.0 Introduction: Shadows on a Wall 366
5.1 Orthogonality in $\mathbb{R}^n$ 368
5.2 Orthogonal Complements and Orthogonal Projections 378
5.3 The Gram-Schmidt Process and the *QR* Factorization 388
Explorations: The Modified QR Factorization 396
Approximating Eigenvalues with the QR Algorithm 398
5.4 Orthogonal Diagonalization of Symmetric Matrices 400
5.5 Applications 408
Quadratic Forms 408
Graphing Quadratic Equations 415
Chapter Review 425

Chapter 6 Vector Spaces 427

6.0 Introduction: Fibonacci in (Vector) Space 427
6.1 Vector Spaces and Subspaces 429
Writing Project: The Rise of Vector Spaces 443
6.2 Linear Independence, Basis, and Dimension 443
Exploration: Magic Squares 460
6.3 Change of Basis 463
6.4 Linear Transformations 472
6.5 The Kernel and Range of a Linear Transformation 481
6.6 The Matrix of a Linear Transformation 497
Exploration: Tilings, Lattices, and the Crystallographic Restriction 515
6.7 Applications 518
Homogeneous Linear Differential Equations 518
Chapter Review 527

Chapter 7 Distance and Approximation 529

7.0 Introduction: Taxicab Geometry 529
7.1 Inner Product Spaces 531
Explorations: Vectors and Matrices with Complex Entries 543
Geometric Inequalities and Optimization Problems 547
7.2 Norms and Distance Functions 552
7.3 Least Squares Approximation 568
7.4 The Singular Value Decomposition 590
Vignette: Digital Image Compression 607
7.5 Applications 610
Approximation of Functions 610
Chapter Review 618

Chapter 8 Codes *Online only* 620

8.1 Code Vectors 620
Vignette: The Codabar System 626
8.2 Error-Correcting Codes 627
8.3 Dual Codes 632
8.4 Linear Codes 639
8.5 The Minimum Distance of a Code 644

APPENDIX A Mathematical Notation and Methods of Proof A1
APPENDIX B Mathematical Induction B1
APPENDIX C Complex Numbers C1
APPENDIX D Polynomials D1
APPENDIX E Technology Bytes *Online only*

Answers to Selected Odd-Numbered Exercises ANS1
Index I1

Preface

The last thing one knows when writing a book is what to put first.

—Blaise Pascal
Pensées, 1670

The fourth edition of *Linear Algebra: A Modern Introduction* preserves the approach and features that users found to be strengths of the previous editions. However, I have streamlined the text somewhat, added numerous clarifications, and freshened up the exercises.

I want students to see linear algebra as an exciting subject and to appreciate its tremendous usefulness. At the same time, I want to help them master the basic concepts and techniques of linear algebra that they will need in other courses, both in mathematics and in other disciplines. I also want students to appreciate the interplay of theoretical, applied, and numerical mathematics that pervades the subject.

This book is designed for use in an introductory one- or two-semester course sequence in linear algebra. First and foremost, it is intended for students, and I have tried my best to write the book so that students not only will find it readable but also will *want* to read it. As in the first three editions, I have taken into account the reality that students taking introductory linear algebra are likely to come from a variety of disciplines. In addition to mathematics majors, there are apt to be majors from engineering, physics, chemistry, computer science, biology, environmental science, geography, economics, psychology, business, and education, as well as other students taking the course as an elective or to fulfill degree requirements. Accordingly, the book balances theory and applications, is written in a conversational style yet is fully rigorous, and combines a traditional presentation with concern for student-centered learning.

There is no such thing as a universally best learning style. In any class, there will be some students who work well independently and others who work best in groups; some who prefer lecture-based learning and others who thrive in a workshop setting, doing explorations; some who enjoy algebraic manipulations, some who are adept at numerical calculations (with and without a computer), and some who exhibit strong geometric intuition. In this edition, I continue to present material in a variety of ways—*algebraically, geometrically, numerically*, and *verbally*—so that all types of learners can find a path to follow. I have also attempted to present the theoretical, computational, and applied topics in a flexible yet integrated way. In doing so, it is my hope that all students will be exposed to the many sides of linear algebra.

For more on the recommendations of the Linear Algebra Curriculum Study Group, see *The College Mathematics Journal* **24** (1993), 41–46.

This book is compatible with the recommendations of the Linear Algebra Curriculum Study Group. From a pedagogical point of view, there is no doubt that for most students concrete examples should precede abstraction. I have taken this approach here. I also believe strongly that linear algebra is essentially about vectors and that students need to see vectors first (in a concrete setting) in order to gain some geometric insight. Moreover, introducing vectors early allows students to see how systems of linear equations arise naturally from geometric problems. Matrices then arise equally naturally as coefficient matrices of linear systems and as agents of change (linear transformations). This sets the stage for eigenvectors and orthogonal projections, both of which are best understood geometrically. The dart that appears on the cover of this book symbolizes a vector and reflects my conviction that geometric understanding should precede computational techniques.

I have tried to limit the number of theorems in the text. For the most part, results labeled as theorems either will be used later in the text or summarize preceding work. Interesting results that are not central to the book have been included as exercises or explorations. For example, the cross product of vectors is discussed only in explorations (in Chapters 1 and 4). Unlike most linear algebra textbooks, this book has no chapter on determinants. The essential results are all in Section 4.2, with other interesting material contained in an exploration. The book is, however, comprehensive for an introductory text. Wherever possible, I have included elementary and accessible proofs of theorems in order to avoid having to say, "The proof of this result is beyond the scope of this text." The result is, I hope, a work that is self-contained.

I have not been stingy with the applications: There are many more in the book than can be covered in a single course. However, it is important that students see the impressive range of problems to which linear algebra can be applied. I have included some modern material on finite linear algebra and coding theory that is not normally found in an introductory linear algebra text. There are also several impressive real-world applications of linear algebra and one item of historical, if not practical, interest; these applications are presented as self-contained "vignettes."

I hope that instructors will enjoy teaching from this book. More important, I hope that students using the book will come away with an appreciation of the beauty, power, and tremendous utility of linear algebra and that they will have fun along the way.

What's New in the Fourth Edition

The overall structure and style of *Linear Algebra: A Modern Introduction* remain the same in the fourth edition.

Here is a summary of what is new:

- The applications to coding theory have been moved to the new online Chapter 8.
- To further engage students, five writing projects have been added to the exercise sets. These projects give students a chance to research and write about aspects of the history and development of linear algebra. The explorations, vignettes, and many of the applications provide additional material for student projects.

See pages 49, 82, 283, 301, 443

- There are over 200 new or revised exercises. In response to reviewers' comments, there is now a full proof of the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality in Chapter 1 in the form of a guided exercise.
- I have made numerous small changes in wording to improve the clarity or accuracy of the exposition. Also, several definitions have been made more explicit by giving them their own definition boxes and a few results have been highlighted by labeling them as theorems.
- All existing ancillaries have been updated.

Features

Clear Writing Style

The text is written is a simple, direct, conversational style. As much as possible, I have used "mathematical English" rather than relying excessively on mathematical notation. However, all proofs that are given are fully rigorous, and Appendix A contains an introduction to mathematical notation for those who wish to streamline their own writing. Concrete examples almost always precede theorems, which are then followed by further examples and applications. This flow—from specific to general and back again—is consistent throughout the book.

Key Concepts Introduced Early

Many students encounter difficulty in linear algebra when the course moves from the computational (solving systems of linear equations, manipulating vectors and matrices) to the theoretical (spanning sets, linear independence, subspaces, basis, and dimension). This book introduces all of the key concepts of linear algebra early, in a concrete setting, before revisiting them in full generality. Vector concepts such as dot product, length, orthogonality, and projection are first discussed in Chapter 1 in the concrete setting of $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ before the more general notions of inner product, norm, and orthogonal projection appear in Chapters 5 and 7. Similarly, spanning sets and linear independence are given a concrete treatment in Chapter 2 prior to their generalization to vector spaces in Chapter 6. The fundamental concepts of subspace, basis, and dimension appear first in Chapter 3 when the row, column, and null spaces of a matrix are introduced; it is not until Chapter 6 that these ideas are given a general treatment. In Chapter 4, eigenvalues and eigenvectors are introduced and explored for 2×2 matrices before their $n \times n$ counterparts appear. By the beginning of Chapter 4, all of the key concepts of linear algebra have been introduced, with concrete, computational examples to support them. When these ideas appear in full generality later in the book, students have had time to get used to them and, hence, are not so intimidated by them.

Emphasis on Vectors and Geometry

In keeping with the philosophy that linear algebra is primarily about vectors, this book stresses geometric intuition. Accordingly, the first chapter is about vectors, and it develops many concepts that will appear repeatedly throughout the text. Concepts such as orthogonality, projection, and linear combination are all found in Chapter 1, as is a comprehensive treatment of lines and planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that provides essential insight into the solution of systems of linear equations. This emphasis on vectors, geometry, and visualization is found throughout the text. Linear transformations are introduced as matrix transformations in Chapter 3, with many geometric examples, before general linear transformations are covered in Chapter 6. In Chapter 4, eigenvalues are introduced with "eigenpictures" as a visual aid. The proof of Perron's Theorem is given first heuristically and then formally, in both cases using a geometric argument. The geometry of linear dynamical systems reinforces and summarizes the material on eigenvalues and eigenvectors. In Chapter 5, orthogonal projections, orthogonal complements of subspaces, and the Gram-Schmidt Process are all presented in the concrete setting of $\mathbb{R}^3$ before being generalized to $\mathbb{R}^n$ and, in Chapter 7, to inner product spaces. The nature of the singular value decomposition is also explained informally in Chapter 7 via a geometric argument. Of the more than 300 figures in the text, over 200 are devoted to fostering a geometric understanding of linear algebra.

Explorations

See pages 1, 136, 427, 529

See pages 32, 286, 460, 515, 543, 547

See pages 83, 84, 85, 396, 398

The introduction to each chapter is a guided exploration (Section 0) in which students are invited to discover, individually or in groups, some aspect of the upcoming chapter. For example, "The Racetrack Game" introduces vectors, "Matrices in Action" introduces matrix multiplication and linear transformations, "Fibonacci in (Vector) Space" touches on vector space concepts, and "Taxicab Geometry" sets up generalized norms and distance functions. Additional explorations found throughout the book include applications of vectors and determinants to geometry, an investigation of 3×3 magic squares, a study of symmetry via the tilings of M. C. Escher, an introduction to complex linear algebra, and optimization problems using geometric inequalities. There are also explorations that introduce important numerical considerations and the analysis of algorithms. Having students do some of these explorations is one way of encouraging them to become active learners and to give them "ownership" over a small part of the course.

Applications

See pages 623, 641

See pages 121, 226, 356, 607, 626

The book contains an abundant selection of applications chosen from a broad range of disciplines, including mathematics, computer science, physics, chemistry, engineering, biology, business, economics, psychology, geography, and sociology. Noteworthy among these is a strong treatment of coding theory, from error-detecting codes (such as International Standard Book Numbers) to sophisticated error-correcting codes (such as the Reed-Muller code that was used to transmit satellite photos from space). Additionally, there are five "vignettes" that briefly showcase some very modern applications of linear algebra: the Global Positioning System (GPS), robotics, Internet search engines, digital image compression, and the Codabar System.

Examples and Exercises

There are over 400 examples in this book, most worked in greater detail than is customary in an introductory linear algebra textbook. This level of detail is in keeping with the philosophy that students should want (and be able) to read a textbook. Accordingly, it is not intended that all of these examples be covered in class; many can be assigned for individual or group study, possibly as part of a project. Most examples have at least one counterpart exercise so that students can try out the skills covered in the example before exploring generalizations.

There are over 2000 exercises, more than in most textbooks at a similar level. Answers to most of the computational odd-numbered exercises can be found in the back of the book. Instructors will find an abundance of exercises from which to select homework assignments. The exercises in each section are graduated, progressing from the routine to the challenging. Exercises range from those intended for hand computation to those requiring the use of a calculator or computer algebra system, and from theoretical and numerical exercises to conceptual exercises. Many of the examples and exercises use actual data compiled from real-world situations. For example, there are problems on modeling the growth of caribou and seal populations, radiocarbon dating

See pages 248, 359, 526, 588

of the Stonehenge monument, and predicting major league baseball players' salaries. Working such problems reinforces the fact that linear algebra is a valuable tool for modeling real-life problems.

Additional exercises appear in the form of a review after each chapter. In each set, there are 10 true/false questions designed to test conceptual understanding, followed by 19 computational and theoretical exercises that summarize the main concepts and techniques of that chapter.

Biographical Sketches and Etymological Notes

It is important that students learn something about the history of mathematics and come to see it as a social and cultural endeavor as well as a scientific one. Accordingly, the text contains short biographical sketches about many of the mathematicians who contributed to the development of linear algebra. I hope that these will help to put a human face on the subject and give students another way of relating to the material.

See page 34

I have found that many students feel alienated from mathematics because the terminology makes no sense to them—it is simply a collection of words to be learned. To help overcome this problem, I have included short etymological notes that give the origins of many of the terms used in linear algebra. (For example, why do we use the word *normal* to refer to a vector that is perpendicular to a plane?)

Margin Icons

The margins of the book contain several icons whose purpose is to alert the reader in various ways. Calculus is not a prerequisite for this book, but linear algebra has many interesting and important applications to calculus. The $\frac{dy}{dx}$ icon denotes an example or exercise that requires calculus. (This material can be omitted if not everyone in the class has had at least one semester of calculus. Alternatively, this material can be assigned as projects.) The $a + bi$ icon denotes an example or exercise involving complex numbers. (For students unfamiliar with complex numbers, Appendix C contains all the background material that is needed.) The CAS icon indicates that a computer algebra system (such as Maple, Mathematica, or MATLAB) or a calculator with matrix capabilities (such as almost any graphing calculator) is required—or at least very useful—for solving the example or exercise.

In an effort to help students learn how to read and use this textbook most effectively, I have noted various places where the reader is advised to pause. These may be places where a calculation is needed, part of a proof must be supplied, a claim should be verified, or some extra thought is required. The icon appears in the margin at such places; the message is "Slow down. Get out your pencil. Think about this."

Technology

This book can be used successfully whether or not students have access to technology. However, calculators with matrix capabilities and computer algebra systems are now commonplace and, properly used, can enrich the learning experience as well as help with tedious calculations. In this text, I take the point of view that students need to master all of the basic techniques of linear algebra by solving by hand examples that are not too computationally difficult. Technology may then be used (in whole or in part) to solve subsequent examples and applications and to apply techniques that rely on earlier ones. For example, when systems of linear equations are first introduced, detailed solutions are provided; later, solutions are simply given, and the reader is expected to verify them. This is a good place to use some form of technology. Likewise, when applications use data that make hand calculation impractical, use technology. All of the numerical methods that are discussed depend on the use of technology.

With the aid of technology, students can explore linear algebra in some exciting ways and discover much for themselves. For example, if one of the coefficients of a linear system is replaced by a parameter, how much variability is there in the solutions? How does changing a single entry of a matrix affect its eigenvalues? This book is not a tutorial on technology, and in places where technology can be used, I have not specified a particular type of technology. The student companion website that accompanies this book offers an online appendix called *Technology Bytes* that gives instructions for solving a selection of examples from each chapter using Maple, Mathematica, and MATLAB. By imitating these examples, students can do further calculations and explorations using whichever CAS they have and exploit the power of these systems to help with the exercises throughout the book, particularly those marked with the CAS icon. The website also contains data sets and computer code in Maple, Mathematica, and MATLAB formats keyed to many exercises and examples in the text. Students and instructors can import these directly into their CAS to save typing and eliminate errors.

Finite and Numerical Linear Algebra

The text covers two aspects of linear algebra that are scarcely ever mentioned together: finite linear algebra and numerical linear algebra. By introducing modular arithmetic early, I have been able to make finite linear algebra (more properly, "linear algebra over finite fields," although I do not use that phrase) a recurring theme throughout the book. This approach provides access to the material on coding theory in Chapter 8 (online). There is also an application to finite linear games in Section 2.4 that students really enjoy. In addition to being exposed to the applications of finite linear algebra, mathematics majors will benefit from seeing the material on finite fields, because they are likely to encounter it in such courses as discrete mathematics, abstract algebra, and number theory.

All students should be aware that in practice, it is impossible to arrive at exact solutions of large-scale problems in linear algebra. Exposure to some of the techniques of numerical linear algebra will provide an indication of how to obtain highly accurate approximate solutions. Some of the numerical topics included in the book are roundoff error and partial pivoting, iterative methods for solving linear systems and computing eigenvalues, the *LU* and *QR* factorizations, matrix norms and condition numbers, least squares approximation, and the singular value decomposition. The inclusion of numerical linear algebra also brings up some interesting and important issues that are completely absent from the *theory* of linear algebra, such as pivoting strategies, the condition of a linear system, and the convergence of iterative methods. This book not only raises these questions but also shows how one might approach them. Gerschgorin disks, matrix norms, and the singular values of a matrix, discussed in Chapters 4 and 7, are useful in this regard.

See pages 83, 84, 124, 180, 311, 392, 555, 561, 568, 590

See pages 319, 563, 600

Appendices

Appendix A contains an overview of mathematical notation and methods of proof, and Appendix B discusses mathematical induction. All students will benefit from these sections, but those with a mathematically oriented major may wish to pay particular attention to them. Some of the examples in these appendices are uncommon (for instance, Example B.6 in Appendix B) and underscore the power of the methods. Appendix C is an introduction to complex numbers. For students familiar with these results, this appendix can serve as a useful reference; for others, this section contains everything they need to know for those parts of the text that use complex numbers. Appendix D is about polynomials. I have found that many students require a refresher about these facts. Most students will be unfamiliar with Descartes's Rule of Signs; it is used in Chapter 4 to explain the behavior of the eigenvalues of Leslie matrices. Exercises to accompany the four appendices can be found on the book's website.

Short answers to most of the odd-numbered computational exercises are given at the end of the book. Exercise sets to accompany Appendixes A, B, C, and D are available on the companion website, along with their odd-numbered answers.

Ancillaries

For Instructors

Enhanced WebAssign®
Printed Access Card: 978-1-285-85829-6
Online Access Code: 978-1-285-85827-2
Exclusively from Cengage Learning, Enhanced WebAssign combines the exceptional mathematics content that you know and love with the most powerful online homework solution, WebAssign. Enhanced WebAssign engages students with immediate feedback, rich tutorial content, and interactive, fully customizable eBooks (YouBook), helping students to develop a deeper conceptual understanding of their subject matter. Flexible assignment options give instructors the ability to release assignments conditionally based on students' prerequisite assignment scores. Visit us at **www.cengage.com/ewa** to learn more.

Cengage Learning Testing Powered by Cognero
Cengage Learning Testing Powered by Cognero is a flexible, online system that allows you to author, edit, and manage test bank content from multiple Cengage Learning solutions; create multiple test versions in an instant; and deliver tests from your LMS, your classroom, or wherever you want.

Complete Solutions Manual
The Complete Solutions Manual provides detailed solutions to all exercises in the text, including *Exploration* and *Chapter Review* exercises. The Complete Solutions Manual is available online.

Instructor's Guide
This online guide enhances the text with valuable teaching resources such as group work projects, teaching tips, interesting exam questions, examples and extra

material for lectures, and other items designed to reduce the instructor's preparation time and make linear algebra class an exciting and interactive experience. For each section of the text, the *Instructor's Guide* includes suggested time and emphasis, points to stress, questions for discussion, lecture materials and examples, technology tips, student projects, group work with solutions, sample assignments, and suggested test questions.

Solution Builder
www.cengage.com/solutionbuilder
Solution Builder provides full instructor solutions to all exercises in the text, including those in the explorations and chapter reviews, in a convenient online format. Solution Builder allows instructors to create customized, secure PDF printouts of solutions matched exactly to the exercises assigned for class.

*Access Cognero and additional instructor resources online at **login.cengage.com**.

For Students

Student Solutions Manual (ISBN-13: 978-1-285-84195-3)
The Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide includes detailed solutions to all odd-numbered exercises and selected even-numbered exercises; section and chapter summaries of symbols, definitions, and theorems; and study tips and hints. Complex exercises are explored through a question-and-answer format designed to deepen understanding. Challenging and entertaining problems that further explore selected exercises are also included.

Enhanced WebAssign®
Printed Access Card: 978-1-285-85829-6
Online Access Code: 978-1-285-85827-2
Enhanced WebAssign (assigned by the instructor) provides you with instant feedback on homework assignments. This online homework system is easy to use and includes helpful links to textbook sections, video examples, and problem-specific tutorials.

CengageBrain.com
To access additional course materials and companion resources, please visit www.cengagebrain.com. At the CengageBrain.com home page, search for the ISBN of your title (from the back cover of your book) using the search box at the top of the page. This will take you to the product page where free companion resources can be found.

Acknowledgments

The reviewers of the previous edition of this text contributed valuable and often insightful comments about the book. I am grateful for the time each of them took to do this. Their judgement and helpful suggestions have contributed greatly to the development and success of this book, and I would like to thank them personally:
Jamey Bass, City College of San Francisco; Olga Brezhneva, Miami University; Karen Clark, The College of New Jersey; Marek Elzanowski, Portland State University; Christopher Francisco, Oklahoma State University; Brian Jue, California State University, Stanislaus; Alexander Kheyfits, Bronx Community College/CUNY; Henry Krieger, Harvey Mudd College; Rosanna Pearlstein, Michigan State

See page 284

See page 286

See pages 325, 330

See page 348

course" in determinants contains all the essential material students need, including an optional but elementary proof of the Laplace Expansion Theorem. The vignette "Lewis Carroll's Condensation Method" presents a historically interesting, alternative method of calculating determinants that students may find appealing. The exploration "Geometric Applications of Determinants" makes a nice project that contains several interesting and useful results. (Alternatively, instructors who wish to give more detailed coverage to determinants may choose to cover some of this exploration in class.) The basic theory of eigenvalues and eigenvectors is found in Section 4.3, and Section 4.4 deals with the important topic of diagonalization. Example 4.29 on powers of matrices is worth covering in class. The power method and its variants, discussed in Section 4.5, are optional, but all students should be aware of the method, and an applied course should cover it in detail. Gerschgorin's Disk Theorem can be covered independently of the rest of Section 4.5. Markov chains and the Leslie model of population growth reappear in Section 4.6. Although the proof of Perron's Theorem is optional, the theorem itself (like the stronger Perron-Frobenius Theorem) should at least be mentioned because it explains *why* we should expect a unique positive eigenvalue with a corresponding positive eigenvector in these applications. The applications on recurrence relations and differential equations connect linear algebra to discrete mathematics and calculus, respectively. The matrix exponential can be covered if your class has a good calculus background. The final topic of discrete linear dynamical systems revisits and summarizes many of the ideas in Chapter 4, looking at them in a new, geometric light. Students will enjoy reading how eigenvectors can be used to help rank sports teams and websites. This vignette can easily be extended to a project or enrichment activity.

Chapter 5: Orthogonality

See page 366

See pages 396, 398

See pages 408, 415

The introductory exploration, "Shadows on a Wall," is mathematics at its best: it takes a known concept (projection of a vector onto another vector) and generalizes it in a useful way (projection of a vector onto a subspace—a plane), while uncovering some previously unobserved properties. Section 5.1 contains the basic results about orthogonal and orthonormal sets of vectors that will be used repeatedly from here on. In particular, orthogonal matrices should be stressed. In Section 5.2, two concepts from Chapter 1 are generalized: the orthogonal complement of a subspace and the orthogonal projection of a vector onto a subspace. The Orthogonal Decomposition Theorem is important here and helps to set up the Gram-Schmidt Process. Also note the quick proof of the Rank Theorem. The Gram-Schmidt Process is detailed in Section 5.3, along with the extremely important QR factorization. The two explorations that follow outline how the QR factorization is computed in practice and how it can be used to approximate eigenvalues. Section 5.4 on orthogonal diagonalization of (real) symmetric matrices is needed for the applications that follow. It also contains the Spectral Theorem, one of the highlights of the theory of linear algebra. The applications in Section 5.5 are quadratic forms and graphing quadratic equations. I always include at least the second of these in my course because it extends what students already know about conic sections.

Chapter 6: Vector Spaces

See page 427

The Fibonacci sequence reappears in Section 6.0, although it is not important that students have seen it before (Section 4.6). The purpose of this exploration is to show

University; William Sullivan, Portland State University; Matthias Weber, Indiana University.

I am indebted to a great many people who have, over the years, influenced my views about linear algebra and the teaching of mathematics in general. First, I would like to thank collectively the participants in the education and special linear algebra sessions at meetings of the Mathematical Association of America and the Canadian Mathematical Society. I have also learned much from participation in the Canadian Mathematics Education Study Group and the Canadian Mathematics Education Forum.

I especially want to thank Ed Barbeau, Bill Higginson, Richard Hoshino, John Grant McLoughlin, Eric Muller, Morris Orzech, Bill Ralph, Pat Rogers, Peter Taylor, and Walter Whiteley, whose advice and inspiration contributed greatly to the philosophy and style of this book. My gratitude as well to Robert Rogers, who developed the student and instructor solutions, as well as the excellent study guide content. Special thanks go to Jim Stewart for his ongoing support and advice. Joe Rotman and his lovely book *A First Course in Abstract Algebra* inspired the etymological notes in this book, and I relied heavily on Steven Schwartzman's *The Words of Mathematics* when compiling these notes. I thank Art Benjamin for introducing me to the Codabar system and Joe Grcar for clarifying aspects of the history of Gaussian elimination. My colleagues Marcus Pivato and Reem Yassawi provided useful information about dynamical systems. As always, I am grateful to my students for asking good questions and providing me with the feedback necessary to becoming a better teacher.

I sincerely thank all of the people who have been involved in the production of this book. Jitendra Kumar and the team at MPS Limited did an amazing job producing the fourth edition. I thank Christine Sabooni for doing a thorough copyedit. Most of all, it has been a delight to work with the entire editorial, marketing, and production teams at Cengage Learning: Richard Stratton, Molly Taylor, Laura Wheel, Cynthia Ashton, Danielle Hallock, Andrew Coppola, Alison Eigel Zade, and Janay Pryor. They offered sound advice about changes and additions, provided assistance when I needed it, but let me write the book I wanted to write. I am fortunate to have worked with them, as well as the staffs on the first through third editions.

As always, I thank my family for their love, support, and understanding. Without them, this book would not have been possible.

David Poole
dpoole@trentu.ca

To the Instructor

"Would you tell me, please,
which way I ought to go from here?"
"That depends a good deal on where
you want to get to," said the Cat.

—Lewis Carroll
Alice's Adventures in
Wonderland, 1865

This text was written with flexibility in mind. It is intended for use in a one- or two-semester course with 36 lectures per semester. The range of topics and applications makes it suitable for a variety of audiences and types of courses. However, there is more material in the book than can be covered in class, even in a two-semester course. After the following overview of the text are some brief suggestions for ways to use the book.

An Overview of the Text

Chapter 1: Vectors

See page 1

The racetrack game in Section 1.0 serves to introduce vectors in an informal way. (It's also quite a lot of fun to play!) Vectors are then formally introduced from both algebraic and geometric points of view. The operations of addition and scalar multiplication and their properties are first developed in the concrete settings of $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$ before being generalized to $\mathbb{R}^n$. Modular arithmetic and finite linear algebra are also introduced. Section 1.2 defines the dot product of vectors and the related notions of length, angle, and orthogonality. The very important concept of (orthogonal) projection is developed here; it will reappear in Chapters 5 and 7. The exploration "Vectors and Geometry" shows how vector methods can be used to prove certain results in Euclidean geometry. Section 1.3 is a basic but thorough introduction to lines and planes in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$. This section is crucial for understanding the geometric significance of the solution of linear systems in Chapter 2. Note that the cross product of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is left as an exploration. The chapter concludes with an application to force vectors.

See page 32

See page 48

Chapter 2: Systems of Linear Equations

See page 57

The introduction to this chapter serves to illustrate that there is more than one way to think of the solution to a system of linear equations. Sections 2.1 and 2.2 develop the main computational tool for solving linear systems: row reduction of matrices (Gaussian and Gauss-Jordan elimination). Nearly all subsequent computational methods in the book depend on this. The Rank Theorem appears here for the first time; it shows up again, in more generality, in Chapters 3, 5, and 6. Section 2.3 is very important; it introduces the fundamental notions of spanning sets and linear independence of vectors. Do not rush through this material. Section 2.4 contains six applications from which instructors can choose depending on the time available and the interests of the class. The vignette on the Global Positioning System provides another application that students will enjoy. The iterative methods in Section 2.5 will be optional for many courses but are essential for a course with an applied/numerical focus. The three explorations in this chapter are related in that they all deal with aspects of the use of computers to solve linear systems. All students should at least be made aware of these issues.

See pages 72, 205, 386, 486

See page 121

See pages 83, 84, 85

Chapter 3: Matrices

This chapter contains some of the most important ideas in the book. It is a long chapter, but the early material can be covered fairly quickly, with extra time allowed for the crucial material in Section 3.5. Section 3.0 is an exploration that introduces the notion of a linear transformation: the idea that matrices are not just static objects but rather a type of function, transforming vectors into other vectors. All of the basic facts about matrices, matrix operations, and their properties are found in the first two sections. The material on partitioned matrices and the multiple representations of the matrix product is worth stressing, because it is used repeatedly in subsequent sections. The Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices in Section 3.3 is very important and will appear several more times as new characterizations of invertibility are presented. Section 3.4 discusses the very important *LU* factorization of a matrix. If this topic is not covered in class, it is worth assigning as a project or discussing in a workshop. The point of Section 3.5 is to present many of the key concepts of linear algebra (subspace, basis, dimension, and rank) in the concrete setting of matrices before students see them in full generality. Although the examples in this section are all familiar, it is important that students get used to the new terminology and, in particular, understand what the notion of a basis means. The geometric treatment of linear transformations in Section 3.6 is intended to smooth the transition to general linear transformations in Chapter 6. The example of a projection is particularly important because it will reappear in Chapter 5. The vignette on robotic arms is a concrete demonstration of composition of linear (and affine) transformations. There are four applications from which to choose in Section 3.7. Either Markov chains or the Leslie model of population growth should be covered so that they can be used again in Chapter 4, where their behavior will be explained.

See page 136

See pages 172, 206, 296, 512, 605

See page 226

See pages 230, 239

Chapter 4: Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

The introduction Section 4.0 presents an interesting dynamical system involving graphs. This exploration introduces the notion of an eigenvector and foreshadows the power method in Section 4.5. In keeping with the geometric emphasis of the book, Section 4.1 contains the novel feature of "eigenpictures" as a way of visualizing the eigenvectors of 2×2 matrices. Determinants appear in Section 4.2, motivated by their use in finding the characteristic polynomials of small matrices. This "crash

See page 253

that familiar vector space concepts (Section 3.5) can be used fruitfully in a new setting. Because all of the main ideas of vector spaces have already been introduced in Chapters 1–3, students should find Sections 6.1 and 6.2 fairly familiar. The emphasis here should be on using the vector space axioms to prove properties rather than relying on computational techniques. When discussing change of basis in Section 6.3, it is helpful to show students how to use the notation to remember how the construction works. Ultimately, the Gauss-Jordan method is the most efficient here. Sections 6.4 and 6.5 on linear transformations are important. The examples are related to previous results on matrices (and matrix transformations). In particular, it is important to stress that the kernel and range of a linear transformation generalize the null space and column space of a matrix. Section 6.6 puts forth the notion that (almost) all linear transformations are essentially matrix transformations. This builds on the information in Section 3.6, so students should not find it terribly surprising. However, the examples should be worked carefully. The connection between change of basis and similarity of matrices is noteworthy. The exploration "Tilings, Lattices, and the Crystallographic Restriction" is an impressive application of change of basis. The connection with the artwork of M. C. Escher makes it all the more interesting. The applications in Section 6.7 build on previous ones and can be included as time and interest permit.

See page 515

Chapter 7: Distance and Approximation

Section 7.0 opens with the entertaining "Taxicab Geometry" exploration. Its purpose is to set up the material on generalized norms and distance functions (metrics) that follows. Inner product spaces are discussed in Section 7.1; the emphasis here should be on the examples and using the axioms. The exploration "Vectors and Matrices with Complex Entries" shows how the concepts of dot product, symmetric matrix, orthogonal matrix, and orthogonal diagonalization can be extended from real to complex vector spaces. The following exploration, "Geometric Inequalities and Optimization Problems," is one that students typically enjoy. (They will have fun seeing how many "calculus" problems can be solved without using calculus at all!) Section 7.2 covers generalized vector and matrix norms and shows how the condition number of a matrix is related to the notion of ill-conditioned linear systems explored in Chapter 2. Least squares approximation (Section 7.3) is an important application of linear algebra in many other disciplines. The Best Approximation Theorem and the Least Squares Theorem are important, but their proofs are intuitively clear. Spend time here on the examples—a few should suffice. Section 7.4 presents the singular value decomposition, one of the most impressive applications of linear algebra. If your course gets this far, you will be amply rewarded. Not only does the SVD tie together many notions discussed previously; it also affords some new (and quite powerful) applications. If a CAS is available, the vignette on digital image compression is worth presenting; it is a visually impressive display of the power of linear algebra and a fitting culmination to the course. The further applications in Section 7.5 can be chosen according to the time available and the interests of the class.

See page 529

See page 543

See page 547

See page 607

Chapter 8: Codes

This online chapter contains applications of linear algebra to the theory of codes. Section 8.1 begins with a discussion of how vectors can be used to design

See page 626

error-detecting codes such as the familiar Universal Product Code (UPC) and International Standard Book Number (ISBN). This topic only requires knowledge of Chapter 1. The vignette on the Codabar system used in credit and bank cards is an excellent classroom presentation that can even be used to introduce Section 8.1. Once students are familiar with matrix operations, Section 8.2 describes how codes can be designed to correct as well as detect errors. The Hamming codes introduced here are perhaps the most famous examples of such error-correcting codes. Dual codes, discussed in Section 8.3, are an important way of constructing new codes from old ones. The notion of orthogonal complement, introduced in Chapter 5, is the prerequisite concept here. The most important, and most widely used, class of codes is the class of linear codes that is defined in Section 8.4. The notions of subspace, basis, and dimension are key here. The powerful Reed-Muller codes used by NASA spacecraft are important examples of linear codes. Our discussion of codes concludes in Section 8.5 with the definition of the minimum distance of a code and the role it plays in determining the error-correcting capability of the code.

How to Use the Book

Students find the book easy to read, so I usually have them read a section before I cover the material in class. That way, I can spend class time highlighting the most important concepts, dealing with topics students find difficult, working examples, and discussing applications. I do not attempt to cover all of the material from the assigned reading in class. This approach enables me to keep the pace of the course fairly brisk, slowing down for those sections that students typically find challenging.

In a two-semester course, it is possible to cover the entire book, including a reasonable selection of applications. For extra flexibility, you might omit some of the topics (for example, give only a brief treatment of numerical linear algebra), thereby freeing up time for more in-depth coverage of the remaining topics, more applications, or some of the explorations. In an honors mathematics course that emphasizes proofs, much of the material in Chapters 1–3 can be covered quickly. Chapter 6 can then be covered in conjunction with Sections 3.5 and 3.6, and Chapter 7 can be integrated into Chapter 5. I would be sure to assign the explorations in Chapters 1, 4, 6, and 7 for such a class.

For a one-semester course, the nature of the course and the audience will determine which topics to include. Three possible courses are described below and on the following page. The basic course, described first, has fewer than 36 hours suggested, allowing time for extra topics, in-class review, and tests. The other two courses build on the basic course but are still quite flexible.

A Basic Course

A course designed for mathematics majors and students from other disciplines is outlined on the next page. This course does not mention general vector spaces at all (all concepts are treated in a concrete setting) and is very light on proofs. Still, it is a thorough introduction to linear algebra.

Section	Number of Lectures	Section	Number of Lectures
1.1	1	**3.6**	1–2
1.2	1–1.5	**4.1**	1
1.3	1–1.5	**4.2**	2
2.1	0.5–1	**4.3**	1
2.2	1–2	**4.4**	1–2
2.3	1–2	**5.1**	1–1.5
3.1	1–2	**5.2**	1–1.5
3.2	1	**5.3**	0.5
3.3	2	**5.4**	1
3.5	2	**7.3**	2

Total: 23–30 lectures

Because the students in a course such as this one represent a wide variety of disciplines, I would suggest using much of the remaining lecture time for applications. In my course, I do code vectors in Section 8.1, which students really seem to like, and at least one application from each of Chapters 2–5. Other applications can be assigned as projects, along with as many of the explorations as desired. There is also sufficient lecture time available to cover some of the theory in detail.

A Course with a Computational Emphasis

For a course with a computational emphasis, the basic course outlined on the previous page can be supplemented with the sections of the text dealing with numerical linear algebra. In such a course, I would cover part or all of Sections 2.5, 3.4, 4.5, 5.3, 7.2, and 7.4, ending with the singular value decomposition. The explorations in Chapters 2 and 5 are particularly well suited to such a course, as are almost any of the applications.

A Course for Students Who Have Already Studied Some Linear Algebra

Some courses will be aimed at students who have already encountered the basic principles of linear algebra in other courses. For example, a college algebra course will often include an introduction to systems of linear equations, matrices, and determinants; a multivariable calculus course will almost certainly contain material on vectors, lines, and planes. For students who have seen such topics already, much early material can be omitted and replaced with a quick review. Depending on the background of the class, it may be possible to skim over the material in the basic course up to Section 3.3 in about six lectures. If the class has a significant number of mathematics majors (and especially if this is the only linear algebra course they will take), I would be sure to cover Sections 6.1–6.5, 7.1, and 7.4 and as many applications as time permits. If the course has science majors (but not mathematics majors), I would cover Sections 6.1 and 7.1 and a broader selection of applications, being sure to include the material on differential equations and approximation of functions. If computer science students or engineers are prominently represented, I would try to do as much of the material on codes and numerical linear algebra as I could.

There are many other types of courses that can successfully use this text. I hope that you find it useful for your course and that you enjoy using it.

To the Student

"Where shall I begin, please your Majesty?" he asked.
"Begin at the beginning," the King said, gravely, "and go on till you come to the end: then stop."

—Lewis Carroll
Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, 1865

Linear algebra is an exciting subject. It is full of interesting results, applications to other disciplines, and connections to other areas of mathematics. The *Student Solutions Manual and Study Guide* contains detailed advice on how best to use this book; following are some general suggestions.

Linear algebra has several sides: There are *computational techniques, concepts,* and *applications*. One of the goals of this book is to help you master all of these facets of the subject and to see the interplay among them. Consequently, it is important that you read and understand each section of the text before you attempt the exercises in that section. If you read only examples that are related to exercises that have been assigned as homework, you will miss much. Make sure you understand the definitions of terms and the meaning of theorems. Don't worry if you have to read something more than once before you understand it. Have a pencil and calculator with you as you read. Stop to work out examples for yourself or to fill in missing calculations. The icon in the margin indicates a place where you should pause and think over what you have read so far.

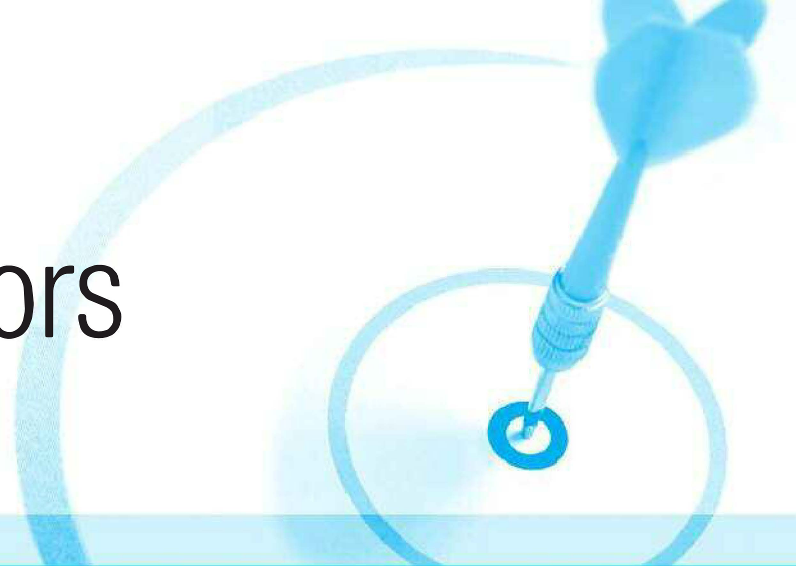
Answers to most odd-numbered computational exercises are in the back of the book. Resist the temptation to look up an answer before you have completed a question. And remember that even if your answer differs from the one in the back, you may still be right; there is more than one correct way to express some of the solutions. For example, a value of $1/\sqrt{2}$ can also be expressed as $\sqrt{2}/2$ and the set of all scalar multiples of the vector $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1/2 \end{bmatrix}$ is the same as the set of all scalar multiples of $\begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

As you encounter new concepts, try to relate them to examples that you know. Write out proofs and solutions to exercises in a logical, connected way, using complete sentences. Read back what you have written to see whether it makes sense. Better yet, if you can, have a friend in the class read what you have written. If it doesn't make sense to another person, chances are that it doesn't make sense, period.

You will find that a calculator with matrix capabilities or a computer algebra system is useful. These tools can help you to check your own hand calculations and are indispensable for some problems involving tedious computations. Technology also enables you to explore aspects of linear algebra on your own. You can play "what if?" games: What if I change one of the entries in this vector? What if this matrix is of a different size? Can I force the solution to be what I would like it to be by changing something? To signal places in the text or exercises where the use of technology is recommended, I have placed the icon CAS in the margin. The companion website that accompanies this book contains computer code working out selected exercises from the book using Maple, Mathematica, and MATLAB, as well as *Technology Bytes*, an appendix providing much additional advice about the use of technology in linear algebra.

You are about to embark on a journey through linear algebra. Think of this book as your travel guide. Are you ready? Let's go!

1 Vectors



Here they come pouring out of the blue.
Little arrows for me and for you.
—Albert Hammond and
Mike Hazelwood
Little Arrows
Dutchess Music/BMI, 1968

1.0 Introduction: The Racetrack Game

Many measurable quantities, such as length, area, volume, mass, and temperature, can be completely described by specifying their magnitude. Other quantities, such as velocity, force, and acceleration, require both a magnitude and a direction for their description. These quantities are *vectors*. For example, wind velocity is a vector consisting of wind speed and direction, such as 10 km/h southwest. Geometrically, vectors are often represented as arrows or directed line segments.

Although the idea of a vector was introduced in the 19th century, its usefulness in applications, particularly those in the physical sciences, was not realized until the 20th century. More recently, vectors have found applications in computer science, statistics, economics, and the life and social sciences. We will consider some of these many applications throughout this book.

This chapter introduces vectors and begins to consider some of their geometric and algebraic properties. We begin, though, with a simple game that introduces some of the key ideas. [You may even wish to play it with a friend during those (very rare!) dull moments in linear algebra class.]

The game is played on graph paper. A track, with a starting line and a finish line, is drawn on the paper. The track can be of any length and shape, so long as it is wide enough to accommodate all of the players. For this example, we will have two players (let's call them Ann and Bert) who use different colored pens to represent their cars or bicycles or whatever they are going to race around the track. (Let's think of Ann and Bert as cyclists.)

Ann and Bert each begin by drawing a dot on the starting line at a grid point on the graph paper. They take turns moving to a new grid point, subject to the following rules:

1. Each new grid point and the line segment connecting it to the previous grid point must lie entirely within the track.
2. No two players may occupy the same grid point on the same turn. (This is the "no collisions" rule.)
3. Each new move is related to the previous move as follows: If a player moves a units horizontally and b units vertically on one move, then on the next move he or she must move between $a - 1$ and $a + 1$ units horizontally and between

The Irish mathematician William Rowan Hamilton (1805–1865) used vector concepts in his study of complex numbers and their generalization, the quaternions.

$b - 1$ and $b + 1$ units vertically. In other words, if the second move is c units horizontally and d units vertically, then $|a - c| \leq 1$ and $|b - d| \leq 1$. (This is the "acceleration/deceleration" rule.) Note that this rule forces the first move to be 1 unit vertically and/or 1 unit horizontally.

A player who collides with another player or leaves the track is eliminated. The winner is the first player to cross the finish line. If more than one player crosses the finish line on the same turn, the one who goes farthest past the finish line is the winner.

In the sample game shown in Figure 1.1, Ann was the winner. Bert accelerated too quickly and had difficulty negotiating the turn at the top of the track.

To understand rule 3, consider Ann's third and fourth moves. On her third move, she went 1 unit horizontally and 3 units vertically. On her fourth move, her options were to move 0 to 2 units horizontally and 2 to 4 units vertically. (Notice that some of these combinations would have placed her outside the track.) She chose to move 2 units in each direction.

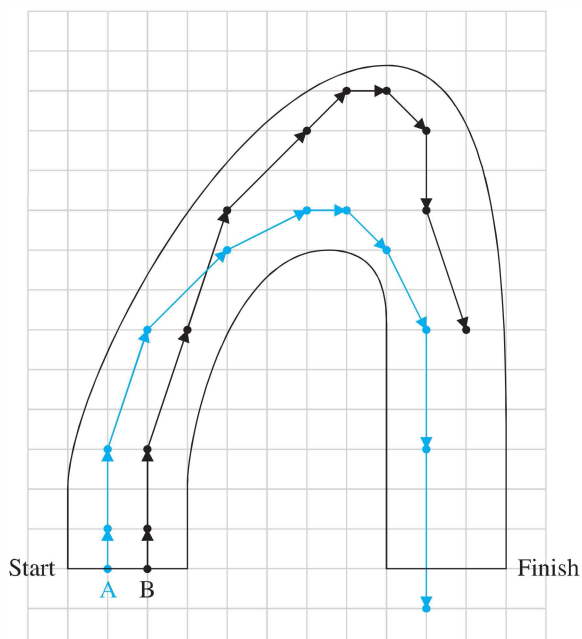


Figure 1.1
A sample game of racetrack

Problem 1 Play a few games of racetrack.

Problem 2 Is it possible for Bert to win this race by choosing a different sequence of moves?

Problem 3 Use the notation $[a, b]$ to denote a move that is a units horizontally and b units vertically. (Either a or b or both may be negative.) If move $[3, 4]$ has just been made, draw on graph paper all the grid points that could possibly be reached on the next move.

Problem 4 What is the net effect of two successive moves? In other words, if you move $[a, b]$ and then $[c, d]$, how far horizontally and vertically will you have moved altogether?

Problem 5 Write out Ann's sequence of moves using the $[a, b]$ notation. Suppose she begins at the origin $(0, 0)$ on the coordinate axes. Explain how you can find the coordinates of the grid point corresponding to each of her moves *without looking at the graph paper*. If the axes were drawn differently, so that Ann's starting point was not the origin but the point $(2, 3)$, what would the coordinates of her final point be?

Although simple, this game introduces several ideas that will be useful in our study of vectors. The next three sections consider vectors from geometric and algebraic viewpoints, beginning, as in the racetrack game, in the plane.

1.1 The Geometry and Algebra of Vectors

Vectors in the Plane

We begin by considering the Cartesian plane with the familiar x- and y-axes. A ***vector*** is a *directed line segment* that corresponds to a *displacement* from one point A to another point B; see Figure 1.2.

The Cartesian plane is named after the French philosopher and mathematician René Descartes (1596–1650), whose introduction of coordinates allowed *geometric* problems to be handled using *algebraic* techniques.

The vector from A to B is denoted by $\overrightarrow{AB}$; the point A is called its ***initial point,*** or ***tail,*** and the point B is called its ***terminal point,*** or ***head***. Often, a vector is simply denoted by a single boldface, lowercase letter such as $\mathbf{v}$.

The set of all points in the plane corresponds to the set of all vectors whose tails are at the origin O. To each point A, there corresponds the vector $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA}$; to each vector $\mathbf{a}$ with tail at O, there corresponds its head A. (Vectors of this form are sometimes called *position vectors*.)

The word *vector* comes from the Latin root meaning "to carry." A vector is formed when a point is displaced—or "carried off"—a given distance in a given direction. Viewed another way, vectors "carry" two pieces of information: their length and their direction.

When writing vectors by hand, it is difficult to indicate boldface. Some people prefer to write $\vec{v}$ for the vector denoted in print by $\mathbf{v}$, but in most cases it is fine to use an ordinary lowercase v. It will usually be clear from the context when the letter denotes a vector.

It is natural to represent such vectors using coordinates. For example, in Figure 1.3, $A = (3, 2)$ and we write the vector $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA} = [3, 2]$ using square brackets. Similarly, the other vectors in Figure 1.3 are

$$\mathbf{b} = [-1, 3] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{c} = [2, -1]$$

The individual coordinates (3 and 2 in the case of $\mathbf{a}$) are called the ***components*** of the vector. A vector is sometimes said to be an *ordered pair* of real numbers. The order is important since, for example, $[3, 2] \neq [2, 3]$. In general, two vectors are equal if and only if their corresponding components are equal. Thus, $[x, y] = [1, 5]$ implies that $x = 1$ and $y = 5$.

It is frequently convenient to use ***column vectors*** instead of (or in addition to) ***row vectors.*** Another representation of $[3, 2]$ is $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. (The important point is that the

The word *component* is derived from the Latin words *co*, meaning "together with," and *ponere*, meaning "to put." Thus, a vector is "put together" out of its components.

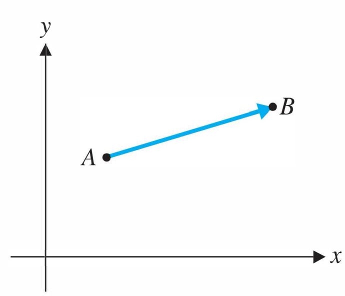


Figure 1.2

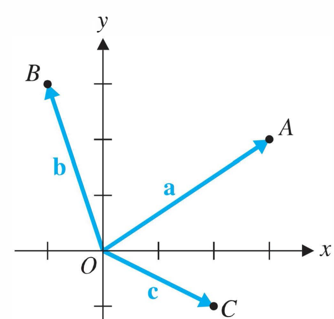


Figure 1.3

components are *ordered*.) In later chapters, you will see that column vectors are somewhat better from a computational point of view; for now, try to get used to both representations.

It may occur to you that we cannot really draw the vector $[0, 0] = \overrightarrow{OO}$ from the origin to itself. Nevertheless, it is a perfectly good vector and has a special name: the ***zero vector***. The zero vector is denoted by $\mathbf{0}$.

$\mathbb{R}^2$ is pronounced "r two."

The set of all vectors with two components is denoted by $\mathbb{R}^2$ (where $\mathbb{R}$ denotes the set of real numbers from which the components of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ are chosen). Thus, $[-1, 3.5]$, $[\sqrt{2}, \pi]$, and $\left[\frac{5}{3}, 4\right]$ are all in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

Thinking back to the racetrack game, let's try to connect all of these ideas to vectors whose tails are not at the origin. The etymological origin of the word *vector* in the verb "to carry" provides a clue. The vector $[3, 2]$ may be interpreted as follows: Starting at the origin O, travel 3 units to the right, then 2 units up, finishing at P. The same displacement may be applied with other initial points. Figure 1.4 shows two equivalent displacements, represented by the vectors $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and $\overrightarrow{CD}$.

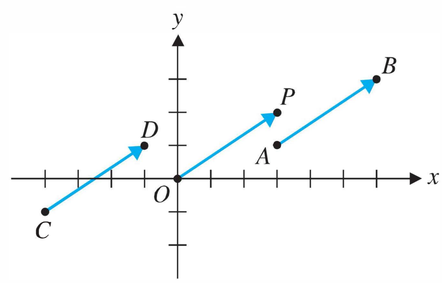


Figure 1.4

When vectors are referred to by their coordinates, they are being considered *analytically*.

We define two vectors as *equal* if they have the same length and the same direction. Thus, $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{CD}$ in Figure 1.4. (Even though they have different initial and terminal points, they represent the same displacement.) Geometrically, two vectors are equal if one can be obtained by sliding (or *translating*) the other parallel to itself until the two vectors coincide. In terms of components, in Figure 1.4 we have $A = (3, 1)$ and $B = (6, 3)$. Notice that the vector $[3, 2]$ that records the displacement is just the difference of the respective components:

$$\overrightarrow{AB} = [3, 2] = [6 - 3, 3 - 1]$$

Similarly,

$$\overrightarrow{CD} = [-1 - (-4), 1 - (-1)] = [3, 2]$$

and thus $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{CD}$, as expected.

A vector such as $\overrightarrow{OP}$ with its tail at the origin is said to be in ***standard position***. The foregoing discussion shows that every vector can be drawn as a vector in standard position. Conversely, a vector in standard position can be redrawn (by translation) so that its tail is at any point in the plane.

Example 1.1

If $A = (-1, 2)$ and $B = (3, 4)$, find $\overrightarrow{AB}$ and redraw it (a) in standard position and (b) with its tail at the point $C = (2, -1)$.

Solution We compute $\overrightarrow{AB} \approx [3 - (-1), 4 - 2] = [4, 2]$. If $\overrightarrow{AB}$ is then translated to $\overrightarrow{CD}$, where $C = (2, -1)$, then we must have $D = (2 + 4, -1 + 2) = (6, 1)$. (See Figure 1.5.)

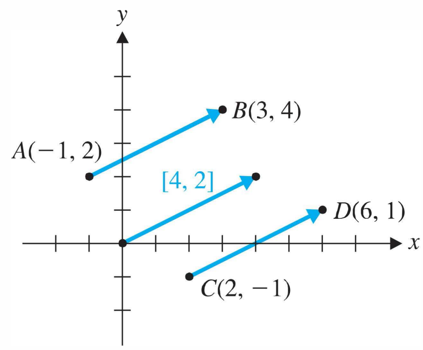


Figure 1.5

New Vectors from Old

As in the racetrack game, we often want to "follow" one vector by another. This leads to the notion of ***vector addition,*** the first basic vector operation.

If we follow $\mathbf{u}$ by $\mathbf{v}$, we can visualize the total displacement as a third vector, denoted by $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$. In Figure 1.6, $\mathbf{u} = [1, 2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [2, 2]$, so the net effect of following $\mathbf{u}$ by $\mathbf{v}$ is

$$[1 + 2, 2 + 2] = [3, 4]$$

which gives $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$. In general, if $\mathbf{u} = [u_1, u_2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [v_1, v_2]$, then their ***sum*** $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is the vector

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = [u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2]$$

It is helpful to visualize $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ geometrically. The following rule is the geometric version of the foregoing discussion.

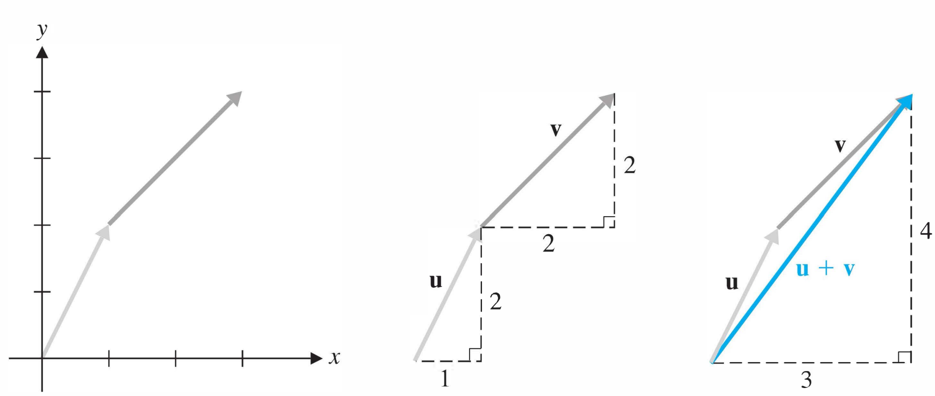


Figure 1.6
Vector addition

The Head-to-Tail Rule

Given vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^2$, translate **v** so that its tail coincides with the head of **u**. The ***sum*** **u** + **v** of **u** and **v** is the vector from the tail of **u** to the head of **v**. (See Figure 1.7.)

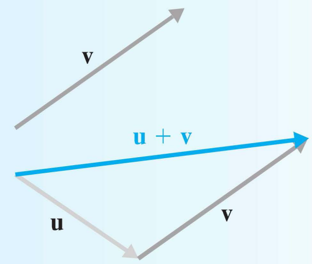


Figure 1.7
The head-to-tail rule

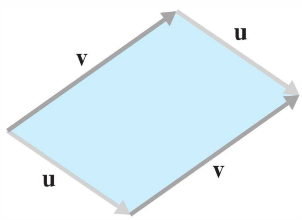


Figure 1.8
The parallelogram determined by **u** and **v**

By translating **u** and **v** parallel to themselves, we obtain a parallelogram, as shown in Figure 1.8. This parallelogram is called the *parallelogram determined by* **u** *and* **v**. It leads to an equivalent version of the head-to-tail rule for vectors in standard position.

The Parallelogram Rule

Given vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^2$ (in standard position), their ***sum*** **u** + **v** is the vector in standard position along the diagonal of the parallelogram determined by **u** and **v**. (See Figure 1.9.)

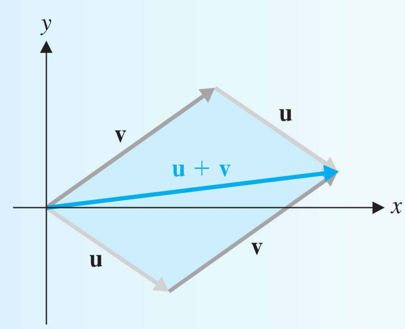


Figure 1.9
The parallelogram rule

Example 1.2

If **u** = [3, −1] and **v** = [1, 4], compute and draw **u** + **v**.

Solution We compute **u** + **v** = [3 + 1, −1 + 4] = [4, 3]. This vector is drawn using the head-to-tail rule in Figure 1.10(a) and using the parallelogram rule in Figure 1.10(b).

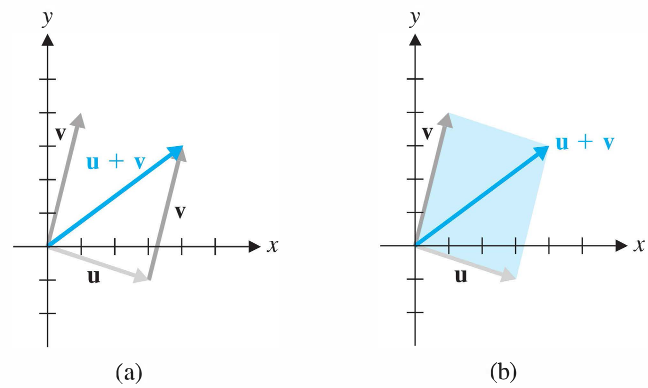


Figure 1.10

The second basic vector operation is ***scalar multiplication.*** Given a vector **v** and a real number c, the ***scalar multiple*** $c\mathbf{v}$ is the vector obtained by multiplying each component of **v** by c. For example, $3[-2, 4] = [-6, 12]$. In general,

$$c\mathbf{v} = c\,[v_1, v_2] = [cv_1, cv_2]$$

Geometrically, $c\mathbf{v}$ is a "scaled" version of **v**.

Example 1.3

If $\mathbf{v} = [-2, 4]$, compute and draw $2\mathbf{v}$, $\frac{1}{2}\mathbf{v}$, and $-2\mathbf{v}$.

Solution We calculate as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} 2\mathbf{v} &= [2(-2), 2(4)] = [-4, 8] \\ \tfrac{1}{2}\mathbf{v} &= [\tfrac{1}{2}(-2), \tfrac{1}{2}(4)] = [-1, 2] \\ -2\mathbf{v} &= [-2(-2), -2(4)] = [4, -8] \end{aligned}$$

These vectors are shown in Figure 1.11.

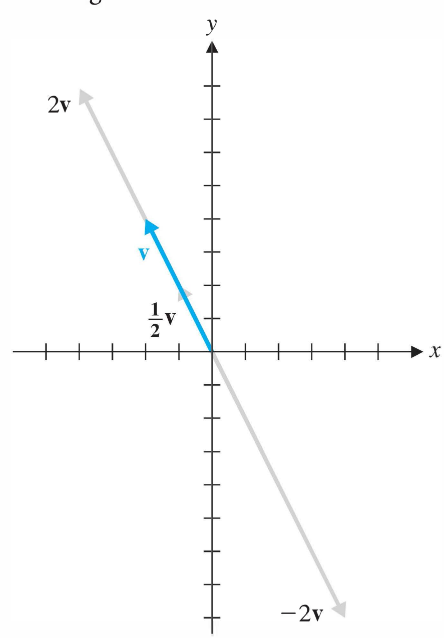


Figure 1.11

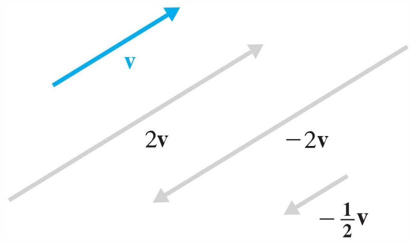


Figure 1.12

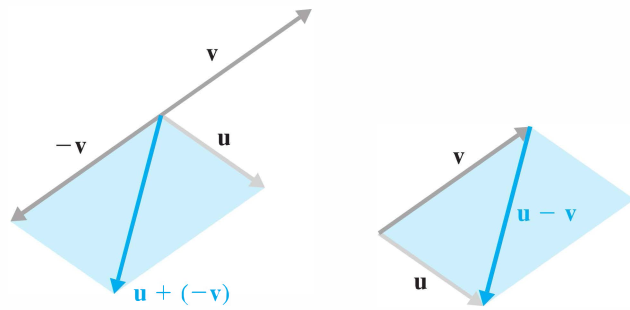


Figure 1.13
Vector subtraction

The term *scalar* comes from the Latin word *scala,* meaning "ladder." The equally spaced rungs on a ladder suggest a scale, and in vector arithmetic, multiplication by a constant changes only the scale (or length) of a vector. Thus, constants became known as scalars.

Observe that $c\mathbf{v}$ has the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ if $c > 0$ and the opposite direction if $c < 0$. We also see that $c\mathbf{v}$ is $|c|$ times as long as $\mathbf{v}$. For this reason, in the context of vectors, constants (i.e., real numbers) are referred to as ***scalars.*** As Figure 1.12 shows, when translation of vectors is taken into account, two vectors are scalar multiples of each other if and only if they are ***parallel.***

A special case of a scalar multiple is $(-1)\mathbf{v}$, which is written as $-\mathbf{v}$ and is called the ***negative of*** $\mathbf{v}$. We can use it to define ***vector subtraction:*** The ***difference*** of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ is the vector $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ defined by

$$\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{v})$$

Figure 1.13 shows that $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ corresponds to the "other" diagonal of the parallelogram determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

Example 1.4

If $\mathbf{u} = [1, 2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [-3, 1]$, then $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = [1 - (-3), 2 - 1] = [4, 1]$.

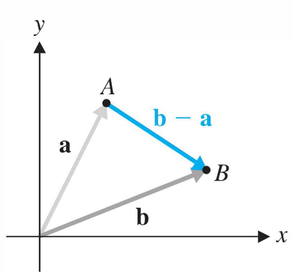


Figure 1.14

The definition of subtraction in Example 1.4 also agrees with the way we calculate a vector such as $\overrightarrow{AB}$. If the points A and B correspond to the vectors $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ in standard position, then $\overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$, as shown in Figure 1.14. [Observe that the head-to-tail rule applied to this diagram gives the equation $\mathbf{a} + (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{b}$. If we had accidentally drawn $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$ with its head at A instead of at B, the diagram would have read $\mathbf{b} + (\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{a}$, which is clearly wrong! More will be said about algebraic expressions involving vectors later in this section.]

Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$

Everything we have just done extends easily to three dimensions. The set of all *ordered triples* of real numbers is denoted by $\mathbb{R}^3$. Points and vectors are located using three mutually perpendicular coordinate axes that meet at the origin O. A point such as $A = (1, 2, 3)$ can be located as follows: First travel 1 unit along the x-axis, then move 2 units parallel to the y-axis, and finally move 3 units parallel to the z-axis. The corresponding vector $\mathbf{a} = [1, 2, 3]$ is then $\overrightarrow{OA}$, as shown in Figure 1.15.

Another way to visualize vector $\mathbf{a}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is to construct a box whose six sides are determined by the three coordinate planes (the xy-, xz-, and yz-planes) and by three planes through the point $(1, 2, 3)$ parallel to the coordinate planes. The vector $[1, 2, 3]$ then corresponds to the diagonal from the origin to the opposite corner of the box (see Figure 1.16).

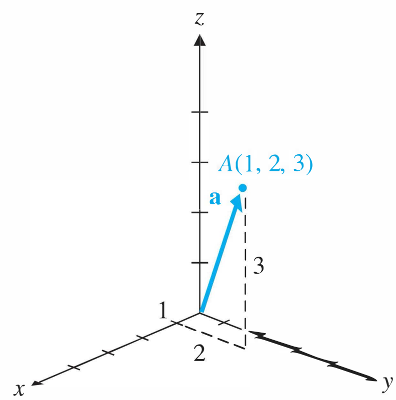


Figure 1.15

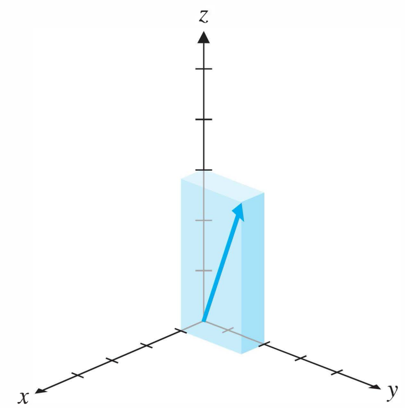


Figure 1.16

The "componentwise" definitions of vector addition and scalar multiplication are extended to $\mathbb{R}^3$ in an obvious way.

Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$

In general, we define $\mathbb{R}^n$ as the set of all *ordered n-tuples* of real numbers written as row or column vectors. Thus, a vector $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is of the form

$$[v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n] \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}$$

The individual entries of $\mathbf{v}$ are its components; v_i is called the ith component.

We extend the definitions of vector addition and scalar multiplication to $\mathbb{R}^n$ in the obvious way: If $\mathbf{u} = [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n]$, the ith component of $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is $u_i + v_i$ and the ith component of $c\mathbf{v}$ is just cv_i.

Since in $\mathbb{R}^n$ we can no longer draw pictures of vectors, it is important to be able to calculate with vectors. We must be careful not to assume that vector arithmetic will be similar to the arithmetic of real numbers. Often it is, and the algebraic calculations we do with vectors are similar to those we would do with scalars. But, in later sections, we will encounter situations where vector algebra is quite *unlike* our previous experience with real numbers. So it is important to verify any algebraic properties before attempting to use them.

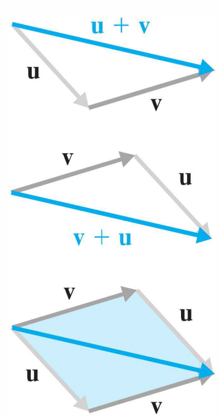


Figure 1.17
$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$

One such property is *commutativity* of addition: $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$ for vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. This is certainly true in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Geometrically, the head-to-tail rule shows that both $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$ are the main diagonals of the parallelogram determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. (The parallelogram rule also reflects this symmetry; see Figure 1.17.)

Note that Figure 1.17 is simply an illustration of the property $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$. It is not a proof, since it does not cover every possible case. For example, we must also include the cases where $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$. (What would diagrams for these cases look like?) For this reason, an algebraic proof is needed. However, it is just as easy to give a proof that is valid in $\mathbb{R}^n$ as to give one that is valid in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

The following theorem summarizes the algebraic properties of vector addition and scalar multiplication in $\mathbb{R}^n$. The proofs follow from the corresponding properties of real numbers.

Theorem 1.1 **Algebraic Properties of Vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$**

Let **u**, **v**, and **w** be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let c and d be scalars. Then

a. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}$ Commutativity
b. $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})$ Associativity
c. $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{u}$
d. $\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{u}) = \mathbf{0}$
e. $c(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = c\mathbf{u} + c\mathbf{v}$ Distributivity
f. $(c + d)\mathbf{u} = c\mathbf{u} + d\mathbf{u}$ Distributivity
g. $c(d\mathbf{u}) = (cd)\mathbf{u}$
h. $1\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}$

The word *theorem* is derived from the Greek word *theorema*, which in turn comes from a word meaning "to look at." Thus, a theorem is based on the insights we have when we look at examples and extract from them properties that we try to prove hold in general. Similarly, when we understand something in mathematics—the proof of a theorem, for example—we often say, "I see."

Remarks

- Properties (c) and (d) together with the commutativity property (a) imply that $\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{u}$ and $-\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ as well.
- If we read the distributivity properties (e) and (f) from right to left, they say that we can *factor* a common scalar or a common vector from a sum.

Proof We prove properties (a) and (b) and leave the proofs of the remaining properties as exercises. Let $\mathbf{u} = [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n]$, $\mathbf{v} = [v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n]$, and $\mathbf{w} = [w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n]$.

(a)
$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} &= [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n] + [v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n] \\
&= [u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n] \\
&= [v_1 + u_1, v_2 + u_2, \ldots, v_n + u_n] \\
&= [v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n] + [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n] \\
&= \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}
\end{aligned}$$

The second and fourth equalities are by the definition of vector addition, and the third equality is by the commutativity of addition of real numbers.

(b) Figure 1.18 illustrates associativity in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Algebraically, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{w} &= ([u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n] + [v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n]) + [w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n] \\
&= [u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \ldots, u_n + v_n] + [w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n] \\
&= [(u_1 + v_1) + w_1, (u_2 + v_2) + w_2, \ldots, (u_n + v_n) + w_n] \\
&= [u_1 + (v_1 + w_1), u_2 + (v_2 + w_2), \ldots, u_n + (v_n + w_n)] \\
&= [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n] + [v_1 + w_1, v_2 + w_2, \ldots, v_n + w_n] \\
&= [u_1, u_2, \ldots, u_n] + ([v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n] + [w_1, w_2, \ldots, w_n]) \\
&= \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})
\end{aligned}$$

The fourth equality is by the associativity of addition of real numbers. Note the careful use of parentheses.

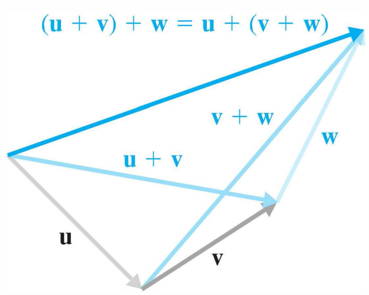


Figure 1.18

By property (b) of Theorem 1.1, we may unambiguously write $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$ without parentheses, since we may group the summands in whichever way we please. By (a), we may also rearrange the summands—for example, as $\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$—if we choose. Likewise, sums of four or more vectors can be calculated without regard to order or grouping. In general, if $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, we will write such sums without parentheses:

$$\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + \mathbf{v}_k$$

The next example illustrates the use of Theorem 1.1 in performing algebraic calculations with vectors.

Example 1.5

Let $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, and $\mathbf{x}$ denote vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

(a) Simplify $3\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) + 2(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})$.

(b) If $5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} = 2(\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{x})$, solve for $\mathbf{x}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$.

Solution We will give both solutions in detail, with reference to all of the properties in Theorem 1.1 that we use. It is good practice to justify all steps the first few times you do this type of calculation. Once you are comfortable with the vector properties, though, it is acceptable to leave out some of the intermediate steps to save time and space.

(a) We begin by inserting parentheses.

$$\begin{aligned}
3\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) + 2(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) &= (3\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a})) + 2(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) \\
&= (3\mathbf{a} + (-2\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b})) + (2\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) && \text{(a), (e)} \\
&= ((3\mathbf{a} + (-2\mathbf{a})) + 5\mathbf{b}) + (2\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) && \text{(b)} \\
&= ((3 + (-2))\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b}) + (2\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) && \text{(f)} \\
&= (1\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b}) + (2\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) \\
&= ((\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b}) + 2\mathbf{b}) - 2\mathbf{a} && \text{(b), (h)} \\
&= (\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{b})) - 2\mathbf{a} && \text{(b)} \\
&= (\mathbf{a} + (5 + 2)\mathbf{b}) - 2\mathbf{a} && \text{(f)} \\
&= (7\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a}) - 2\mathbf{a} && \text{(a)} \\
&= 7\mathbf{b} + (\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{a}) && \text{(b)} \\
&= 7\mathbf{b} + (1 - 2)\mathbf{a} && \text{(f), (h)} \\
&= 7\mathbf{b} + (-1)\mathbf{a} \\
&= 7\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}
\end{aligned}$$

You can see why we will agree to omit some of these steps! In practice, it is acceptable to simplify this sequence of steps as

$$\begin{aligned}
3\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a}) + 2(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) &= 3\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{a} \\
&= (3\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{a} - 2\mathbf{a}) + (5\mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{b}) \\
&= -\mathbf{a} + 7\mathbf{b}
\end{aligned}$$

or even to do most of the calculation mentally.

(b) In detail, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} &= 2(\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{x}) & \\
5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} &= 2\mathbf{a} + 2(2\mathbf{x}) & \text{(e)} \\
5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} &= 2\mathbf{a} + (2 \cdot 2)\mathbf{x} & \text{(g)} \\
5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} &= 2\mathbf{a} + 4\mathbf{x} & \\
(5\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a}) - 4\mathbf{x} &= (2\mathbf{a} + 4\mathbf{x}) - 4\mathbf{x} & \\
(-\mathbf{a} + 5\mathbf{x}) - 4\mathbf{x} &= 2\mathbf{a} + (4\mathbf{x} - 4\mathbf{x}) & \text{(a), (b)} \\
-\mathbf{a} + (5\mathbf{x} - 4\mathbf{x}) &= 2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{0} & \text{(b), (d)} \\
-\mathbf{a} + (5 - 4)\mathbf{x} &= 2\mathbf{a} & \text{(f), (c)} \\
-\mathbf{a} + (1)\mathbf{x} &= 2\mathbf{a} & \\
\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{x}) &= \mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{a} & \text{(h)} \\
(\mathbf{a} + (-\mathbf{a})) + \mathbf{x} &= (1 + 2)\mathbf{a} & \text{(b), (f)} \\
\mathbf{0} + \mathbf{x} &= 3\mathbf{a} & \text{(d)} \\
\mathbf{x} &= 3\mathbf{a} & \text{(c)}
\end{aligned}
$$

Again, we will usually omit most of these steps.

Linear Combinations and Coordinates

A vector that is a sum of scalar multiples of other vectors is said to be a *linear combination* of those vectors. The formal definition follows.

Definition A vector $\mathbf{v}$ is a ***linear combination*** of vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ if there are scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ such that $\mathbf{v} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$. The scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ are called the ***coefficients*** of the linear combination.

Example 1.6

The vector $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ is a linear combination of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -4 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, since

$$3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + 2\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -4 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark Determining whether a given vector is a linear combination of other vectors is a problem we will address in Chapter 2.

In $\mathbb{R}^2$, it is possible to depict linear combinations of two (nonparallel) vectors quite conveniently.

Example 1.7

Let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. We can use $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ to locate a new set of axes (in the same way that $\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{e}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ locate the standard coordinate axes). We can use

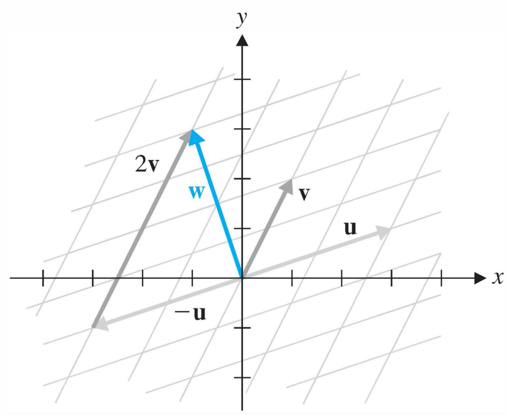


Figure 1.19

these new axes to determine a ***coordinate grid*** that will let us easily locate linear combinations of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

As Figure 1.19 shows, $\mathbf{w}$ can be located by starting at the origin and traveling $-\mathbf{u}$ followed by $2\mathbf{v}$. That is,

$$\mathbf{w} = -\mathbf{u} + 2\mathbf{v}$$

We say that the coordinates of $\mathbf{w}$ with respect to $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are -1 and 2. (Note that this is just another way of thinking of the coefficients of the linear combination.) It follows that

$$\mathbf{w} = -\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + 2\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Observe that -1 and 3 are the coordinates of $\mathbf{w}$ with respect to $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$.)

Switching from the standard coordinate axes to alternative ones is a useful idea. It has applications in chemistry and geology, since molecular and crystalline structures often do not fall onto a rectangular grid. It is an idea that we will encounter repeatedly in this book.

Binary Vectors and Modular Arithmetic

We will also encounter a type of vector that has no geometric interpretation—at least not using Euclidean geometry. Computers represent data in terms of 0s and 1s (which can be interpreted as off/on, closed/open, false/true, or no/yes). ***Binary vectors*** are vectors each of whose components is a 0 or a 1. As we will see in Chapter 8, such vectors arise naturally in the study of many types of codes.

In this setting, the usual rules of arithmetic must be modified, since the result of each calculation involving scalars must be a 0 or a 1. The modified rules for addition and multiplication are given below.

+	0	1
0	0	1
1	1	0

·	0	1
0	0	0
1	0	1

The only curiosity here is the rule that $1 + 1 = 0$. This is not as strange as it appears; if we replace 0 with the word "even" and 1 with the word "odd," these tables simply summarize the familiar *parity rules* for the addition and multiplication of even and odd integers. For example, $1 + 1 = 0$ expresses the fact that the sum of two odd integers is an even integer. With these rules, our set of scalars $\{0, 1\}$ is denoted by $\mathbb{Z}_2$ and is called the set of ***integers modulo* 2.**

Example 1.8

In $\mathbb{Z}_2$, $1 + 1 + 0 + 1 = 1$ and $1 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 0$. (These calculations illustrate the parity rules again: The sum of three odds and an even is odd; the sum of four odds is even.)

We are using the term *length* differently from the way we used it in $\mathbb{R}^n$. This should not be confusing, since there is no *geometric* notion of length for binary vectors.

With $\mathbb{Z}_2$ as our set of scalars, we now extend the above rules to vectors. The set of all n-tuples of 0s and 1s (with all arithmetic performed modulo 2) is denoted by $\mathbb{Z}_2^n$. The vectors in $\mathbb{Z}_2^n$ are called ***binary vectors of length n.***

Example 1.9

The vectors in $\mathbb{Z}_2^2$ are $[0, 0]$, $[0, 1]$, $[1, 0]$, and $[1, 1]$. (How many vectors does $\mathbb{Z}_2^n$ contain, in general?)

Example 1.10

Let $\mathbf{u} = [1, 1, 0, 1, 0]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [0, 1, 1, 1, 0]$ be two binary vectors of length 5. Find $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$.

Solution The calculation of $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ takes place over $\mathbb{Z}_2$, so we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} &= [1, 1, 0, 1, 0] + [0, 1, 1, 1, 0] \\ &= [1 + 0, 1 + 1, 0 + 1, 1 + 1, 0 + 0] \\ &= [1, 0, 1, 0, 0]\end{aligned}$$

It is possible to generalize what we have just done for binary vectors to vectors whose components are taken from a finite set $\{0, 1, 2, \ldots, k\}$ for $k \geq 2$. To do so, we must first extend the idea of binary arithmetic.

Example 1.11

The ***integers modulo* 3** is the set $\mathbb{Z}_3 = \{0, 1, 2\}$ with addition and multiplication given by the following tables:

+	0	1	2
0	0	1	2
1	1	2	0
2	2	0	1

·	0	1	2
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	2
2	0	2	1

Observe that the result of each addition and multiplication belongs to the set $\{0, 1, 2\}$; we say that $\mathbb{Z}_3$ is ***closed*** with respect to the operations of addition and multiplication. It is perhaps easiest to think of this set in terms of a 3-hour clock with 0, 1, and 2 on its face, as shown in Figure 1.20.

The calculation $1 + 2 = 0$ translates as follows: 2 hours after 1 o'clock, it is 0 o'clock. Just as 24:00 and 12:00 are the same on a 12-hour clock, so 3 and 0 are equivalent on this 3-hour clock. Likewise, all multiples of 3—positive and negative—are equivalent to 0 here; 1 is equivalent to any number that is 1 more than a multiple of 3 (such as -2, 4, and 7); and 2 is equivalent to any number that is 2 more than a multiple of 3 (such as -1, 5, and 8). We can visualize the number line as wrapping around a circle, as shown in Figure 1.21.

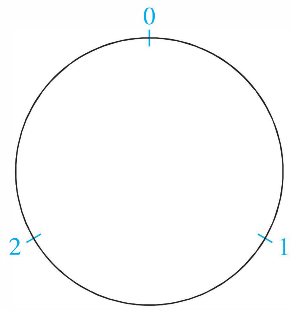


Figure 1.20
Arithmetic modulo 3

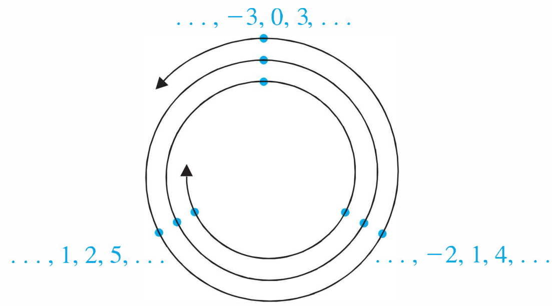


Figure 1.21

Example 1.12 To what is 3548 equivalent in $\mathbb{Z}_3$?

Solution This is the same as asking where 3548 lies on our 3-hour clock. The key is to calculate how far this number is from the nearest (smaller) multiple of 3; that is, we need to know the *remainder* when 3548 is divided by 3. By long division, we find that $3548 = 3 \cdot 1182 + 2$, so the remainder is 2. Therefore, 3548 is equivalent to 2 in $\mathbb{Z}_3$.

In courses in abstract algebra and number theory, which explore this concept in greater detail, the above equivalence is often written as $3548 = 2 \pmod 3$ or $3548 \equiv 2 \pmod 3$, where $\equiv$ is read "is congruent to." We will not use this notation or terminology here.

Example 1.13 In $\mathbb{Z}_3$, calculate $2 + 2 + 1 + 2$.

Solution 1 We use the same ideas as in Example 1.12. The ordinary sum is $2 + 2 + 1 + 2 = 7$, which is 1 more than 6, so division by 3 leaves a remainder of 1. Thus, $2 + 2 + 1 + 2 = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$.

Solution 2 A better way to perform this calculation is to do it step by step entirely in $\mathbb{Z}_3$.

$$\begin{aligned} 2 + 2 + 1 + 2 &= (2 + 2) + 1 + 2 \\ &= 1 + 1 + 2 \\ &= (1 + 1) + 2 \\ &= 2 + 2 \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Here we have used parentheses to group the terms we have chosen to combine. We could speed things up by simultaneously combining the first two and the last two terms:

$$\begin{aligned} (2 + 2) + (1 + 2) &= 1 + 0 \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Repeated multiplication can be handled similarly. The idea is to use the addition and multiplication tables to reduce the result of each calculation to 0, 1, or 2.

Extending these ideas to vectors is straightforward.

Example 1.14

In $\mathbb{Z}_3^5$, let $\mathbf{u} = [2, 2, 0, 1, 2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [1, 2, 2, 2, 1]$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} &= [2, 2, 0, 1, 2] + [1, 2, 2, 2, 1] \\ &= [2 + 1, 2 + 2, 0 + 2, 1 + 2, 2 + 1] \\ &= [0, 1, 2, 0, 0]\end{aligned}$$

Vectors in $\mathbb{Z}_3^5$ are referred to as ***ternary vectors of length* 5.**

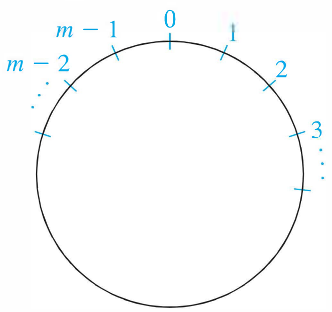


Figure 1.22
Arithmetic modulo m

In general, we have the set $\mathbb{Z}_m = \{0, 1, 2, \ldots, m - 1\}$ of ***integers modulo m*** (corresponding to an m-hour clock, as shown in Figure 1.22). A vector of length n whose entries are in $\mathbb{Z}_m$ is called an ***m-ary vector of length n***. The set of all m-ary vectors of length n is denoted by $\mathbb{Z}_m^n$.

Exercises 1.1

1. Draw the following vectors in standard position in $\mathbb{R}^2$:

(a) $\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **(b)** $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **(d)** $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$

2. Draw the vectors in Exercise 1 with their tails at the point $(2, -3)$.

3. Draw the following vectors in standard position in $\mathbb{R}^3$:

(a) $\mathbf{a} = [0, 2, 0]$ **(b)** $\mathbf{b} = [3, 2, 1]$
(c) $\mathbf{c} = [1, -2, 1]$ **(d)** $\mathbf{d} = [-1, -1, -2]$

4. If the vectors in Exercise 3 are translated so that their heads are at the point $(3, 2, 1)$, find the points that correspond to their tails.

5. For each of the following pairs of points, draw the vector $\overrightarrow{AB}$. Then compute and redraw $\overrightarrow{AB}$ as a vector in standard position.

(a) $A = (1, -1), B = (4, 2)$
(b) $A = (0, -2), B = (2, -1)$
(c) $A = (2, \frac{3}{2}), B = (\frac{1}{2}, 3)$
(d) $A = (\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}), B = (\frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{2})$

6. A hiker walks 4 km north and then 5 km northeast. Draw displacement vectors representing the hiker's trip and draw a vector that represents the hiker's net displacement from the starting point.

Exercises 7–10 refer to the vectors in Exercise 1. Compute the indicated vectors and also show how the results can be obtained geometrically.

7. $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}$ **8.** $\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{c}$
9. $\mathbf{d} - \mathbf{c}$ **10.** $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{d}$

Exercises 11 and 12 refer to the vectors in Exercise 3. Compute the indicated vectors.

11. $2\mathbf{a} + 3\mathbf{c}$ **12.** $3\mathbf{b} - 2\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{d}$

13. Find the components of the vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, where $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are as shown in Figure 1.23.

14. In Figure 1.24, $A, B, C, D, E,$ and F are the vertices of a regular hexagon centered at the origin.

Express each of the following vectors in terms of $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{OB}$:

(a) $\overrightarrow{AB}$ **(b)** $\overrightarrow{BC}$
(c) $\overrightarrow{AD}$ **(d)** $\overrightarrow{CF}$
(e) $\overrightarrow{AC}$ **(f)** $\overrightarrow{BC} + \overrightarrow{DE} + \overrightarrow{FA}$

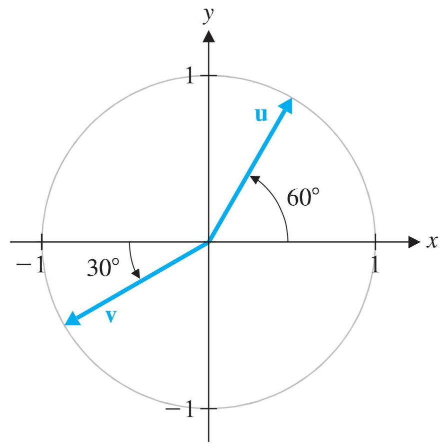


Figure 1.23

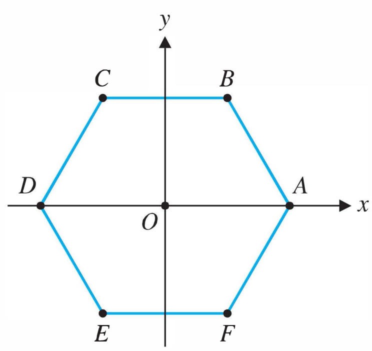


Figure 1.24

In Exercises 15 and 16, simplify the given vector expression. Indicate which properties in Theorem 1.1 you use.

15. $2(\mathbf{a} - 3\mathbf{b}) + 3(2\mathbf{b} + \mathbf{a})$

16. $-3(\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{c}) + 2(\mathbf{a} + 2\mathbf{b}) + 3(\mathbf{c} - \mathbf{b})$

In Exercises 17 and 18, solve for the vector **x** *in terms of the vectors* **a** *and* **b**.

17. $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{a} = 2(\mathbf{x} - 2\mathbf{a})$

18. $\mathbf{x} + 2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b} = 3(\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a}) - 2(2\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b})$

In Exercises 19 and 20, draw the coordinate axes relative to **u** *and* **v** *and locate* **w**.

19. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = 2\mathbf{u} + 3\mathbf{v}$

20. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = -\mathbf{u} - 2\mathbf{v}$

In Exercises 21 and 22, draw the standard coordinate axes on the same diagram as the axes relative to **u** *and* **v**. *Use these to find* **w** *as a linear combination of* **u** *and* **v**.

21. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$

22. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$

23. Draw diagrams to illustrate properties (d) and (e) of Theorem 1.1.

24. Give algebraic proofs of properties (d) through (g) of Theorem 1.1.

In Exercises 25–28, **u** *and* **v** *are binary vectors. Find* $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ *in each case.*

25. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

27. $\mathbf{u} = [1, 0, 1, 1], \mathbf{v} = [1, 1, 1, 1]$

28. $\mathbf{u} = [1, 1, 0, 1, 0], \mathbf{v} = [0, 1, 1, 1, 0]$

29. Write out the addition and multiplication tables for $\mathbb{Z}_4$.

30. Write out the addition and multiplication tables for $\mathbb{Z}_5$.

In Exercises 31–43, perform the indicated calculations.

31. $2 + 2 + 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$

32. $2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$

33. $2(2 + 1 + 2)$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$

34. $3 + 1 + 2 + 3$ in $\mathbb{Z}_4$

35. $2 \cdot 3 \cdot 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_4$

36. $3(3 + 3 + 2)$ in $\mathbb{Z}_4$

37. $2 + 1 + 2 + 2 + 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$, $\mathbb{Z}_4$, and $\mathbb{Z}_5$

38. $(3 + 4)(3 + 2 + 4 + 2)$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$

39. $8(6 + 4 + 3)$ in $\mathbb{Z}_9$

40. 2^{100} in $\mathbb{Z}_{11}$

41. $[2, 1, 2] + [2, 0, 1]$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3^3$

42. $2[2, 2, 1]$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3^3$

43. $2([3, 1, 1, 2] + [3, 3, 2, 1])$ in $\mathbb{Z}_4^4$ and $\mathbb{Z}_5^4$

In Exercises 44–55, solve the given equation or indicate that there is no solution.

44. $x + 3 = 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$

45. $x + 5 = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_6$

46. $2x = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$

47. $2x = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_4$

48. $2x = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$

49. $3x = 4$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$

50. $3x = 4$ in $\mathbb{Z}_6$

51. $6x = 5$ in $\mathbb{Z}_8$

52. $8x = 9$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{11}$

53. $2x + 3 = 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$

54. $4x + 5 = 2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_6$

55. $6x + 3 = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_8$

56. **(a)** For which values of a does $x + a = 0$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_5$?
(b) For which values of a and b does $x + a = b$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_6$?
(c) For which values of a, b, and m does $x + a = b$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_m$?

57. **(a)** For which values of a does $ax = 1$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_5$?
(b) For which values of a does $ax = 1$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_6$?
(c) For which values of a and m does $ax = 1$ have a solution in $\mathbb{Z}_m$?

1.2 Length and Angle: The Dot Product

It is quite easy to reformulate the familiar geometric concepts of length, distance, and angle in terms of vectors. Doing so will allow us to use these important and powerful ideas in settings more general than $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$. In subsequent chapters, these simple geometric tools will be used to solve a wide variety of problems arising in applications—even when there is no geometry apparent at all!

The Dot Product

The vector versions of length, distance, and angle can all be described using the notion of the dot product of two vectors.

Definition If

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}$$

then the ***dot product*** $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ is defined by

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \cdots + u_nv_n$$

In words, $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is the sum of the products of the corresponding components of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. It is important to note a couple of things about this "product" that we have just defined: First, $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ must have the same number of components. Second, the dot product $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is a *number,* not another vector. (This is why $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is sometimes called the ***scalar product*** of $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.) The dot product of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a special and important case of the more general notion of ***inner product,*** which we will explore in Chapter 7.

Example 1.15

Compute $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ when $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 5 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 1 \cdot (-3) + 2 \cdot 5 + (-3) \cdot 2 = 1$

Notice that if we had calculated $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$ in Example 1.15, we would have computed

$$\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} = (-3) \cdot 1 + 5 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot (-3) = 1$$

That $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u}$ in general is clear, since the individual products of the components commute. This commutativity property is one of the properties of the dot product that we will use repeatedly. The main properties of the dot product are summarized in Theorem 1.2.

Theorem 1.2 Let $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let c be a scalar. Then

a. $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}$ — Commutativity
b. $\mathbf{u}\cdot(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{w}$ — Distributivity
c. $(c\mathbf{u})\cdot\mathbf{v} = c(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})$
d. $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} \geq 0$ and $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$

Proof We prove (a) and (c) and leave proof of the remaining properties for the exercises.

(a) Applying the definition of dot product to $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} &= u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \cdots + u_nv_n\\ &= v_1u_1 + v_2u_2 + \cdots + v_nu_n\\ &= \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u}\end{aligned}$$

where the middle equality follows from the fact that multiplication of real numbers is commutative.

(c) Using the definitions of scalar multiplication and dot product, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(c\mathbf{u})\cdot\mathbf{v} &= [cu_1, cu_2, \ldots, cu_n]\cdot[v_1, v_2, \ldots, v_n]\\ &= cu_1v_1 + cu_2v_2 + \cdots + cu_nv_n\\ &= c(u_1v_1 + u_2v_2 + \cdots + u_nv_n)\\ &= c(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})\end{aligned}$$

Remarks

- Property (b) can be read from right to left, in which case it says that we can factor out a common vector $\mathbf{u}$ from a sum of dot products. This property also has a "right-handed" analogue that follows from properties (b) and (a) together: $(\mathbf{v}+\mathbf{w})\cdot\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{u}$.
- Property (c) can be extended to give $\mathbf{u}\cdot(c\mathbf{v}) = c(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})$ (Exercise 58). This extended version of (c) essentially says that in taking a scalar multiple of a dot product of vectors, the scalar can first be combined with whichever vector is more convenient. For example,

$$\left(\tfrac{1}{2}[-1,-3,2]\right)\cdot[6,-4,0] = [-1,-3,2]\cdot\left(\tfrac{1}{2}[6,-4,0]\right) = [-1,-3,2]\cdot[3,-2,0] = 3$$

With this approach we avoid introducing fractions into the vectors, as the original grouping would have.

- The second part of (d) uses the logical connective *if and only if*. Appendix A discusses this phrase in more detail, but for the moment let us just note that the wording signals a *double implication*—namely,

$$\text{if } \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}, \text{ then } \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = 0$$

and

$$\text{if } \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = 0, \text{ then } \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$$

Theorem 1.2 shows that aspects of the algebra of vectors resemble the algebra of numbers. The next example shows that we can sometimes find vector analogues of familiar identities.

Example 1.16

Prove that $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} + 2(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) &= (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \\ &= \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} + 2(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}\end{aligned}$$

(Identify the parts of Theorem 1.2 that were used at each step.)

Length

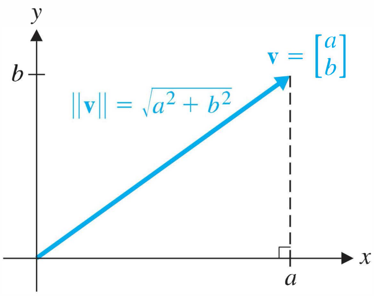


Figure 1.25

To see how the dot product plays a role in the calculation of lengths, recall how lengths are computed in the plane. The Theorem of Pythagoras is all we need.

In $\mathbb{R}^2$, the length of the vector $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ is the distance from the origin to the point (a, b), which, by Pythagoras' Theorem, is given by $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$, as in Figure 1.25. Observe that $a^2 + b^2 = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$. This leads to the following definition.

Definition The ***length*** (or ***norm***) of a vector $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is the nonnegative scalar $\|\mathbf{v}\|$ defined by

$$\|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}} = \sqrt{v_1^2 + v_2^2 + \cdots + v_n^2}$$

In words, the length of a vector is the square root of the sum of the squares of its components. Note that the square root of $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ is always defined, since $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \geq 0$ by Theorem 1.2(d). Note also that the definition can be rewritten to give $\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$, which will be useful in proving further properties of the dot product and lengths of vectors.

Example 1.17

$$\|[2, 3]\| = \sqrt{2^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{13}$$

Theorem 1.3 lists some of the main properties of vector length.

Theorem 1.3

Let $\mathbf{v}$ be a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let c be a scalar. Then

a. $\|\mathbf{v}\| = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$
b. $\|c\mathbf{v}\| = |c|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|$

Proof Property (a) follows immediately from Theorem 1.2(d). To show (b), we have

$$\|c\mathbf{v}\|^2 = (c\mathbf{v}) \cdot (c\mathbf{v}) = c^2(\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}) = c^2\|\mathbf{v}\|^2$$

using Theorem 1.2(c). Taking square roots of both sides, using the fact that $\sqrt{c^2} = |c|$ for any real number c, gives the result.

A vector of length 1 is called a ***unit vector***. In $\mathbb{R}^2$, the set of all unit vectors can be identified with the *unit circle,* the circle of radius 1 centered at the origin (see Figure 1.26). Given any nonzero vector $\mathbf{v}$, we can always find a unit vector in the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ by dividing $\mathbf{v}$ by its own length (or, equivalently, *multiplying* by $1/\|\mathbf{v}\|$). We can show this algebraically by using property (b) of Theorem 1.3 above: If $\mathbf{u} = (1/\|\mathbf{v}\|)\mathbf{v}$, then

$$\|\mathbf{u}\| = \|(1/\|\mathbf{v}\|)\mathbf{v}\| = |1/\|\mathbf{v}\||\,\|\mathbf{v}\| = (1/\|\mathbf{v}\|)\|\mathbf{v}\| = 1$$

and $\mathbf{u}$ is in the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$, since $1/\|\mathbf{v}\|$ is a positive scalar. Finding a unit vector in the same direction is often referred to as ***normalizing*** a vector (see Figure 1.27).

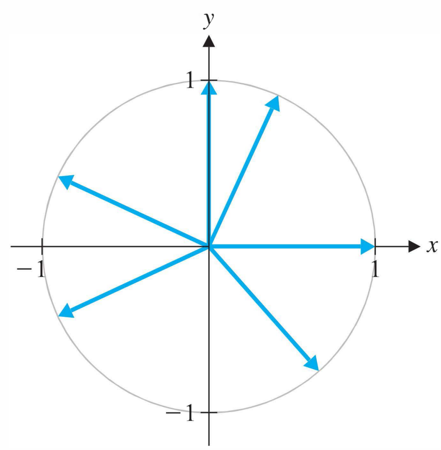


Figure 1.26
Unit vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$

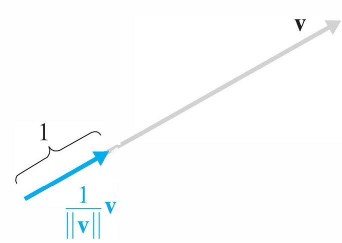


Figure 1.27
Normalizing a vector

Example 1.18

In $\mathbb{R}^2$, let $\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{e}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Then $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$ are unit vectors, since the sum of the squares of their components is 1 in each case. Similarly, in $\mathbb{R}^3$, we can construct unit vectors

$$\mathbf{e}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{e}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{e}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Observe in Figure 1.28 that these vectors serve to locate the positive coordinate axes in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$.

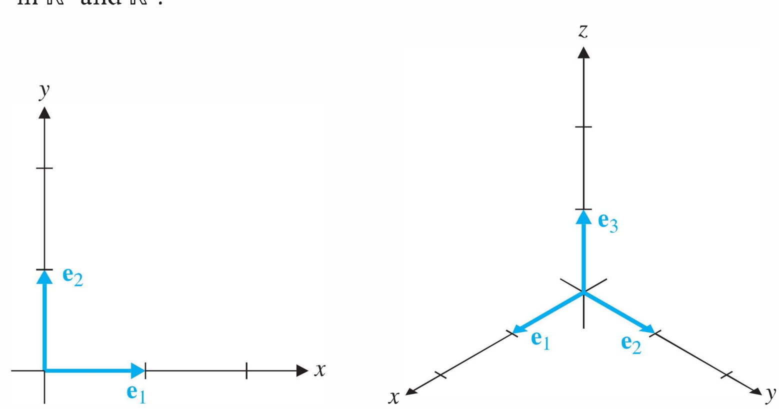


Figure 1.28
Standard unit vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$

In general, in $\mathbb{R}^n$, we define unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$, where $\mathbf{e}_i$ has 1 in its ith component and zeros elsewhere. These vectors arise repeatedly in linear algebra and are called the ***standard unit vectors.***

Example 1.19

Normalize the vector $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution $\|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{2^2 + (-1)^2 + 3^2} = \sqrt{14}$, so a unit vector in the same direction as $\mathbf{v}$ is given by

$$\mathbf{u} = (1/\|\mathbf{v}\|)\mathbf{v} = (1/\sqrt{14})\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2/\sqrt{14} \\ -1/\sqrt{14} \\ 3/\sqrt{14} \end{bmatrix}$$

Since property (b) of Theorem 1.3 describes how length behaves with respect to scalar multiplication, natural curiosity suggests that we ask whether length and vector addition are compatible. It would be nice if we had an identity such as $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$, but for almost any choice of vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ this turns out to be false. [See Exercise 52(a).] However, all is not lost, for it turns out that if we replace the = sign by $\leq$, the resulting inequality is true. The proof of this famous and important result—the Triangle Inequality—relies on another important inequality—the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality—which we will prove and discuss in more detail in Chapter 7.

Theorem 1.4 **The Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality**

For all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$,

$$|\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|$$

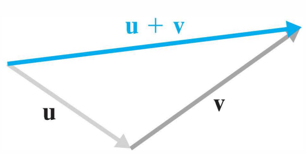


Figure 1.29
The Triangle Inequality

See Exercises 71 and 72 for algebraic and geometric approaches to the proof of this inequality.

In $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$, where we can use geometry, it is clear from a diagram such as Figure 1.29 that $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$ for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. We now show that this is true more generally.

Theorem 1.5 **The Triangle Inequality**

For all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$,

$$\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$$

Proof Since both sides of the inequality are nonnegative, showing that the *square* of the left-hand side is less than or equal to the *square* of the right-hand side is equivalent to proving the theorem. (Why?) We compute

$$\begin{aligned}\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 &= (\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v})\cdot(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}) \\ &= \mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} + 2(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}) + \mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{v} && \text{By Example 1.9} \\ &\le \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + 2|\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}| + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 \\ &\le \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + 2\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 && \text{By Cauchy-Schwarz} \\ &= (\|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|)^2\end{aligned}$$

as required.

Distance

The distance between two vectors is the direct analogue of the distance between two points on the real number line or two points in the Cartesian plane. On the number line (Figure 1.30), the distance between the numbers a and b is given by $|a - b|$. (Taking the absolute value ensures that we do not need to know which of a or b is larger.) This distance is also equal to $\sqrt{(a-b)^2}$, and its two-dimensional generalization is the familiar formula for the distance d between points (a_1, a_2) and (b_1, b_2)—namely, $d = \sqrt{(a_1-b_1)^2 + (a_2-b_2)^2}$.

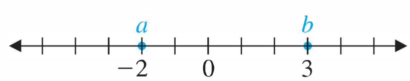


Figure 1.30
$d = |a - b| = |-2 - 3| = 5$

In terms of vectors, if $\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{bmatrix}$, then d is just the length of $\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}$, as shown in Figure 1.31. This is the basis for the next definition.

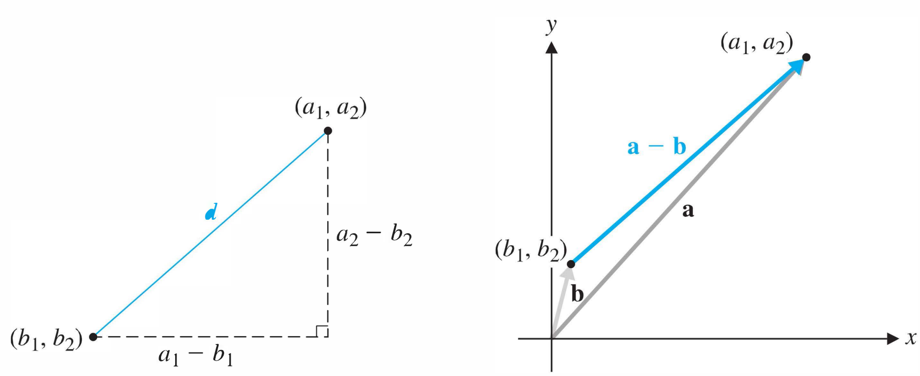


Figure 1.31
$d = \sqrt{(a_1-b_1)^2 + (a_2-b_2)^2} = \|\mathbf{a} - \mathbf{b}\|$

Definition The ***distance*** $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$ between vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is defined by

$$d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|$$

Example 1.20

Find the distance between $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution We compute $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, so

$$d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{(\sqrt{2})^2 + (-1)^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{4} = 2$$

Angles

The dot product can also be used to calculate the angle between a pair of vectors. In $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$, the angle between the nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ will refer to the angle θ determined by these vectors that satisfies $0 \le \theta \le 180°$ (see Figure 1.32).

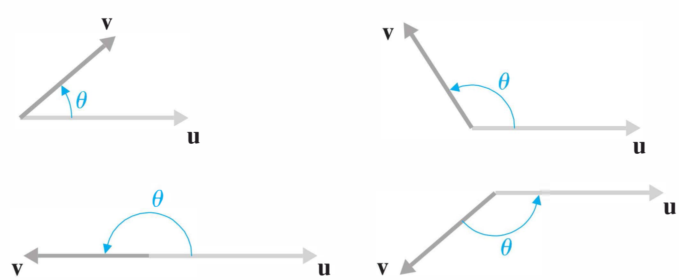


Figure 1.32
The angle between $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$

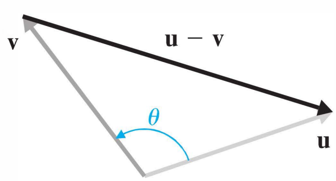


Figure 1.33

In Figure 1.33, consider the triangle with sides $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, where θ is the angle between $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. Applying the law of cosines to this triangle yields

$$\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - 2\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\| \cos\theta$$

Expanding the left-hand side and using $\|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ several times, we obtain

$$\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - 2(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - 2\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\| \cos\theta$$

which, after simplification, leaves us with $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\| \cos\theta$. From this we obtain the following formula for the cosine of the angle θ between nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. We state it as a definition.

Definition For nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$,

$$\cos\theta = \frac{\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|}$$

Example 1.21

Compute the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{u} = [2, 1, -2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [1, 1, 1]$.

Solution We calculate $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 2\cdot 1 + 1\cdot 1 + (-2)\cdot 1 = 1$, $\|\mathbf{u}\| = \sqrt{2^2 + 1^2 + (-2)^2} = \sqrt{9} = 3$, and $\|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{3}$. Therefore, $\cos\theta = 1/3\sqrt{3}$, so $\theta = \cos^{-1}(1/3\sqrt{3}) \approx 1.377$ radians, or $78.9°$.

Example 1.22

Compute the angle between the diagonals on two adjacent faces of a cube.

Solution The dimensions of the cube do not matter, so we will work with a cube with sides of length 1. Orient the cube relative to the coordinate axes in $\mathbb{R}^3$, as shown in Figure 1.34, and take the two side diagonals to be the vectors [1, 0, 1] and [0, 1, 1]. Then angle θ between these vectors satisfies

$$\cos\theta = \frac{1\cdot 0 + 0\cdot 1 + 1\cdot 1}{\sqrt{2}\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{2}$$

from which it follows that the required angle is $\pi/3$ radians, or $60°$.

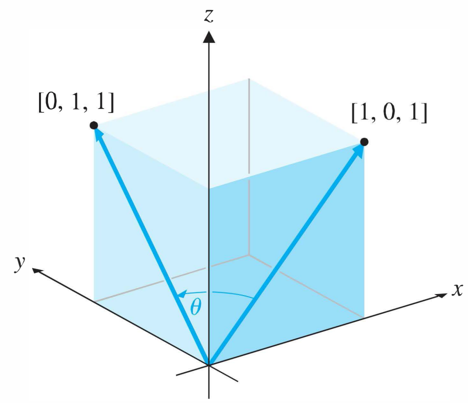


Figure 1.34

(Actually, we don't need to do any calculations at all to get this answer. If we draw a third side diagonal joining the vertices at (1, 0, 1) and (0, 1, 1), we get an equilateral triangle, since all of the side diagonals are of equal length. The angle we want is one of the angles of this triangle and therefore measures 60°. Sometimes, a little insight can save a lot of calculation; in this case, it gives a nice check on our work!)

Remarks

- As this discussion shows, we usually will have to settle for an approximation to the angle between two vectors. However, when the angle is one of the so-called special angles (0°, 30°, 45°, 60°, 90°, or an integer multiple of these), we should be able to recognize its cosine (Table 1.1) and thus give the corresponding angle exactly. In all other cases, we will use a calculator or computer to approximate the desired angle by means of the inverse cosine function.

Table 1.1 Cosines of Special Angles

θ	**0°**	**30°**	**45°**	**60°**	**90°**
$\cos\theta$	$\frac{\sqrt{4}}{2} = 1$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{\sqrt{1}}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{0}}{2} = 0$

- The derivation of the formula for the cosine of the angle between two vectors is valid only in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$, since it depends on a geometric fact: the law of cosines. In $\mathbb{R}^n$, for $n > 3$, the formula can be taken as a *definition* instead. This makes sense, since the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality implies that $\left|\dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|}\right| \le 1$, so $\dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|}$ ranges from -1 to 1, just as the cosine function does.

Orthogonal Vectors

The word *orthogonal* is derived from the Greek words *orthos*, meaning "upright," and *gonia*, meaning "angle." Hence, orthogonal literally means "right-angled." The Latin equivalent is *rectangular*.

The concept of perpendicularity is fundamental to geometry. Anyone studying geometry quickly realizes the importance and usefulness of right angles. We now generalize the idea of perpendicularity to vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, where it is called ***orthogonality.***

In $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$, two nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are perpendicular if the angle θ between them is a right angle—that is, if $\theta = \pi/2$ radians, or 90°. Thus, $\dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\|\mathbf{v}\|} = \cos 90° = 0$, and it follows that $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$. This motivates the following definition.

Definition Two vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ are ***orthogonal*** to each other if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$.

Since $\mathbf{0}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$ for every vector $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, the zero vector is orthogonal to every vector.

Example 1.23 In $\mathbb{R}^3$, $\mathbf{u} = [1, 1, -2]$ and $\mathbf{v} = [3, 1, 2]$ are orthogonal, since $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 3 + 1 - 4 = 0$.

Using the notion of orthogonality, we get an easy proof of Pythagoras' Theorem, valid in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Theorem 1.6 **Pythagoras' Theorem**

For all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$ if and only if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are orthogonal.

Proof From Example 1.16, we have $\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + 2(\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}) + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$ for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. It follows immediately that $\|\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$ if and only if $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = 0$. See Figure 1.35.

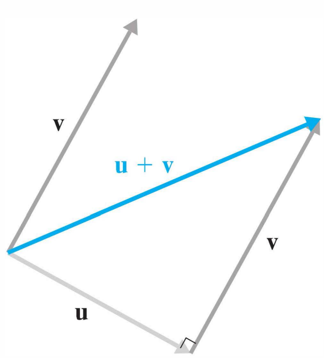


Figure 1.35

The concept of orthogonality is one of the most important and useful in linear algebra, and it often arises in surprising ways. Chapter 5 contains a detailed treatment of the topic, but we will encounter it many times before then. One problem in which it clearly plays a role is finding the distance from a point to a line, where "dropping a perpendicular" is a familiar step.

Projections

We now consider the problem of finding the distance from a point to a line in the context of vectors. As you will see, this technique leads to an important concept: the projection of a vector onto another vector.

As Figure 1.36 shows, the problem of finding the distance from a point B to a line ℓ (in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$) reduces to the problem of finding the length of the perpendicular line segment $\overline{PB}$ or, equivalently, the length of the vector $\overrightarrow{PB}$. If we choose a point A on ℓ, then, in the right-angled triangle ΔAPB, the other two vectors are the leg $\overrightarrow{AP}$ and the hypotenuse $\overrightarrow{AB}$. $\overrightarrow{AP}$ is called the *projection* of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ onto the line ℓ. We will now look at this situation in terms of vectors.

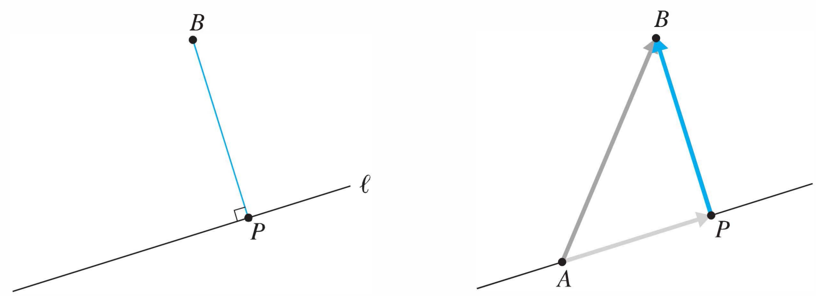


Figure 1.36
The distance from a point to a line

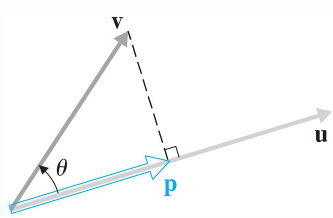


Figure 1.37
The projection of **v** onto **u**

Consider two nonzero vectors **u** and **v**. Let **p** be the vector obtained by dropping a perpendicular from the head of **v** onto **u** and let θ be the angle between **u** and **v**, as shown in Figure 1.37. Then clearly $\mathbf{p} = \|\mathbf{p}\|\hat{\mathbf{u}}$, where $\hat{\mathbf{u}} = (1/\|\mathbf{u}\|)\mathbf{u}$ is the unit vector in the direction of **u**. Moreover, elementary trigonometry gives $\|\mathbf{p}\| = \|\mathbf{v}\|\cos\theta$, and we know that $\cos\theta = \dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|}$. Thus, after substitution, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{p} &= \|\mathbf{v}\|\left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|\,\|\mathbf{v}\|}\right)\left(\frac{1}{\|\mathbf{u}\|}\right)\mathbf{u}\\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\|\mathbf{u}\|^2}\right)\mathbf{u}\\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u}}\right)\mathbf{u}\end{aligned}$$

This is the formula we want, and it is the basis of the following definition for vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition If **u** and **v** are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then the ***projection of* v *onto* u** is the vector $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ defined by

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v}) = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u}}\right)\mathbf{u}$$

An alternative way to derive this formula is described in Exercise 73.

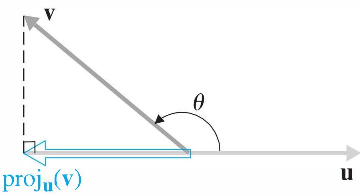


Figure 1.38

Remarks

- The term *projection* comes from the idea of projecting an image onto a wall (with a slide projector, for example). Imagine a beam of light with rays parallel to each other and perpendicular to **u** shining down on **v**. The projection of **v** onto **u** is just the shadow cast, or projected, by **v** onto **u**.
- It may be helpful to think of $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ as a function with variable **v**. Then the variable **v** occurs only once on the right-hand side of the definition. Also, it is helpful to remember Figure 1.38, which reminds us that $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ is a scalar multiple of the vector **u** (*not* **v**).
- Although in our derivation of the definition of $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ we required **v** as well as **u** to be nonzero (why?), it is clear from the geometry that the projection of the zero vector onto **u** is **0**. The definition is in agreement with this, since $\left(\dfrac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{0}}{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u}}\right)\mathbf{u} = 0\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$.
- If the angle between **u** and **v** is obtuse, as in Figure 1.38, then $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ will be in the opposite direction from **u**; that is, $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ will be a *negative* scalar multiple of **u**.
- If **u** is a unit vector then $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})\mathbf{u}$. (Why?)

Example 1.24

Find the projection of **v** onto **u** in each case.

(a) $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{e}_3$

(c) $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/2 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$

Solution

(a) We compute $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\cdot\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = 1$ and $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\cdot\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = 5$, so

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v}) = \left(\frac{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{u}}\right)\mathbf{u} = \frac{1}{5}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2/5 \\ 1/5 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) Since $\mathbf{e}_3$ is a unit vector,

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{e}_3}(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{e}_3\cdot\mathbf{v})\mathbf{e}_3 = 3\mathbf{e}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

(c) We see that $\|\mathbf{u}\| = \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{2}} = 1$. Thus,

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v}) = (\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v})\mathbf{u} = \left(\frac{1}{2} + 1 + \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/2 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{3(1+\sqrt{2})}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ 1/2 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \frac{3(1+\sqrt{2})}{4}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercises 1.2

In Exercises 1–6, find $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}$.

1. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **2.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ CAS **4.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3.2 \\ -0.6 \\ -1.4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ 4.1 \\ -0.2 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $\mathbf{u} = [1, \sqrt{2}, \sqrt{3}, 0], \mathbf{v} = [4, -\sqrt{2}, 0, -5]$

CAS **6.** $\mathbf{u} = [1.12, -3.25, 2.07, -1.83]$,
$\mathbf{v} = [-2.29, 1.72, 4.33, -1.54]$

In Exercises 7–12, find $\|\mathbf{u}\|$ *for the given exercise, and give a unit vector in the direction of* $\mathbf{u}$.

7. Exercise 1 **8.** Exercise 2 **9.** Exercise 3
CAS **10.** Exercise 4 **11.** Exercise 5 CAS **12.** Exercise 6

In Exercises 13–16, find the distance $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$ *between* $\mathbf{u}$ *and* $\mathbf{v}$ *in the given exercise.*

13. Exercise 1 **14.** Exercise 2
15. Exercise 3 CAS **16.** Exercise 4

17. If $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $n \geq 2$, and c is a scalar, explain why the following expressions make no sense:

(a) $\|\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v}\|$ (b) $\mathbf{u}\cdot\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$
(c) $\mathbf{u}\cdot(\mathbf{v}\cdot\mathbf{w})$ (d) $c\cdot(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w})$

In Exercises 18–23, determine whether the angle between $\mathbf{u}$ *and* $\mathbf{v}$ *is acute, obtuse, or a right angle.*

18. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **19.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $\mathbf{u} = [4, 3, -1], \mathbf{v} = [1, -1, 1]$

CAS **21.** $\mathbf{u} = [0.9, 2.1, 1.2], \mathbf{v} = [-4.5, 2.6, -0.8]$

22. $\mathbf{u} = [1, 2, 3, 4], \mathbf{v} = [-3, 1, 2, -2]$

23. $\mathbf{u} = [1, 2, 3, 4], \mathbf{v} = [5, 6, 7, 8]$

In Exercises 24–29, find the angle between $\mathbf{u}$ *and* $\mathbf{v}$ *in the given exercise.*

24. Exercise 18 **25.** Exercise 19
26. Exercise 20 CAS **27.** Exercise 21
CAS **28.** Exercise 22 CAS **29.** Exercise 23

30. Let $A = (-3, 2)$, $B = (1, 0)$, and $C = (4, 6)$. Prove that ΔABC is a right-angled triangle.

31. Let $A = (1, 1, -1)$, $B = (-3, 2, -2)$, and $C = (2, 2, -4)$. Prove that ΔABC is a right-angled triangle.

CAS **32.** Find the angle between a diagonal of a cube and an adjacent edge.

33. A cube has four diagonals. Show that no two of them are perpendicular.

34. A parallelogram has diagonals determined by the vectors

$$\mathbf{d}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } \mathbf{d}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Show that the parallelogram is a rhombus (all sides of equal length) and determine the side length.

35. The rectangle $ABCD$ has vertices at $A = (1, 2, 3)$, $B = (3, 6, -2)$, and $C = (0, 5, -4)$. Determine the coordinates of vertex D.

36. An airplane heading due east has a velocity of 200 miles per hour. A wind is blowing from the north at 40 miles per hour. What is the resultant velocity of the airplane?

37. A boat heads north across a river at a rate of 4 miles per hour. If the current is flowing east at a rate of 3 miles per hour, find the resultant velocity of the boat.

38. Ann is driving a motorboat across a river that is 2 km wide. The boat has a speed of 20 km/h in still water, and the current in the river is flowing at 5 km/h. Ann heads out from one bank of the river for a dock directly across from her on the opposite bank. She drives the boat in a direction perpendicular to the current.

(a) How far downstream from the dock will Ann land?
(b) How long will it take Ann to cross the river?

39. Bert can swim at a rate of 2 miles per hour in still water. The current in a river is flowing at a rate of 1 mile per hour. If Bert wants to swim across the river to a point directly opposite, at what angle to the bank of the river must he swim?

In Exercises 40–45, find the projection of **v** *onto* **u**. *Draw a sketch in Exercises 40 and 41.*

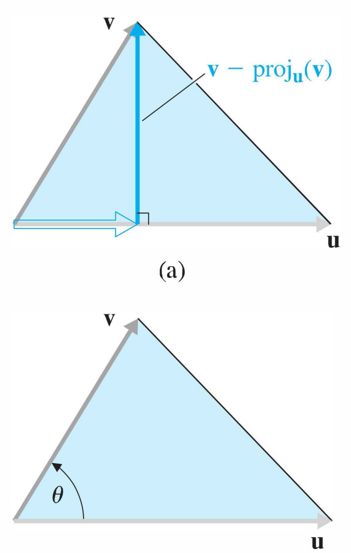
40. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ **41.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3/5 \\ -4/5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

42. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 \\ -1/4 \\ -1/2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$ **43.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$

CAS **44.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ 1.5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2.1 \\ 1.2 \end{bmatrix}$

CAS **45.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3.01 \\ -0.33 \\ 2.52 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.34 \\ 4.25 \\ -1.66 \end{bmatrix}$

Figure 1.39 suggests two ways in which vectors may be used to compute the area of a triangle. The area $\mathcal{A}$ of



(b)

Figure 1.39

the triangle in part (a) is given by $\frac{1}{2}\|\mathbf{u}\|\ \|\mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})\|$, and part (b) suggests the trigonometric form of the area of a triangle: $\mathcal{A} = \frac{1}{2}\|\mathbf{u}\|\ \|\mathbf{v}\|\sin\theta$ (We can use the identity $\sin\theta = \sqrt{1 - \cos^2\theta}$ to find $\sin\theta$.)

In Exercises 46 and 47, compute the area of the triangle with the given vertices using both methods.

46. $A = (1, -1), B = (2, 2), C = (4, 0)$

47. $A = (3, -1, 4), B = (4, -2, 6), C = (5, 0, 2)$

In Exercises 48 and 49, find all values of the scalar k for which the two vectors are orthogonal.

48. $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} k+1 \\ k-1 \end{bmatrix}$ **49.** $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} k^2 \\ k \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$

50. Describe all vectors $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ that are orthogonal to $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

51. Describe all vectors $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ that are orthogonal to $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$.

52. Under what conditions are the following true for vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$?

(a) $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$ **(b)** $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{u}\| - \|\mathbf{v}\|$

53. Prove Theorem 1.2(b).

54. Prove Theorem 1.2(d).

In Exercises 55–57, prove the stated property of distance between vectors.

55. $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = d(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u})$ for all vectors **u** and **v**

56. $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}) \le d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) + d(\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$ for all vectors **u**, **v**, and **w**

57. $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = 0$ if and only if $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$

58. Prove that $\mathbf{u} \cdot c\mathbf{v} = c(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})$ for all vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and all scalars c.

59. Prove that $\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\| \ge \|\mathbf{u}\| - \|\mathbf{v}\|$ for all vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^n$. [*Hint*: Replace **u** by $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ in the Triangle Inequality.]

60. Suppose we know that $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$. Does it follow that $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$? If it does, give a proof that is valid in $\mathbb{R}^n$; otherwise, give a *counterexample* (i.e., a *specific* set of vectors **u**, **v**, and **w** for which $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w}$ but $\mathbf{v} \ne \mathbf{w}$).

61. Prove that $(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$ for all vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

62. **(a)** Prove that $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2 + \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|^2 = 2\|\mathbf{u}\|^2 + 2\|\mathbf{v}\|^2$ for all vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

(b) Draw a diagram showing **u**, **v**, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and use (a) to deduce a result about parallelograms.

63. Prove that $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = \frac{1}{4}\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|^2 - \frac{1}{4}\|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|^2$ for all vectors **u** and **v** in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

64. **(a)** Prove that $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}\|$ if and only if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are orthogonal.
(b) Draw a diagram showing $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and use (a) to deduce a result about parallelograms.

65. **(a)** Prove that $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ are orthogonal in $\mathbb{R}^n$ if and only if $\|\mathbf{u}\| = \|\mathbf{v}\|$.
(b) Draw a diagram showing $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and use (a) to deduce a result about parallelograms.

66. If $\|\mathbf{u}\| = 2$, $\|\mathbf{v}\| = \sqrt{3}$, and $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 1$, find $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|$.

67. Show that there are no vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ such that $\|\mathbf{u}\| = 1$, $\|\mathbf{v}\| = 2$, and $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 3$.

68. **(a)** Prove that if $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$, then $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$.
(b) Prove that if $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{w}$, then $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to $s\mathbf{v} + t\mathbf{w}$ for all scalars s and t.

69. Prove that $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{v} - \operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ for all vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, where $\mathbf{u} \neq \mathbf{0}$.

70. **(a)** Prove that $\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})) = \operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$.
(b) Prove that $\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v} - \operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})) = \mathbf{0}$.
(c) Explain (a) and (b) geometrically.

71. The Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality $|\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}| \leq \|\mathbf{u}\| \|\mathbf{v}\|$ is equivalent to the inequality we get by squaring both sides: $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})^2 \leq \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 \|\mathbf{v}\|^2$.

(a) In $\mathbb{R}^2$, with $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{bmatrix}$, this becomes

$$(u_1v_1 + u_2v_2)^2 \leq (u_1^2 + u_2^2)(v_1^2 + v_2^2)$$

Prove this algebraically. [*Hint:* Subtract the left-hand side from the right-hand side and show that the difference must necessarily be nonnegative.]
(b) Prove the analogue of (a) in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

72. Figure 1.40 shows that, in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$, $\|\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})\| \leq \|\mathbf{v}\|$.

(a) Prove that this inequality is true in general. [*Hint:* Prove that $\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{v} - \operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$ and use Pythagoras' Theorem.]

(b) Prove that the inequality $\|\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})\| \leq \|\mathbf{v}\|$ is equivalent to the Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality.

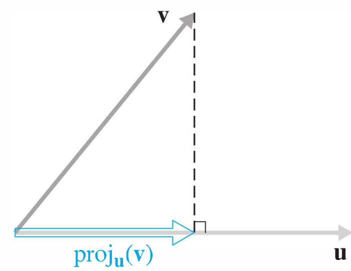


Figure 1.40

73. Use the fact that $\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v}) = c\mathbf{u}$ for some scalar c, together with Figure 1.41, to find c and thereby derive the formula for $\operatorname{proj}_{\mathbf{u}}(\mathbf{v})$.

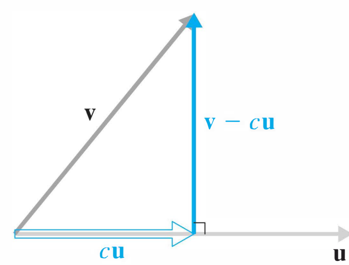


Figure 1.41

74. Using mathematical induction, prove the following generalization of the Triangle Inequality:

$$\|\mathbf{v}_1 + \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + \mathbf{v}_n\| \leq \|\mathbf{v}_1\| + \|\mathbf{v}_2\| + \cdots + \|\mathbf{v}_n\|$$

for all $n \geq 1$.

Exploration

Vectors and Geometry

Many results in plane Euclidean geometry can be proved using vector techniques. For example, in Example 1.24, we used vectors to prove Pythagoras' Theorem. In this exploration, we will use vectors to develop proofs for some other theorems from Euclidean geometry.

As an introduction to the notation and the basic approach, consider the following easy example.

Example 1.25 Give a vector description of the midpoint M of a line segment $\overline{AB}$.

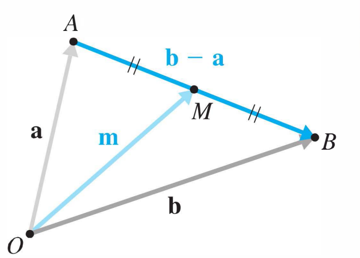


Figure 1.42
The midpoint of $\overline{AB}$

Solution We first convert everything to vector notation. If O denotes the origin and P is a point, let $\mathbf{p}$ be the vector $\overrightarrow{OP}$. In this situation, $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA}$, $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{OB}$, $\mathbf{m} = \overrightarrow{OM}$, and $\overrightarrow{AB} = \overrightarrow{OB} - \overrightarrow{OA} = \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}$ (Figure 1.42).

Now, since M is the midpoint of $\overline{AB}$, we have

$$\mathbf{m} - \mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{AM} = \tfrac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB} = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a})$$

so

$$\mathbf{m} = \mathbf{a} + \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a}) = \tfrac{1}{2}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b})$$

1. Give a vector description of the point P that is one-third of the way from A to B on the line segment $\overline{AB}$. Generalize.

2. Prove that the line segment joining the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is parallel to the third side and half as long. (In vector notation, prove that $\overrightarrow{PQ} = \frac{1}{2}\overrightarrow{AB}$ in Figure 1.43.)

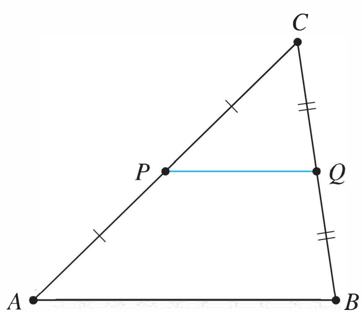


Figure 1.43

3. Prove that the quadrilateral $PQRS$ (Figure 1.44), whose vertices are the midpoints of the sides of an arbitrary quadrilateral $ABCD$, is a parallelogram.

4. A ***median*** of a triangle is a line segment from a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side (Figure 1.45). Prove that the three medians of any triangle are *concurrent* (i.e., they have a common point of intersection) at a point G that is two-thirds of the distance from each vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side. [*Hint:* In Figure 1.46, show that the point that is two-thirds of the distance from A to P is given by $\frac{1}{3}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$. Then show that $\frac{1}{3}(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c})$ is two-thirds of the distance from B to Q and two-thirds of the distance from C to R.] The point G in Figure 1.46 is called the ***centroid*** of the triangle.

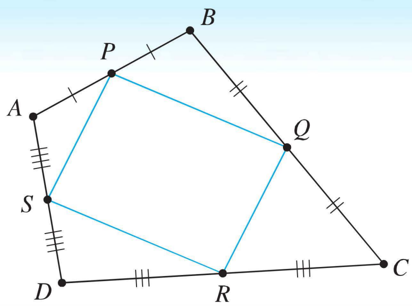


Figure 1.44

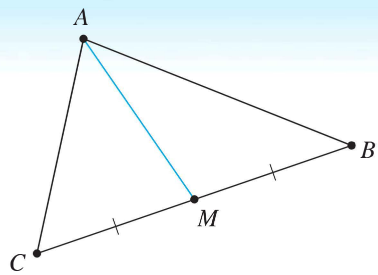


Figure 1.45
A median

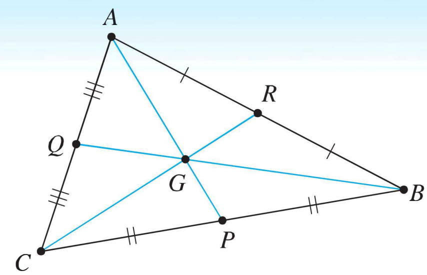


Figure 1.46
The centroid

5. An ***altitude*** of a triangle is a line segment from a vertex that is perpendicular to the opposite side (Figure 1.47). Prove that the three altitudes of a triangle are concurrent. [*Hint:* Let H be the point of intersection of the altitudes from A and B in Figure 1.48. Prove that $\overrightarrow{CH}$ is orthogonal to $\overrightarrow{AB}$.] The point H in Figure 1.48 is called the ***orthocenter*** of the triangle.

6. A ***perpendicular bisector*** of a line segment is a line through the midpoint of the segment, perpendicular to the segment (Figure 1.49). Prove that the perpendicular bisectors of the three sides of a triangle are concurrent. [*Hint:* Let K be the point of intersection of the perpendicular bisectors of $\overline{AC}$ and $\overline{BC}$ in Figure 1.50. Prove that $\overrightarrow{RK}$ is orthogonal to $\overrightarrow{AB}$.] The point K in Figure 1.50 is called the ***circumcenter*** of the triangle.

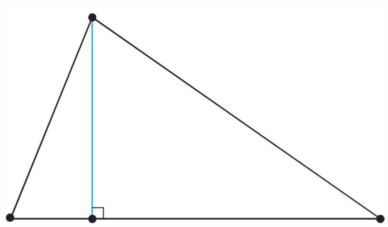


Figure 1.47
An altitude

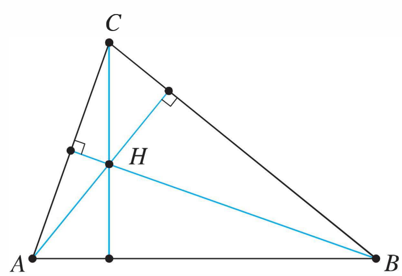


Figure 1.48
The orthocenter

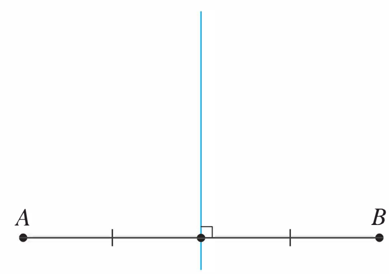


Figure 1.49
A perpendicular bisector

7. Let A and B be the endpoints of a diameter of a circle. If C is any point on the circle, prove that $\angle ACB$ is a right angle. [*Hint:* In Figure 1.51, let O be the center of the circle. Express everything in terms of **a** and **c** and show that $\overrightarrow{AC}$ is orthogonal to $\overrightarrow{BC}$.]

8. Prove that the line segments joining the midpoints of opposite sides of a quadrilateral bisect each other (Figure 1.52).

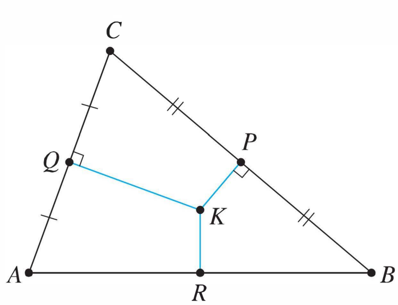


Figure 1.50
The circumcenter

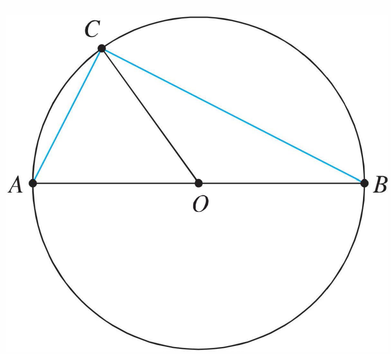


Figure 1.51

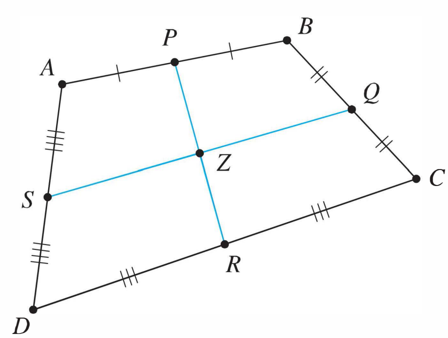


Figure 1.52

1.3 Lines and Planes

We are all familiar with the equation of a line in the Cartesian plane. We now want to consider lines in $\mathbb{R}^2$ from a vector point of view. The insights we obtain from this approach will allow us to generalize to lines in $\mathbb{R}^3$ and then to planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Much of the linear algebra we will consider in later chapters has its origins in the simple geometry of lines and planes; the ability to visualize these and to think geometrically about a problem will serve you well.

Lines in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and $\mathbb{R}^3$

In the xy-plane, the general form of the equation of a line is $ax + by = c$. If $b \neq 0$, then the equation can be rewritten as $y = -(a/b)x + c/b$, which has the form $y = mx + k$. [This is the slope-intercept form; m is the slope of the line, and the point with coordinates $(0, k)$ is its y-intercept.] To get vectors into the picture, let's consider an example.

Example 1.26

The line ℓ with equation $2x + y = 0$ is shown in Figure 1.53. It is a line with slope -2 passing through the origin. The left-hand side of the equation is in the form of a dot product; in fact, if we let $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, then the equation becomes $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0$. The vector $\mathbf{n}$ is perpendicular to the line—that is, it is *orthogonal* to any vector $\mathbf{x}$ that is parallel to the line (Figure 1.54)—and it is called a ***normal vector*** to the line. The equation $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0$ is the *normal form* of the equation of ℓ.

Another way to think about this line is to imagine a particle moving along the line. Suppose the particle is initially at the origin at time $t = 0$ and it moves along the line in such a way that its x-coordinate changes 1 unit per second. Then at $t = 1$ the particle is at $(1, -2)$, at $t = 1.5$ it is at $(1.5, -3)$, and, if we allow negative values of t (i.e., we consider where the particle was in the past), at $t = -2$ it is (or was) at $(-2, 4)$.

The Latin word *norma* refers to a carpenter's square, used for drawing right angles. Thus, a *normal* vector is one that is perpendicular to something else, usually a plane.

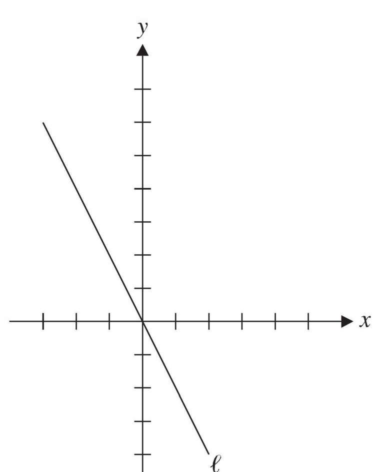


Figure 1.53
The line $2x + y = 0$

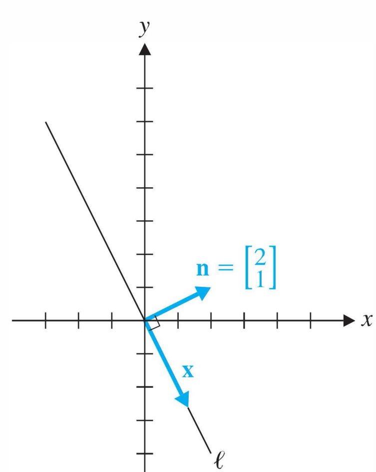


Figure 1.54
A normal vector $\mathbf{n}$

This movement is illustrated in Figure 1.55. In general, if $x = t$, then $y = -2t$, and we may write this relationship in vector form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} t \\ -2t \end{bmatrix} = t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

What is the significance of the vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$? It is a particular vector parallel to ℓ, called a ***direction vector*** for the line. As shown in Figure 1.56, we may write the equation of ℓ as $\mathbf{x} = t\mathbf{d}$. This is the *vector form* of the equation of the line.

If the line does not pass through the origin, then we must modify things slightly.

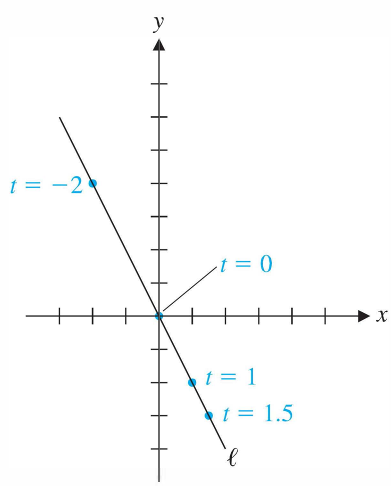


Figure 1.55

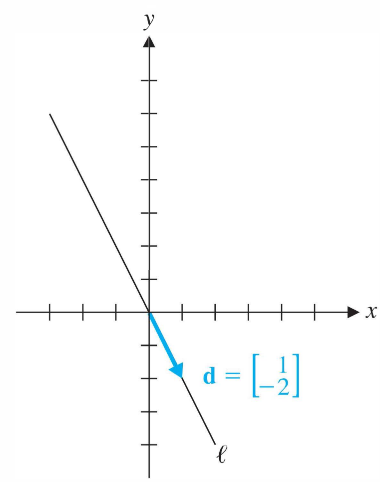


Figure 1.56
A direction vector $\mathbf{d}$

Example 1.27

Consider the line ℓ with equation $2x + y = 5$ (Figure 1.57). This is just the line from Example 1.26 shifted upward 5 units. It also has slope -2, but its y-intercept is the point $(0, 5)$. It is clear that the vectors $\mathbf{d}$ and $\mathbf{n}$ from Example 1.26 are, respectively, a direction vector and a normal vector for this line too.

Thus, $\mathbf{n}$ is orthogonal to every vector that is parallel to ℓ. The point $P = (1, 3)$ is on ℓ. If $X = (x, y)$ represents a general point on ℓ, then the vector $\overrightarrow{PX} = \mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}$ is parallel to ℓ and $\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0$ (see Figure 1.58). Simplified, we have $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$. As a check, we compute

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = 2x + y \quad \text{and} \quad n \cdot p = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = 5$$

Thus, the normal form $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ is just a different representation of the general form of the equation of the line. (Note that in Example 1.26, $\mathbf{p}$ was the zero vector, so $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p} = 0$ gave the right-hand side of the equation.)

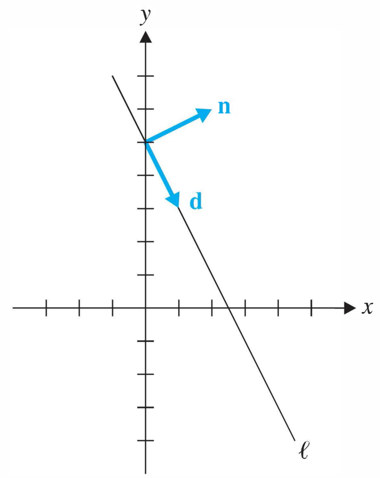


Figure 1.57
The line $2x + y = 5$

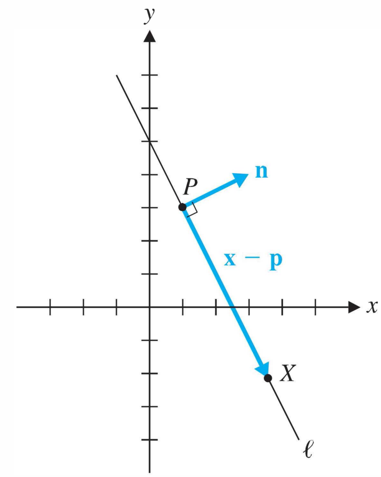


Figure 1.58
$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0$

These results lead to the following definition.

Definition The ***normal form of the equation of a line*** ℓ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ is

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$$

where $\mathbf{p}$ is a specific point on ℓ and $\mathbf{n} \neq \mathbf{0}$ is a normal vector for ℓ.

The ***general form of the equation of*** ℓ is $ax + by = c$, where $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ is a normal vector for ℓ.

Continuing with Example 1.27, let us now find the vector form of the equation of ℓ. Note that, for each choice of $\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}$ must be parallel to—and thus a multiple of—the direction vector $\mathbf{d}$. That is, $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p} = t\mathbf{d}$ or $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d}$ for some scalar t. In terms of components, we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix} \tag{1}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1 + t \\ y &= 3 - 2t \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

Equation (1) is the vector form of the equation of ℓ, and the componentwise Equations (2) are called *parametric equations* of the line. The variable t is called a *parameter*.

How does all of this generalize to $\mathbb{R}^3$? Observe that the vector and parametric forms of the equations of a line carry over perfectly. The notion of the slope of a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$—which is difficult to generalize to three dimensions—is replaced by the more convenient notion of a direction vector, leading to the following definition.

The word *parameter* and the corresponding adjective *parametric* come from the Greek words *para*, meaning "alongside," and *metron*, meaning "measure." Mathematically speaking, a parameter is a variable in terms of which other variables are expressed—a new "measure" placed alongside old ones.

Definition The ***vector form of the equation of a line*** ℓ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$ is

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d}$$

where $\mathbf{p}$ is a specific point on ℓ and $\mathbf{d} \neq \mathbf{0}$ is a direction vector for ℓ.

The equations corresponding to the components of the vector form of the equation are called ***parametric equations*** of ℓ.

We will often abbreviate this terminology slightly, referring simply to the general, normal, vector, and parametric equations of a line or plane.

Example 1.28

Find vector and parametric equations of the line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ through the point $P = (1, 2, -1)$, parallel to the vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution The vector equation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d}$ is

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

The parametric form is

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1 + 5t \\ y &= 2 - t \\ z &= -1 + 3t \end{aligned}$$

Remarks

- The vector and parametric forms of the equation of a given line ℓ are not unique—in fact, there are infinitely many, since we may use any point on ℓ to determine $\mathbf{p}$ and any direction vector for ℓ. However, all direction vectors are clearly multiples of each other.

In Example 1.28, $(6, 1, 2)$ is another point on the line (take $t = 1$), and $\begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ -2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$ is another direction vector. Therefore,

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ -2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

gives a different (but equivalent) vector equation for the line. The relationship between the two parameters s and t can be found by comparing the parametric equations: For a given point (x, y, z) on ℓ, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1 + 5t = 6 + 10s \\ y &= 2 - t = 1 - 2s \\ z &= -1 + 3t = 2 + 6s \end{aligned}$$

implying that

$$\begin{aligned} -10s + 5t &= 5 \\ 2s - t &= -1 \\ -6s + 3t &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

Each of these equations reduces to $t = 1 + 2s$.

- Intuitively, we know that a line is a *one-dimensional* object. The idea of "dimension" will be clarified in Chapters 3 and 6, but for the moment observe that this idea appears to agree with the fact that the vector form of the equation of a line requires *one* parameter.

Example 1.29

One often hears the expression "two points determine a line." Find a vector equation of the line ℓ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ determined by the points $P = (-1, 5, 0)$ and $Q = (2, 1, 1)$.

Solution We may choose any point on ℓ for $\mathbf{p}$, so we will use P (Q would also be fine).

A convenient direction vector is $\mathbf{d} = \overrightarrow{PQ} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (or any scalar multiple of this). Thus, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x} &= \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$

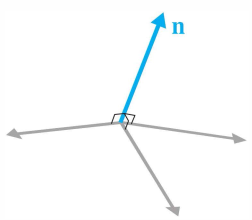


Figure 1.59
$\mathbf{n}$ is orthogonal to infinitely many vectors

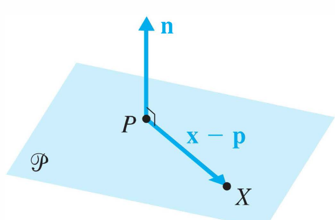


Figure 1.60
$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0$

The next question we should ask ourselves is, How does the general form of the equation of a line generalize to $\mathbb{R}^3$? We might reasonably guess that if $ax + by = c$ is the general form of the equation of a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$, then $ax + by + cz = d$ might represent a line in $\mathbb{R}^3$. In normal form, this equation would be $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$, where $\mathbf{n}$ is a normal vector to the line and $\mathbf{p}$ corresponds to a point on the line.

To see if this is a reasonable hypothesis, let's think about the special case of the equation $ax + by + cz = 0$. In normal form, it becomes $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0$, where $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$. However, the set of all vectors $\mathbf{x}$ that satisfy this equation is the set of all vectors orthogonal to $\mathbf{n}$. As shown in Figure 1.59, vectors in infinitely many directions have this property, determining a family of parallel *planes*. So our guess was incorrect: It appears that $ax + by + cz = d$ is the equation of a plane—not a line—in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Let's make this finding more precise. Every plane $\mathcal{P}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be determined by specifying a point $\mathbf{p}$ on $\mathcal{P}$ and a nonzero vector $\mathbf{n}$ normal to $\mathcal{P}$ (Figure 1.60). Thus, if $\mathbf{x}$ represents an arbitrary point on $\mathcal{P}$, we have $\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0$ or $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$. If $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, then, in terms of components, the equation becomes $ax + by + cz = d$ (where $d = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$).

Definition The ***normal form of the equation of a plane*** $\mathcal{P}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is

$$\mathbf{n} \cdot (\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p}) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$$

where $\mathbf{p}$ is a specific point on $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathbf{n} \neq \mathbf{0}$ is a normal vector for $\mathcal{P}$.

The ***general form of the equation of*** $\mathcal{P}$ is $ax + by + cz = d$, where $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}$ is a normal vector for $\mathcal{P}$.

Note that any scalar multiple of a normal vector for a plane is another normal vector.

Example 1.30

Find the normal and general forms of the equation of the plane that contains the point $P = (6, 0, 1)$ and has normal vector $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution With $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, we have $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p} = 1 \cdot 6 + 2 \cdot 0 = 3 \cdot 1 = 9$, so the normal equation $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$ becomes the general equation $x + 2y + 3z = 9$.

Geometrically, it is clear that parallel planes have the same normal vector(s). Thus, their general equations have left-hand sides that are multiples of each other. So, for example, $2x + 4y + 6z = 10$ is the general equation of a plane that is parallel to the plane in Example 1.30, since we may rewrite the equation as $x + 2y + 3z = 5$—from which we see that the two planes have the same normal vector $\mathbf{n}$. (Note that the planes do not coincide, since the right-hand sides of their equations are distinct.)

We may also express the equation of a plane in vector or parametric form. To do so, we observe that a plane can also be determined by specifying one of its points P (by the vector $\mathbf{p}$) and *two* direction vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ parallel to the plane (but not parallel to each other). As Figure 1.61 shows, given any point X in the plane (located

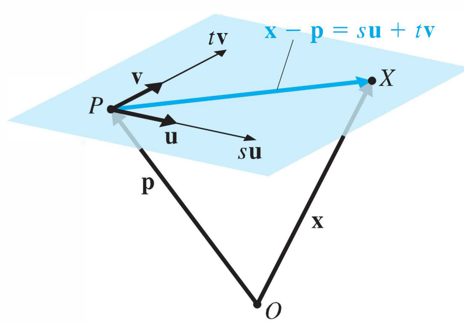


Figure 1.61
$\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p} = s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$

by $\mathbf{x}$), we can always find appropriate multiples $s\mathbf{u}$ and $t\mathbf{v}$ of the direction vectors such that $\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{p} = s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$ or $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$. If we write this equation componentwise, we obtain parametric equations for the plane.

Definition The ***vector form of the equation of a plane*** $\mathcal{P}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$$

where $\mathbf{p}$ is a point on $\mathcal{P}$ and $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are direction vectors for $\mathcal{P}$ ($\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are non-zero and parallel to $\mathcal{P}$, but not parallel to each other).

The equations corresponding to the components of the vector form of the equation are called ***parametric equations*** of $\mathcal{P}$.

Example 1.31 Find vector and parametric equations for the plane in Example 1.30.

Solution We need to find two direction vectors. We have one point $P = (6, 0, 1)$ in the plane; if we can find two other points Q and R in $\mathcal{P}$, then the vectors $\overrightarrow{PQ}$ and $\overrightarrow{PR}$ can serve as direction vectors (unless by bad luck they happen to be parallel!). By trial and error, we observe that $Q = (9, 0, 0)$ and $R = (3, 3, 0)$ both satisfy the general equation $x + 2y + 3z = 9$ and so lie in the plane. Then we compute

$$\mathbf{u} = \overrightarrow{PQ} = \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{PR} = \mathbf{r} - \mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which, since they are not scalar multiples of each other, will serve as direction vectors. Therefore, we have the vector equation of $\mathcal{P}$,

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the corresponding parametric equations,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 6 + 3s - 3t \\ y &= \quad 3t \\ z &= 1 - s - t \end{aligned}$$

[What would have happened had we chosen $R = (0, 0, 3)$?]

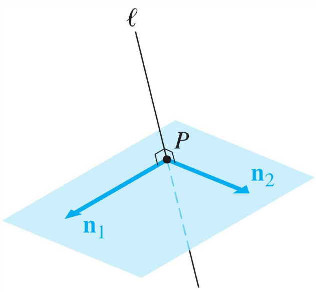


Figure 1.62
Two normals determine a line

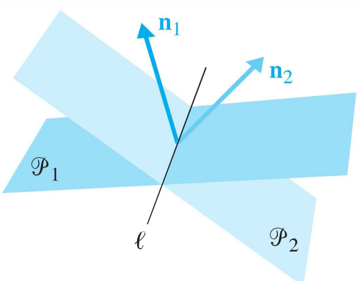


Figure 1.63
The intersection of two planes is a line

Remarks

- A plane is a two-dimensional object, and its equation, in vector or parametric form, requires *two* parameters.
- As Figure 1.59 shows, given a point P and a nonzero vector $\mathbf{n}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$, there are infinitely many lines through P with $\mathbf{n}$ as a normal vector. However, P and two nonparallel normal vectors $\mathbf{n}_1$ and $\mathbf{n}_2$ do serve to locate a line ℓ uniquely, since ℓ must then be the line through P that is perpendicular to the plane with equation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{n}_1 + t\mathbf{n}_2$ (Figure 1.62). Thus, a line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can also be specified by a pair of equations

$$\begin{aligned} a_1x + b_1y + c_1z &= d_1 \\ a_2x + b_2y + c_2z &= d_2 \end{aligned}$$

one corresponding to each normal vector. But since these equations correspond to a pair of nonparallel planes (why nonparallel?), this is just the description of a line as the intersection of two nonparallel planes (Figure 1.63). Algebraically, the line consists of all points (x, y, z) that simultaneously satisfy both equations. We will explore this concept further in Chapter 2 when we discuss the solution of systems of linear equations.

Tables 1.2 and 1.3 summarize the information presented so far about the equations of lines and planes.

Observe once again that a single (general) equation describes a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ but a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$. [In higher dimensions, an object (line, plane, etc.) determined by a single equation of this type is usually called a ***hyperplane***.] The relationship among

Table 1.2 Equations of Lines in $\mathbb{R}^2$

Normal Form	General Form	Vector Form	Parametric Form
$\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{p}$	$ax + by = c$	$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d}$	$\begin{cases} x = p_1 + td_1 \\ y = p_2 + td_2 \end{cases}$

Table 1.3 Lines and Planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$

	Normal Form	General Form	Vector Form	Parametric Form
Lines	$\begin{cases} \mathbf{n}_1\cdot\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n}_1\cdot\mathbf{p}_1 \\ \mathbf{n}_2\cdot\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n}_2\cdot\mathbf{p}_2 \end{cases}$	$\begin{cases} a_1x + b_1y + c_1z = d_1 \\ a_2x + b_2y + c_2z = d_2 \end{cases}$	$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{d}$	$\begin{cases} x = p_1 + td_1 \\ y = p_2 + td_2 \\ z = p_3 + td_3 \end{cases}$
Planes	$\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{p}$	$ax + by + cz = d$	$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$	$\begin{cases} x = p_1 + su_1 + tv_1 \\ y = p_2 + su_2 + tv_2 \\ z = p_3 + su_3 + tv_3 \end{cases}$

the dimension of the object, the number of equations required, and the dimension of the space is given by the "balancing formula":

(*dimension* of the object) + (*number* of general equations) = dimension of the space

The higher the dimension of the object, the fewer equations it needs. For example, a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is two-dimensional, requires one general equation, and lives in a three-dimensional space: $2 + 1 = 3$. A line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is one-dimensional and so needs $3 - 1 = 2$ equations. Note that the dimension of the object also agrees with the number of parameters in its vector or parametric form. Notions of "dimension" will be clarified in Chapters 3 and 6, but for the time being, these intuitive observations will serve us well.

We can now find the distance from a point to a line or a plane by combining the results of Section 1.2 with the results from this section.

Example 1.32

Find the distance from the point $B = (1, 0, 2)$ to the line ℓ through the point $A = (3, 1, 1)$ with direction vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution As we have already determined, we need to calculate the length of $\overrightarrow{PB}$, where P is the point on ℓ at the foot of the perpendicular from B. If we label $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{AB}$, then $\overrightarrow{AP} = \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})$ and $\overrightarrow{PB} = \mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})$ (see Figure 1.64). We do the necessary calculations in several steps.

Step 1: $\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

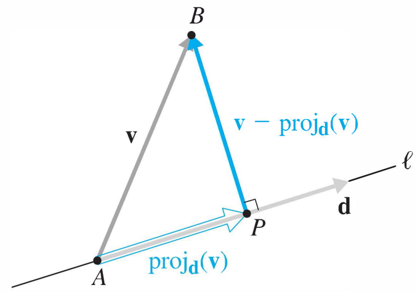


Figure 1.64
$d(B, \ell) = \|\mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})\|$

Step 2: The projection of **v** onto **d** is

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v}) &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} \\
&= \left(\frac{(-1)\cdot(-2) + 1\cdot(-1) + 0\cdot 1}{(-1)^2 + 1 + 0}\right)\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Step 3: The vector we want is

$$\mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Step 4: The distance $d(B, \ell)$ from B to ℓ is

$$\|\mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})\| = \left\|\begin{bmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} \\ -\frac{3}{2} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right\|$$

Using Theorem 1.3(b) to simplify the calculation, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\|\mathbf{v} - \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})\| &= \tfrac{1}{2}\left\|\begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ -3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}\right\| \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{9 + 9 + 4} \\
&= \tfrac{1}{2}\sqrt{22}
\end{aligned}$$

Note

- In terms of our earlier notation, $d(B, \ell) = d(\mathbf{v}, \text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v}))$.

In the case where the line ℓ is in $\mathbb{R}^2$ and its equation has the general form $ax + by = c$, the distance $d(B, \ell)$ from $B = (x_0, y_0)$ is given by the formula

$$d(B, \ell) = \frac{|ax_0 + by_0 - c|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}} \tag{3}$$

You are invited to prove this formula in Exercise 39.

Example 1.33 Find the distance from the point $B = (1, 0, 2)$ to the plane $\mathscr{P}$ whose general equation is $x + y - z = 1$.

Solution In this case, we need to calculate the length of $\overrightarrow{PB}$, where P is the point on $\mathscr{P}$ at the foot of the perpendicular from B. As Figure 1.65 shows, if A is any point on $\mathscr{P}$ and we situate the normal vector $\mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ of $\mathscr{P}$ so that its tail is at A, then we need to find the length of the projection of $\overrightarrow{AB}$ onto $\mathbf{n}$. Again we do the necessary calculations in steps.

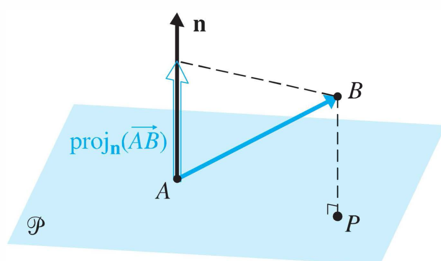


Figure 1.65
$d(B, \mathscr{P}) = \|\text{proj}_{\mathbf{n}}(\overrightarrow{AB})\|$

Step 1: By trial and error, we find any point whose coordinates satisfy the equation $x + y - z = 1$. $A = (1, 0, 0)$ will do.

Step 2: Set

$$\mathbf{v} = \overrightarrow{AB} = \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Step 3: The projection of $\mathbf{v}$ onto $\mathbf{n}$ is

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{proj}_{\mathbf{n}}(\mathbf{v}) &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{n}}\right)\mathbf{n} \\
&= \left(\frac{1\cdot 0 + 1\cdot 0 - 1\cdot 2}{1 + 1 + (-1)^2}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \\
&= -\tfrac{2}{3}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{3} \\ -\frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Step 4: The distance $d(B, \mathcal{P})$ from B to $\mathcal{P}$ is

$$\begin{aligned} \|\text{proj}_{\mathbf{n}}(\mathbf{v})\| &= \left|-\tfrac{2}{3}\right| \left\| \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \right\| \\ &= \tfrac{2}{3} \left\| \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \right\| \\ &= \tfrac{2}{3}\sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

In general, the distance $d(B, \mathcal{P})$ from the point $B = (x_0, y_0, z_0)$ to the plane whose general equation is $ax + by + cz = d$ is given by the formula

$$d(B, \mathcal{P}) = \frac{|ax_0 + by_0 + cz_0 - d|}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}} \tag{4}$$

You will be asked to derive this formula in Exercise 40.

Exercises 1.3

In Exercises 1 and 2, write the equation of the line passing through P with normal vector **n** *in (a) normal form and (b) general form.*

1. $P = (0, 0), \mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ **2.** $P = (1, 2), \mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 3–6, write the equation of the line passing through P with direction vector **d** *in (a) vector form and (b) parametric form.*

3. $P = (1, 0), \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **4.** $P = (-4, 4), \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $P = (0, 0, 0), \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ **6.** $P = (3, 0, -2), \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7 and 8, write the equation of the plane passing through P with normal vector **n** *in (a) normal form and (b) general form.*

7. $P = (0, 1, 0), \mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **8.** $P = (3, 0, -2), \mathbf{n} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 9 and 10, write the equation of the plane passing through P with direction vectors **u** *and* **v** *in (a) vector form and (b) parametric form.*

9. $P = (0, 0, 0), \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $P = (6, -4, -3), \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 11 and 12, give the vector equation of the line passing through P and Q.

11. $P = (1, -2), Q = (3, 0)$

12. $P = (0, 1, -1), Q = (-2, 1, 3)$

In Exercises 13 and 14, give the vector equation of the plane passing through P, Q, and R.

13. $P = (1, 1, 1), Q = (4, 0, 2), R = (0, 1, -1)$

14. $P = (1, 1, 0), Q = (1, 0, 1), R = (0, 1, 1)$

15. Find parametric equations and an equation in vector form for the lines in $\mathbb{R}^2$ with the following equations:

(a) $y = 3x - 1$ **(b)** $3x + 2y = 5$

16. Consider the vector equation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t(\mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p})$, where $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{q}$ correspond to distinct points P and Q in $\mathbb{R}^2$ or $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(a) Show that this equation describes the line segment $\overline{PQ}$ as t varies from 0 to 1.

(b) For which value of t is $\mathbf{x}$ the midpoint of $\overline{PQ}$, and what is $\mathbf{x}$ in this case?

(c) Find the midpoint of $\overline{PQ}$ when $P = (2, -3)$ and $Q = (0, 1)$.

(d) Find the midpoint of $\overline{PQ}$ when $P = (1, 0, 1)$ and $Q = (4, 1, -2)$.

(e) Find the two points that divide $\overline{PQ}$ in part (c) into three equal parts.

(f) Find the two points that divide $\overline{PQ}$ in part (d) into three equal parts.

17. Suggest a "vector proof" of the fact that, in $\mathbb{R}^2$, two lines with slopes m_1 and m_2 are perpendicular if and only if $m_1m_2 = -1$.

18. The line ℓ passes through the point $P = (1, -1, 1)$ and has direction vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$. For each of the following planes $\mathcal{P}$, determine whether ℓ and $\mathcal{P}$ are parallel, perpendicular, or neither:

(a) $2x + 3y - z = 1$ **(b)** $4x - y + 5z = 0$

(c) $x - y - z = 3$ **(d)** $4x + 6y - 2z = 0$

19. The plane $\mathcal{P}_1$ has the equation $4x - y + 5z = 2$. For each of the planes $\mathcal{P}$ in Exercise 18, determine whether $\mathcal{P}_1$ and $\mathcal{P}$ are parallel, perpendicular, or neither.

20. Find the vector form of the equation of the line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that passes through $P = (2, -1)$ and is perpendicular to the line with general equation $2x - 3y = 1$.

21. Find the vector form of the equation of the line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that passes through $P = (2, -1)$ and is parallel to the line with general equation $2x - 3y = 1$.

22. Find the vector form of the equation of the line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that passes through $P = (-1, 0, 3)$ and is perpendicular to the plane with general equation $x - 3y + 2z = 5$.

23. Find the vector form of the equation of the line in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that passes through $P = (-1, 0, 3)$ and is parallel to the line with parametric equations

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1 - t \\ y &= 2 + 3t \\ z &= -2 - t \end{aligned}$$

24. Find the normal form of the equation of the plane that passes through $P = (0, -2, 5)$ and is parallel to the plane with general equation $6x - y + 2z = 3$.

25. A cube has vertices at the eight points (x, y, z), where each of x, y, and z is either 0 or 1. (See Figure 1.34.)

(a) Find the general equations of the planes that determine the six faces (sides) of the cube.

(b) Find the general equation of the plane that contains the diagonal from the origin to $(1, 1, 1)$ and is perpendicular to the xy-plane.

(c) Find the general equation of the plane that contains the side diagonals referred to in Example 1.22.

26. Find the equation of the set of all points that are equidistant from the points $P = (1, 0, -2)$ and $Q = (5, 2, 4)$.

In Exercises 27 and 28, find the distance from the point Q to the line ℓ.

27. $Q = (2, 2)$, ℓ with equation $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $Q = (0, 1, 0)$, ℓ with equation $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 29 and 30, find the distance from the point Q to the plane $\mathcal{P}$.

29. $Q = (2, 2, 2)$, $\mathcal{P}$ with equation $x + y - z = 0$

30. $Q = (0, 0, 0)$, $\mathcal{P}$ with equation $x - 2y + 2z = 1$

Figure 1.66 suggests a way to use vectors to locate the point R on ℓ that is closest to Q.

31. Find the point R on ℓ that is closest to Q in Exercise 27.

32. Find the point R on ℓ that is closest to Q in Exercise 28.

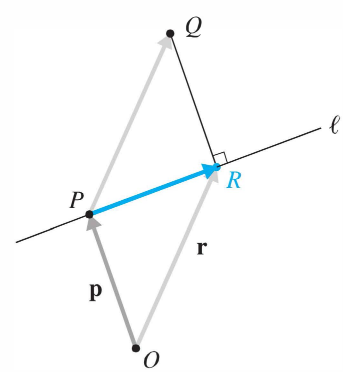


Figure 1.66
$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{p} + \overrightarrow{PR}$

Figure 1.67 suggests a way to use vectors to locate the point R on $\mathcal{P}$ that is closest to Q.

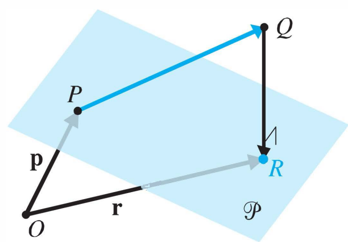


Figure 1.67

$\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{p} + \overrightarrow{PQ} + \overrightarrow{QR}$

33. Find the point R on $\mathcal{P}$ that is closest to Q in Exercise 29.

34. Find the point R on $\mathcal{P}$ that is closest to Q in Exercise 30.

In Exercises 35 and 36, find the distance between the parallel lines.

35. $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

36. $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 37 and 38, find the distance between the parallel planes.

37. $2x + y - 2z = 0$ and $2x + y - 2z = 5$

38. $x + y + z = 1$ and $x + y + z = 3$

39. Prove Equation (3) on page 43.

40. Prove Equation (4) on page 44.

41. Prove that, in $\mathbb{R}^2$, the distance between parallel lines with equations $\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = c_1$ and $\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = c_2$ is given by $\dfrac{|c_1 - c_2|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|}$.

42. Prove that the distance between parallel planes with equations $\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = d_1$ and $\mathbf{n}\cdot\mathbf{x} = d_2$ is given by $\dfrac{|d_1 - d_2|}{\|\mathbf{n}\|}$.

If two nonparallel planes $\mathcal{P}_1$ and $\mathcal{P}_2$ have normal vectors $\mathbf{n}_1$ and $\mathbf{n}_2$ and θ is the angle between $\mathbf{n}_1$ and $\mathbf{n}_2$, then we define the angle between $\mathcal{P}_1$ and $\mathcal{P}_2$ to be either θ or $180° - \theta$, whichever is an acute angle. (Figure 1.68)

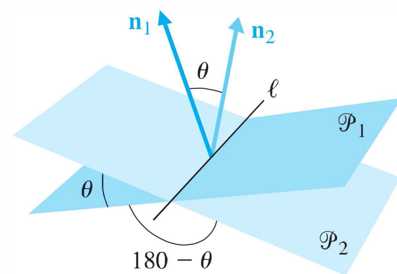


Figure 1.68

In Exercises 43–44, find the acute angle between the planes with the given equations.

43. $x + y + z = 0$ and $2x + y - 2z = 0$

44. $3x - y + 2z = 5$ and $x + 4y - z = 2$

In Exercises 45–46, show that the plane and line with the given equations intersect, and then find the acute angle of intersection between them.

45. The plane given by $x + y + 2z = 0$ and the line given by
$$\begin{aligned} x &= 2 + t \\ y &= 1 - 2t \\ z &= 3 + t \end{aligned}$$

46. The plane given by $4x - y - z = 6$ and the line given by
$$\begin{aligned} x &= t \\ y &= 1 + 2t \\ z &= 2 + 3t \end{aligned}$$

Exercises 47–48 explore one approach to the problem of finding the projection of a vector onto a plane. As Figure 1.69 shows, if $\mathcal{P}$ is a plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with normal vector $\mathbf{n}$, and $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$, then $\mathbf{p} = \mathrm{proj}_{\mathcal{P}}(\mathbf{v})$ is a vector in $\mathcal{P}$ such that $\mathbf{v} - c\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{p}$ for some scalar c.

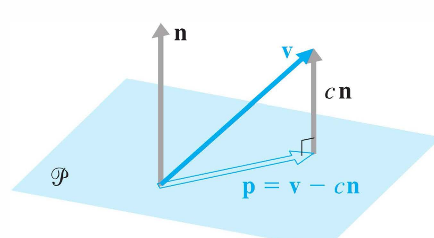


Figure 1.69

Projection onto a plane

47. Using the fact that **n** is orthogonal to every vector in $\mathcal{P}$ (and hence to **p**), solve for c and thereby find an expression for **p** in terms of **v** and **n**.

48. Use the method of Exercise 43 to find the projection of

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

onto the planes with the following equations:

(a) $x + y + z = 0$ **(b)** $3x - y + z = 0$

(c) $x - 2z = 0$ **(d)** $2x - 3y + z = 0$

Exploration

The Cross Product

It would be convenient if we could easily convert the vector form $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$ of the equation of a plane to the normal form $\mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{n} \cdot \mathbf{p}$. What we need is a process that, given two nonparallel vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$, produces a third vector $\mathbf{n}$ that is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. One approach is to use a construction known as the ***cross product*** of vectors. *Only valid in* $\mathbb{R}^3$, it is defined as follows:

Definition The *cross product* of $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{bmatrix}$ is the vector $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ defined by

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} u_2v_3 - u_3v_2 \\ u_3v_1 - u_1v_3 \\ u_1v_2 - u_2v_1 \end{bmatrix}$$

A shortcut that can help you remember how to calculate the cross product of two vectors is illustrated below. Under each complete vector, write the first two components of that vector. Ignoring the two components on the top line, consider each block of four: Subtract the products of the components connected by dashed lines from the products of the components connected by solid lines. (It helps to notice that the first component of $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ has no 1s as subscripts, the second has no 2s, and the third has no 3s.)

$$\begin{array}{ccc} u_1 & v_1 & \\ u_2 & v_2 & \\ u_3 & v_3 & u_2v_3 - u_3v_2 \\ u_1 & v_1 & u_3v_1 - u_1v_3 \\ u_2 & v_2 & u_1v_2 - u_2v_1 \end{array}$$

The following problems briefly explore the cross product.

1. Compute $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$.

(a) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

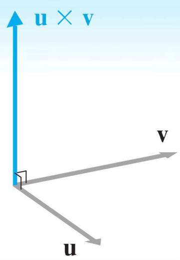


Figure 1.70

2. Show that $\mathbf{e}_1 \times \mathbf{e}_2 = \mathbf{e}_3$, $\mathbf{e}_2 \times \mathbf{e}_3 = \mathbf{e}_1$, and $\mathbf{e}_3 \times \mathbf{e}_1 = \mathbf{e}_2$.
3. Using the definition of a cross product, prove that $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ (as shown in Figure 1.70) is orthogonal to $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.
4. Use the cross product to help find the normal form of the equation of the plane.
   (a) The plane passing through $P = (1, 0, -2)$, parallel to $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$
   (b) The plane passing through $P = (0, -1, 1)$, $Q = (2, 0, 2)$, and $R = (1, 2, -1)$
5. Prove the following properties of the cross product:
   (a) $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$ (b) $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$
   (c) $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ (d) $\mathbf{u} \times k\mathbf{v} = k(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$
   (e) $\mathbf{u} \times k\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ (f) $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$
6. Prove the following properties of the cross product:
   (a) $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}$ (b) $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w})\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})\mathbf{w}$
   (c) $\|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}\|^2 = \|\mathbf{u}\|^2 \|\mathbf{v}\|^2 - (\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v})^2$
7. Redo Problems 2 and 3, this time making use of Problems 5 and 6.
8. Let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ and let θ be the angle between $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.
   (a) Prove that $\|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}\| = \|\mathbf{u}\| \, \|\mathbf{v}\| \sin \theta$. [*Hint:* Use Problem 6(c).]
   (b) Prove that the area $\mathcal{A}$ of the triangle determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ (as shown in Figure 1.71) is given by
   $$\mathcal{A} = \tfrac{1}{2}\|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}\|$$
   (c) Use the result in part (b) to compute the area of the triangle with vertices $A = (1, 2, 1)$, $B = (2, 1, 0)$, and $C = (5, -1, 3)$.

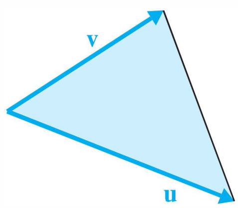


Figure 1.71

Writing Project

The Origins of the Dot Product and Cross Product

The notations for dot and cross product that we use today were introduced in the late 19th century by Josiah Willard Gibbs, a professor of mathematical physics at Yale University. Edwin B. Wilson was a graduate student in Gibbs's class, and he later wrote up his class notes, expanded upon them, and had them published in 1901, with Gibbs's blessing, as *Vector Analysis: A Text-Book for the Use of Students of Mathematics and Physics*. However, the concepts of dot and cross product arose earlier and went by various other names and notations.

Write a report on the evolution of the names and notations for the dot product and cross product.

1. Florian Cajori, *A History of Mathematical Notations* (New York: Dover, 1993).
2. J. Willard Gibbs and Edwin Bidwell Wilson, *Vector Analysis: A Text-Book for the Use of Students of Mathematics and Physics* (New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1901). Available online at http://archive.org/details/117714283.
3. Ivor Grattan-Guinness, *Companion Encyclopedia of the History and Philosophy of the Mathematical Sciences* (London: Routledge, 2013).

1.4 Applications

Force Vectors

We can use vectors to model force. For example, a wind blowing at 30 km/h in a westerly direction or the Earth's gravity acting on a 1 kg mass with a force of 9.8 newtons downward are each best represented by vectors since they each consist of a magnitude and a direction.

Force is defined as the product of mass and acceleration due to gravity (which, on Earth, is 9.8 m/s^2). Thus, a 1 kg mass exerts a downward force of 1 kg $\times$ 9.8 m/s^2 or 9.8 kg $\bullet$ m/s^2. This unit of measurement is a ***newton*** (N). So the force exerted by a 1 kg mass is 9.8 N.

It is often the case that multiple forces act on an object. In such situations, the net result of all the forces acting together is a single force called the ***resultant***, which is simply the vector sum of the individual forces (Figure 1.72). When several forces act on an object, it is possible that the resultant force is zero. In this case, the object is clearly not moving in any direction and we say that it is in ***equilibrium***. When an object is in equilibrium and the force vectors acting on it are arranged head-to-tail, the result is a closed polygon (Figure 1.73).

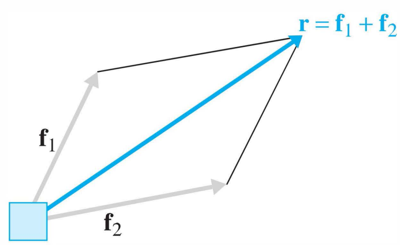


Figure 1.72
The resultant of two forces

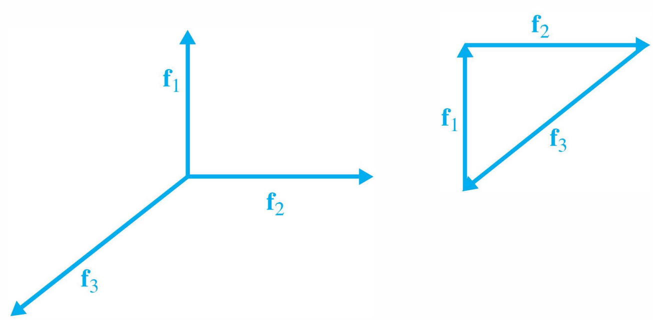


Figure 1.73
Equilibrium

Example 1.34

Ann and Bert are trying to roll a rock out of the way. Ann pushes with a force of 20 N in a northerly direction while Bert pushes with a force of 40 N in an easterly direction.

(a) What is the resultant force on the rock?

(b) Carla is trying to prevent Ann and Bert from moving the rock. What force must Carla apply to keep the rock in equilibrium?

Solution (a) Figure 1.74 shows the position of the two forces. Using the parallelogram rule, we add the two forces to get the resultant $\mathbf{r}$ as shown. By Pythagoras'

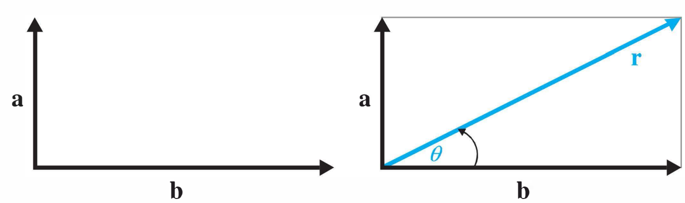


Figure 1.74
The resultant of two forces

Theorem, we see that $\|\mathbf{r}\| = \sqrt{20^2 + 40^2} = \sqrt{2000} \approx 44.72$ N. For the direction of $\mathbf{r}$, we calculate the angle θ between $\mathbf{r}$ and Bert's easterly force. We find that $\sin\theta = 20/\|\mathbf{r}\| \approx 0.447$, so $\theta \approx 26.57°$.

(b) If we denote the forces exerted by Ann, Bert, and Carla by $\mathbf{a}$, $\mathbf{b}$, and $\mathbf{c}$, respectively, then we require $\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{c} = \mathbf{0}$. Therefore $\mathbf{c} = -(\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b}) = -\mathbf{r}$, so Carla needs to exert a force of 44.72 N in the direction opposite to $\mathbf{r}$.

Often, we are interested in decomposing a force vector into other vectors whose resultant is the given vector. This process is called ***resolving a vector into components***. In two dimensions, we wish to resolve a vector into two components. However, there are infinitely many ways to do this; the most useful will be to resolve the vector into two *orthogonal* components. (Chapters 5 and 7 explore this idea more generally.) This is usually done by introducing coordinate axes and by choosing the components so that one is parallel to the x-axis and the other to the y-axis. These components are usually referred to as the horizontal and vertical components, respectively. In Figure 1.75, $\mathbf{f}$ is the given vector and $\mathbf{f}_x$ and $\mathbf{f}_y$ are its horizontal and vertical components.

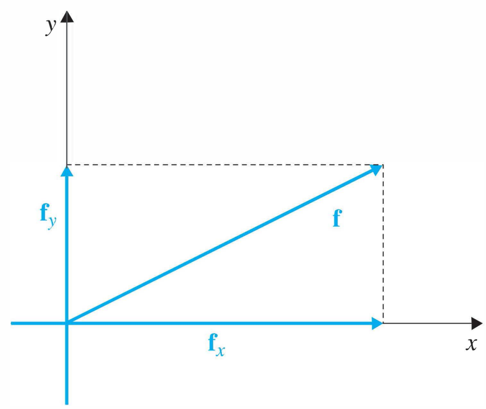


Figure 1.75
Resolving a vector into components

Example 1.35

Ann pulls on the handle of a wagon with a force of 100 N. If the handle makes an angle of 20° with the horizontal, what is the force that tends to pull the wagon forward and what force tends to lift it off the ground?

Solution Figure 1.76 shows the situation and the vector diagram that we need to consider.

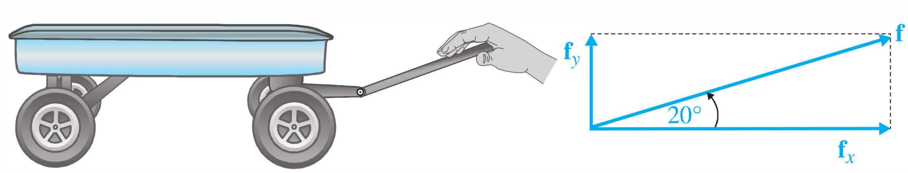


Figure 1.76

We see that

$$\|\mathbf{f}_x\| = \|\mathbf{f}\| \cos 20° \text{ and } \|\mathbf{f}_y\| = \|\mathbf{f}\| \sin 20°$$

Thus, $\|\mathbf{f}_x\| \approx 100(0.9397) \approx 93.97$ and $\|\mathbf{f}_y\| \approx 100(0.3420) \approx 34.20$. So the wagon is pulled forward with a force of approximately 93.97 N and it tends to lift off the ground with a force of approximately 34.20 N.

We solve the next example using two different methods. The first solution considers a triangle of forces in equilibrium; the second solution uses resolution of forces into components.

Example 1.36

Figure 1.77 shows a painting that has been hung from the ceiling by two wires. If the painting has a mass of 5 kg and if the two wires make angles of 45 and 60 degrees with the ceiling, determine the tension in each wire.

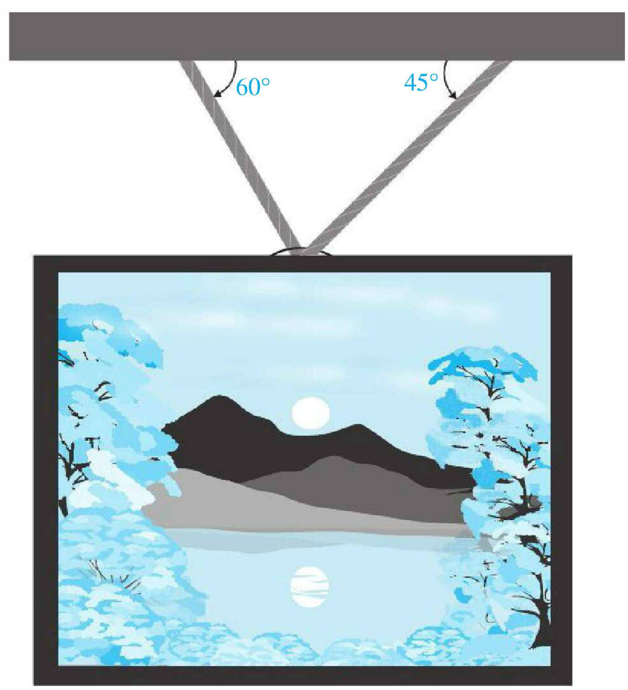


Figure 1.77

Solution 1 We assume that the painting is in equilibrium. Then the two wires must supply enough upward force to balance the downward force of gravity. Gravity exerts a downward force of $5 \times 9.8 = 49$ N on the painting, so the two wires must collectively pull upward with 49 N of force. Let $\mathbf{f}_1$ and $\mathbf{f}_2$ denote the tensions in the wires and let $\mathbf{r}$ be their resultant (Figure 1.78). It follows that $\|\mathbf{r}\| = 49$ since we are in equilibrium.

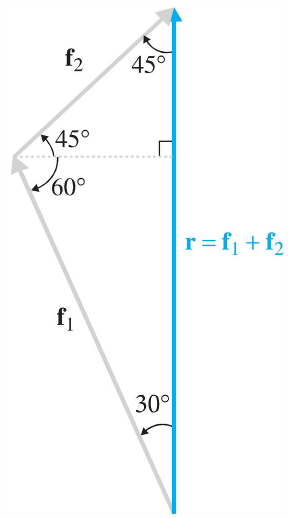


Figure 1.78

Using the law of sines, we have

$$\frac{\|\mathbf{f}_1\|}{\sin 45^\circ} = \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sin 30^\circ} = \frac{\|\mathbf{r}\|}{\sin 105^\circ}$$

so

$$\|\mathbf{f}_1\| = \frac{\|\mathbf{r}\| \sin 45^\circ}{\sin 105^\circ} \approx \frac{49(0.7071)}{0.9659} \approx 35.87 \text{ and } \|\mathbf{f}_2\| = \frac{\|\mathbf{r}\| \sin 30^\circ}{\sin 105^\circ} \approx \frac{49(0.5)}{0.9659} \approx 25.36$$

Therefore, the tensions in the wires are approximately 35.87 N and 25.36 N.

Solution 2 We resolve $\mathbf{f}_1$ and $\mathbf{f}_2$ into horizontal and vertical components, say, $\mathbf{f}_1 = \mathbf{h}_1 + \mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{f}_2 = \mathbf{h}_2 + \mathbf{v}_2$, and note that, as above, there is a downward force of 49 N (Figure 1.79).

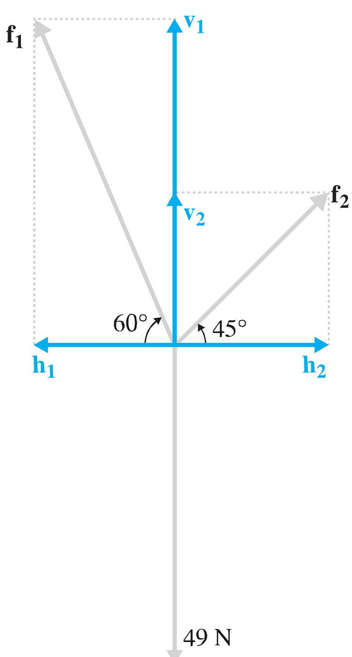


Figure 1.79

It follows that

$$\|\mathbf{h}_1\| = \|\mathbf{f}_1\| \cos 60^\circ = \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_1\|}{2}, \quad \|\mathbf{v}_1\| = \|\mathbf{f}_1\| \sin 60^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}\|\mathbf{f}_1\|}{2},$$

$$\|\mathbf{h}_2\| = \|\mathbf{f}_2\| \cos 45^\circ = \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}}, \quad \|\mathbf{v}_2\| = \|\mathbf{f}_2\| \sin 45^\circ = \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}}$$

Since the painting is in equilibrium, the horizontal components must balance, as must the vertical components. Therefore, $\|\mathbf{h}_1\| = \|\mathbf{h}_2\|$ and $\|\mathbf{v}_1\| + \|\mathbf{v}_2\| = 49$, from which it follows that

$$\|\mathbf{f}_1\| = \frac{2\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}} = \sqrt{2}\|\mathbf{f}_2\| \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\sqrt{3}\|\mathbf{f}_1\|}{2} + \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}} = 49$$

Substituting the first of these equations into the second equation yields

$$\frac{\sqrt{3}\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{\|\mathbf{f}_2\|}{\sqrt{2}} = 49, \quad \text{or} \quad \|\mathbf{f}_2\| = \frac{49\sqrt{2}}{1 + \sqrt{3}} \approx 25.36$$

Thus, $\|\mathbf{f}_1\| = \sqrt{2}\|\mathbf{f}_2\| \approx 1.4142(25.36) \approx 35.87$, so the tensions in the hires are approximately 35.87 N and 25.36 N, as before.

Exercises 1.4

Force Vectors

In Exercises 1–6, determine the resultant of the given forces.

1. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting due north with a magnitude of 12 N and $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting due east with a magnitude of 5 N
2. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting due west with a magnitude of 15 N and $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting due south with a magnitude of 20 N
3. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting with a magnitude of 8 N and $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting at an angle of 60° to $\mathbf{f}_1$ with a magnitude of 8 N
4. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting with a magnitude of 4 N and $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting at an angle of 135° to $\mathbf{f}_1$ with a magnitude of 6 N

5. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting due east with a magnitude of 2 N, $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting due west with a magnitude of 6 N, and $\mathbf{f}_3$ acting at an angle of 60° to $\mathbf{f}_1$ with a magnitude of 4 N

6. $\mathbf{f}_1$ acting due east with a magnitude of 10 N, $\mathbf{f}_2$ acting due north with a magnitude of 13 N, $\mathbf{f}_3$ acting due west with a magnitude of 5 N, and $\mathbf{f}_4$ acting due south with a magnitude of 8 N

7. Resolve a force of 10 N into two forces perpendicular to each other so that one component makes an angle of 60° with the 10 N force.

8. A 10 kg block lies on a ramp that is inclined at an angle of 30° (Figure 1.80). Assuming there is no friction, what force, parallel to the ramp, must be applied to keep the block from sliding down the ramp?

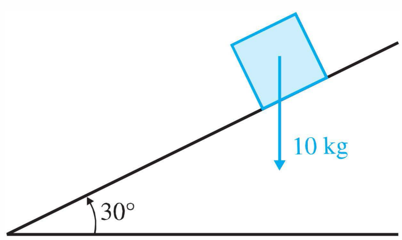


Figure 1.80

9. A tow truck is towing a car. The tension in the tow cable is 1500 N and the cable makes a 45° with the horizontal, as shown in Figure 1.81. What is the vertical force that tends to lift the car off the ground?

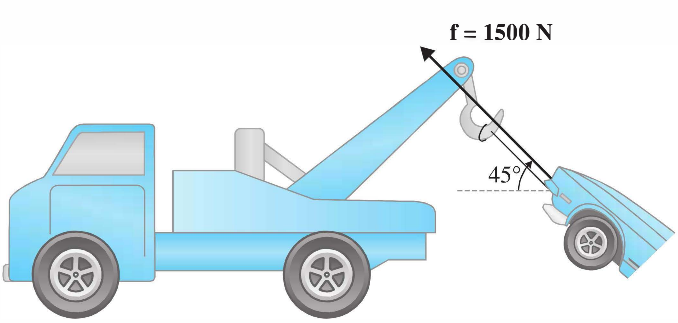


Figure 1.81

10. A lawn mower has a mass of 30 kg. It is being pushed with a force of 100 N. If the handle of the lawn mower makes an angle of 45° with the ground, what is the horizontal component of the force that is causing the mower to move forward?

11. A sign hanging outside Joe's Diner has a mass of 50 kg (Figure 1.82). If the supporting cable makes an angle of 60° with the wall of the building, determine the tension in the cable.

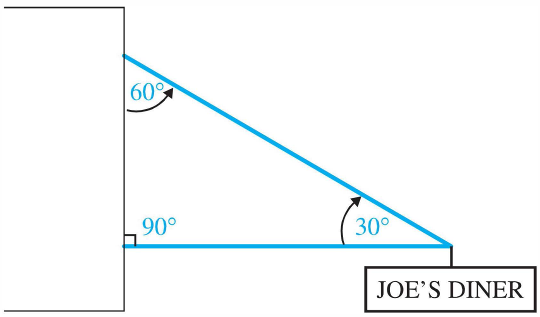


Figure 1.82

12. A sign hanging in the window of Joe's Diner has a mass of 1 kg. If the supporting strings each make an angle of 45° with the sign and the supporting hooks are at the same height (Figure 1.83), find the tension in each string.

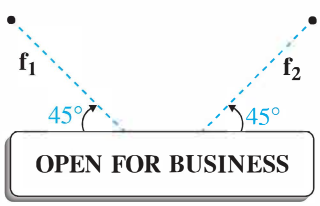


Figure 1.83

13. A painting with a mass of 15 kg is suspended by two wires from hooks on a ceiling. If the wires have lengths of 15 cm and 20 cm and the distance between the hooks is 25 cm, find the tension in each wire.

14. A painting with a mass of 20 kg is suspended by two wires from a ceiling. If the wires make angles of 30° and 45° with the ceiling, find the tension in each wire.

Chapter Review

Key Definitions and Concepts

algebraic properties of vectors, 10
angle between vectors, 24
binary vector, 13
Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality, 22
cross product, 48
direction vector, 35
distance between vectors, 23
dot product, 18
equation of a line, 36
equation of a plane, 38–39
head-to-tail rule, 6
integers modulo m ($\mathbb{Z}_m$), 14–16
length (norm) of a vector, 20
linear combination of vectors, 12
normal vector, 34, 38
m-ary vector 16
orthogonal vectors, 26
parallel vectors, 8
parallelogram rule, 6
projection of a vector onto a vector, 27
Pythagoras' Theorem, 26
scalar multiplication, 7
standard unit vectors, 22
Triangle Inequality, 22
unit vector, 21
vector, 3
vector addition, 5
zero vector, 4

Review Questions

1. Mark each of the following statements true or false:

(a) For vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, if $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$, then $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$.

(b) For vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, if $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{w}$, then $\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{v}$.

(c) For vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$, if $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{v}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{w}$, then $\mathbf{u}$ is orthogonal to $\mathbf{w}$.

(d) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if a line ℓ is parallel to a plane $\mathscr{P}$, then a direction vector $\mathbf{d}$ for ℓ is parallel to a normal vector $\mathbf{n}$ for $\mathscr{P}$.

(e) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if a line ℓ is perpendicular to a plane $\mathscr{P}$, then a direction vector $\mathbf{d}$ for ℓ is a parallel to a normal vector $\mathbf{n}$ for $\mathscr{P}$.

(f) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if two planes are not parallel, then they must intersect in a line.

(g) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if two lines are not parallel, then they must intersect in a point.

(h) If $\mathbf{v}$ is a binary vector such that $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$, then $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$.

(i) In $\mathbb{Z}_5$, if $ab = 0$ then either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$.

(j) In $\mathbb{Z}_6$, if $ab = 0$ then either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$.

2. If $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, and the vector $4\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is drawn with its tail at the point $(10, -10)$, find the coordinates of the point at the head of $4\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$.

3. If $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, and $2\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{u} = 3(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{v})$, solve for $\mathbf{x}$.

4. Let A, B, C, and D be the vertices of a square centered at the origin O, labeled in clockwise order. If $\mathbf{a} = \overrightarrow{OA}$ and $\mathbf{b} = \overrightarrow{OB}$, find $\overrightarrow{BC}$ in terms of $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{b}$.

5. Find the angle between the vectors $[-1, 1, 2]$ and $[2, 1, -1]$.

6. Find the projection of $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ onto $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

7. Find a unit vector in the xy-plane that is orthogonal to $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

8. Find the general equation of the plane through the point $(1, 1, 1)$ that is perpendicular to the line with parametric equations

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 2 - t \\ y &= 3 + 2t \\ z &= -1 + t \end{aligned}$$

9. Find the general equation of the plane through the point $(3, 2, 5)$ that is parallel to the plane whose general equation is $2x + 3y - z = 0$.

10. Find the general equation of the plane through the points $A(1, 1, 0)$, $B(1, 0, 1)$, and $C(0, 1, 2)$.

11. Find the area of the triangle with vertices $A(1, 1, 0)$, $B(1, 0, 1)$, and $C(0, 1, 2)$.

12. Find the midpoint of the line segment between $A = (5, 1, -2)$ and $B = (3, -7, 0)$.

13. Why are there no vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ such that $\|\mathbf{u}\| = 2$, $\|\mathbf{v}\| = 3$, and $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = -7$?

14. Find the distance from the point $(3, 2, 5)$ to the plane whose general equation is $2x + 3y - z = 0$.

15. Find the distance from the point $(3, 2, 5)$ to the line with parametric equations $x = t, y = 1 + t, z = 2 + t$.

16. Compute $3 - (2 + 4)^3(4 + 3)^2$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5$.

17. If possible, solve $3(x + 2) = 5$ in $\mathbb{Z}_7$.

18. If possible, solve $3(x + 2) = 5$ in $\mathbb{Z}_9$.

19. Compute $[2, 1, 3, 3] \cdot [3, 4, 4, 2]$ in $\mathbb{Z}_5^4$.

20. Let $\mathbf{u} = [1, 1, 1, 0]$ in $\mathbb{Z}_2^4$. How many binary vectors $\mathbf{v}$ satisfy $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$?

2 Systems of Linear Equations

The world was full of equations . . . .
There must be an answer for everything,
if only you knew how to set forth
the questions.

—Anne Tyler
The Accidental Tourist
Alfred A. Knopf, 1985, p. 235

2.0 Introduction: Triviality

The word *trivial* is derived from the Latin root *tri* ("three") and the Latin word *via* ("road"). Thus, speaking literally, a triviality is a place where three roads meet. This common meeting point gives rise to the other, more familiar meaning of *trivial*—commonplace, ordinary, or insignificant. In medieval universities, the *trivium* consisted of the three "common" subjects (grammar, rhetoric, and logic) that were taught before the *quadrivium* (arithmetic, geometry, music, and astronomy). The "three roads" that made up the trivium were the beginning of the liberal arts.

In this section, we begin to examine systems of linear equations. The same system of equations can be viewed in three different, yet equally important, ways—these will be our three roads, all leading to the same solution. You will need to get used to this threefold way of viewing systems of linear equations, so that it becomes commonplace (trivial!) for you.

The system of equations we are going to consider is

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y &= 8 \\ x - 3y &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

Problem 1 Draw the two lines represented by these equations. What is their point of intersection?

Problem 2 Consider the vectors $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$. Draw the coordinate grid determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$. [*Hint:* Lightly draw the standard coordinate grid first and use it as an aid in drawing the new one.]

Problem 3 On the u-v grid, find the coordinates of $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$.

Problem 4 Another way to state Problem 3 is to ask for the coefficients x and y for which $x\mathbf{u} + y\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$. Write out the two equations to which this vector equation is equivalent (one for each component). What do you observe?

Problem 5 Return now to the lines you drew for Problem 1. We will refer to the line whose equation is $2x + y = 8$ as line 1 and the line whose equation is $x - 3y = -3$ as line 2. Plot the point $(0, 0)$ on your graph from Problem 1 and label it P_0. Draw a

Table 2.1

Point	x	y
P_0	0	0
P_1		
P_2		
P_3		
P_4		
P_5		
P_6		

horizontal line segment from P_0 to line 1 and label this new point P_1. Next draw a *vertical* line segment from P_1 to line 2 and label this point P_2. Now draw a *horizontal* line segment from P_2 to line 1, obtaining point P_3. Continue in this fashion, drawing vertical segments to line 2 followed by horizontal segments to line 1. What appears to be happening?

Problem 6 Using a calculator with two-decimal-place accuracy, find the (approximate) coordinates of the points $P_1, P_2, P_3, \ldots, P_6$. (You will find it helpful to first solve the first equation for x in terms of y and the second equation for y in terms of x.) Record your results in Table 2.1, writing the x- and y-coordinates of each point separately.

The results of these problems show that the task of "solving" a system of linear equations may be viewed in several ways. Repeat the process described in the problems with the following systems of equations:

$$\text{(a)}\ \begin{aligned} 4x - 2y &= 0 \\ x + 2y &= 5 \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(b)}\ \begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 9 \\ x + 3y &= 10 \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(c)}\ \begin{aligned} x + y &= 5 \\ x - y &= 3 \end{aligned} \qquad \text{(d)}\ \begin{aligned} x + 2y &= 4 \\ 2x - y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

Are all of your observations from Problems 1–6 still valid for these examples? Note any similarities or differences. In this chapter, we will explore these ideas in more detail.

2.1 Introduction to Systems of Linear Equations

Recall that the general equation of a line in $\mathbb{R}^2$ is of the form

$$ax + by = c$$

and that the general equation of a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is of the form

$$ax + by + cz = d$$

Equations of this form are called ***linear equations.***

Definition A ***linear equation*** in the n variables $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ is an equation that can be written in the form

$$a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n = b$$

where the ***coefficients*** $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ and the ***constant term*** b are constants.

Example 2.1

The following equations are linear:

$$3x - 4y = -1 \qquad r - \tfrac{1}{2}s - \tfrac{15}{3}t = 9 \qquad x_1 + 5x_2 = 3 - x_3 + 2x_4$$

$$\sqrt{2}x + \frac{\pi}{4}y - \left(\sin\frac{\pi}{5}\right)z = 1 \qquad 3.2x_1 - 0.01x_2 = 4.6$$

Observe that the third equation is linear because it can be rewritten in the form $x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3 - 2x_4 = 3$. It is also important to note that, although in these examples (and in most applications) the coefficients and constant terms are real numbers, in some examples and applications they will be complex numbers or members of $\mathbb{Z}_p$ for some prime number p.

The following equations are not linear:

$$xy + 2z = 1 \qquad x_1^2 - x_2^3 = 3 \qquad \frac{x}{y} + z = 2$$

$$\sqrt{2x} + \frac{\pi}{4}y - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{5}z\right) = 1 \qquad \sin x_1 - 3x_2 + 2^{x_3} = 0$$

Thus, linear equations do not contain products, reciprocals, or other functions of the variables; the variables occur only to the first power and are multiplied only by constants. Pay particular attention to the fourth example in each list: Why is it that the fourth equation in the first list is linear but the fourth equation in the second list is not?

A ***solution*** of a linear equation $a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n = b$ is a vector $[s_1, s_2, \ldots, s_n]$ whose components satisfy the equation when we substitute $x_1 = s_1$, $x_2 = s_2, \ldots, x_n = s_n$.

Example 2.2

(a) $[5, 4]$ is a solution of $3x - 4y = -1$ because, when we substitute $x = 5$ and $y = 4$, the equation is satisfied: $3(5) - 4(4) = -1$. $[1, 1]$ is another solution. In general, the solutions simply correspond to the points on the line determined by the given equation. Thus, setting $x = t$ and solving for y, we see that the complete set of solutions can be written in the parametric form $[t, \frac{1}{4} + \frac{3}{4}t]$. (We could also set y equal to some parameter—say, s—and solve for x instead; the two parametric solutions would look different but would be equivalent. Try this.)

(b) The linear equation $x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 = 3$ has $[3, 0, 0]$, $[0, 1, 2]$, and $[6, 1, -1]$ as specific solutions. The complete set of solutions corresponds to the set of points in the plane determined by the given equation. If we set $x_2 = s$ and $x_3 = t$, then a parametric solution is given by $[3 + s - 2t, s, t]$. (Which values of s and t produce the three specific solutions above?)

A ***system of linear equations*** is a finite set of linear equations, each with the same variables. A ***solution*** of a system of linear equations is a vector that is *simultaneously* a solution of each equation in the system. The ***solution set*** of a system of linear equations is the set of *all* solutions of the system. We will refer to the process of finding the solution set of a system of linear equations as "solving the system."

Example 2.3

The system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - y &= 3 \\ x + 3y &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

has $[2, 1]$ as a solution, since it is a solution of both equations. On the other hand, $[1, -1]$ is not a solution of the system, since it satisfies only the first equation.

Example 2.4

Solve the following systems of linear equations:

(a) $\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ x + y &= 3 \end{aligned}$ (b) $\begin{aligned} x - y &= 2 \\ 2x - 2y &= 4 \end{aligned}$ (c) $\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ x - y &= 3 \end{aligned}$

Solution

(a) Adding the two equations together gives $2x = 4$, so $x = 2$, from which we find that $y = 1$. A quick check confirms that $[2, 1]$ is indeed a solution of both equations. That this is the *only* solution can be seen by observing that this solution corresponds to the (unique) point of intersection $(2, 1)$ of the lines with equations $x - y = 1$ and $x + y = 3$, as shown in Figure 2.1(a). Thus, $[2, 1]$ is a *unique solution.*

(b) The second equation in this system is just twice the first, so the solutions are the solutions of the first equation alone—namely, the points on the line $x - y = 2$. These can be represented parametrically as $[2 + t, t]$. Thus, this system has *infinitely many solutions* [Figure 2.1(b)].

(c) Two numbers x and y cannot simultaneously have a difference of 1 and 3. Hence, this system has *no solutions.* (A more algebraic approach might be to subtract the second equation from the first, yielding the absurd conclusion $0 = -2$.) As Figure 2.1(c) shows, the lines for the equations are parallel in this case.

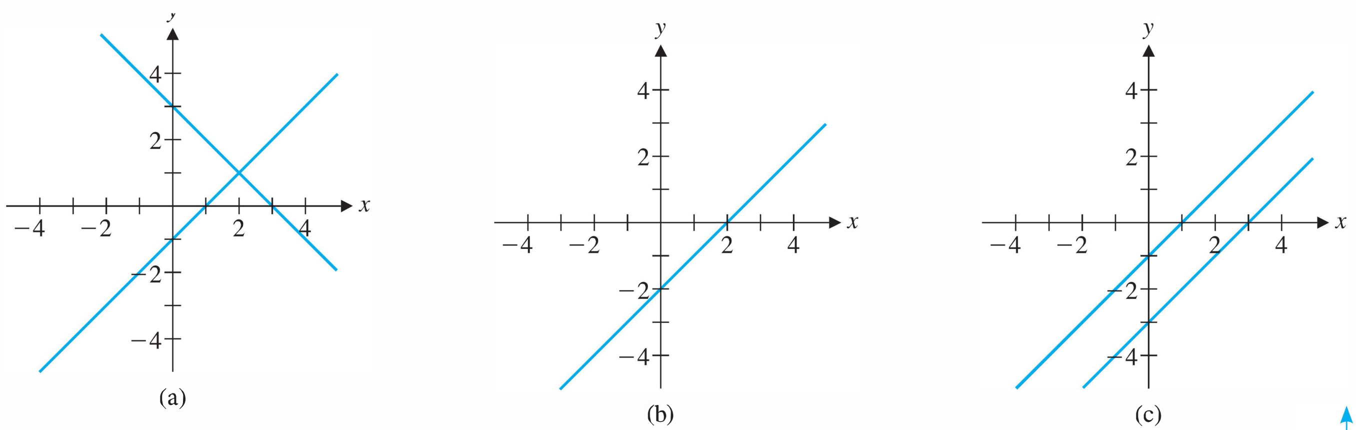


Figure 2.1

A system of linear equations is called ***consistent*** if it has at least one solution. A system with no solutions is called ***inconsistent.*** Even though they are small, the three systems in Example 2.4 illustrate the only three possibilities for the number of solutions of a system of linear equations with real coefficients. We will prove later that these same three possibilities hold for *any* system of linear equations over the real numbers.

A system of linear equations with real coefficients has either

(a) a unique solution (a consistent system) or
(b) infinitely many solutions (a consistent system) or
(c) no solutions (an inconsistent system).

Solving a System of Linear Equations

Two linear systems are called ***equivalent*** if they have the same solution sets. For example,

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ x + y &= 3 \end{aligned} \qquad \text{and} \qquad \begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ y &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

are equivalent, since they both have the unique solution $[2, 1]$. (Check this.)

Our approach to solving a system of linear equations is to transform the given system into an equivalent one that is easier to solve. The triangular pattern of the second example above (in which the second equation has one less variable than the first) is what we will aim for.

Example 2.5

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ y + 3z &= 5 \\ 5z &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

Solution Starting from the last equation and working backward, we find successively that $z = 2$, $y = 5 - 3(2) = -1$, and $x = 2 + (-1) + 2 = 3$. So the unique solution is $[3, -1, 2]$.

The procedure used to solve Example 2.5 is called ***back substitution.***

We now turn to the general strategy for transforming a given system into an equivalent one that can be solved easily by back substitution. This process will be described in greater detail in the next section; for now, we will simply observe it in action in a single example.

Example 2.6

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ 3x - 3y + 2z &= 16 \\ 2x - y + z &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

Solution To transform this system into one that exhibits the triangular structure of Example 2.5, we first need to eliminate the variable x from Equations 2 and 3. Observe that subtracting appropriate multiples of equation 1 from Equations 2 and 3 will do the trick. Next, observe that we are operating on the coefficients, not on the variables, so we can save ourselves some writing if we record the coefficients and constant terms in the *matrix*

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 2 & 16 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 9 \end{array}\right]$$

The word *matrix* is derived from the Latin word *mater,* meaning "mother." When the suffix *-ix* is added, the meaning becomes "womb." Just as a womb surrounds a fetus, the brackets of a matrix surround its entries, and just as the womb gives rise to a baby, a matrix gives rise to certain types of functions called *linear transformations.* A matrix with m rows and n columns is called an $m \times n$ matrix (pronounced "m by n"). The plural of *matrix* is *matrices,* not "matrixes."

where the first three columns contain the coefficients of the variables in order, the final column contains the constant terms, and the vertical bar serves to remind us of the equal signs in the equations. This matrix is called the ***augmented matrix*** of the system.

There are various ways to convert the given system into one with the triangular pattern we are after. The steps we will use here are closest in spirit to the more general method described in the next section. We will perform the sequence of operations on the given system and simultaneously on the corresponding augmented matrix. We begin by eliminating x from Equations 2 and 3.

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ 3x - 3y + 2z &= 16 \\ 2x - y + z &= 9 \end{aligned} \qquad \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 2 & 16 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 9 \end{array}\right]$$

Subtract 3 times the first equation from the second equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ 5z &= 10 \\ 2x - y + z &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

Subtract 3 times the first row from the second row:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 10 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 9 \end{array}\right]$$

Subtract 2 times the first equation from the third equation:

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ 5z &= 10 \\ y + 3z &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

Subtract 2 times the first row from the third row:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 10 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 5 \end{array}\right]$$

Interchange Equations 2 and 3:

$$\begin{aligned} x - y - z &= 2 \\ y + 3z &= 5 \\ 5z &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

Interchange rows 2 and 3:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 10 \end{array}\right]$$

This is the same system that we solved using back substitution in Example 2.5, where we found that the solution was $[3, -1, 2]$. This is therefore also the solution to the system given in this example. Why? The calculations above show that *any solution of the given system is also a solution of the final one*. But since the steps we just performed are *reversible*, we could recover the original system, starting with the final system. (How?) So *any solution of the final system is also a solution of the given one*. Thus, the systems are equivalent (as are all of the ones obtained in the intermediate steps above). Moreover, we might just as well work with matrices instead of equations, since it is a simple matter to reinsert the variables before proceeding with the back substitution. (Working with matrices is the subject of the next section.)

Remark Calculators with matrix capabilities and computer algebra systems can facilitate solving systems of linear equations, particularly when the systems are large or have coefficients that are not "nice," as is often the case in real-life applications. As always, though, you should do as many examples as you can with pencil and paper until you are comfortable with the techniques. Even if a calculator or CAS is called for, think about *how* you would do the calculations manually before doing anything. After you have an answer, be sure to think about whether it is reasonable.

Do not be misled into thinking that technology will always give you the answer faster or more easily than calculating by hand. Sometimes it may not give you the answer at all! Roundoff errors associated with the floating-point arithmetic used by calculators and computers can cause serious problems and lead to wildly wrong answers to some problems. See Exploration: Lies My Computer Told Me for a glimpse of the problem. (You've been warned!)

Exercises 2.1

In Exercises 1–6, determine which equations are linear equations in the variables x, y, and z. If any equation is not linear, explain why not.

1. $x - \pi y + \sqrt[3]{5}z = 0$

2. $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$

3. $x^{-1} + 7y + z = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{9}\right)$

4. $2x - xy - 5z = 0$

5. $3\cos x - 4y + z = \sqrt{3}$

6. $(\cos 3)x - 4y + z = \sqrt{3}$

In Exercises 7–10, find a linear equation that has the same solution set as the given equation (possibly with some restrictions on the variables).

7. $2x + y = 7 - 3y$

8. $\dfrac{x^2 - y^2}{x - y} = 1$

9. $\dfrac{1}{x} + \dfrac{1}{y} = \dfrac{4}{xy}$

10. $\log_{10} x - \log_{10} y = 2$

In Exercises 11–14, find the solution set of each equation.

11. $3x - 6y = 0$

12. $2x_1 + 3x_2 = 5$

13. $x + 2y + 3z = 4$

14. $4x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 = 1$

In Exercises 15–18, draw graphs corresponding to the given linear systems. Determine geometrically whether each system has a unique solution, infinitely many solutions, or no solution. Then solve each system algebraically to confirm your answer.

15. $\begin{aligned} x + y &= 0 \\ 2x + y &= 3 \end{aligned}$

16. $\begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 7 \\ 3x + y &= 7 \end{aligned}$

17. $\begin{aligned} 3x - 6y &= 3 \\ -x + 2y &= 1 \end{aligned}$

18. $\begin{aligned} 0.10x - 0.05y &= 0.20 \\ -0.06x + 0.03y &= -0.12 \end{aligned}$

In Exercises 19–24, solve the given system by back substitution.

19. $\begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 1 \\ y &= 3 \end{aligned}$

20. $\begin{aligned} 2u - 3v &= 5 \\ 2v &= 6 \end{aligned}$

21. $\begin{aligned} x - y + z &= 0 \\ 2y - z &= 1 \\ 3z &= -1 \end{aligned}$

22. $\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \\ -5x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0 \\ 4x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$

23. $\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 - x_3 - x_4 &= 1 \\ x_2 + x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_3 - x_4 &= 0 \\ x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

24. $\begin{aligned} x - 3y + z &= 5 \\ y - 2z &= -1 \end{aligned}$

The systems in Exercises 25 and 26 exhibit a "lower triangular" pattern that makes them easy to solve by forward substitution. (We will encounter forward substitution again in Chapter 3.) Solve these systems.

25. $\begin{aligned} x &= 2 \\ 2x + y &= -3 \\ -3x - 4y + z &= -10 \end{aligned}$

26. $\begin{aligned} x_1 &= -1 \\ -\tfrac{1}{2}x_1 + x_2 &= 5 \\ \tfrac{3}{2}x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 7 \end{aligned}$

Find the augmented matrices of the linear systems in Exercises 27–30.

27. $\begin{aligned} x - y &= 0 \\ 2x + y &= 3 \end{aligned}$

28. $\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 + x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + 2x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$

29. $\begin{aligned} x + 5y &= -1 \\ -x + y &= -5 \\ 2x + 4y &= 4 \end{aligned}$

30. $\begin{aligned} a - 2b + d &= 2 \\ -a + b - c - 3d &= 1 \end{aligned}$

In Exercises 31 and 32, find a system of linear equations that has the given matrix as its augmented matrix.

31. $\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$

32. $\left[\begin{array}{rrrrr|r} 1 & -1 & 0 & 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 & 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 3 & 0 \end{array}\right]$

For Exercises 33–38, solve the linear systems in the given exercises.

33. Exercise 27

34. Exercise 28

35. Exercise 29

36. Exercise 30

37. Exercise 31

38. Exercise 32

39. **(a)** Find a system of two linear equations in the variables x and y whose solution set is given by the parametric equations $x = t$ and $y = 3 - 2t$.

(b) Find another parametric solution to the system in part (a) in which the parameter is s and $y = s$.

40. **(a)** Find a system of two linear equations in the variables x_1, x_2, and x_3 whose solution set is given by the parametric equations $x_1 = t$, $x_2 = 1 + t$, and $x_3 = 2 - t$.

(b) Find another parametric solution to the system in part (a) in which the parameter is s and $x_3 = s$.

In Exercises 41–44, the systems of equations are nonlinear. Find substitutions (changes of variables) that convert each system into a linear system and use this linear system to help solve the given system.

41. $\dfrac{2}{x} + \dfrac{3}{y} = 0$

$\dfrac{3}{x} + \dfrac{4}{y} = 1$

42. $x^2 + 2y^2 = 6$

$x^2 - y^2 = 3$

43.
$$\begin{aligned} \tan x - 2\sin y \phantom{{}+\cos z} &= 2 \\ \tan x - \sin y + \cos z &= 2 \\ \sin y - \cos z &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

44. $-2^a + 2(3^b) = 1$

$3(2^a) - 4(3^b) = 1$

2.2 Direct Methods for Solving Linear Systems

In this section, we will look at a general, systematic procedure for solving a system of linear equations. This procedure is based on the idea of reducing the augmented matrix of the given system to a form that can then be solved by back substitution. The method is *direct* in the sense that it leads directly to the solution (if one exists) in a finite number of steps. In Section 2.5, we will consider some *indirect* methods that work in a completely different way.

Matrices and Echelon Form

There are two important matrices associated with a linear system. The ***coefficient matrix*** contains the coefficients of the variables, and the ***augmented matrix*** (which we have already encountered) is the coefficient matrix augmented by an extra column containing the constant terms.

For the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y - z &= 3 \\ x \phantom{{}+3y} + 5z &= 1 \\ -x + 3y - 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

the coefficient matrix is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 5 \\ -1 & 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 2 & 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 5 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -2 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Note that if a variable is missing (as y is in the second equation), its coefficient 0 is entered in the appropriate position in the matrix. If we denote the coefficient matrix of a linear system by A and the column vector of constant terms by $\mathbf{b}$, then the form of the augmented matrix is $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$.

In solving a linear system, it will not always be possible to reduce the coefficient matrix to triangular form, as we did in Example 2.6. However, we can always achieve a staircase pattern in the nonzero entries of the final matrix.

The word echelon comes from the Latin word *scala*, meaning "ladder" or "stairs." The French word for "ladder," *échelle*, is also derived from this Latin base. A matrix in echelon form exhibits a staircase pattern.

Definition A matrix is in ***row echelon form*** if it satisfies the following properties:

1. Any rows consisting entirely of zeros are at the bottom.
2. In each nonzero row, the first nonzero entry (called the ***leading entry***) is in a column to the left of any leading entries below it.

Note that these properties guarantee that the leading entries form a staircase pattern. In particular, in any column containing a leading entry, all entries below the leading entry are zero, as the following examples illustrate.

Example 2.7

The following matrices are in row echelon form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

If a matrix in row echelon form is actually the augmented matrix of a linear system, the system is quite easy to solve by back substitution alone.

Example 2.8

Assuming that each of the matrices in Example 2.7 is an augmented matrix, write out the corresponding systems of linear equations and solve them.

Solution We first remind ourselves that the last column in an augmented matrix is the vector of constant terms. The first matrix then corresponds to the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + 4x_2 &= 1 \\ -x_2 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

(Notice that we have dropped the last equation $0 = 0$, or $0x_1 + 0x_2 = 0$, which is clearly satisfied for any values of x_1 and x_2.) Back substitution gives $x_2 = -2$ and then $2x_1 = 1 - 4(-2) = 9$, so $x_1 = \frac{9}{2}$. The solution is $[\frac{9}{2}, -2]$.

The second matrix has the corresponding system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \qquad &= 1 \\ x_2 &= 5 \\ 0 &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

The last equation represents $0x_1 + 0x_2 = 4$, which clearly has no solutions. Therefore, the system has no solutions. Similarly, the system corresponding to the fourth matrix has no solutions. For the system corresponding to the third matrix, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \\ x_3 &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

so $x_1 = 1 - 2(3) - x_2 = -5 - x_2$. There are infinitely many solutions, since we may assign x_2 any value t to get the parametric solution $[-5 - t, t, 3]$.

Elementary Row Operations

We now describe the procedure by which any matrix can be reduced to a matrix in row echelon form. The allowable operations, called ***elementary row operations,*** correspond to the operations that can be performed on a system of linear equations to transform it into an equivalent system.

Definition The following ***elementary row operations*** can be performed on a matrix:

1. Interchange two rows.
2. Multiply a row by a nonzero constant.
3. Add a multiple of a row to another row.

Observe that dividing a row by a nonzero constant is implied in the above definition, since, for example, dividing a row by 2 is the same as multiplying it by $\frac{1}{2}$. Similarly, subtracting a multiple of one row from another row is the same as adding a negative multiple of one row to another row.

We will use the following shorthand notation for the three elementary row operations:

1. $R_i \leftrightarrow R_j$ means interchange rows i and j.
2. kR_i means multiply row i by k.
3. $R_i + kR_j$ means add k times row j to row i (and replace row i with the result).

The process of applying elementary row operations to bring a matrix into row echelon form, called ***row reduction,*** is used to reduce a matrix to echelon form.

Example 2.9 Reduce the following matrix to echelon form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We work column by column, from left to right and from top to bottom. The strategy is to create a leading entry in a column and then use it to create zeros below it. The entry chosen to become a leading entry is called a ***pivot,*** and this phase of the process is called ***pivoting.*** Although not strictly necessary, it is often convenient to use the second elementary row operation to make each leading entry a 1.

We begin by introducing zeros into the first column below the leading 1 in the first row:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow[\substack{R_3 - 2R_1 \\ R_4 + R_1}]{R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 8 & -8 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 & 2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

The first column is now as we want it, so the next thing to do is to create a leading entry in the second row, aiming for the staircase pattern of echelon form. In this case, we do this by interchanging rows. (We could also add row 3 or row 4 to row 2.)

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 8 & -8 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 & 2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

The pivot this time was -1. We now create a zero at the bottom of column 2, using the leading entry -1 in row 2:

$$\xrightarrow{R_4 + 3R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 8 & -8 \\ 0 & 0 & 29 & 29 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Column 2 is now done. Noting that we already have a leading entry in column 3, we just pivot on the 8 to introduce a zero below it. This is easiest if we first divide row 3 by 8:

$$\xrightarrow{\frac{1}{8}R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 29 & 29 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now we use the leading 1 in row 3 to create a zero below it:

$$\xrightarrow{R_4 - 29R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 24 \end{bmatrix}$$

With this final step, we have reduced our matrix to echelon form.

Remarks

- The row echelon form of a matrix is not unique. (Find a different row echelon form for the matrix in Example 2.9.)

- The leading entry in each row is used to create the zeros below it.
- The pivots are not necessarily the entries that are originally in the positions eventually occupied by the leading entries. In Example 2.9, the pivots were $1, -1, 8$, and 24. The original matrix had $1, 4, 2$, and 5 in those positions on the "staircase."
- Once we have pivoted and introduced zeros below the leading entry in a column, that column does not change. In other words, the row echelon form emerges from left to right, top to bottom.

Elementary row operations are reversible—that is, they can be "undone." Thus, if some elementary row operation converts A into B, there is also an elementary row operation that converts B into A. (See Exercises 15 and 16.)

Definition Matrices A and B are ***row equivalent*** if there is a sequence of elementary row operations that converts A into B.

The matrices in Example 2.9,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 24 \end{bmatrix}$$

are row equivalent. In general, though, how can we tell whether two matrices are row equivalent?

Theorem 2.1 Matrices A and B are row equivalent if and only if they can be reduced to the same row echelon form.

Proof If A and B are row equivalent, then further row operations will reduce B (and therefore A) to the (same) row echelon form.

Conversely, if A and B have the same row echelon form R, then, via elementary row operations, we can convert A into R and B into R. Reversing the latter sequence of operations, we can convert R into B, and therefore the sequence $A \to R \to B$ achieves the desired effect.

Remark In practice, Theorem 2.1 is easiest to use if R is the *reduced* row echelon form of A and B, as defined on page 73. See Exercises 17 and 18.

Gaussian Elimination

When row reduction is applied to the augmented matrix of a system of linear equations, we create an equivalent system that can be solved by back substitution. The entire process is known as ***Gaussian elimination.***

Gaussian Elimination

1. Write the augmented matrix of the system of linear equations.
2. Use elementary row operations to reduce the augmented matrix to row echelon form.
3. Using back substitution, solve the equivalent system that corresponds to the row-reduced matrix.

Remark When performed by hand, step 2 of Gaussian elimination allows quite a bit of choice. Here are some useful guidelines:

(a) Locate the leftmost column that is not all zeros.

(b) Create a leading entry at the top of this column. (It will usually be easiest if you make this a leading 1. See Exercise 22.)

(c) Use the leading entry to create zeros below it.

(d) Cover up the row containing the leading entry, and go back to step (a) to repeat the procedure on the remaining submatrix. Stop when the entire matrix is in row echelon form.

Example 2.10

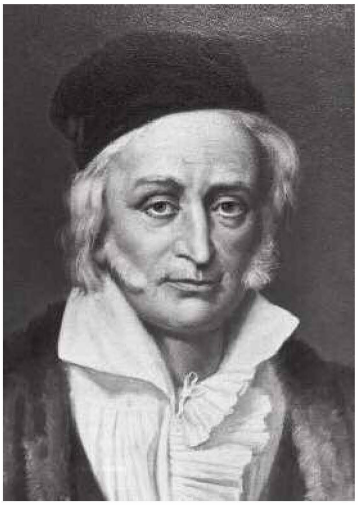
Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 8 \\ 2x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 &= 5 \\ x_1 - x_2 - 2x_3 &= -5 \end{aligned}$$

Solution The augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \end{array}\right]$$

We proceed to reduce this matrix to row echelon form, following the guidelines given for step 2 of the process. The first nonzero column is column 1. We begin by creating



Bettmann/CORBIS

Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855) is generally considered to be one of the three greatest mathematicians of all time, along with Archimedes and Newton. He is often called the "prince of mathematicians," a nickname that he richly deserves. A child prodigy, Gauss reportedly could do arithmetic before he could talk. At the age of 3, he corrected an error in his father's calculations for the company payroll, and as a young student, he found the formula $n(n + 1)/2$ for the sum of the first n natural numbers. When he was 19, he proved that a 17-sided polygon could be constructed using only a straightedge and a compass, and at the age of 21, he proved, in his doctoral dissertation, that every polynomial of degree n with real or complex coefficients has exactly n zeros, counting multiple zeros—the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra.

Gauss's 1801 publication *Disquisitiones Arithmeticae* is generally considered to be the foundation of modern number theory, but he made contributions to nearly every branch of mathematics as well as to statistics, physics, astronomy, and surveying. Gauss did not publish all of his findings, probably because he was too critical of his own work. He also did not like to teach and was often critical of other mathematicians, perhaps because he discovered—but did not publish—their results before they did.

The method called Gaussian elimination was known to the Chinese in the third century B.C. and was well known by Gauss's time. The method bears Gauss's name because of his use of it in a paper in which he solved a system of linear equations to describe the orbit of an asteroid.

a leading entry at the top of this column; interchanging rows 1 and 3 is the best way to achieve this.

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \end{array}\right]$$

We now create a second zero in the first column, using the leading 1:

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \\ 0 & 5 & 5 & 15 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \end{array}\right]$$

We now cover up the first row and repeat the procedure. The second column is the first nonzero column of the submatrix. Multiplying row 2 by $\frac{1}{5}$ will create a leading 1.

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \\ 0 & 5 & 5 & 15 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{\frac{1}{5}R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 & 8 \end{array}\right]$$

We now need another zero at the bottom of column 2:

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 - 2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & -2 & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{array}\right]$$

The augmented matrix is now in row echelon form, and we move to step 3. The corresponding system is

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 - 2x_3 &= -5 \\ x_2 + x_3 &= 3 \\ x_3 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

and back substitution gives $x_3 = 2$, then $x_2 = 3 - x_3 = 3 - 2 = 1$, and finally $x_1 = -5 + x_2 + 2x_3 = -5 + 1 + 4 = 0$. We write the solution in vector form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

(We are going to write the vector solutions of linear systems as column vectors from now on. The reason for this will become clear in Chapter 3.)

Example 2.11

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} w - x - y + 2z &= 1 \\ 2w - 2x - y + 3z &= 3 \\ -w + x - y &= -3 \end{aligned}$$

Solution The augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 & 3 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & -3 \end{array}\right]$$

which can be row reduced as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & -1 & 3 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 0 & -3 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow[R_3 + R_1]{R_2 - 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 2 & -2 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 + 2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

The associated system is now

$$\begin{aligned} w - x - y + 2z &= 1 \\ y - z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

which has infinitely many solutions. There is more than one way to assign parameters, but we will proceed to use back substitution, writing the variables corresponding to the leading entries (the ***leading variables***) in terms of the other variables (the ***free variables***).

In this case, the leading variables are w and y, and the free variables are x and z. Thus, $y = 1 + z$, and from this we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} w &= 1 + x + y - 2z \\ &= 1 + x + (1 + z) - 2z \\ &= 2 + x - z \end{aligned}$$

If we assign parameters $x = s$ and $z = t$, the solution can be written in vector form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} w \\ x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 + s - t \\ s \\ 1 + t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 2.11 highlights a very important property: In a consistent system, the free variables are just the variables that are not leading variables. Since the number of leading variables is the number of nonzero rows in the row echelon form of the coefficient matrix, we can predict the number of free variables (parameters) before we find the explicit solution using back substitution. In Chapter 3, we will prove that, although the row echelon form of a matrix is not unique, the number of nonzero rows is the same in *all* row echelon forms of a given matrix. Thus, it makes sense to give a name to this number.

Definition The ***rank*** of a matrix is the number of nonzero rows in its row echelon form.

We will denote the rank of a matrix A by rank(A). In Example 2.10, the rank of the coefficient matrix is 3, and in Example 2.11, the rank of the coefficient matrix is 2. The observations we have just made justify the following theorem, which we will prove in more generality in Chapters 3 and 6.

Theorem 2.2 **The Rank Theorem**

Let A be the coefficient matrix of a system of linear equations with n variables. If the system is consistent, then

$$\text{number of free variables} = n - \text{rank}(A)$$

Thus, in Example 2.10, we have $3 - 3 = 0$ free variables (in other words, a *unique* solution), and in Example 2.11, we have $4 - 2 = 2$ free variables, as we found.

Example 2.12

Solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 &= 3 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 &= -3 \\ 2x_2 - 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Solution When we row reduce the augmented matrix, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 & -3 \\ 0 & 2 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_2 - R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 3 & -3 & -6 \\ 0 & 2 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{\frac{1}{3}R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 2 & -2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 - 2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 \end{array}\right]$$

leading to the impossible equation $0 = 5$. (We could also have performed $R_3 - \frac{2}{3}R_2$ as the second elementary row operation, which would have given us the same contradiction but a different row echelon form.) Thus, the system has no solutions—it is inconsistent.

Wilhelm Jordan (1842–1899) was a German professor of geodesy whose contribution to solving linear systems was a systematic method of back substitution closely related to the method described here.

Gauss-Jordan Elimination

A modification of Gaussian elimination greatly simplifies the back substitution phase and is particularly helpful when calculations are being done by hand on a system with infinitely many solutions. This variant, known as ***Gauss-Jordan elimination,*** relies on reducing the augmented matrix even further.

Definition A matrix is in ***reduced row echelon form*** if it satisfies the following properties:

1. It is in row echelon form.
2. The leading entry in each nonzero row is a 1 (called a ***leading 1***).
3. Each column containing a leading 1 has zeros everywhere else.

The following matrix is in reduced row echelon form:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & -3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

For 2×2 matrices, the possible reduced row echelon forms are

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & * \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where * can be any number.

For a short proof that the reduced row echelon form of a matrix is unique, see the article by Thomas Yuster, "The Reduced Row Echelon Form of a Matrix Is Unique: A Simple Proof," in the March 1984 issue of *Mathematics Magazine* (vol. 57, no. 2, pp. 93–94).

It is clear that after a matrix has been reduced to echelon form, further elementary row operations will bring it to reduced row echelon form. What is not clear (although intuition may suggest it) is that, unlike the row echelon form, the reduced row echelon form of a matrix is *unique*.

In Gauss-Jordan elimination, we proceed as in Gaussian elimination but reduce the augmented matrix to *reduced* row echelon form.

Gauss-Jordan Elimination

1. Write the augmented matrix of the system of linear equations.
2. Use elementary row operations to reduce the augmented matrix to reduced row echelon form.
3. If the resulting system is consistent, solve for the leading variables in terms of any remaining free variables.

Example 2.13 Solve the system in Example 2.11 by Gauss-Jordan elimination.

Solution The reduction proceeds as it did in Example 2.11 until we reach the echelon form:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We now must create a zero above the leading 1 in the second row, third column. We do this by adding row 2 to row 1 to obtain

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

The system has now been reduced to

$$\begin{aligned} w - x + z &= 2 \\ y - z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

It is now much easier to solve for the leading variables:

$$w = 2 + x - z \qquad \text{and} \qquad y = 1 + z$$

If we assign parameters $x = s$ and $z = t$ as before, the solution can be written in vector form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} w \\ x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 + s - t \\ s \\ 1 + t \\ t \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark From a computational point of view, it is more efficient (in the sense that it requires fewer calculations) to first reduce the matrix to row echelon form and then, working from *right to left,* make each leading entry a 1 and create zeros above these leading 1s. However, for manual calculation, you will find it easier to just work from left to right and create the leading 1s and the zeros in their columns as you go.

Let's return to the geometry that brought us to this point. Just as systems of linear equations in two variables correspond to lines in $\mathbb{R}^2$, so linear equations in three variables correspond to planes in $\mathbb{R}^3$. In fact, many questions about lines and planes can be answered by solving an appropriate linear system.

Example 2.14

Find the line of intersection of the planes $x + 2y - z = 3$ and $2x + 3y + z = 1$.

Solution First, observe that there *will* be a line of intersection, since the normal vectors of the two planes—$[1, 2, -1]$ and $[2, 3, 1]$—are not parallel. The points that lie in the intersection of the two planes correspond to the points in the solution set of the system

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y - z &= 3 \\ 2x + 3y + z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Gauss-Jordan elimination applied to the augmented matrix yields

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & -5 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[-R_2]{R_1 + 2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 5 & -7 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 5 \end{array}\right]$$

Replacing variables, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x \qquad + 5z &= -7 \\ y - 3z &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

We set the free variable z equal to a parameter t and thus obtain the parametric equations of the line of intersection of the two planes:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= -7 - 5t \\ y &= 5 + 3t \\ z &= t \end{aligned}$$

In vector form, the equation is

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

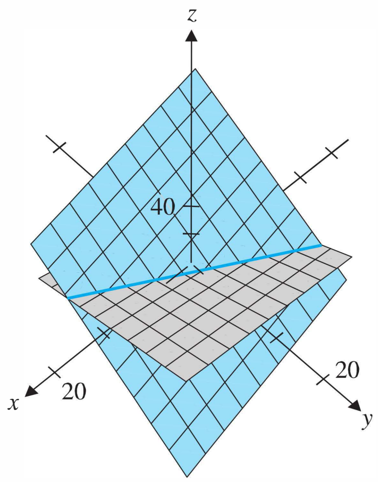


Figure 2.2
The intersection of two planes

See Figure 2.2.

Example 2.15

Let $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$. Determine whether the lines $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + t\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{q} + t\mathbf{v}$ intersect and, if so, find their point of intersection.

Solution We need to be careful here. Although t has been used as the parameter in the equations of both lines, the lines are independent and therefore so are their parameters. Let's use a different parameter—say, s—for the first line, so its equation becomes $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u}$. If the lines intersect, then we want to find an $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ that satisfies both equations simultaneously. That is, we want $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{q} + t\mathbf{v}$ or $s\mathbf{u} - t\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{q} - \mathbf{p}$.

Substituting the given $\mathbf{p}$, $\mathbf{q}$, $\mathbf{u}$, and $\mathbf{v}$, we obtain the equations

$$\begin{aligned} s - 3t &= -1 \\ s + t &= 2 \\ s + t &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

whose solution is easily found to be $s = \frac{5}{4}$, $t = \frac{3}{4}$. The point of intersection is therefore

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{5}{4}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{9}{4} \\ \frac{5}{4} \\ \frac{1}{4} \end{bmatrix}$$

See Figure 2.3. (Check that substituting $t = \frac{3}{4}$ in the other equation gives the same point.)

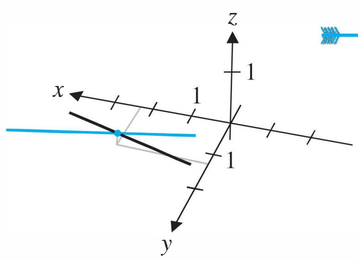


Figure 2.3
Two intersecting lines

Remark In $\mathbb{R}^3$, it is possible for two lines to intersect in a point, to be parallel, or to do neither. Nonparallel lines that do not intersect are called *skew lines*.

Homogeneous Systems

We have seen that every system of linear equations has either no solution, a unique solution, or infinitely many solutions. However, there is one type of system that always has at least one solution.

Definition A system of linear equations is called ***homogeneous*** if the constant term in each equation is zero.

In other words, a homogeneous system has an augmented matrix of the form $[A \mid \mathbf{0}]$. The following system is homogeneous:

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 3y - z &= 0 \\ -x + 5y + 2z &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Since a homogeneous system cannot have no solution (forgive the double negative!), it will have either a unique solution (namely, the zero, or trivial, solution) or infinitely many solutions. The next theorem says that the latter case *must* occur if the number of variables is greater than the number of equations.

Theorem 2.3 If $[A \mid \mathbf{0}]$ is a homogeneous system of m linear equations with n variables, where $m < n$, then the system has infinitely many solutions.

Proof Since the system has at least the zero solution, it is consistent. Also, $\text{rank}(A) \le m$ (why?). By the Rank Theorem, we have

$$\text{number of free variables} = n - \text{rank}(A) \ge n - m > 0$$

So there is at least one free variable and, hence, there are infinitely many solutions.

Note Theorem 2.3 says nothing about the case where $m \ge n$. Exercise 44 asks you to give examples to show that, in this case, there can be either a unique solution or infinitely many solutions.

$\mathbb{R}$ and $\mathbb{Z}_p$ are examples of *fields*. The set of rational numbers $\mathbb{Q}$ and the set of complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$ are other examples. Fields are covered in detail in courses in abstract algebra.

Linear Systems over $\mathbb{Z}_p$

Thus far, all of the linear systems we have encountered have involved real numbers, and the solutions have accordingly been vectors in some $\mathbb{R}^n$. We have seen how other number systems arise—notably, $\mathbb{Z}_p$. When p is a prime number, $\mathbb{Z}_p$ behaves in many respects like $\mathbb{R}$; in particular, we can add, subtract, multiply, and divide (by nonzero numbers). Thus, we can also solve systems of linear equations when the variables and coefficients belong to some $\mathbb{Z}_p$. In such instances, we refer to solving a system *over* $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

For example, the linear equation $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 1$, when viewed as an equation over $\mathbb{Z}_2$, has exactly four solutions:

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(where the last solution arises because $1 + 1 + 1 = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_2$).

When we view the equation $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 1$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$, the solutions $\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$ are

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Check these.)

But we need not use trial-and-error methods; row reduction of augmented matrices works just as well over $\mathbb{Z}_p$ as over $\mathbb{R}$.

Example 2.16

Solve the following system of linear equations over $\mathbb{Z}_3$:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_3 &= 2 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Solution The first thing to note in examples like this one is that subtraction and division are not needed; we can accomplish the same effects using addition and multiplication. (This, however, requires that we be working over $\mathbb{Z}_p$, where p is a prime; see Exercise 60 at the end of this section and Exercise 57 in Section 1.1.)

We row reduce the augmented matrix of the system, using calculations modulo 3.

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_2 + 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_3 + 2R_2]{R_1 + R_2} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[2R_3]{R_1+R_3} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, the solution is $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2, x_3 = 1$.

Example 2.17

Solve the following system of linear equations over $\mathbb{Z}_2$:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 &= 1 \\ x_1 + x_2 &= 1 \\ x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_1 + x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Solution The row reduction proceeds as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow[R_5+R_1]{R_2+R_1} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[\substack{R_1+R_2 \\ R_5+R_2}]{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_4+R_3]{R_2+R_3} \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Therefore, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + x_4 &= 1 \\ x_2 + x_4 &= 0 \\ x_3 + x_4 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Setting the free variable $x_4 = t$ yields

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1+t \\ t \\ t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since t can take on the two values 0 and 1, there are exactly two solutions:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark For linear systems over $\mathbb{Z}_p$, there can never be infinitely many solutions. (Why not?) Rather, when there is more than one solution, the number of solutions is finite and is a function of the number of free variables and p. (See Exercise 59.)

Exercises 2.2

In Exercises 1–8, determine whether the given matrix is in row echelon form. If it is, state whether it is also in reduced row echelon form.

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $\begin{bmatrix} 7 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 5 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 9–14, use elementary row operations to reduce the given matrix to (a) row echelon form and (b) reduced row echelon form.

9. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

11. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 5 \\ 5 & -2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & -2 & 6 \\ 3 & 1 & 6 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

13. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 4 & -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & -4 & 7 \\ -3 & -6 & 10 \\ 1 & 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

15. Reverse the elementary row operations used in Example 2.9 to show that we can convert

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & -1 & 10 & 9 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 24 \end{bmatrix} \text{ into}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -4 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

16. In general, what is the elementary row operation that "undoes" each of the three elementary row operations $R_i \leftrightarrow R_j$, kR_i, and $R_i + kR_j$?

In Exercises 17 and 18, show that the given matrices are row equivalent and find a sequence of elementary row operations that will convert A into B.

17. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

18. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 5 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

19. What is wrong with the following "proof" that every matrix with at least two rows is row equivalent to a matrix with a zero row?

Perform $R_2 + R_1$ and $R_1 + R_2$. Now rows 1 and 2 are identical. Now perform $R_2 - R_1$ to obtain a row of zeros in the second row.

20. What is the net effect of performing the following sequence of elementary row operations on a matrix (with at least two rows)?

$$R_2 + R_1, R_1 - R_2, R_2 + R_1, -R_1$$

21. Students frequently perform the following type of calculation to introduce a zero into a matrix:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{3R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

However, $3R_2 - 2R_1$ is *not* an elementary row operation. Why not? Show how to achieve the same result using elementary row operations.

22. Consider the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$. Show that any of the three types of elementary row operations can be used to create a leading 1 at the top of the first column. Which do you prefer and why?

23. What is the rank of each of the matrices in Exercises 1–8?

24. What are the possible reduced row echelon forms of 3×3 matrices?

In Exercises 25–34, solve the given system of equations using either Gaussian or Gauss-Jordan elimination.

25.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 - 3x_3 &= 9 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ 4x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

26.
$$\begin{aligned} x - y + z &= 0 \\ -x + 3y + z &= 5 \\ 3x + y + 7z &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

27.
$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 3x_2 - 2x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + 4x_2 + 6x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

28.
$$\begin{aligned} 2w + 3x - y + 4z &= 1 \\ 3w - x + z &= 1 \\ 3w - 4x + y - z &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

29.
$$\begin{aligned} 2r + s &= 3 \\ 4r + s &= 7 \\ 2r + 5s &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

30.
$$\begin{aligned} -x_1 + 3x_2 - 2x_3 + 4x_4 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 - 6x_2 + x_3 - 2x_4 &= -3 \\ x_1 - 3x_2 + 4x_3 - 8x_4 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

31.
$$\begin{aligned} \tfrac{1}{2}x_1 + x_2 - x_3 - 6x_4 \qquad &= 2 \\ \tfrac{1}{6}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{2}x_2 \qquad - 3x_4 + x_5 &= -1 \\ \tfrac{1}{3}x_1 \qquad - 2x_3 \qquad - 4x_5 &= 8 \end{aligned}$$

32.
$$\begin{aligned} \sqrt{2}x + y + 2z &= 1 \\ \sqrt{2}y - 3z &= -\sqrt{2} \\ -y + \sqrt{2}z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

33.
$$\begin{aligned} w + x + 2y + z &= 1 \\ w - x - y + z &= 0 \\ x + y \qquad &= -1 \\ w + x \qquad + z &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

34.
$$\begin{aligned} a + b + c + d &= 4 \\ a + 2b + 3c + 4d &= 10 \\ a + 3b + 6c + 10d &= 20 \\ a + 4b + 10c + 20d &= 35 \end{aligned}$$

In Exercises 35–38, determine by inspection (i.e., without performing any calculations) whether a linear system with the given augmented matrix has a unique solution, infinitely many solutions, or no solution. Justify your answers.

35. $\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$

36. $\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 3 & -2 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -3 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 4 & -6 & 2 & 0 \end{array}\right]$

37. $\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 0 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 & 8 & 0 \\ 9 & 10 & 11 & 12 & 0 \end{array}\right]$

38. $\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 6 & 5 & 4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 7 & 7 & 7 & 7 & 7 & 7 \end{array}\right]$

39. Show that if $ad - bc \neq 0$, then the system

$$\begin{aligned} ax + by &= r \\ cx + dy &= s \end{aligned}$$

has a unique solution.

In Exercises 40–43, for what value(s) of k, if any, will the systems have (a) no solution, (b) a unique solution, and (c) infinitely many solutions?

40. $\begin{aligned} kx + 2y &= 3 \\ 2x - 4y &= -6 \end{aligned}$

41. $\begin{aligned} x + ky &= 1 \\ kx + y &= 1 \end{aligned}$

42. $\begin{aligned} x - 2y + 3z &= 2 \\ x + y + z &= k \\ 2x - y + 4z &= k^2 \end{aligned}$

43. $\begin{aligned} x + y + kz &= 1 \\ x + ky + z &= 1 \\ kx + y + z &= -2 \end{aligned}$

44. Give examples of homogeneous systems of m linear equations in n variables with $m = n$ and with $m > n$ that have (a) infinitely many solutions and (b) a unique solution.

In Exercises 45 and 46, find the line of intersection of the given planes.

45. $3x + 2y + z = -1$ and $2x - y + 4z = 5$

46. $4x + y + z = 0$ and $2x - y + 3z = 2$

47. (a) Give an example of three planes that have a common line of intersection (Figure 2.4).

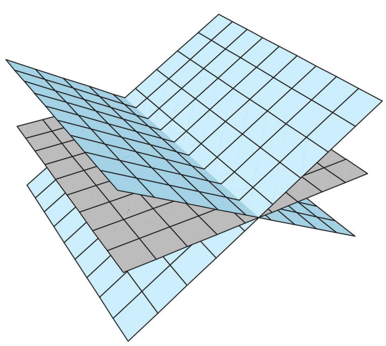


Figure 2.4

(b) Give an example of three planes that intersect in pairs but have no common point of intersection (Figure 2.5).

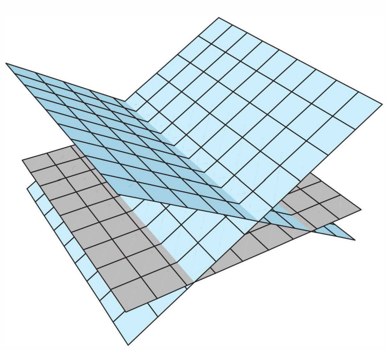


Figure 2.5

(c) Give an example of three planes, exactly two of which are parallel (Figure 2.6).

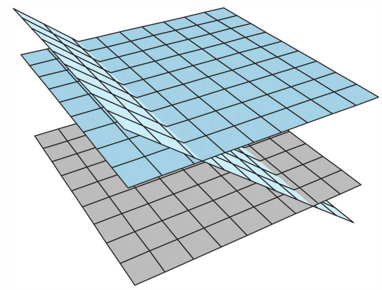


Figure 2.6

(d) Give an example of three planes that intersect in a single point (Figure 2.7).

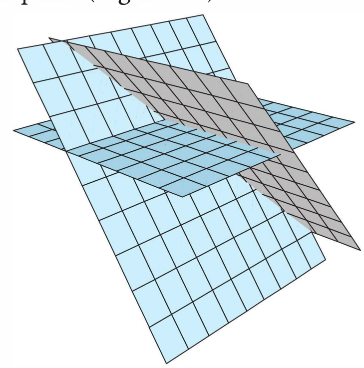


Figure 2.7

In Exercises 48 and 49, determine whether the lines $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u}$ *and* $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{q} + t\mathbf{v}$ *intersect and, if they do, find their point of intersection.*

48. $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

49. $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

50. Let $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Describe all points $Q = (a, b, c)$ such that the line through Q with direction vector $\mathbf{v}$ intersects the line with equation $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u}$.

51. Recall that the cross product of vectors **u** and **v** is a vector $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ that is orthogonal to both **u** and **v**. (See Exploration: The Cross Product in Chapter 1.) If

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

show that there are infinitely many vectors

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

that simultaneously satisfy $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0$ and $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{x} = 0$ and that all are multiples of

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} u_2v_3 - u_3v_2 \\ u_3v_1 - u_1v_3 \\ u_1v_2 - u_2v_1 \end{bmatrix}$$

52. Let $\mathbf{p} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{q} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 6 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Show that the lines $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{p} + s\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{q} + t\mathbf{v}$ are skew lines. Find vector equations of a pair of parallel planes, one containing each line.

In Exercises 53–58, solve the systems of linear equations over the indicated $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

53. $\begin{aligned} x + 2y &= 1 \\ x + y &= 2 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$

54. $\begin{aligned} x + y &= 1 \\ y + z &= 0 \\ x + z &= 1 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_2$

55. $\begin{aligned} x + y &= 1 \\ y + z &= 0 \\ x + z &= 1 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$

56. $\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 1 \\ x + 4y &= 1 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$

57. $\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 1 \\ x + 4y &= 1 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_7$

58. $\begin{aligned} x_1 + 4x_4 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 &= 3 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 + x_4 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 3x_3 &= 2 \end{aligned}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$

59. Prove the following corollary to the Rank Theorem: Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix with entries in $\mathbb{Z}_p$. Any consistent system of linear equations with coefficient matrix A has exactly $p^{n-\operatorname{rank}(A)}$ solutions over $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

60. When p is not prime, extra care is needed in solving a linear system (or, indeed, any equation) over $\mathbb{Z}_p$. Using Gaussian elimination, solve the following system over $\mathbb{Z}_6$. What complications arise?

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 3y &= 4 \\ 4x + 3y &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

Writing Project

A History of Gaussian Elimination

As noted in the biographical sketch of Gauss in this section, Gauss did not actually "invent" the method known as Gaussian elimination. It was known in some form as early as the third century B.C. and appears in the mathematical writings of cultures throughout Europe and Asia.

Write a report on the history of elimination methods for solving systems of linear equations. What role did Gauss actually play in this history, and why is his name attached to the method?

1. S. Athloen and R. McLaughlin, Gauss-Jordan reduction: A brief history, *American Mathematical Monthly* 94 (1987), pp. 130–142.
2. Joseph F. Grcar, Mathematicians of Gaussian Elimination, *Notices of the AMS*, Vol. 58, No. 6 (2011), pp. 782–792. (Available online at http://www.ams.org/notices/201106/index.html)
3. Roger Hart, *The Chinese Roots of Linear Algebra* (Baltimore: Johns Hopkins University Press, 2011).
4. Victor J. Katz, *A History of Mathematics: An Introduction* (Third Edition) (Reading, MA: Addison Wesley Longman, 2008).

Explorations

CAS Lies My Computer Told Me

Computers and calculators store real numbers in *floating-point form*. For example, 2001 is stored as 0.2001×10^4, and -0.00063 is stored as -0.63×10^{-3}. In general, the floating-point form of a number is $\pm M \times 10^k$, where k is an integer and the *mantissa* M is a (decimal) real number that satisfies $0.1 \le M < 1$.

The maximum number of decimal places that can be stored in the mantissa depends on the computer, calculator, or computer algebra system. If the maximum number of decimal places that can be stored is d, we say that there are d *significant digits*. Many calculators store 8 or 12 significant digits; computers can store more but still are subject to a limit. Any digits that are not stored are either omitted (in which case we say that the number has been *truncated*) or used to *round* the number to d significant digits.

For example, $\pi \approx 3.141592654$, and its floating-point form is 0.3141592654×10^1. In a computer that truncates to five significant digits, π would be stored as 0.31415×10^1 (and displayed as 3.1415); a computer that rounds to five significant digits would store π as 0.31416×10^1 (and display 3.1416). When the dropped digit is a solitary 5, the last remaining digit is rounded so that it becomes even. Thus, rounded to two significant digits, 0.735 becomes 0.74 while 0.725 becomes 0.72.

Whenever truncation or rounding occurs, a *roundoff error* is introduced, which can have a dramatic effect on the calculations. The more operations that are performed, the more the error accumulates. Sometimes, unfortunately, there is nothing we can do about this. This exploration illustrates this phenomenon with very simple systems of linear equations.

1. Solve the following system of linear equations *exactly* (that is, work with rational numbers throughout the calculations).

$$\begin{aligned} x + \phantom{\tfrac{801}{800}}y &= 0 \\ x + \tfrac{801}{800}y &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

2. As a decimal, $\frac{801}{800} = 1.00125$, so, rounded to five significant digits, the system becomes

$$\begin{aligned} x + y &= 0 \\ x + 1.0012y &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Using your calculator or CAS, solve this system, rounding the result of every calculation to five significant digits.

3. Solve the system two more times, rounding first to four significant digits and then to three significant digits. What happens?

4. Clearly, a very small roundoff error (less than or equal to 0.00125) can result in very large errors in the solution. Explain why geometrically. (Think about the graphs of the various linear systems you solved in Problems 1–3.)

Systems such as the one you just worked with are called ***ill-conditioned.*** They are extremely sensitive to roundoff errors, and there is not much we can do about it. We will encounter ill-conditioned systems again in Chapters 3 and 7. Here is another example to experiment with:

$$\begin{aligned} 4.552x + 7.083y &= 1.931 \\ 1.731x + 2.693y &= 2.001 \end{aligned}$$

Play around with various numbers of significant digits to see what happens, starting with eight significant digits (if you can).

Partial Pivoting

In Exploration: Lies My Computer Told Me, we saw that ill-conditioned linear systems can cause trouble when roundoff error occurs. In this exploration, you will discover another way in which linear systems are sensitive to roundoff error and see that very small changes in the coefficients can lead to huge inaccuracies in the solution. Fortunately, there is something that can be done to minimize or even eliminate this problem (unlike the problem with ill-conditioned systems).

1. (a) Solve the single linear equation $0.00021x = 1$ for x.

   (b) Suppose your calculator can carry only four decimal places. The equation will be rounded to $0.0002x = 1$. Solve this equation.

The difference between the answers in parts (a) and (b) can be thought of as the effect of an error of 0.00001 on the solution of the given equation.

2. Now extend this idea to a system of linear equations.

   (a) With Gaussian elimination, solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 0.400x + 99.6y &= 100 \\ 75.3x - 45.3y &= 30.0 \end{aligned}$$

   using three significant digits. Begin by pivoting on 0.400 and take each calculation to three significant digits. You should obtain the "solution" $x = -1.00$, $y = 1.01$. Check that the actual solution is $x = 1.00$, $y = 1.00$. This is a huge error—200% in the x value! Can you discover what caused it?

   (b) Solve the system in part (a) again, this time interchanging the two equations (or, equivalently, the two rows of its augmented matrix) and pivoting on 75.3. Again, take each calculation to three significant digits. What is the solution this time?

The moral of the story is that, when using Gaussian or Gauss-Jordan elimination to obtain a numerical solution to a system of linear equations (i.e., a decimal approximation), you should choose the pivots with care. Specifically, at each pivoting step, choose from among all possible pivots in a column the entry with the largest absolute value. Use row interchanges to bring this element into the correct position and use it to create zeros where needed in the column. This strategy is known as ***partial pivoting.***

3. Solve the following systems by Gaussian elimination, first without and then with partial pivoting. Take each calculation to three significant digits. (The exact solutions are given.)

(a)
$$\begin{aligned} 0.001x + 0.995y &= 1.00 \\ -10.2x + 1.00y &= -50.0 \end{aligned}$$

Exact solution: $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5.00 \\ 1.00 \end{bmatrix}$

(b)
$$\begin{aligned} 10x - 7y \phantom{{}+6z} &= 7 \\ -3x + 2.09y + 6z &= 3.91 \\ 5x - y + 5z &= 6 \end{aligned}$$

Exact solution: $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.00 \\ -1.00 \\ 1.00 \end{bmatrix}$

Counting Operations: An Introduction to the Analysis of Algorithms

Gaussian and Gauss-Jordan elimination are examples of ***algorithms:*** systematic procedures designed to implement a particular task—in this case, the row reduction of the augmented matrix of a system of linear equations. Algorithms are particularly well suited to computer implementation, but not all algorithms are created equal. Apart from the speed, memory, and other attributes of the computer system on which they are running, some algorithms are faster than others. One measure of the so-called *complexity* of an algorithm (a measure of its efficiency, or ability to perform its task in a reasonable number of steps) is the number of basic operations it performs as a function of the number of variables that are input.

Abu Ja'far Muhammad ibn Musa al-Khwarizmi (c. 780–850) was a Persian mathematician whose book *Hisab al-jabr w'al muqabalah* (c. 825) described the use of Hindu-Arabic numerals and the rules of basic arithmetic. The second word of the book's title gives rise to the English word *algebra*, and the word *algorithm* is derived from al-Khwarizmi's name.

Let's examine this proposition in the case of the two algorithms we have for solving a linear system: Gaussian and Gauss-Jordan elimination. For our purposes, the basic operations are multiplication and division; we will assume that all other operations are performed much more rapidly and can be ignored. (This is a reasonable assumption, but we will not attempt to justify it.) We will consider only systems of equations with *square* coefficient matrices, so, if the coefficient matrix is $n \times n$, the number of input variables is n. Thus, our task is to find the number of operations performed by Gaussian and Gauss-Jordan elimination as a function of n. Furthermore, we will not worry about special cases that may arise, but rather establish the *worst case* that can arise—when the algorithm takes as long as possible. Since this will give us an estimate of the time it will take a computer to perform the algorithm (if we know how long it takes a computer to perform a single operation), we will denote the number of operations performed by an algorithm by $T(n)$. We will typically be interested in $T(n)$ for large values of n, so comparing this function for different algorithms will allow us to determine which will take less time to execute.

1. Consider the augmented matrix

$$[A \mid \mathbf{b}] = \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 2 & 4 & 6 & 8 \\ 3 & 9 & 6 & 12 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Count the number of operations required to bring $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ to the row echelon form

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

(By "operation" we mean a multiplication or a division.) Now count the number of operations needed to complete the back substitution phase of Gaussian elimination. Record the total number of operations.

2. Count the number of operations needed to perform Gauss-Jordan elimination—that is, to reduce $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ to its reduced row echelon form

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

(where the zeros are introduced into each column immediately after the leading 1 is created in that column). What do your answers suggest about the relative efficiency of the two algorithms?

We will now attempt to analyze the algorithms in a general, systematic way. Suppose the augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ arises from a linear system with n equations and n variables; thus, $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ is $n \times (n + 1)$:

$$[A \mid \mathbf{b}] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} & b_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right]$$

We will assume that row interchanges are never needed—that we can always create a leading 1 from a pivot by dividing by the pivot.

3. (a) Show that n operations are needed to create the first leading 1:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} & b_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} & b_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right]$$

(Why don't we need to count an operation for the creation of the leading 1?) Now show that n operations are needed to obtain the first zero in column 1:

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ 0 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} & b_n \end{array}\right]$$

(Why don't we need to count an operation for the creation of the zero itself?) When the first column has been "swept out," we have the matrix

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ 0 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & * & \cdots & * & * \end{array}\right]$$

Show that the total number of operations needed up to this point is $n + (n-1)n$.

(b) Show that the total number of operations needed to reach the row echelon form

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & * & * \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & * \end{array}\right]$$

is

$$[n + (n-1)n] + [(n-1) + (n-2)(n-1)] + [(n-2) + (n-3)(n-2)] \\ + \cdots + [2 + 1 \cdot 2] + 1$$

which simplifies to

$$n^2 + (n-1)^2 + \cdots + 2^2 + 1^2$$

(c) Show that the number of operations needed to complete the back substitution phase is

$$1 + 2 + \cdots + (n-1)$$

(d) Using summation formulas for the sums in parts (b) and (c) (see Exercises 51 and 52 in Section 2.4 and Appendix B), show that the total number of operations, $T(n)$, performed by Gaussian elimination is

$$T(n) = \tfrac{1}{3}n^3 + n^2 - \tfrac{1}{3}n$$

Since every polynomial function is dominated by its leading term for large values of the variable, we see that $T(n) \approx \frac{1}{3}n^3$ for large values of n.

4. Show that Gauss-Jordan elimination has $T(n) \approx \frac{1}{2}n^3$ total operations if we create zeros above and below the leading 1s as we go. (This shows that, for large systems of linear equations, Gaussian elimination is faster than this version of Gauss-Jordan elimination.)

2.3 Spanning Sets and Linear Independence

The second of the three roads in our "trivium" is concerned with linear combinations of vectors. We have seen that we can view solving a system of linear equations as asking whether a certain vector is a linear combination of certain other vectors. We explore this idea in more detail in this section. It leads to some very important concepts, which we will encounter repeatedly in later chapters.

Spanning Sets of Vectors

We can now easily answer the question raised in Section 1.1: When is a given vector a linear combination of other given vectors?

Example 2.18

(a) Is the vector $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ a linear combination of the vectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$?

(b) Is $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ a linear combination of the vectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$?

Solution

(a) We want to find scalars x and y such that

$$x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Expanding, we obtain the system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ y &= 2 \\ 3x - 3y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

whose augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 3 \end{array}\right]$$

(Observe that the columns of the augmented matrix are just the given vectors; notice the order of the vectors—in particular, which vector is the constant vector.)

The reduced echelon form of this matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

(Verify this.) So the solution is $x = 3$, $y = 2$, and the corresponding linear combination is

$$3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + 2\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) Utilizing our observation in part (a), we obtain a linear system whose augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -3 & 4 \end{array}\right]$$

which reduces to

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{array}\right]$$

revealing that the system has no solution. Thus, in this case, $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ is not a linear combination of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$.

The notion of a spanning set is intimately connected with the solution of linear systems. Look back at Example 2.18. There we saw that a system with augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ has a solution precisely when $\mathbf{b}$ is a linear combination of the columns of A. This is a general fact, summarized in the next theorem.

Theorem 2.4 A system of linear equations with augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ is consistent if and only if $\mathbf{b}$ is a linear combination of the columns of A.

Let's revisit Example 2.4, interpreting it in light of Theorem 2.4.

(a) The system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ x + y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

has the unique solution $x = 2$, $y = 1$. Thus,

$$2\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

See Figure 2.8(a).

(b) The system

$$\begin{aligned} x - \ \ y &= 2 \\ 2x - 2y &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

has infinitely many solutions of the form $x = 2 + t$, $y = t$. This implies that

$$(2 + t)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

for all values of t. Geometrically, the vectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ are all parallel and so all lie along the same line through the origin [see Figure 2.8(b)].

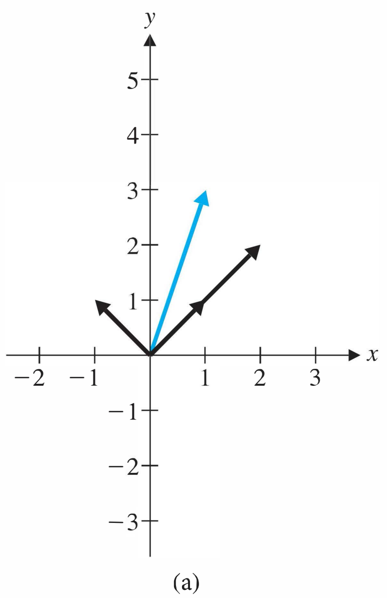


Figure 2.8

(c) The system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 1 \\ x - y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

has no solutions, so there are no values of x and y that satisfy

$$x\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix}-1\\-1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix}$$

In this case, $\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\-1\end{bmatrix}$ are parallel, but $\begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix}$ does not lie along the same line through the origin [see Figure 2.8(c)].

We will often be interested in the collection of *all* linear combinations of a given set of vectors.

Definition If $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is a set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then the set of all linear combinations of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ is called the ***span*** of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ and is denoted by $\text{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k)$ or $\text{span}(S)$. If $\text{span}(S) = \mathbb{R}^n$, then S is called a ***spanning set*** for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Example 2.19

Show that $\mathbb{R}^2 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix}2\\-1\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix}\right)$.

Solution We need to show that an arbitrary vector $\begin{bmatrix}a\\b\end{bmatrix}$ can be written as a linear combination of $\begin{bmatrix}2\\-1\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix}$; that is, we must show that the equation $x\begin{bmatrix}2\\-1\end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}a\\b\end{bmatrix}$ can always be solved for x and y (in terms of a and b), regardless of the values of a and b.

The augmented matrix is $\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 2 & 1 & a \\ -1 & 3 & b \end{array}\right]$, and row reduction produces

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 2 & 1 & a \\ -1 & 3 & b \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} -1 & 3 & b \\ 2 & 1 & a \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_2 + 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rr|c} -1 & 3 & b \\ 0 & 7 & a + 2b \end{array}\right]$$

at which point it is clear that the system has a (unique) solution. (Why?) If we continue, we obtain

$$\xrightarrow{\frac{1}{7}R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rr|c} -1 & 3 & b \\ 0 & 1 & (a + 2b)/7 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_1 - 3R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rr|c} -1 & 0 & (b - 3a)/7 \\ 0 & 1 & (a + 2b)/7 \end{array}\right]$$

from which we see that $x = (3a - b)/7$ and $y = (a + 2b)/7$. Thus, for any choice of a and b, we have

$$\left(\frac{3a - b}{7}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + \left(\frac{a + 2b}{7}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$$

(Check this.)

Remark It is also true that $\mathbb{R}^2 = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}\right)$: If, given $\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$, we can find x and y such that $x\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$, then we also have $x\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + 0\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$. In fact, any set of vectors that *contains* a spanning set for $\mathbb{R}^2$ will also be a spanning set for $\mathbb{R}^2$ (see Exercise 20).

The next example is an important (easy) case of a spanning set. We will encounter versions of this example many times.

Example 2.20

Let $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ be the standard unit vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Then for any vector $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + z\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = x\mathbf{e}_1 + y\mathbf{e}_2 + z\mathbf{e}_3$$

Thus, $\mathbb{R}^3 = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{e}_3)$.

You should have no difficulty seeing that, in general, $\mathbb{R}^n = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n)$.

When the span of a set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is not all of $\mathbb{R}^n$, it is reasonable to ask for a description of the vectors' span.

Example 2.21

Find the span of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$. (See Example 2.18.)

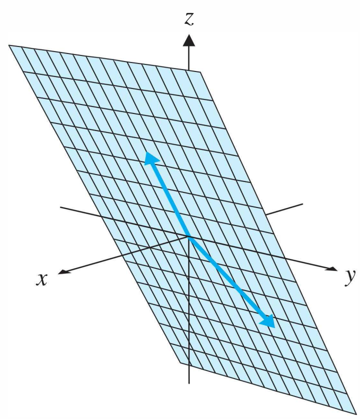


Figure 2.9
Two nonparallel vectors span a plane

Solution Thinking geometrically, we can see that the set of all linear combinations of $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix}$ is just the plane through the origin with $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix}$ as direction vectors (Figure 2.9). The vector equation of this plane is $\begin{bmatrix}x\\y\\z\end{bmatrix} = s\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix}$, which is just another way of saying that $\begin{bmatrix}x\\y\\z\end{bmatrix}$ is in the span of $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix}$.

Suppose we want to obtain the general equation of this plane. There are several ways to proceed. One is to use the fact that the equation $ax + by + cz = 0$ must be satisfied by the points $(1, 0, 3)$ and $(-1, 1, -3)$ determined by the direction vectors. Substitution then leads to a system of equations in a, b, and c. (See Exercise 17.)

Another method is to use the system of equations arising from the vector equation:

$$\begin{aligned} s - t &= x \\ t &= y \\ 3s - 3t &= z \end{aligned}$$

If we row reduce the augmented matrix, we obtain

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|c} 1 & -1 & x \\ 0 & 1 & y \\ 3 & -3 & z \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_3 - 3R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rr|c} 1 & -1 & x \\ 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 0 & z - 3x \end{array}\right]$$

Now we know that this system is consistent, since $\begin{bmatrix}x\\y\\z\end{bmatrix}$ *is* in the span of $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix}$ by assumption. So we *must* have $z - 3x = 0$ (or $3x - z = 0$, in more standard form), giving us the general equation we seek.

Remark A normal vector to the plane in this example is also given by the cross product

$$\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}-3\\0\\1\end{bmatrix}$$

Linear Independence

In Example 2.18, we found that $3\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\3\end{bmatrix} + 2\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\\-3\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}1\\2\\3\end{bmatrix}$. Let's abbreviate this equation as $3\mathbf{u} + 2\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{w}$. The vector $\mathbf{w}$ "depends" on $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in the sense that it is a linear combination of them. We say that a set of vectors is ***linearly dependent*** if one of them can be written as a linear combination of the others. Note that we also have $\mathbf{u} = -\frac{2}{3}\mathbf{v} + \frac{1}{3}\mathbf{w}$ and $\mathbf{v} = -\frac{3}{2}\mathbf{u} + \frac{1}{2}\mathbf{w}$. To get around the question of which vector to express in terms of the rest, the formal definition is stated as follows:

Definition A set of vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ is ***linearly dependent*** if there are scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$, *at least one of which is not zero*, such that

$$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$$

A set of vectors that is not linearly dependent is called ***linearly independent.***

Remarks

- In the definition of linear dependence, the requirement that at least one of the scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ must be nonzero allows for the possibility that some may be zero. In the example above, $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are linearly dependent, since $3\mathbf{u} + 2\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w} = \mathbf{0}$ and, in fact, *all* of the scalars are nonzero. On the other hand,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} - 2\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + 0\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

so $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ are linearly dependent, since at least one (in fact, two) of the three scalars $1, -2$, and 0 is nonzero. (Note that the actual dependence arises simply from the fact that the first two vectors are multiples.) (See Exercise 44.)

- Since $0\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$ for *any* vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$, linear dependence essentially says that the zero vector can be expressed as a *nontrivial* linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$. Thus, linear independence means that the zero vector can be expressed as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ *only* in the trivial way: $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$ only if $c_1 = 0, c_2 = 0, \ldots, c_k = 0$.

The relationship between the intuitive notion of dependence and the formal definition is given in the next theorem. Happily, the two notions are equivalent!

Theorem 2.5 Vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ are linearly dependent if and only if at least one of the vectors can be expressed as a linear combination of the others.

Proof If one of the vectors—say, $\mathbf{v}_1$—is a linear combination of the others, then there are scalars $c_2, \ldots, c_m$ such that $\mathbf{v}_1 = c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{v}_m$. Rearranging, we obtain $\mathbf{v}_1 - c_2\mathbf{v}_2 - \cdots - c_m\mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$, which implies that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent, since at least one of the scalars (namely, the coefficient 1 of $\mathbf{v}_1$) is nonzero.

Conversely, suppose that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent. Then there are scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_m$, not all zero, such that $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$. Suppose $c_1 \neq 0$. Then

$$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 = -c_2\mathbf{v}_2 - \cdots - c_m\mathbf{v}_m$$

and we may multiply both sides by $1/c_1$ to obtain $\mathbf{v}_1$ as a linear combination of the other vectors:

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = -\left(\frac{c_2}{c_1}\right)\mathbf{v}_2 - \cdots - \left(\frac{c_m}{c_1}\right)\mathbf{v}_m$$

Note It may appear as if we are cheating a bit in this proof. After all, we cannot be sure that $\mathbf{v}_1$ is a linear combination of the other vectors, nor that c_1 is nonzero. However, the argument is analogous for some other vector $\mathbf{v}_i$ or for a different scalar c_j. Alternatively, we can just relabel things so that they work out as in the above proof. In a situation like this, a mathematician might begin by saying, "without loss of generality, we may assume that $\mathbf{v}_1$ is a linear combination of the other vectors" and then proceed as above.

Example 2.22

Any set of vectors containing the zero vector is linearly dependent. For if $\mathbf{0}, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then we can find a nontrivial combination of the form $c_1\mathbf{0} + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$ by setting $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = c_3 = \cdots = c_m = 0$.

Example 2.23

Determine whether the following sets of vectors are linearly independent:

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution In answering any question of this type, it is a good idea to see if you can determine by inspection whether one vector is a linear combination of the others. A little thought may save a lot of computation!

(a) The only way two vectors can be linearly dependent is if one is a multiple of the other. (Why?) These two vectors are clearly not multiples, so they are linearly independent.

(b) There is no obvious dependence relation here, so we try to find scalars c_1, c_2, c_3 such that

$$c_1\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The corresponding linear system is

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + \; c_3 &= 0 \\ c_1 + c_2 &= 0 \\ c_2 + c_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

and the augmented matrix is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Once again, we make the fundamental observation that the columns of the coefficient matrix are just the vectors in question!

The reduced row echelon form is

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

(check this), so $c_1 = 0$, $c_2 = 0$, $c_3 = 0$. Thus, the given vectors are linearly independent.

(c) A little reflection reveals that

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

so the three vectors are linearly dependent. [Set up a linear system as in part (b) to check this algebraically.]

(d) Once again, we observe no obvious dependence, so we proceed directly to reduce a homogeneous linear system whose augmented matrix has as its columns the given vectors:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & 0 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & 0 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow[-R_2]{\substack{R_1 + R_2 \\ R_3 - R_2}} \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

If we let the scalars be c_1, c_2, and c_3, we have

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 \quad + 3c_3 &= 0 \\ c_2 - 2c_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

from which we see that the system has infinitely many solutions. In particular, there must be a nonzero solution, so the given vectors are linearly dependent.

If we continue, we can describe these solutions exactly: $c_1 = -3c_3$ and $c_2 = 2c_3$. Thus, for any nonzero value of c_3, we have the linear dependence relation

$$-3c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + 2c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Once again, check that this is correct.)

We summarize this procedure for testing for linear independence as a theorem.

Theorem 2.6 Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ be (column) vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let A be the $n \times m$ matrix $[\mathbf{v}_1\ \mathbf{v}_2\ \cdots\ \mathbf{v}_m]$ with these vectors as its columns. Then $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent if and only if the homogeneous linear system with augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{0}]$ has a nontrivial solution.

Proof $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent if and only if there are scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_m$, not all zero, such that $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{v}_m = \mathbf{0}$. By Theorem 2.4, this is equivalent to saying that the nonzero vector $\begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ \vdots \\ c_m \end{bmatrix}$ is a solution of the system whose augmented matrix is $[\mathbf{v}_1\ \mathbf{v}_2 \cdots \mathbf{v}_m \mid \mathbf{0}]$.

Example 2.24

The standard unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ are linearly independent in $\mathbb{R}^3$, since the system with augmented matrix $[\mathbf{e}_1\ \mathbf{e}_2\ \mathbf{e}_3 \mid \mathbf{0}]$ is already in the reduced row echelon form

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

and so clearly has only the trivial solution. In general, we see that $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$ will be linearly independent in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Performing elementary row operations on a matrix constructs linear combinations of the rows. We can use this fact to come up with another way to test vectors for linear independence.

Example 2.25

Consider the three vectors of Example 2.23(d) as *row* vectors:

$$[1, 2, 0], \quad [1, 1, -1], \quad \text{and} \quad [1, 4, 2]$$

We construct a matrix with these vectors as its rows and proceed to reduce it to echelon form. Each time a row changes, we denote the new row by adding a prime symbol:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_3' = R_3 - R_1]{R_2' = R_2 - R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3'' = R_3' + 2R_2'} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

From this we see that

$$\mathbf{0} = R_3'' = R_3' + 2R_2' = (R_3 - R_1) + 2(R_2 - R_1) = -3R_1 + 2R_2 + R_3$$

or, in terms of the original vectors,

$$-3[1, 2, 0] + 2[1, 1, -1] + [1, 4, 2] = [0, 0, 0]$$

[Notice that this approach corresponds to taking $c_3 = 1$ in the solution to Example 2.23(d).]

Thus, the rows of a matrix will be linearly dependent if elementary row operations can be used to create a zero row. We summarize this finding as follows:

Theorem 2.7

Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ be (row) vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let A be the $m \times n$ matrix $\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{v}_1 \\ \mathbf{v}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{v}_m \end{bmatrix}$ with these vectors as its rows. Then $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent if and only if $\operatorname{rank}(A) < m$.

Proof Assume that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent. Then, by Theorem 2.2, at least one of the vectors can be written as a linear combination of the others.

We relabel the vectors, if necessary, so that we can write $\mathbf{v}_m = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_{m-1}\mathbf{v}_{m-1}$. Then the elementary row operations $R_m - c_1R_1$, $R_m - c_2R_2$, . . . , $R_m - c_{m-1}R_{m-1}$ applied to A will create a zero row in row m. Thus, $\operatorname{rank}(A) < m$.

Conversely, assume that $\operatorname{rank}(A) < m$. Then there is some sequence of row operations that will create a zero row. A successive substitution argument analogous to that used in Example 2.25 can be used to show that $\mathbf{0}$ is a nontrivial linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$. Thus, $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent.

In some situations, we can deduce that a set of vectors is linearly dependent without doing any work. One such situation is when the zero vector is in the set (as in Example 2.22). Another is when there are "too many" vectors to be independent. The following theorem summarizes this case. (We will see a sharper version of this result in Chapter 6.)

Theorem 2.8 Any set of m vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is linearly dependent if $m > n$.

Proof Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ be (column) vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let A be the $n \times m$ matrix $[\mathbf{v}_1\ \mathbf{v}_2 \cdots \mathbf{v}_m]$ with these vectors as its columns. By Theorem 2.6, $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent if and only if the homogeneous linear system with augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{0}]$ has a nontrivial solution. But, according to Theorem 2.6, this will always be the case if A has more columns than rows; it is the case here, since number of columns m is greater than number of rows n.

Example 2.26

The vectors $\begin{bmatrix}1\\3\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}2\\4\end{bmatrix}$, and $\begin{bmatrix}3\\1\end{bmatrix}$ are linearly dependent, since there cannot be more than two linearly independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$. (Note that if we want to find the actual dependence relation among these three vectors, we must solve the homogeneous system whose coefficient matrix has the given vectors as columns. Do this!)

Exercises 2.3

In Exercises 1–6, determine if the vector $\mathbf{v}$ *is a linear combination of the remaining vectors.*

1. $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}1\\2\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\-1\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}2\\-1\end{bmatrix}$

2. $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}2\\1\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}4\\-2\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}-2\\1\end{bmatrix}$

3. $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}1\\2\\3\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\1\end{bmatrix}$

4. $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}3\\2\\-1\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\1\end{bmatrix}$

5. $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}1\\2\\3\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\0\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}0\\1\\1\end{bmatrix},$

$\mathbf{u}_3 = \begin{bmatrix}1\\0\\1\end{bmatrix}$

CAS **6.** $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix}3.2\\2.0\\-2.6\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}1.0\\0.4\\4.8\end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix}3.4\\1.4\\-6.4\end{bmatrix},$

$\mathbf{u}_3 = \begin{bmatrix}-1.2\\0.2\\-1.0\end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7 and 8, determine if the vector $\mathbf{b}$ *is in the span of the columns of the matrix* A.

7. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 5 & 6 & 7 \\ 9 & 10 & 11 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 8 \\ 12 \end{bmatrix}$

9. Show that $\mathbb{R}^2 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

10. Show that $\mathbb{R}^2 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

11. Show that $\mathbb{R}^3 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

12. Show that $\mathbb{R}^3 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

In Exercises 13–16, describe the span of the given vectors (a) geometrically and (b) algebraically.

13. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

17. The general equation of the plane that contains the points $(1, 0, 3)$, $(-1, 1, -3)$, and the origin is of the form $ax + by + cz = 0$. Solve for a, b, and c.

18. Prove that $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are all in $\text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$.

19. Prove that $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are all in $\text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w})$.

20. (a) Prove that if $\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_m$ are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $S = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k\}$, and $T = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k, \mathbf{u}_{k+1}, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_m\}$, then $\text{span}(S) \subseteq \text{span}(T)$. [*Hint:* Rephrase this question in terms of linear combinations.]

(b) Deduce that if $\mathbb{R}^n = \text{span}(S)$, then $\mathbb{R}^n = \text{span}(T)$ also.

21. (a) Suppose that vector $\mathbf{w}$ is a linear combination of vectors $\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k$ and that each $\mathbf{u}_i$ is a linear combination of vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$. Prove that $\mathbf{w}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ and therefore $\text{span}(\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k) \subseteq \text{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m)$.

(b) In part (a), suppose in addition that each $\mathbf{v}_j$ is also a linear combination of $\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k$. Prove that $\text{span}(\mathbf{u}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k) = \text{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m)$.

(c) Use the result of part (b) to prove that

$$\mathbb{R}^3 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

[*Hint:* We know that $\mathbb{R}^3 = \text{span}(\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{e}_3)$.]

Use the method of Example 2.23 and Theorem 2.6 to determine if the sets of vectors in Exercises 22–31 are linearly independent. If, for any of these, the answer can be determined by inspection (i.e., without calculation), state why. For any sets that are linearly dependent, find a dependence relationship among the vectors.

22. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

23. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

24. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -5 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

25. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

27. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ 7 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

30. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

31. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 32–41, determine if the sets of vectors in the given exercise are linearly independent by converting the *vectors to row vectors and using the method of Example 2.25 and Theorem 2.7. For any sets that are linearly dependent, find a dependence relationship among the vectors.*

32. Exercise 22
33. Exercise 23
34. Exercise 24
35. Exercise 25
36. Exercise 26
37. Exercise 27
38. Exercise 28
39. Exercise 29
40. Exercise 30
41. Exercise 31

42. (a) If the columns of an $n \times n$ matrix A are linearly independent as vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, what is the rank of A? Explain.

(b) If the rows of an $n \times n$ matrix A are linearly independent as vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, what is the rank of A? Explain.

43. (a) If vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are linearly independent, will $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}$, and $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{w}$ also be linearly independent? Justify your answer.

(b) If vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ are linearly independent, will $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$, $\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{w}$, and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{w}$ also be linearly independent? Justify your answer.

44. Prove that two vectors are linearly dependent if and only if one is a scalar multiple of the other. [*Hint:* Separately consider the case where one of the vectors is $\mathbf{0}$.]

45. Give a "row vector proof" of Theorem 2.8.

46. Prove that every subset of a linearly independent set is linearly independent.

47. Suppose that $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k, \mathbf{v}\}$ is a set of vectors in some $\mathbb{R}^n$ and that $\mathbf{v}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$. If $S' = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$, prove that $\operatorname{span}(S) = \operatorname{span}(S')$. [*Hint:* Exercise 21(b) is helpful here.]

48. Let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be a linearly independent set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, and let $\mathbf{v}$ be a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Suppose that $\mathbf{v} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$ with $c_1 \neq 0$. Prove that $\{\mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is linearly independent.

2.4 Applications

There are too many applications of systems of linear equations to do them justice in a single section. This section will introduce a few applications, to illustrate the diverse settings in which they arise.

Allocation of Resources

A great many applications of systems of linear equations involve allocating limited resources subject to a set of constraints.

Example 2.27

A biologist has placed three strains of bacteria (denoted I, II, and III) in a test tube, where they will feed on three different food sources (A, B, and C). Each day 2300 units of A, 800 units of B, and 1500 units of C are placed in the test tube, and each bacterium consumes a certain number of units of each food per day, as shown in Table 2.2. How many bacteria of each strain can coexist in the test tube and consume all of the food?

Table 2.2

	Bacteria Strain I	Bacteria Strain II	Bacteria Strain III
Food A	2	2	4
Food B	1	2	0
Food C	1	3	1

Solution Let x_1, x_2, and x_3 be the numbers of bacteria of strains I, II, and III, respectively. Since each of the x_1 bacteria of strain I consumes 2 units of A per day, strain I consumes a total of $2x_1$ units per day. Similarly, strains II and III consume a total of $2x_2$ and $4x_3$ units of food A daily. Since we want to use up all of the 2300 units of A, we have the equation

$$2x_1 + 2x_2 + 4x_3 = 2300$$

Likewise, we obtain equations corresponding to the consumption of B and C:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 \phantom{{}+x_3} &= 800 \\ x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 &= 1500 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have a system of three linear equations in three variables. Row reduction of the corresponding augmented matrix gives

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 2 & 4 & 2300 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 800 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 & 1500 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 100 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 350 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 350 \end{array}\right]$$

Therefore, $x_1 = 100$, $x_2 = 350$, and $x_3 = 350$. The biologist should place 100 bacteria of strain I and 350 of each of strains II and III in the test tube if she wants all the food to be consumed.

Example 2.28

Repeat Example 2.27, using the data on daily consumption of food (units per day) shown in Table 2.3. Assume this time that 1500 units of A, 3000 units of B, and 4500 units of C are placed in the test tube each day.

Table 2.3

	Bacteria Strain I	Bacteria Strain II	Bacteria Strain III
Food A	1	1	1
Food B	1	2	3
Food C	1	3	5

Solution Let x_1, x_2, and x_3 again be the numbers of bacteria of each type. The augmented matrix for the resulting linear system and the corresponding reduced echelon form are

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1500 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 3000 \\ 1 & 3 & 5 & 4500 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1500 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

We see that in this case we have more than one solution, given by

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 \phantom{{}+2x_2} - x_3 &= 0 \\ x_2 + 2x_3 &= 1500 \end{aligned}$$

Letting $x_3 = t$, we obtain $x_1 = t$, $x_2 = 1500 - 2t$, and $x_3 = t$. In any applied problem, we must be careful to interpret solutions properly. Certainly the number of bacteria cannot be negative. Therefore, $t \geq 0$ and $1500 - 2t \geq 0$. The latter inequality implies that $t \leq 750$, so we have $0 \leq t \leq 750$. Presumably the number of bacteria must be a whole number, so there are exactly 751 values of t that satisfy the inequality. Thus, our 751 solutions are of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} t \\ 1500 - 2t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1500 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

one for each integer value of t such that $0 \leq t \leq 750$. (So, although mathematically this system has infinitely many solutions, *physically* there are only finitely many.)

Balancing Chemical Equations

When a chemical reaction occurs, certain molecules (the *reactants*) combine to form new molecules (the *products*). A ***balanced chemical equation*** is an algebraic equation that gives the relative numbers of reactants and products in the reaction and has the same number of atoms of each type on the left- and right-hand sides. The equation is usually written with the reactants on the left, the products on the right, and an arrow in between to show the direction of the reaction.

For example, for the reaction in which hydrogen gas (H_2) and oxygen (O_2) combine to form water (H_2O), a balanced chemical equation is

$$2H_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow 2H_2O$$

indicating that two molecules of hydrogen combine with one molecule of oxygen to form two molecules of water. Observe that the equation is balanced, since there are four hydrogen atoms and two oxygen atoms on each side. Note that there will never be a unique balanced equation for a reaction, since any positive integer multiple of a balanced equation will also be balanced. For example, $6H_2 + 3O_2 \longrightarrow 6H_2O$ is also balanced. Therefore, we usually look for the *simplest* balanced equation for a given reaction.

While trial and error will often work in simple examples, the process of balancing chemical equations really involves solving a homogeneous system of linear equations, so we can use the techniques we have developed to remove the guesswork.

Example 2.29

The combustion of ammonia (NH_3) in oxygen produces nitrogen (N_2) and water. Find a balanced chemical equation for this reaction.

Solution If we denote the numbers of molecules of ammonia, oxygen, nitrogen, and water by w, x, y, and z, respectively, then we are seeking an equation of the form

$$wNH_3 + xO_2 \longrightarrow yN_2 + zH_2O$$

Comparing the numbers of nitrogen, hydrogen, and oxygen atoms in the reactants and products, we obtain three linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nitrogen:} \quad & w = 2y \\ \text{Hydrogen:} \quad & 3w = 2z \\ \text{Oxygen:} \quad & 2x = z \end{aligned}$$

Rewriting these equations in standard form gives us a homogeneous system of three linear equations in four variables. [Notice that Theorem 2.3 guarantees that such a system will have (infinitely many) nontrivial solutions.] We reduce the corresponding augmented matrix by Gauss-Jordan elimination.

$$\begin{aligned} w \qquad - 2y \qquad &= 0 \\ 3w \qquad\qquad - 2z &= 0 \\ 2x \qquad - z &= 0 \end{aligned} \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & -2 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{2}{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{3} & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, $w = \frac{2}{3}z$, $x = \frac{1}{2}z$, and $y = \frac{1}{3}z$. The smallest positive value of z that will produce *integer* values for all four variables is the least common denominator of the fractions $\frac{2}{3}$, $\frac{1}{2}$, and $\frac{1}{3}$—namely, 6—which gives $w = 4$, $x = 3$, $y = 2$, and $z = 6$. Therefore, the balanced chemical equation is

$$4NH_3 + 3O_2 \longrightarrow 2N_2 + 6H_2O$$

Network Analysis

Many practical situations give rise to networks: transportation networks, communications networks, and economic networks, to name a few. Of particular interest are the possible *flows* through networks. For example, vehicles flow through a network of roads, information flows through a data network, and goods and services flow through an economic network.

For us, a ***network*** will consist of a finite number of ***nodes*** (also called ***junctions*** or ***vertices***) connected by a series of directed edges known as ***branches*** or ***arcs***. Each branch will be labeled with a ***flow*** that represents the amount of some commodity that can flow along or through that branch in the indicated direction. (Think of cars traveling along a network of one-way streets.) The fundamental rule governing flow through a network is ***conservation of flow:***

At each node, the flow in equals the flow out.

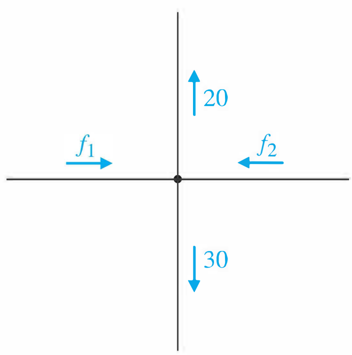


Figure 2.10
Flow at a node: $f_1 + f_2 = 50$

Figure 2.10 shows a portion of a network, with two branches entering a node and two leaving. The conservation of flow rule implies that the total incoming flow, $f_1 + f_2$ units, must match the total outgoing flow, $20 + 30$ units. Thus, we have the linear equation $f_1 + f_2 = 50$ corresponding to this node.

We can analyze the flow through an entire network by constructing such equations and solving the resulting system of linear equations.

Example 2.30

Describe the possible flows through the network of water pipes shown in Figure 2.11, where flow is measured in liters per minute.

Solution At each node, we write out the equation that represents the conservation of flow there. We then rewrite each equation with the variables on the left and the constant on the right, to get a linear system in standard form.

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Node } A\text{:} \quad 15 = f_1 + f_4 \\ &\text{Node } B\text{:} \quad f_1 = f_2 + 10 \\ &\text{Node } C\text{:} \quad f_2 + f_3 + 5 = 30 \\ &\text{Node } D\text{:} \quad f_4 + 20 = f_3 \end{aligned} \longrightarrow \begin{aligned} f_1 \qquad\qquad + f_4 &= 15 \\ f_1 - f_2 \qquad\qquad &= 10 \\ f_2 + f_3 \qquad &= 25 \\ f_3 - f_4 &= 20 \end{aligned}$$

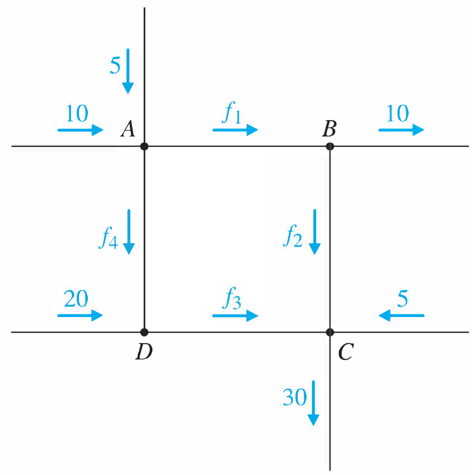


Figure 2.11

Using Gauss-Jordan elimination, we reduce the augmented matrix:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 10 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 25 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 20 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrrr|r} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 15 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 20 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

(Check this.) We see that there is one free variable, f_4, so we have infinitely many solutions. Setting $f_4 = t$ and expressing the leading variables in terms of f_4, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f_1 &= 15 - t \\ f_2 &= 5 - t \\ f_3 &= 20 + t \\ f_4 &= \phantom{20 + {}} t \end{aligned}$$

These equations describe all possible flows and allow us to analyze the network. For example, we see that if we control the flow on branch AD so that $t = 5$ L/min, then the other flows are $f_1 = 10$, $f_2 = 0$, and $f_3 = 25$.

We can do even better: We can find the minimum and maximum possible flows on each branch. Each of the flows must be nonnegative. Examining the first and second equations in turn, we see that $t \leq 15$ (otherwise f_1 would be negative) and $t \leq 5$ (otherwise f_2 would be negative). The second of these inequalities is more restrictive than the first, so we must use it. The third equation contributes no further restrictions on our parameter t, so we have deduced that $0 \leq t \leq 5$. Combining this result with the four equations, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} 10 \leq f_1 &\leq 15 \\ 0 \leq f_2 &\leq 5 \\ 20 \leq f_3 &\leq 25 \\ 0 \leq f_4 &\leq 5 \end{aligned}$$

We now have a complete description of the possible flows through this network.

Electrical Networks

Electrical networks are a specialized type of network providing information about power sources, such as batteries, and devices powered by these sources, such as light bulbs or motors. A power source "forces" a current of electrons to flow through the network, where it encounters various *resistors*, each of which requires that a certain amount of force be applied in order for the current to flow through it.

The fundamental law of electricity is Ohm's law, which states exactly how much force E is needed to drive a current I through a resistor with resistance R.

Ohm's Law

$$\text{force} = \text{resistance} \times \text{current}$$

or

$$E = RI$$

Force is measured in *volts*, resistance in *ohms*, and current in *amperes* (or *amps*, for short). Thus, in terms of these units, Ohm's law becomes "volts = ohms × amps," and it tells us what the "voltage drop" is when a current passes through a resistor—that is, how much voltage is used up.

Current flows out of the positive terminal of a battery and flows back into the negative terminal, traveling around one or more closed circuits in the process. In a diagram of an electrical network, batteries are represented by (where the positive terminal is the longer vertical bar) and resistors are represented by . The following two laws, whose discovery we owe to Kirchhoff, govern electrical networks. The first is a "conservation of flow" law at each node; the second is a "balancing of voltage" law around each circuit.

Kirchhoff's Laws

Current Law (nodes)
The sum of the currents flowing into any node is equal to the sum of the currents flowing out of that node.

Voltage Law (circuits)
The sum of the voltage drops around any circuit is equal to the total voltage around the circuit (provided by the batteries).

Figure 2.12 illustrates Kirchhoff's laws. In part (a), the current law gives $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$ (or $I_1 - I_2 - I_3 = 0$, as we will write it); part (b) gives $4I = 10$, where we have used Ohm's law to compute the voltage drop $4I$ at the resistor. Using Kirchhoff's laws, we can set up a system of linear equations that will allow us to determine the currents in an electrical network.

Example 2.31

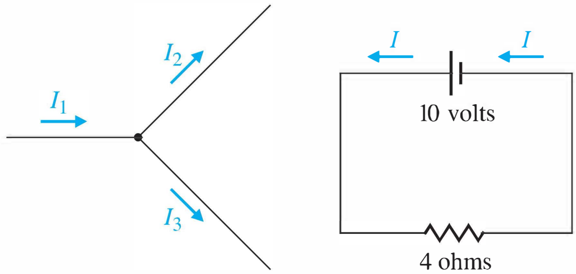
Determine the currents I_1, I_2, and I_3 in the electrical network shown in Figure 2.13.

Solution This network has two batteries and four resistors. Current I_1 flows through the top branch BCA, current I_2 flows across the middle branch AB, and current I_3 flows through the bottom branch BDA.

At node A, the current law gives $I_1 + I_3 = I_2$, or

$$I_1 - I_2 + I_3 = 0$$

(Observe that we get the same equation at node B.)



(a) $I_1 = I_2 + I_3$

(b) $4I = 10$

Figure 2.12

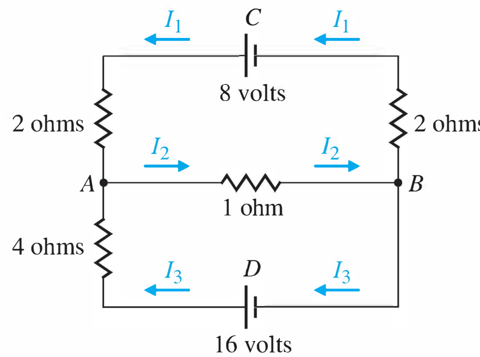


Figure 2.13

Next we apply the voltage law for each circuit. For the circuit $CABC$, the voltage drops at the resistors are $2I_1$, I_2, and $2I_1$. Thus, we have the equation

$$4I_1 + I_2 = 8$$

Similarly, for the circuit $DABD$, we obtain

$$I_2 + 4I_3 = 16$$

(Notice that there is actually a third circuit, $CADBC$, if we "go against the flow." In this case, we must treat the voltages and resistances on the "reversed" paths as negative. Doing so gives $2I_1 + 2I_1 - 4I_3 = 8 - 16 = -8$ or $4I_1 - 4I_3 = -8$, which we observe is just the difference of the voltage equations for the other two circuits. Thus, we can omit this equation, as it contributes no new information. On the other hand, including it does no harm.)

We now have a system of three linear equations in three variables:

$$\begin{aligned} I_1 - I_2 + I_3 &= 0 \\ 4I_1 + I_2 \qquad &= 8 \\ I_2 + 4I_3 &= 16 \end{aligned}$$

Gauss-Jordan elimination produces

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 1 & 0 & 8 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 16 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \end{array}\right]$$

Hence, the currents are $I_1 = 1$ amp, $I_2 = 4$ amps, and $I_3 = 3$ amps.

Remark In some electrical networks, the currents may have fractional values or may even be negative. A negative value simply means that the current in the corresponding branch flows in the direction opposite that shown on the network diagram.

CAS

Example 2.32

The network shown in Figure 2.14 has a single power source A and five resistors. Find the currents $I, I_1, \ldots, I_5$. This is an example of what is known in electrical engineering as a *Wheatstone bridge circuit*.

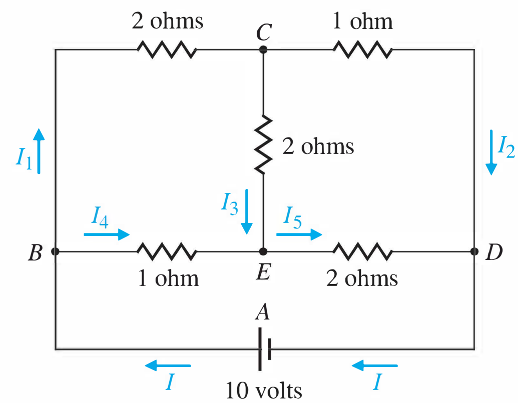


Figure 2.14
A bridge circuit

Solution Kirchhoff's current law gives the following equations at the four nodes:

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\text{Node } B: && I - I_1 - I_4 = 0\\
&\text{Node } C: && I_1 - I_2 - I_3 = 0\\
&\text{Node } D: && I - I_2 - I_5 = 0\\
&\text{Node } E: && I_3 + I_4 - I_5 = 0
\end{aligned}
$$

For the three basic circuits, the voltage law gives

$$
\begin{aligned}
&\text{Circuit } ABEDA: && I_4 + 2I_5 = 10\\
&\text{Circuit } BCEB: && 2I_1 + 2I_3 - I_4 = 0\\
&\text{Circuit } CDEC: && I_2 - 2I_5 - 2I_3 = 0
\end{aligned}
$$

(Observe that branch *DAB* has no resistor and therefore no voltage drop; thus, there is no I term in the equation for circuit *ABEDA*. Note also that we had to change signs three times because we went "against the current." This poses no problem, since we will let the sign of the answer determine the direction of current flow.)

We now have a system of seven equations in six variables. Row reduction gives

$$
\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c}
1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0\\
0 & 1 & -1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0\\
1 & 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 & -1 & 0\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 & 0\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 & 10\\
0 & 2 & 0 & 2 & -1 & 0 & 0\\
0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & 0 & -2 & 0
\end{array}\right]
\longrightarrow
\left[\begin{array}{cccccc|c}
1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 7\\
0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 3\\
0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 4\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & -1\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 4\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 3\\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{array}\right]
$$

(Use your calculator or CAS to check this.) Thus, the solution (in amps) is $I = 7$, $I_1 = I_5 = 3$, $I_2 = I_4 = 4$, and $I_3 = -1$. The significance of the negative value here is that the current through branch *CE* is flowing in the direction opposite that marked on the diagram.

Remark There is only one power source in this example, so the single 10-volt battery sends a current of 7 amps through the network. If we substitute these values into

Ohm's law, $E = RI$, we get $10 = 7R$ or $R = \frac{10}{7}$. Thus, the entire network behaves as if there were a single $\frac{10}{7}$-ohm resistor. This value is called the *effective resistance* (R_{eff}) of the network.

Linear Economic Models

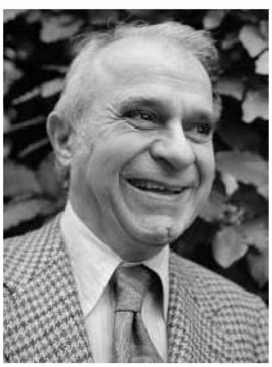
An economy is a very complex system with many interrelationships among the various sectors of the economy and the goods and services they produce and consume. Determining optimal prices and levels of production subject to desired economic goals requires sophisticated mathematical models. Linear algebra has proven to be a powerful tool in developing and analyzing such economic models.

In this section, we introduce two models based on the work of Harvard economist Wassily Leontief in the 1930s. His methods, often referred to as ***input-output analysis***, are now standard tools in mathematical economics and are used by cities, corporations, and entire countries for economic planning and forecasting.

We begin with a simple example.

Example 2.33

The economy of a region consists of three industries, or sectors: service, electricity, and oil production. For simplicity, we assume that each industry produces a single commodity (goods or services) in a given year and that ***income (output)*** is generated from the sale of this commodity. Each industry purchases commodities from the other industries, including itself, in order to generate its output. No commodities are purchased from outside the region and no output is sold outside the region. Furthermore, for each industry, we assume that production exactly equals consumption (output equals input, income equals expenditure). In this sense, this is a ***closed economy*** that is in ***equilibrium***. Table 2.4 summarizes how much of each industry's output is consumed by each industry.



Bettmann/CORBIS

Wassily Leontief (1906–1999) was born in St. Petersburg, Russia. He studied at the University of Leningrad and received his Ph.D. from the University of Berlin. He emigrated to the United States in 1931, teaching at Harvard University and later at New York University. In 1932, Leontief began compiling data for the monumental task of conducting an input-output analysis of the United States economy, the results of which were published in 1941. He was also an early user of computers, which he needed to solve the large-scale linear systems in his models. For his pioneering work, Leontief was awarded the Nobel Prize in Economics in 1973.

Table 2.4

		Produced by (output)		
		Service	**Electricity**	**Oil**
Consumed by (input)	**Service**	1/4	1/3	1/2
	Electricity	1/4	1/3	1/4
	Oil	1/2	1/3	1/4

From the first column of the table, we see that the service industry consumes 1/4 of its own output, electricity consumes another 1/4, and the oil industry uses 1/2 of the service industry's output. The other two columns have similar interpretations. Notice that the sum of each column is 1, indicating that all of the output of each industry is consumed.

Let x_1, x_2, and x_3 denote the annual output (income) of the service, electricity, and oil industries, respectively, in millions of dollars. Since consumption corresponds to expenditure, the service industry spends $\frac{1}{4}x_1$ on its own commodity, $\frac{1}{3}x_2$ on electricity, and $\frac{1}{2}x_3$ on oil. This means that the service industry's total annual expenditure is $\frac{1}{4}x_1 + \frac{1}{3}x_2 + \frac{1}{2}x_3$. Since the economy is in equilibrium, the service industry's expenditure must equal its annual income x_1. This gives the first of the following equations; the other two equations are obtained by analyzing the expenditures of the electricity and oil industries.

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Service:} & \frac{1}{4}x_1 + \frac{1}{3}x_2 + \frac{1}{2}x_3 = x_1 \\ \text{Electricity:} & \frac{1}{4}x_1 + \frac{1}{3}x_2 + \frac{1}{4}x_3 = x_2 \\ \text{Oil:} & \frac{1}{2}x_1 + \frac{1}{3}x_2 + \frac{1}{4}x_3 = x_3 \end{array}$$

Rearranging each equation, we obtain a homogeneous system of linear equations, which we then solve. (Check this!)

$$\begin{aligned} -\tfrac{3}{4}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{3}x_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x_3 &= 0 \\ \tfrac{1}{4}x_1 - \tfrac{2}{3}x_2 - \tfrac{1}{4}x_3 &= 0 \\ \tfrac{1}{2}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{3}x_2 - \tfrac{3}{4}x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned} \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} -\frac{3}{4} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} & -\frac{2}{3} & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{3}{4} & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{3}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Setting $x_3 = t$, we find that $x_1 = t$ and $x_2 = \frac{3}{4}t$. Thus, we see that the *relative* outputs of the service, electricity, and oil industries need to be in the ratios $x_1 : x_2 : x_3 = 4 : 3 : 4$ for the economy to be in equilibrium.

Remarks

- The last example illustrates what is commonly called the ***Leontief closed model***.
- Since output corresponds to income, we can also think of x_1, x_2, and x_3 as the *prices* of the three commodities.

We now modify the model in Example 2.33 to accommodate an ***open economy***, one in which there is an *external* as well as an internal demand for the commodities that are produced. Not surprisingly, this version is called the ***Leontief open model***.

Example 2.34

Consider the three industries of Example 2.33 but with consumption given by Table 2.5. We see that, of the commodities produced by the service industry, 20% are consumed by the service industry, 40% by the electricity industry, and 10% by the oil industry. Thus, only 70% of the service industry's output is consumed by this economy. The implication of this calculation is that there is an excess of output (income) over input (expenditure) for the service industry. We say that the service industry is ***productive***. Likewise, the oil industry is productive but the electricity industry is ***nonproductive***. (This is reflected in the fact that the sums of the first and third columns are less than 1 but the sum of the second column is equal to 1). The excess output may be applied to satisfy an external demand.

Table 2.5

		Produced by (output)		
		Service	**Electricity**	**Oil**
Consumed by (input)	**Service**	0.20	0.50	0.10
	Electricity	0.40	0.20	0.20
	Oil	0.10	0.30	0.30

For example, suppose there is an annual external demand (in millions of dollars) for 10, 10, and 30 from the service, electricity, and oil industries, respectively. Then, equating expenditures (internal demand and external demand) with income (output), we obtain the following equations:

	output	internal demand	external demand
Service	x_1	$= 0.2x_1 + 0.5x_2 + 0.1x_3$	$+ 10$
Electricity	x_2	$= 0.4x_1 + 0.2x_2 + 0.2x_3$	$+ 10$
Oil	x_3	$= 0.1x_1 + 0.3x_2 + 0.3x_3$	$+ 30$

Rearranging, we obtain the following linear system and augmented matrix:

$$\begin{aligned} 0.8x_1 - 0.5x_2 - 0.1x_3 &= 10 \\ -0.4x_1 + 0.8x_2 - 0.2x_3 &= 10 \\ -0.1x_1 - 0.3x_2 + 0.7x_3 &= 30 \end{aligned} \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0.8 & -0.5 & -0.1 & 10 \\ -0.4 & 0.8 & -0.2 & 10 \\ -0.1 & -0.3 & 0.7 & 30 \end{array}\right]$$

CAS

Row reduction yields

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 61.74 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 63.04 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 78.70 \end{array}\right]$$

from which we see that the service, electricity, and oil industries must have an annual production of \$61.74, \$63.04, and \$78.70 (million), respectively, in order to meet both the internal and external demand for their commodities.

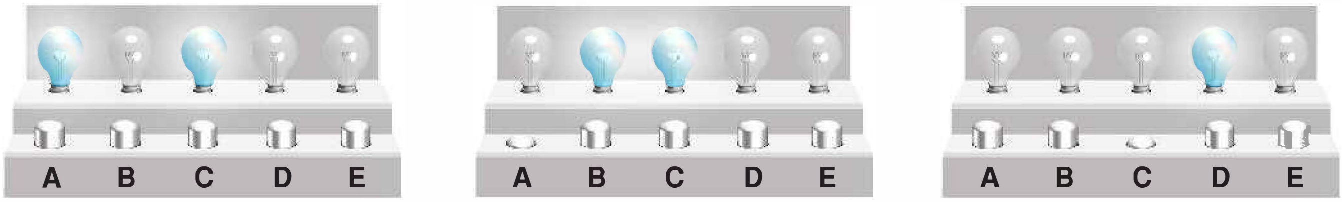
We will revisit these models in Section 3.7.

Finite Linear Games

There are many situations in which we must consider a physical system that has only a finite number of *states*. Sometimes these states can be altered by applying certain processes, each of which produces finitely many outcomes. For example, a light bulb can be on or off and a switch can change the state of the light bulb from on to off and vice versa. Digital systems that arise in computer science are often of this type. More frivolously, many computer games feature puzzles in which a certain device must be manipulated by various switches to produce a desired outcome. The finiteness of such situations is perfectly suited to analysis using modular arithmetic, and often linear systems over some $\mathbb{Z}_p$ play a role. Problems involving this type of situation are often called ***finite linear games.***

Example 2.35

A row of five lights is controlled by five switches. Each switch changes the state (on or off) of the light directly above it and the states of the lights immediately adjacent to the left and right. For example, if the first and third lights are on, as in Figure 2.15(a), then pushing switch A changes the state of the system to that shown in Figure 2.15(b). If we next push switch C, then the result is the state shown in Figure 2.15(c).



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 2.15

Suppose that initially all the lights are off. Can we push the switches in some order so that only the first, third, and fifth lights will be on? Can we push the switches in some order so that only the first light will be on?

Solution The on/off nature of this problem suggests that binary notation will be helpful and that we should work with $\mathbb{Z}_2$. Accordingly, we represent the states of the five lights by a vector in $\mathbb{Z}_2^5$, where 0 represents off and 1 represents on. Thus, for example, the vector

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

corresponds to Figure 2.15(b).

We may also use vectors in $\mathbb{Z}_2^5$ to represent the action of each switch. If a switch changes the state of a light, the corresponding component is a 1; otherwise, it is 0. With this convention, the actions of the five switches are given by

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{e} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The situation depicted in Figure 2.15(a) corresponds to the initial state

$$\mathbf{s} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

followed by

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

It is the vector sum (in $\mathbb{Z}_2^5$)

$$\mathbf{s} + \mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Observe that this result agrees with Figure 2.15(b).

Starting with any initial configuration $\mathbf{s}$, suppose we push the switches in the order A, C, D, A, C, B. This corresponds to the vector sum $\mathbf{s} + \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{d} + \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b}$. But in $\mathbb{Z}_2^5$, addition is commutative, so we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{s} + \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{d} + \mathbf{a} + \mathbf{c} + \mathbf{b} &= \mathbf{s} + 2\mathbf{a} + \mathbf{b} + 2\mathbf{c} + \mathbf{d} \\ &= \mathbf{s} + \mathbf{b} + \mathbf{d} \end{aligned}$$

where we have used the fact that $2 = 0$ in $\mathbb{Z}_2$. Thus, we would achieve the same result by pushing only B and D—and the order does not matter. (Check that this is correct.) Hence, in this example, we do not need to push any switch more than once.

So, to see if we can achieve a target configuration $\mathbf{t}$ starting from an initial configuration $\mathbf{s}$, we need to determine whether there are scalars $x_1, \ldots, x_5$ in $\mathbb{Z}_2$ such that

$$\mathbf{s} + x_1\mathbf{a} + x_2\mathbf{b} + \cdots + x_5\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{t}$$

In other words, we need to solve (if possible) the linear system over $\mathbb{Z}_2$ that corresponds to the vector equation

$$x_1\mathbf{a} + x_2\mathbf{b} + \cdots + x_5\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{t} - \mathbf{s} = \mathbf{t} + \mathbf{s}$$

In this case, $\mathbf{s} = \mathbf{0}$ and our first target configuration is

$$\mathbf{t} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The augmented matrix of this system has the given vectors as columns:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

We reduce it over $\mathbb{Z}_2$ to obtain

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, x_5 is a free variable. Hence, there are exactly two solutions (corresponding to $x_5 = 0$ and $x_5 = 1$). Solving for the other variables in terms of x_5, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= \phantom{1 +{}} x_5 \\ x_2 &= 1 + x_5 \\ x_3 &= 1 \\ x_4 &= 1 + x_5 \end{aligned}$$

So, when $x_5 = 0$ and $x_5 = 1$, we have the solutions

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

respectively. (Check that these both work.)

Similarly, in the second case, we have

$$\mathbf{t} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The augmented matrix reduces as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

showing that there is no solution in this case; that is, it is impossible to start with all of the lights off and turn only the first light on.

Example 2.35 shows the power of linear algebra. Even though we might have found out by trial and error that there was no solution, checking all possible ways to push the switches would have been extremely tedious. We might also have missed the fact that no switch need ever be pushed more than once.

Example 2.36

Consider a row with only three lights, each of which can be off, light blue, or dark blue. Below the lights are three switches, A, B, and C, each of which changes the states of particular lights to the *next* state, in the order shown in Figure 2.16. Switch A changes the states of the first two lights, switch B all three lights, and switch C the last two

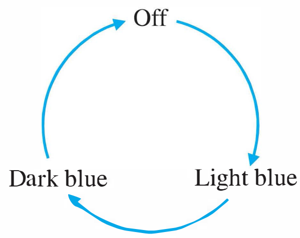


Figure 2.16

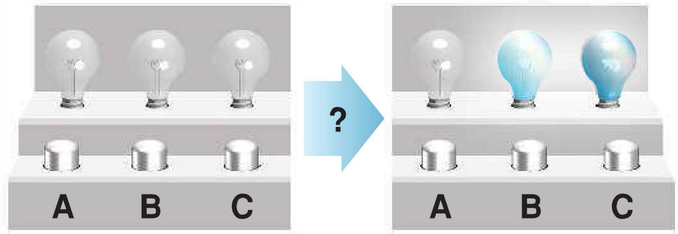


Figure 2.17

lights. If all three lights are initially off, is it possible to push the switches in some order so that the lights are off, light blue, and dark blue, in that order (as in Figure 2.17)?

Solution Whereas Example 2.35 involved $\mathbb{Z}_2$, this one clearly (is it clear?) involves $\mathbb{Z}_3$. Accordingly, the switches correspond to the vectors

$$\mathbf{a} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{c} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

in $\mathbb{Z}_3^3$, and the final configuration we are aiming for is $\mathbf{t} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. (Off is 0, light blue is 1, and dark blue is 2.) We wish to find scalars x_1, x_2, x_3 in $\mathbb{Z}_3$ such that

$$x_1\mathbf{a} + x_2\mathbf{b} + x_3\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{t}$$

(where x_i represents the number of times the ith switch is pushed). This equation gives rise to the augmented matrix $[\mathbf{a}\ \mathbf{b}\ \mathbf{c} \mid \mathbf{t}]$, which reduces over $\mathbb{Z}_3$ as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 2 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Hence, there is a unique solution: $x_1 = 2$, $x_2 = 1$, $x_3 = 1$. In other words, we must push switch A twice and the other two switches once each. (Check this.)

Exercises 2.4

Allocation of Resources

1. Suppose that, in Example 2.27, 400 units of food A, 600 units of B, and 600 units of C are placed in the test tube each day and the data on daily food consumption by the bacteria (in units per day) are as shown in Table 2.6. How many bacteria of each strain can coexist in the test tube and consume all of the food?

Table 2.6

	Bacteria Strain I	Bacteria Strain II	Bacteria Strain III
Food A	1	2	0
Food B	2	1	1
Food C	1	1	2

2. Suppose that in Example 2.27, 400 units of food A, 500 units of B, and 600 units of C are placed in the test tube each day and the data on daily food consumption by the bacteria (in units per day) are as shown in Table 2.7. How many bacteria of each

Table 2.7

	Bacteria Strain I	Bacteria Strain II	Bacteria Strain III
Food A	1	2	0
Food B	2	1	3
Food C	1	1	1

strain can coexist in the test tube and consume all of the food?

3. A florist offers three sizes of flower arrangements containing roses, daisies, and chrysanthemums. Each small arrangement contains one rose, three daisies, and three chrysanthemums. Each medium arrangement contains two roses, four daisies, and six chrysanthemums. Each large arrangement contains four roses, eight daisies, and six chrysanthemums. One day, the florist noted that she used a total of 24 roses, 50 daisies, and 48 chrysanthemums in filling orders for these three types of arrangements. How many arrangements of each type did she make?

4. **(a)** In your pocket you have some nickels, dimes, and quarters. There are 20 coins altogether and exactly twice as many dimes as nickels. The total value of the coins is \$3.00. Find the number of coins of each type.
   (b) Find *all* possible combinations of 20 coins (nickels, dimes, and quarters) that will make exactly \$3.00.

5. A coffee merchant sells three blends of coffee. A bag of the house blend contains 300 grams of Colombian beans and 200 grams of French roast beans. A bag of the special blend contains 200 grams of Colombian beans, 200 grams of Kenyan beans, and 100 grams of French roast beans. A bag of the gourmet blend contains 100 grams of Colombian beans, 200 grams of Kenyan beans, and 200 grams of French roast beans. The merchant has on hand 30 kilograms of Colombian beans, 15 kilograms of Kenyan beans, and 25 kilograms of French roast beans. If he wishes to use up all of the beans, how many bags of each type of blend can be made?

6. Redo Exercise 5, assuming that the house blend contains 300 grams of Colombian beans, 50 grams of Kenyan beans, and 150 grams of French roast beans and the gourmet blend contains 100 grams of Colombian beans, 350 grams of Kenyan beans, and 50 grams of French roast beans. This time the merchant has on hand 30 kilograms of Colombian beans, 15 kilograms of Kenyan beans, and 15 kilograms of French roast beans. Suppose one bag of the house blend produces a profit of \$0.50, one bag of the special blend produces a profit of \$1.50, and one bag of the gourmet blend produces a profit of \$2.00. How many bags of each type should the merchant prepare if he wants to use up all of the beans *and* maximize his profit? What is the maximum profit?

Balancing Chemical Equations

In Exercises 7–14, balance the chemical equation for each reaction.

7. $FeS_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow Fe_2O_3 + SO_2$

8. $CO_2 + H_2O \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + O_2$ (This reaction takes place when a green plant converts carbon dioxide and water to glucose and oxygen during photosynthesis.)

9. $C_4H_{10} + O_2 \longrightarrow CO_2 + H_2O$ (This reaction occurs when butane, C_4H_{10}, burns in the presence of oxygen to form carbon dioxide and water.)

10. $C_7H_6O_2 + O_2 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2$

11. $C_5H_{11}OH + O_2 \longrightarrow H_2O + CO_2$ (This equation represents the combustion of amyl alcohol.)

12. $HClO_4 + P_4O_{10} \longrightarrow H_3PO_4 + Cl_2O_7$

13. $Na_2CO_3 + C + N_2 \longrightarrow NaCN + CO$

CAS 14. $C_2H_2Cl_4 + Ca(OH)_2 \longrightarrow C_2HCl_3 + CaCl_2 + H_2O$

Network Analysis

15. Figure 2.18 shows a network of water pipes with flows measured in liters per minute.
    (a) Set up and solve a system of linear equations to find the possible flows.
    (b) If the flow through AB is restricted to 5 L/min, what will the flows through the other two branches be?
    (c) What are the minimum and maximum possible flows through each branch?
    (d) We have been assuming that flow is always *positive*. What would *negative* flow mean, assuming we allowed it? Give an illustration for this example.

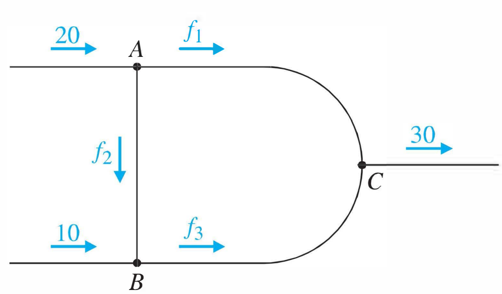


Figure 2.18

16. The downtown core of Gotham City consists of one-way streets, and the traffic flow has been measured at each intersection. For the city block shown in Figure 2.19, the numbers represent the average numbers of vehicles per minute entering and leaving intersections A, B, C, and D during business hours.

(a) Set up and solve a system of linear equations to find the possible flows $f_1, \ldots, f_4$.

(b) If traffic is regulated on CD so that $f_4 = 10$ vehicles per minute, what will the average flows on the other streets be?

(c) What are the minimum and maximum possible flows on each street?

(d) How would the solution change if *all* of the directions were reversed?

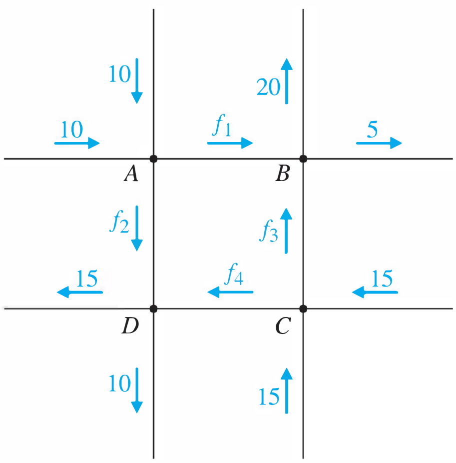


Figure 2.19

17. A network of irrigation ditches is shown in Figure 2.20, with flows measured in thousands of liters per day.

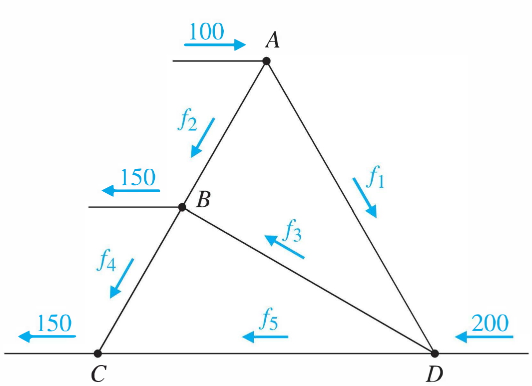


Figure 2.20

(a) Set up and solve a system of linear equations to find the possible flows $f_1, \ldots, f_5$.

(b) Suppose DC is closed. What range of flow will need to be maintained through DB?

(c) From Figure 2.20 it is clear that DB cannot be closed. (Why not?) How does your solution in part (a) show this?

(d) From your solution in part (a), determine the minimum and maximum flows through DB.

18. (a) Set up and solve a system of linear equations to find the possible flows in the network shown in Figure 2.21.

(b) Is it possible for $f_1 = 100$ and $f_6 = 150$? [Answer this question first with reference to your solution in part (a) and then directly from Figure 2.21.]

(c) If $f_4 = 0$, what will the range of flow be on each of the other branches?

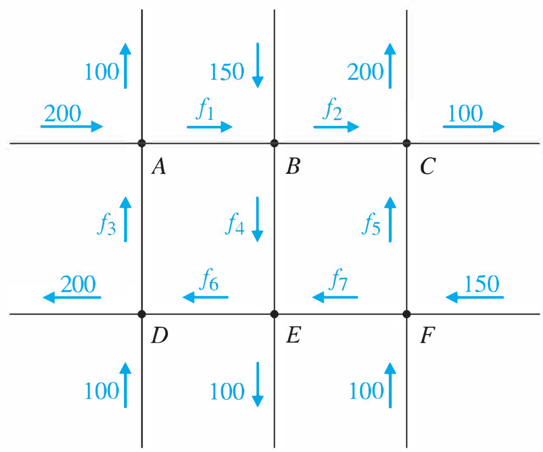
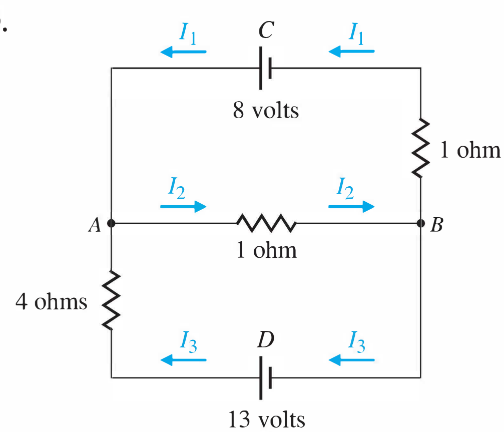


Figure 2.21

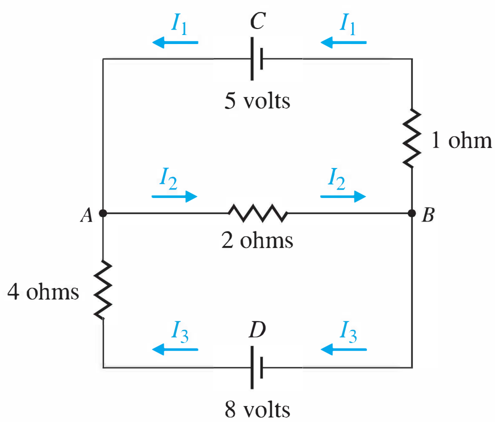
Electrical Networks

For Exercises 19 and 20, determine the currents for the given electrical networks.

19.



20.



21. **(a)** Find the currents $I, I_1, \ldots, I_5$ in the bridge circuit in Figure 2.22.

(b) Find the effective resistance of this network.

(c) Can you change the resistance in branch BC (but leave everything else unchanged) so that the current through branch CE becomes 0?

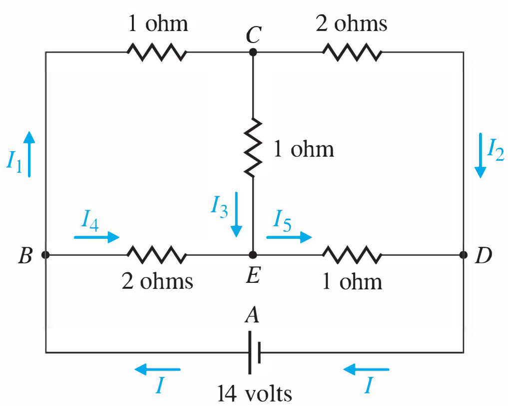


Figure 2.22

22. The networks in parts (a) and (b) of Figure 2.23 show two resistors coupled in *series* and in *parallel*, respectively. We wish to find a general formula for the effective resistance of each network—that is, find R_{eff} such that $E = R_{\text{eff}}I$.

(a) Show that the effective resistance R_{eff} of a network with two resistors coupled in series [Figure 2.23(a)] is given by

$$R_{\text{eff}} = R_1 + R_2$$

(b) Show that the effective resistance R_{eff} of a network with two resistors coupled in parallel [Figure 2.23(b)] is given by

$$R_{\text{eff}} = \frac{1}{\dfrac{1}{R_1} + \dfrac{1}{R_2}}$$

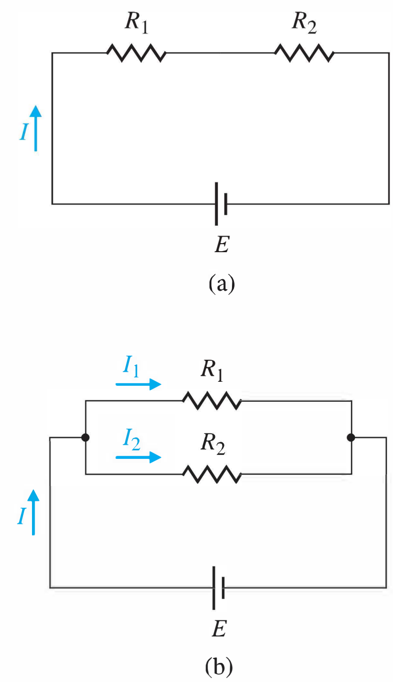


Figure 2.23
Resistors in series and in parallel

Linear Economic Models

23. Consider a simple economy with just two industries: farming and manufacturing. Farming consumes 1/2 of the food and 1/3 of the manufactured goods. Manufacturing consumes 1/2 of the food and 2/3 of the manufactured goods. Assuming the economy is closed and in equilibrium, find the relative outputs of the farming and manufacturing industries.

24. Suppose the coal and steel industries form a closed economy. Every \$1 produced by the coal industry requires \$0.30 of coal and \$0.70 of steel. Every \$1 produced by steel requires \$0.80 of coal and \$0.20 of steel. Find the annual production (output) of coal and steel if the total annual production is \$20 million.

25. A painter, a plumber, and an electrician enter into a cooperative arrangement in which each of them agrees to work for himself/herself and the other two for a total of 10 hours per week according to the schedule shown in Table 2.8. For tax purposes, each person must establish a value for his/her services. They agree to do this so that they each come out even—that is, so that the total amount paid out by each person equals the amount he/she receives. What hourly rate should each person charge if the rates are all whole numbers between \$30 and \$60 per hour?

Table 2.8

		Supplier		
		Painter	**Plumber**	**Electrician**
	Painter	2	1	5
Consumer	**Plumber**	4	5	1
	Electrician	4	4	4

26. Four neighbors, each with a vegetable garden, agree to share their produce. One will grow beans (**B**), one will grow lettuce (**L**), one will grow tomatoes (**T**), and one will grow zucchini (**Z**). Table 2.9 shows what fraction of each crop each neighbor will receive. What prices should the neighbors charge for their crops if each person is to break even and the lowest-priced crop has a value of \$50?

Table 2.9

		Producer			
		B	**L**	**T**	**Z**
	B	0	1/4	1/8	1/6
Consumer	**L**	1/2	1/4	1/4	1/6
	T	1/4	1/4	1/2	1/3
	Z	1/4	1/4	1/8	1/3

27. Suppose the coal and steel industries form an open economy. Every \$1 produced by the coal industry requires \$0.15 of coal and \$0.20 of steel. Every \$1 produced by steel requires \$0.25 of coal and \$0.10 of steel. Suppose that there is an annual outside demand for \$45 million of coal and \$124 million of steel.

(a) How much should each industry produce to satisfy the demands?

(b) If the demand for coal decreases by \$5 million per year while the demand for steel increases by \$6 million per year, how should the coal and steel industries adjust their production?

28. In Gotham City, the departments of Administration (A), Health (H), and Transportation (T) are interdependent. For every dollar's worth of services they produce, each department uses a certain amount of the services produced by the other departments and itself, as shown in Table 2.10. Suppose that, during the year, other city departments require \$1 million in Administrative services, \$1.2 million in Health services, and \$0.8 million in Transportation services. What does the annual dollar value of the services produced by each department need to be in order to meet the demands?

Table 2.10

		Department		
		A	**H**	**T**
	A	\$0.20	0.10	0.20
Buy	**H**	0.10	0.10	0.20
	T	0.20	0.40	0.30

Finite Linear Games

29. (a) In Example 2.35, suppose all the lights are initially off. Can we push the switches in some order so that only the second and fourth lights will be on?

(b) Can we push the switches in some order so that only the second light will be on?

30. (a) In Example 2.35, suppose the fourth light is initially on and the other four lights are off. Can we push the switches in some order so that only the second and fourth lights will be on?

(b) Can we push the switches in some order so that only the second light will be on?

31. In Example 2.35, describe all possible configurations of lights that can be obtained if we start with all the lights off.

32. (a) In Example 2.36, suppose that all of the lights are initially off. Show that it is possible to push the switches in some order so that the lights are off, dark blue, and light blue, in that order.

(b) Show that it is possible to push the switches in some order so that the lights are light blue, off, and light blue, in that order.

(c) Prove that *any* configuration of the three lights can be achieved.

33. Suppose the lights in Example 2.35 can be off, light blue, or dark blue and the switches work as described in Example 2.36. (That is, the switches control the same lights as in Example 2.35 but cycle through the colors as in Example 2.36.) Show that it is possible to start with all of the lights off and push the switches in some order so that the lights are dark blue, light blue, dark blue, light blue, and dark blue, in that order.

34. For Exercise 33, describe all possible configurations of lights that can be obtained, starting with all the lights off.

CAS **35.** Nine squares, each one either black or white, are arranged in a 3×3 grid. Figure 2.24 shows one possible arrangement. When touched, each square changes its own state and the states of some of its neighbors (black → white and white → black). Figure 2.25 shows how the state changes work. (Touching the square whose number is circled causes the states of the squares marked * to change.) The object of the game is to turn all nine squares black. [Exercises 35 and 36 are adapted from puzzles that can be found in the interactive CD-ROM game *The Seventh Guest* (Trilobyte Software/Virgin Games, 1992).]

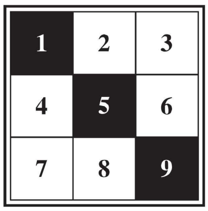


Figure 2.24
The nine squares puzzle

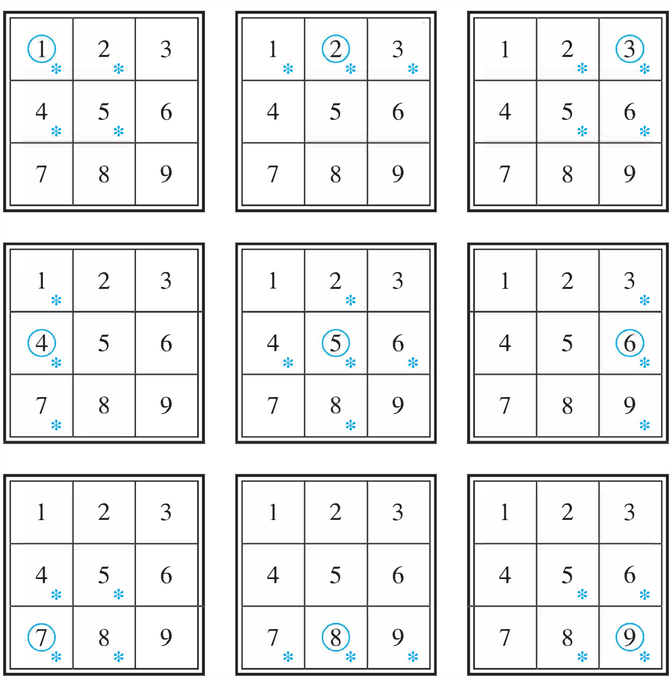


Figure 2.25
State changes for the nine squares puzzle

(a) If the initial configuration is the one shown in Figure 2.24, show that the game can be won and describe a winning sequence of moves.

(b) Prove that the game can always be won, no matter what the initial configuration.

CAS **36.** Consider a variation on the nine squares puzzle. The game is the same as that described in Exercise 35 except that there are three possible states for each square: white, gray, or black. The squares change as shown in Figure 2.25, but now the state changes follow the cycle white → gray → black → white. Show how the winning all-black configuration can be achieved from the initial configuration shown in Figure 2.26.

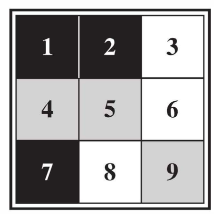


Figure 2.26
The nine squares puzzle with more states

Miscellaneous Problems

In Exercises 37–53, set up and solve an appropriate system of linear equations to answer the questions.

37. Grace is three times as old as Hans, but in 5 years she will be twice as old as Hans is then. How old are they now?

38. The sum of Annie's, Bert's, and Chris's ages is 60. Annie is older than Bert by the same number of years that Bert is older than Chris. When Bert is as old as Annie is now, Annie will be three times as old as Chris is now. What are their ages?

The preceding two problems are typical of those found in popular books of mathematical puzzles. However, they have their origins in antiquity. A Babylonian clay tablet that survives from about 300 B.C. contains the following problem.

39. There are two fields whose total area is 1800 square yards. One field produces grain at the rate of $\frac{2}{3}$ bushel per square yard; the other field produces grain at the rate of $\frac{1}{2}$ bushel per square yard. If the total yield is 1100 bushels, what is the size of each field?

Over 2000 years ago, the Chinese developed methods for solving systems of linear equations, including a version of Gaussian elimination that did not become well known in Europe until the 19th century. (There is no evidence that Gauss was aware of the Chinese methods when he developed what we now call Gaussian elimination. However, it is clear that the Chinese knew the essence of the method, even though they did not justify its use.) The following problem is taken from the Chinese text Jiuzhang suanshu (Nine Chapters in the Mathematical Art), *written during the early Han Dynasty, about 200 B.C.*

40. There are three types of corn. Three bundles of the first type, two of the second, and one of the third make 39 measures. Two bundles of the first type, three of the second, and one of the third make 34 measures. And one bundle of the first type, two of the second, and three of the third make 26 measures. How many measures of corn are contained in one bundle of each type?

41. Describe all possible values of a, b, c, and d that will make each of the following a valid addition table. [Problems 41–44 are based on the article "An Application of Matrix Theory" by Paul Glaister in *The Mathematics Teacher,* 85 (1992), pp. 220–223.]

(a)

+	a	b
c	2	3
d	4	5

(b)

+	a	b
c	3	6
d	4	5

42. What conditions on w, x, y, and z will guarantee that we can find a, b, c, and d so that the following is a valid addition table?

+	a	b
c	w	x
d	y	z

43. Describe all possible values of a, b, c, d, e, and f that will make each of the following a valid addition table.

(a)

+	a	b	c
d	3	2	1
e	5	4	3
f	4	3	1

(b)

+	a	b	c
d	1	2	3
e	3	4	5
f	4	5	6

44. Generalizing Exercise 42, find conditions on the entries of a 3×3 addition table that will guarantee that we can solve for a, b, c, d, e, and f as previously.

45. From elementary geometry we know that there is a unique straight line through any two points in a plane. Less well known is the fact that there is a unique parabola through any *three* noncollinear points in a plane. For each set of points below, find a parabola with an equation of the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ that passes through the given points. (Sketch the resulting parabola to check the validity of your answer.)

(a) $(0, 1), (-1, 4)$, and $(2, 1)$
(b) $(-3, 1), (-2, 2)$, and $(-1, 5)$

46. Through any three noncollinear points there also passes a unique circle. Find the circles (whose general equations are of the form $x^2 + y^2 + ax + by + c = 0$) that pass through the sets of points in Exercise 45. (To check the validity of your answer, find the center and radius of each circle and draw a sketch.)

The process of adding rational functions (ratios of polynomials) by placing them over a common denominator is the analogue of adding rational numbers. The reverse process of taking a rational function apart by writing it as a sum of simpler rational functions is useful in several areas of mathematics; for example, it arises in calculus when we need to integrate a rational function and in discrete mathematics when we use generating functions to solve recurrence relations. The decomposition of a rational function as a sum of partial fractions leads to a system of linear equations. In Exercises 47–50, find the partial fraction decomposition of the given form. (The capital letters denote constants.)

47. $\dfrac{3x+1}{x^2+2x-3} = \dfrac{A}{x-1} + \dfrac{B}{x+3}$

48. $\dfrac{x^2-3x+3}{x^3+2x^2+x} = \dfrac{A}{x} + \dfrac{B}{x+1} + \dfrac{C}{(x+1)^2}$

CAS **49.** $\dfrac{x-1}{(x+1)(x^2+1)(x^2+4)}$

$$= \frac{A}{x+1} + \frac{Bx+C}{x^2+1} + \frac{Dx+E}{x^2+4}$$

CAS **50.** $\dfrac{x^3+x+1}{x(x-1)(x^2+x+1)(x^2+1)^3} = \dfrac{A}{x} + \dfrac{B}{x-1}$

$$+ \frac{Cx+D}{x^2+x+1} + \frac{Ex+F}{x^2+1} + \frac{Gx+H}{(x^2+1)^2} + \frac{Ix+J}{(x^2+1)^3}$$

Following are two useful formulas for the sums of powers of consecutive natural numbers:

$$1 + 2 + \cdots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

and

$$1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = \frac{n(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$$

The validity of these formulas for all values of $n \geq 1$ (or even $n \geq 0$) can be established using mathematical induction (see Appendix B). One way to make an educated guess as to what the formulas are, though, is to observe that we can rewrite the two formulas above as

$$\tfrac{1}{2}n^2 + \tfrac{1}{2} \quad \textit{and} \quad \tfrac{1}{3}n^3 + \tfrac{1}{2}n^2 + \tfrac{1}{6}n$$

respectively. This leads to the conjecture that the sum of pth powers of the first n natural numbers is a polynomial of degree $p + 1$ in the variable n.

51. Assuming that $1 + 2 + \cdots + n = an^2 + bn + c$, find a, b, and c by substituting three values for n and thereby obtaining a system of linear equations in a, b, and c.

52. Assume that $1^2 + 2^2 + \cdots + n^2 = an^3 + bn^2 + cn + d$. Find a, b, c, and d. [*Hint:* It is legitimate to use $n = 0$. What is the left-hand side in that case?]

53. Show that $1^3 + 2^3 + \cdots + n^3 = (n(n+1)/2)^2$.

Vignette

The Global Positioning System

The Global Positioning System (GPS) is used in a variety of situations for determining geographical locations. The military, surveyors, airlines, shipping companies, and hikers all make use of it. GPS technology is becoming so commonplace that some automobiles, cellular phones, and various handheld devices are now equipped with it.

The basic idea of GPS is a variant on three-dimensional triangulation: A point on Earth's surface is uniquely determined by knowing its distances from three other points. Here the point we wish to determine is the location of the GPS receiver, the other points are satellites, and the distances are computed using the travel times of radio signals from the satellites to the receiver.

We will assume that Earth is a sphere on which we impose an xyz-coordinate system with Earth centered at the origin and with the positive z-axis running through the north pole and fixed relative to Earth.

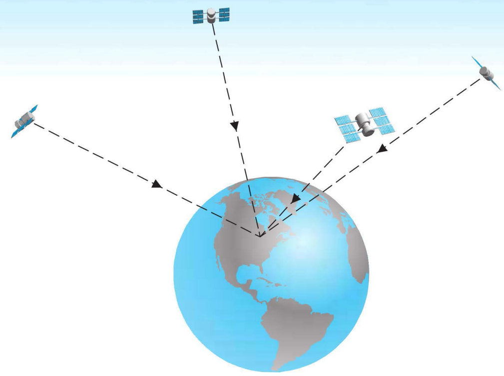
For simplicity, let's take one unit to be equal to the radius of Earth. Thus Earth's surface becomes the unit sphere with equation $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$. Time will be measured in hundredths of a second. GPS finds distances by knowing how long it takes a radio signal to get from one point to another. For this we need to know the speed of light, which is approximately equal to 0.47 (Earth radii per hundredths of a second).

Let's imagine that you are a hiker lost in the woods at point (x, y, z) at some time t. You don't know where you are, and furthermore, you have no watch, so you don't know what time it is. However, you have your GPS device, and it receives simultaneous signals from four satellites, giving their positions and times as shown in Table 2.11. (Distances are measured in Earth radii and time in hundredths of a second past midnight.)

This application is based on the article "An Underdetermined Linear System for GPS" by Dan Kalman in *The College Mathematics Journal*, 33 (2002), pp. 384–390. For a more in-depth treatment of the ideas introduced here, see G. Strang and K. Borre, *Linear Algebra, Geodesy, and GPS* (Wellesley-Cambridge Press, MA, 1997).

Table 2.11 Satellite Data

Satellite	Position	Time
1	(1.11, 2.55, 2.14)	1.29
2	(2.87, 0.00, 1.43)	1.31
3	(0.00, 1.08, 2.29)	2.75
4	(1.54, 1.01, 1.23)	4.06



Let (x, y, z) be your position, and let t be the time when the signals arrive. The goal is to solve for x, y, z, and t. Your distance from Satellite 1 can be computed as follows. The signal, traveling at a speed of 0.47 Earth radii/10^{-2} sec, was sent at time 1.29 and arrived at time t, so it took $t - 1.29$ hundredths of a second to reach you. Distance equals velocity multiplied by (elapsed) time, so

$$d = 0.47(t - 1.29)$$

We can also express d in terms of (x, y, z) and the satellite's position $(1.11, 2.55, 2.14)$ using the distance formula:

$$d = \sqrt{(x - 1.11)^2 + (y - 2.55)^2 + (z - 2.14)^2}$$

Combining these results leads to the equation

$$(x - 1.11)^2 + (y - 2.55)^2 + (z - 2.14)^2 = 0.47^2(t - 1.29)^2 \qquad (1)$$

Expanding, simplifying, and rearranging, we find that Equation (1) becomes

$$2.22x + 5.10y + 4.28z - 0.57t = x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 0.22t^2 + 11.95$$

Similarly, we can derive a corresponding equation for each of the other three satellites. We end up with a system of four equations in x, y, z, and t:

$$\begin{aligned}
2.22x + 5.10y + 4.28z - 0.57t &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 0.22t^2 + 11.95\\
5.74x \phantom{{}+ 5.10y} + 2.86z - 0.58t &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 0.22t^2 + 9.90\\
2.16y + 4.58z - 1.21t &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 0.22t^2 + 4.74\\
3.08x + 2.02y + 2.46z - 1.79t &= x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 0.22t^2 + 1.26
\end{aligned}$$

These are not linear equations, but the nonlinear terms are the same in each equation. If we subtract the first equation from each of the other three equations, we obtain a linear system:

$$\begin{aligned}
3.52x - 5.10y - 1.42z - 0.01t &= 2.05\\
-2.22x - 2.94y + 0.30z - 0.64t &= 7.21\\
0.86x - 3.08y - 1.82z - 1.22t &= -10.69
\end{aligned}$$

The augmented matrix row reduces as

$$\left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 3.52 & -5.10 & -1.42 & -0.01 & -2.05\\ -2.22 & -2.94 & 0.30 & -0.64 & -7.21\\ 0.86 & -3.08 & -1.82 & -1.22 & -10.69 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0.36 & 2.97\\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0.03 & 0.81\\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0.79 & 5.91 \end{array}\right]$$

from which we see that

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 2.97 - 0.36t \\ y &= 0.81 - 0.03t \\ z &= 5.91 - 0.79t \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

with t free. Substituting these equations into (1), we obtain

$$(2.97 - 0.36t - 1.11)^2 + (0.81 - 0.03t - 2.55)^2$$
$$+ (5.91 - 0.79t - 2.14)^2 = 0.47^2(t - 1.29)^2$$

which simplifies to the quadratic equation

$$0.54t^2 - 6.65t + 20.32 = 0$$

There are two solutions:

$$t = 6.74 \quad \text{and} \quad t = 5.60$$

Substituting into (2), we find that the first solution corresponds to $(x, y, z) = (0.55, 0.61, 0.56)$ and the second solution to $(x, y, z) = (0.96, 0.65, 1.46)$. The second solution is clearly not on the unit sphere (Earth), so we reject it. The first solution produces $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 0.99$, so we are satisfied that, within acceptable roundoff error, we have located your coordinates as $(0.55, 0.61, 0.56)$.

In practice, GPS takes significantly more factors into account, such as the fact that Earth's surface is not exactly spherical, so additional refinements are needed involving such techniques as least squares approximation (see Chapter 7). In addition, the results of the GPS calculation are converted from rectangular (Cartesian) coordinates into latitude and longitude, an interesting exercise in itself and one involving yet other branches of mathematics.

CAS

2.5 Iterative Methods for Solving Linear Systems

The direct methods for solving linear systems, using elementary row operations, lead to exact solutions in many cases but are subject to errors due to roundoff and other factors, as we have seen. The third road in our "trivium" takes us down quite a different path indeed. In this section, we explore methods that proceed *iteratively* by successively generating sequences of vectors that approach a solution to a linear system. In many instances (such as when the coefficient matrix is *sparse*—that is, contains many zero entries), iterative methods can be faster and more accurate than direct methods. Also, iterative methods can be stopped whenever the approximate solution they generate is sufficiently accurate. In addition, iterative methods often *benefit* from inaccuracy: Roundoff error can actually accelerate their convergence toward a solution.

We will explore two iterative methods for solving linear systems: ***Jacobi's method*** and a refinement of it, the ***Gauss-Seidel method.*** In all examples, we will be considering linear systems with the same number of variables as equations, and we will assume that there is a unique solution. Our interest is in finding this solution using iterative methods.

Example 2.37

Consider the system

$$\begin{aligned} 7x_1 - x_2 &= 5 \\ 3x_1 - 5x_2 &= -7 \end{aligned}$$

Jacobi's method begins with solving the first equation for x_1 and the second equation for x_2, to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= \frac{5 + x_2}{7} \\ x_2 &= \frac{7 + 3x_1}{5} \end{aligned} \qquad (1)$$

We now need an ***initial approximation*** to the solution. It turns out that it does not matter what this initial approximation is, so we might as well take $x_1 = 0$, $x_2 = 0$. We use these values in Equations (1) to get new values of x_1 and x_2:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= \frac{5 + 0}{7} = \frac{5}{7} \approx 0.714 \\ x_2 &= \frac{7 + 3 \cdot 0}{5} = \frac{7}{5} = 1.400 \end{aligned}$$

Now we substitute these values into (1) to get

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= \frac{5 + 1.4}{7} \approx 0.914 \\ x_2 &= \frac{7 + 3 \cdot \frac{5}{7}}{5} \approx 1.829 \end{aligned}$$

(written to three decimal places). We repeat this process (using the old values of x_2 and x_1 to get the new values of x_1 and x_2), producing the sequence of approximations given in Table 2.12.

Courtesy of the Smithsonian Institution Libraries, Washington, D.C.

Carl Gustav Jacobi (1804–1851) was a German mathematician who made important contributions to many fields of mathematics and physics, including geometry, number theory, analysis, mechanics, and fluid dynamics. Although much of his work was in applied mathematics, Jacobi believed in the importance of doing mathematics for its own sake. A fine teacher, he held positions at the Universities of Berlin and Königsberg and was one of the most famous mathematicians in Europe.

Table 2.12

n	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
x_1	0	0.714	0.914	0.976	0.993	0.998	0.999
x_2	0	1.400	1.829	1.949	1.985	1.996	1.999

The successive vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ are called ***iterates,*** so, for example, when $n = 4$, the fourth iterate is $\begin{bmatrix} 0.993 \\ 1.985 \end{bmatrix}$. We can see that the iterates in this example are approaching $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, which is the exact solution of the given system. (Check this.) We say in this case that Jacobi's method ***converges.***

Jacobi's method calculates the successive iterates in a two-variable system according to the crisscross pattern shown in Table 2.13.

Table 2.13

n	0	1	2	3
x_1				
x_2				

The Gauss-Seidel method is named after C. F. Gauss and Philipp Ludwig von Seidel (1821–1896). Seidel worked in analysis, probability theory, astronomy, and optics. Unfortunately, he suffered from eye problems and retired at a young age. The paper in which he described the method now known as Gauss-Seidel was published in 1874. Gauss, it seems, was unaware of the method!

Before we consider Jacobi's method in the general case, we will look at a modification of it that often converges faster to the solution. The *Gauss-Seidel method* is the same as the Jacobi method except that we use each new value *as soon as we can.* So in our example, we begin by calculating $x_1 = (5 + 0)/7 = \frac{5}{7} \approx 0.714$ as before, but we now use this value of x_1 to get the next value of x_2:

$$x_2 = \frac{7 + 3 \cdot \frac{5}{7}}{5} \approx 1.829$$

We then use this value of x_2 to recalculate x_1, and so on. The iterates this time are shown in Table 2.14.

We observe that the Gauss-Seidel method has converged faster to the solution. The iterates this time are calculated according to the zigzag pattern shown in Table 2.15.

Table 2.14

n	0	1	2	3	4	5
x_1	0	0.714	0.976	0.998	1.000	1.000
x_2	0	1.829	1.985	1.999	2.000	2.000

Table 2.15

n	0	1	2	3
x_1				
x_2				

The Gauss-Seidel method also has a nice geometric interpretation in the case of two variables. We can think of x_1 and x_2 as the coordinates of points in the plane. Our starting point is the point corresponding to our initial approximation, (0, 0). Our first calculation gives $x_1 = \frac{5}{7}$, so we move to the point $(\frac{5}{7}, 0) \approx (0.714, 0)$. Then we compute $x_2 = \frac{64}{35} \approx 1.829$, which moves us to the point $(\frac{5}{7}, \frac{64}{35}) \approx (0.714, 1.829)$. Continuing in this fashion, our calculations from the Gauss-Seidel method give rise to a sequence of points, each one differing from the preceding point in exactly one coordinate. If we plot the lines $7x_1 - x_2 = 5$ and $3x_1 - 5x_2 = -7$ corresponding to the two given equations, we find that the points calculated above fall alternately on the two lines, as shown in Figure 2.27. Moreover, they approach the point of intersection of the lines, which corresponds to the solution of the system of equations. This is what *convergence* means!

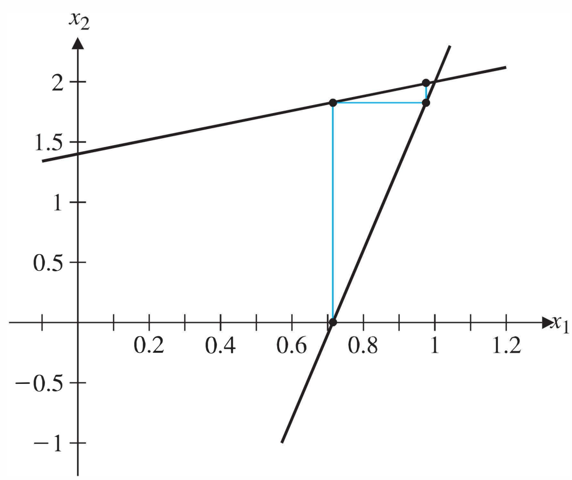


Figure 2.27
Converging iterates

The general cases of the two methods are analogous. Given a system of n linear equations in n variables,

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n &= b_2 \\ &\vdots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n &= b_n \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

we solve the first equation for x_1, the second for x_2, and so on. Then, beginning with an initial approximation, we use these new equations to iteratively update each variable. Jacobi's method uses *all* of the values at the kth iteration to compute the $(k + 1)$st iterate, whereas the Gauss-Seidel method always uses the *most recent* value of each variable in every calculation. Example 2.39 later illustrates the Gauss-Seidel method in a three-variable problem.

At this point, you should have some questions and concerns about these iterative methods. (Do you?) Several come to mind: Must these methods converge? If not, when *do* they converge? *If* they converge, must they converge to the solution? The answer to the first question is no, as Example 2.38 illustrates.

Example 2.38 Apply the Gauss-Seidel method to the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

with initial approximation $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution We rearrange the equations to get

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 1 + x_2 \\ x_2 &= 5 - 2x_1 \end{aligned}$$

The first few iterates are given in Table 2.16. (Check these.)

The actual solution to the given system is $\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Clearly, the iterates in Table 2.16 are not approaching this point, as Figure 2.28 makes graphically clear in an example of ***divergence.***

Table 2.16

n	0	1	2	3	4	5
x_1	0	1	4	-2	10	-14
x_2	0	3	-3	9	-15	33

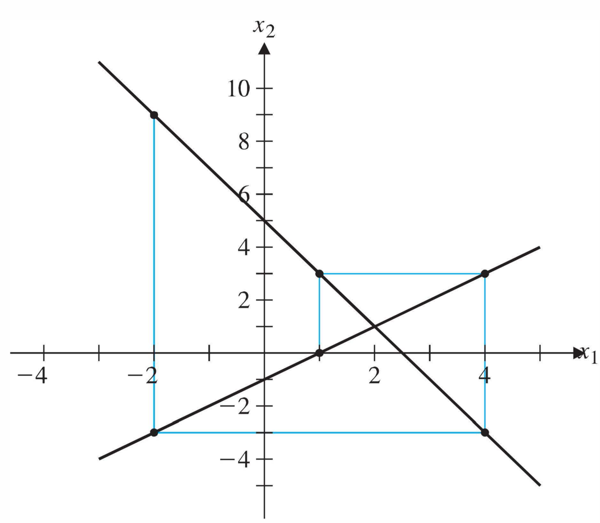


Figure 2.28
Diverging iterates

So when do these iterative methods converge? Unfortunately, the answer to this question is rather tricky. We will answer it completely in Chapter 7, but for now we will give a partial answer, without proof.

Let A be the $n \times n$ matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

We say that A is ***strictly diagonally dominant*** if

$$\begin{aligned} |a_{11}| &> |a_{12}| + |a_{13}| + \cdots + |a_{1n}| \\ |a_{22}| &> |a_{21}| + |a_{23}| + \cdots + |a_{2n}| \\ &\vdots \\ |a_{nn}| &> |a_{n1}| + |a_{n2}| + \cdots + |a_{n,n-1}| \end{aligned}$$

That is, the absolute value of each diagonal entry $a_{11}, a_{22}, \ldots, a_{nn}$ is greater than the sum of the absolute values of the remaining entries in that row.

Theorem 2.9 If a system of n linear equations in n variables has a strictly diagonally dominant coefficient matrix, then it has a unique solution and both the Jacobi and the Gauss-Seidel method converge to it.

Remark Be warned! This theorem is a one-way implication. The fact that a system is *not* strictly diagonally dominant does *not* mean that the iterative methods diverge. They may or may not converge. (See Exercises 15–19.) Indeed, there are examples in which one of the methods converges and the other diverges. However, *if* either of these methods converges, then it must converge to the solution—it cannot converge to some other point.

Theorem 2.10 If the Jacobi or the Gauss-Seidel method converges for a system of n linear equations in n variables, then it must converge to the solution of the system.

Proof We will illustrate the idea behind the proof by sketching it out for the case of Jacobi's method, using the system of equations in Example 2.37. The general proof is similar.

Convergence means that "as iterations increase, the values of the iterates get closer and closer to a limiting value." This means that x_1 and x_2 converge to r and s, respectively, as shown in Table 2.17.

We must prove that $\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r \\ s \end{bmatrix}$ is the solution of the system of equations. In other words, at the $(k + 1)$st iteration, the values of x_1 and x_2 must stay the same as at

Table 2.17

n	$\cdots$	k	$k+1$	$k+2$	$\cdots$
x_1	$\cdots$	r	r	r	$\cdots$
x_2	$\cdots$	s	s	s	$\cdots$

the kth iteration. But the calculations give $x_1 = (5 + x_2)/7 = (5 + s)/7$ and $x_2 = (7 + 3x_1)/5 = (7 + 3r)/5$. Therefore,

$$\frac{5+s}{7} = r \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{7+3r}{5} = s$$

Rearranging, we see that

$$\begin{aligned} 7r - s &= 5 \\ 3r - 5s &= -7 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, $x_1 = r$, $x_2 = s$ satisfy the original equations, as required.

By now you may be wondering: If iterative methods don't always converge to the solution, what good are they? Why don't we just use Gaussian elimination? First, we have seen that Gaussian elimination is sensitive to roundoff errors, and this sensitivity can lead to inaccurate or even wildly wrong answers. Also, even if Gaussian elimination does not go astray, we cannot improve on a solution once we have found it. For example, if we use Gaussian elimination to calculate a solution to two decimal places, there is no way to obtain the solution to four decimal places except to start over again and work with increased accuracy.

In contrast, we can achieve additional accuracy with iterative methods simply by doing more iterations. For large systems, particularly those with sparse coefficient matrices, iterative methods are much faster than direct methods when implemented on a computer. In many applications, the systems that arise are strictly diagonally dominant, and thus iterative methods are guaranteed to converge. The next example illustrates one such application.

Example 2.39

Suppose we heat each edge of a metal plate to a constant temperature, as shown in Figure 2.29.

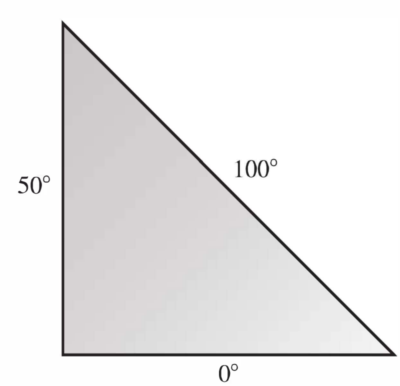


Figure 2.29
A heated metal plate

Eventually the temperature at the interior points will reach *equilibrium*, where the following property can be shown to hold:

The temperature at each interior point P on a plate is the average of the temperatures on the circumference of any circle centered at P inside the plate (Figure 2.30).

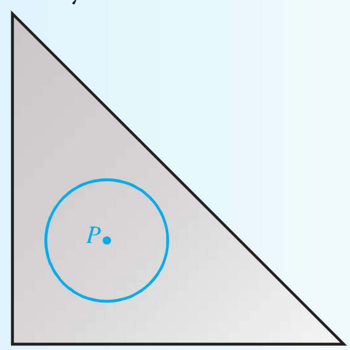


Figure 2.30

To apply this property in an actual example requires techniques from calculus. As an alternative, we can approximate the situation by overlaying the plate with a grid, or mesh, that has a finite number of interior points, as shown in Figure 2.31.

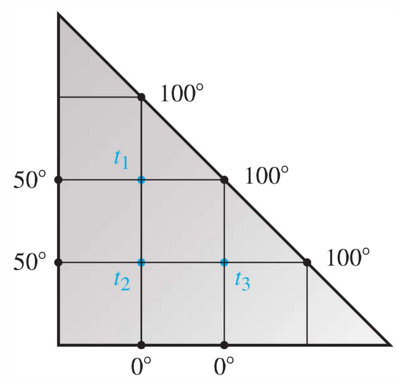


Figure 2.31
The discrete version of the heated plate problem

The discrete analogue of the averaging property governing equilibrium temperatures is stated as follows:

The temperature at each interior point P is the average of the temperatures at the points adjacent to P.

For the example shown in Figure 2.31, there are three interior points, and each is adjacent to four other points. Let the equilibrium temperatures of the interior points be t_1, t_2, and t_3, as shown. Then, by the temperature-averaging property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} t_1 &= \frac{100 + 100 + t_2 + 50}{4} \\ t_2 &= \frac{t_1 + t_3 + 0 + 50}{4} \\ t_3 &= \frac{100 + 100 + 0 + t_2}{4} \end{aligned} \tag{3}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} 4t_1 - t_2 \phantom{{}- t_3} &= 250 \\ -t_1 + 4t_2 - t_3 &= 50 \\ - t_2 + 4t_3 &= 200 \end{aligned}$$

Notice that this system is strictly diagonally dominant. Notice also that Equations (3) are in the form required for Jacobi or Gauss-Seidel iteration. With an initial approximation of $t_1 = 0$, $t_2 = 0$, $t_3 = 0$, the Gauss-Seidel method gives the following iterates.

Iteration 1:

$$\begin{aligned} t_1 &= \frac{100 + 100 + 0 + 50}{4} = 62.5 \\ t_2 &= \frac{62.5 + 0 + 0 + 50}{4} = 28.125 \\ t_3 &= \frac{100 + 100 + 0 + 28.125}{4} = 57.031 \end{aligned}$$

Iteration 2:

$$\begin{aligned} t_1 &= \frac{100 + 100 + 28.125 + 50}{4} = 69.531 \\ t_2 &= \frac{69.531 + 57.031 + 0 + 50}{4} = 44.141 \\ t_3 &= \frac{100 + 100 + 0 + 44.141}{4} = 61.035 \end{aligned}$$

Continuing, we find the iterates listed in Table 2.18. We work with five-significant-digit accuracy and stop when two successive iterates agree within 0.001 in all variables.

Thus, the equilibrium temperatures at the interior points are (to an accuracy of 0.001) $t_1 = 74.108$, $t_2 = 46.430$, and $t_3 = 61.607$. (Check these calculations.)

By using a finer grid (with more interior points), we can get as precise information as we like about the equilibrium temperatures at various points on the plate.

Table 2.18

n	**0**	**1**	**2**	**3**	. . .	**7**	**8**
t_1	0	62.500	69.531	73.535	. . .	74.107	74.107
t_2	0	28.125	44.141	46.143	. . .	46.429	46.429
t_3	0	57.031	61.035	61.536	. . .	61.607	61.607

Exercises 2.5

CAS

In Exercises 1–6, apply Jacobi's method to the given system. Take the zero vector as the initial approximation and work with four-significant-digit accuracy until two successive iterates agree within 0.001 in each variable. In each case, compare your answer with the exact solution found using any direct method you like.

1. $\begin{aligned} 7x_1 - x_2 &= 6 \\ x_1 - 5x_2 &= -4 \end{aligned}$

2. $\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + x_2 &= 5 \\ x_1 - x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

3. $\begin{aligned} 4.5x_1 - 0.5x_2 &= 1 \\ x_1 - 3.5x_2 &= -1 \end{aligned}$

4. $\begin{aligned} 20x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= 17 \\ x_1 - 10x_2 + x_3 &= 13 \\ -x_1 + x_2 + 10x_3 &= 18 \end{aligned}$

5. $\begin{aligned} 3x_1 + x_2 &= 1 \\ x_1 + 4x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ x_2 + 3x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

6. $\begin{aligned} 3x_1 - x_2 &= 1 \\ -x_1 + 3x_2 - x_3 &= 0 \\ -x_2 + 3x_3 - x_4 &= 1 \\ -x_3 + 3x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

In Exercises 7–12, repeat the given exercise using the Gauss-Seidel method. Take the zero vector as the initial approximation and work with four-significant-digit accuracy until two successive iterates agree within 0.001 in each variable. Compare the number of iterations required by the Jacobi and Gauss-Seidel methods to reach such an approximate solution.

7. Exercise 1

8. Exercise 2

9. Exercise 3

10. Exercise 4

11. Exercise 5

12. Exercise 6

In Exercises 13 and 14, draw diagrams to illustrate the convergence of the Gauss-Seidel method with the given system.

13. The system in Exercise 1

14. The system in Exercise 2

In Exercises 15 and 16, compute the first four iterates, using the zero vector as the initial approximation, to show that the Gauss-Seidel method diverges. Then show that the equations can be rearranged to give a strictly diagonally dominant coefficient matrix, and apply the Gauss-Seidel method to obtain an approximate solution that is accurate to within 0.001.

15. $\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 &= 3 \\ 3x_1 + 2x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

16. $\begin{aligned} x_1 - 4x_2 + 2x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_2 + 4x_3 &= 1 \\ 6x_1 - x_2 - 2x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$

17. Draw a diagram to illustrate the divergence of the Gauss-Seidel method in Exercise 15.

In Exercises 18 and 19, the coefficient matrix is not strictly diagonally dominant, nor can the equations be rearranged to make it so. However, both the Jacobi and the Gauss-Seidel method converge anyway. Demonstrate that this is true of the Gauss-Seidel method, starting with the zero vector as the initial approximation and obtaining a solution that is accurate to within 0.01.

18. $\begin{aligned} -4x_1 + 5x_2 &= 14 \\ x_1 - 3x_2 &= -7 \end{aligned}$

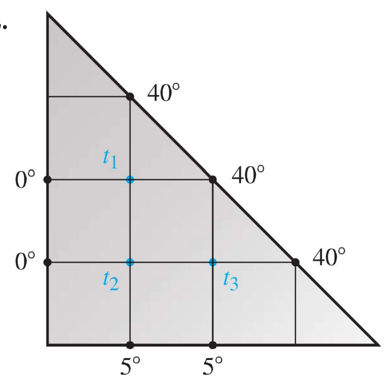
19. $\begin{aligned} 5x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= -8 \\ x_1 + 4x_2 - 4x_3 &= 102 \\ -2x_1 - 2x_2 + 4x_3 &= -90 \end{aligned}$

20. Continue performing iterations in Exercise 18 to obtain a solution that is accurate to within 0.001.

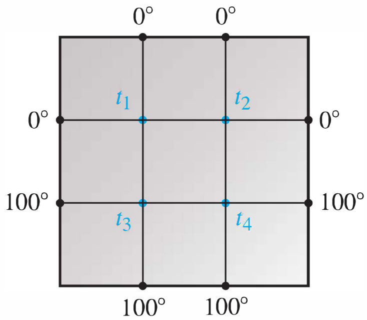
21. Continue performing iterations in Exercise 19 to obtain a solution that is accurate to within 0.001.

In Exercises 22–24, the metal plate has the constant temperatures shown on its boundaries. Find the equilibrium temperature at each of the indicated interior points by setting up a system of linear equations and applying either the Jacobi or the Gauss-Seidel method. Obtain a solution that is accurate to within 0.001.

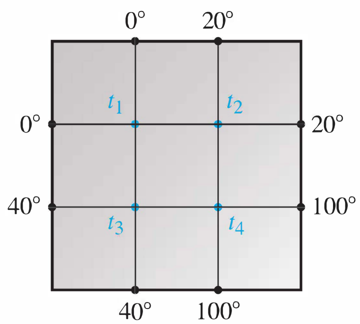
22.



23.

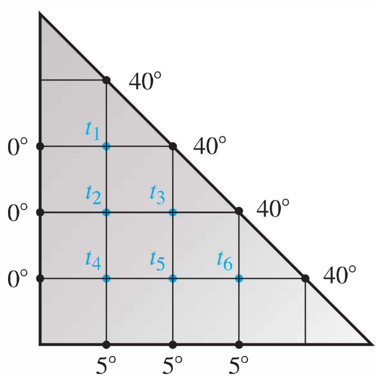


24.

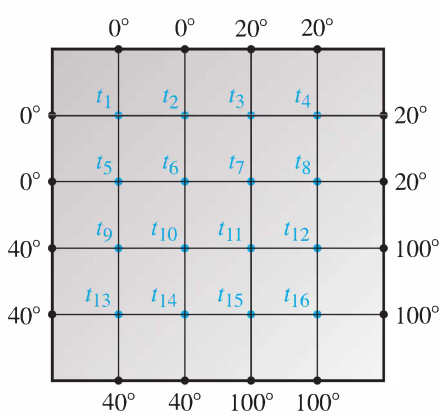


In Exercises 25 and 26, we refine the grids used in Exercises 22 and 24 to obtain more accurate information about the equilibrium temperatures at interior points of the plates. Obtain solutions that are accurate to within 0.001, using either the Jacobi or the Gauss-Seidel method.

25.



26.



Exercises 27 and 28 demonstrate that sometimes, if we are lucky, the form of an iterative problem may allow us to use a little insight to obtain an exact solution.

27. A narrow strip of paper 1 unit long is placed along a number line so that its ends are at 0 and 1. The paper is folded in half, right end over left, so that its ends are now at 0 and $\frac{1}{2}$. Next, it is folded in half again, this time left end over right, so that its ends are at $\frac{1}{4}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$. Figure 2.32 shows this process. We continue folding the paper in half, alternating right-over-left and left-over-right. If we could continue indefinitely, it is clear that the ends of the paper would converge to a point. It is this point that we want to find.

(a) Let x_1 correspond to the left-hand end of the paper and x_2 to the right-hand end. Make a table with the first six values of $[x_1, x_2]$ and plot the corresponding points on x_1, x_2 coordinate axes.

(b) Find two linear equations of the form $x_2 = ax_1 + b$ and $x_1 = cx_2 + d$ that determine the new values of the endpoints at each iteration. Draw the corresponding lines on your coordinate axes and show that this diagram would result from applying the Gauss-Seidel method to the system of linear equations you have found. (Your diagram should resemble Figure 2.27 on page 126.)

(c) Switching to decimal representation, continue applying the Gauss-Seidel method to approximate the point to which the ends of the paper are converging to within 0.001 accuracy.

(d) Solve the system of equations exactly and compare your answers.

28. An ant is standing on a number line at point *A*. It walks halfway to point *B* and turns around. Then it walks halfway back to point *A*, turns around again, and walks halfway to point *B*. It continues to do this indefinitely. Let point *A* be at 0 and point *B* be at 1. The ant's walk is made up of a sequence of overlapping line segments. Let x_1 record the positions of the left-hand endpoints of these segments and x_2 their right-hand endpoints. (Thus, we begin with $x_1 = 0$ and $x_2 = \frac{1}{2}$. Then we have $x_1 = \frac{1}{4}$ and $x_2 = \frac{1}{2}$, and so on.) Figure 2.33 shows the start of the ant's walk.

(a) Make a table with the first six values of $[x_1, x_2]$ and plot the corresponding points on x_1, x_2 coordinate axes.

(b) Find two linear equations of the form $x_2 = ax_1 + b$ and $x_1 = cx_2 + d$ that determine the new values of the endpoints at each iteration. Draw the corresponding

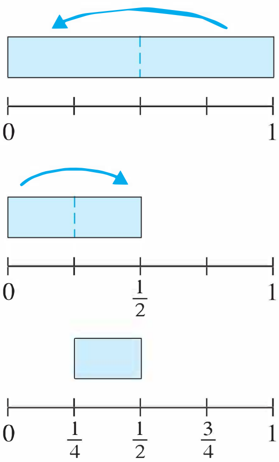


Figure 2.32
Folding a strip of paper

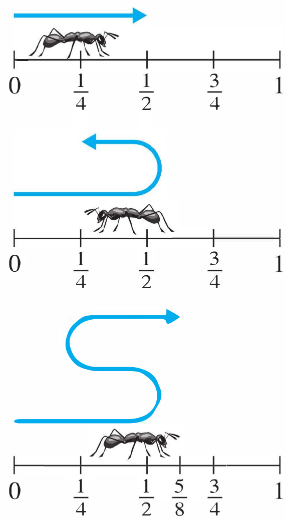


Figure 2.33
The ant's walk

lines on your coordinate axes and show that this diagram would result from applying the Gauss-Seidel method to the system of linear equations you have found. (Your diagram should resemble Figure 2.27 on page 126.)

(c) Switching to decimal representation, continue applying the Gauss-Seidel method to approximate the values to which x_1 and x_2 are converging to within 0.001 accuracy.

(d) Solve the system of equations exactly and compare your answers. Interpret your results.

Chapter Review

Key Definitions and Concepts

augmented matrix, 61, 64
back substitution, 61
coefficient matrix, 64
consistent system, 60
convergence, 125–126
divergence, 127
elementary row operations, 66
free variable, 71
Gauss-Jordan elimination, 73
Gauss-Seidel method, 124
Gaussian elimination, 68–69
homogeneous system, 76
inconsistent system, 60
iterate, 125
Jacobi's method, 124
leading variable (leading 1), 71–73
linear equation, 58
linearly dependent vectors, 93
linearly independent vectors, 93
pivot, 66
rank of a matrix, 72
Rank Theorem, 72
reduced row echelon form, 73
row echelon form, 65
row equivalent matrices, 68
span of a set of vectors, 90
spanning set, 90
system of linear equations, 59

Review Questions

1. Mark each of the following statements true or false:

(a) Every system of linear equations has a solution.

(b) Every homogeneous system of linear equations has a solution.

(c) If a system of linear equations has more variables than equations, then it has infinitely many solutions.

(d) If a system of linear equations has more equations than variables, then it has no solution.

(e) Determining whether $\mathbf{b}$ is in $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{a}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_n)$ is equivalent to determining whether the system $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ is consistent, where $A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \cdots \mathbf{a}_n]$.

(f) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$ is always a plane through the origin.

(g) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if nonzero vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are not parallel, then they are linearly independent.

(h) In $\mathbb{R}^3$, if a set of vectors can be drawn head to tail, one after the other so that a closed path (polygon) is formed, then the vectors are linearly dependent.

(i) If a set of vectors has the property that no two vectors in the set are scalar multiples of one another, then the set of vectors is linearly independent.

(j) If there are more vectors in a set of vectors than the number of entries in each vector, then the set of vectors is linearly dependent.

2. Find the rank of the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 0 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 & 1 & 3 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 2 & -3 & 2 \\ 0 & -5 & -1 & 6 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

3. Solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} x + y - 2z &= 4 \\ x + 3y - z &= 7 \\ 2x + y - 5z &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

4. Solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 3w + 8x - 18y + z &= 35 \\ w + 2x - 4y &= 11 \\ w + 3x - 7y + z &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

5. Solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + 3y &= 4 \\ x + 2y &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

over $\mathbb{Z}_7$.

6. Solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 2y &= 1 \\ x + 4y &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

over $\mathbb{Z}_5$.

7. For what value(s) of k is the linear system with augmented matrix $\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} k & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2k & 1 \end{array}\right]$ inconsistent?

8. Find parametric equations for the line of intersection of the planes $x + 2y + 3z = 4$ and $5x + 6y + 7z = 8$.

9. Find the point of intersection of the following lines, if it exists.

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + s\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -2 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

10. Determine whether $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ is in the span of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

11. Find the general equation of the plane spanned by $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

12. Determine whether $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 9 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$ are linearly independent.

13. Determine whether $\mathbb{R}^3 = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$ if:

(a) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

14. Let $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3$ be linearly independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$, and let $A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \ \mathbf{a}_2 \ \mathbf{a}_3]$. Which of the following statements are true?

(a) The reduced row echelon form of A is I_3.

(b) The rank of A is 3.

(c) The system $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ has a unique solution for any vector $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(d) (a), (b), and (c) are all true.

(e) (a) and (b) are both true, but not (c).

15. Let $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3$ be linearly dependent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$, not all zero, and let $A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \ \mathbf{a}_2 \ \mathbf{a}_3]$. What are the possible values of the rank of A?

16. What is the maximum rank of a 5×3 matrix? What is the minimum rank of a 5×3 matrix?

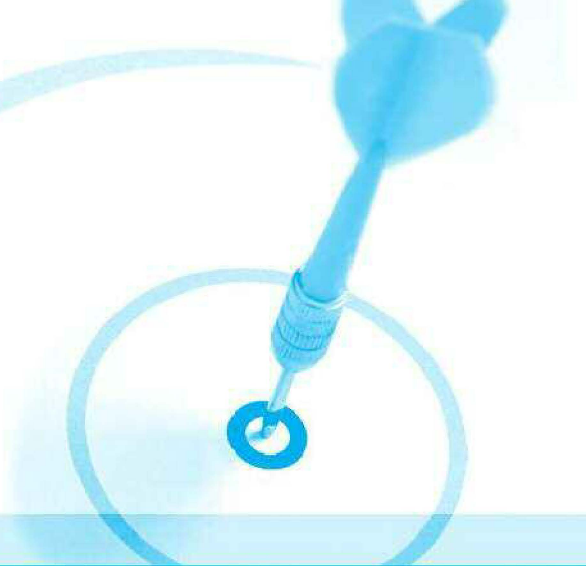
17. Show that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are linearly independent vectors, then so are $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}$.

18. Show that $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}) = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v})$ for any vectors $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$.

19. In order for a linear system with augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ to be consistent, what must be true about the ranks of A and $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$?

20. Are the matrices $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \\ -1 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ row equivalent? Why or why not?

3 Matrices



We [Halmos and Kaplansky] share a philosophy about linear algebra: we think basis-free, we write basis-free, but when the chips are down we close the office door and compute with matrices like fury.

—Irving Kaplansky
In *Paul Halmos: Celebrating 50 Years of Mathematics*
J. H. Ewing and F. W. Gehring, eds. Springer-Verlag, 1991, p. 88

3.0 Introduction: Matrices in Action

In this chapter, we will study matrices in their own right. We have already used matrices—in the form of augmented matrices—to record information about and to help streamline calculations involving systems of linear equations. Now you will see that matrices have algebraic properties of their own, which enable us to calculate with them, subject to the rules of matrix algebra. Furthermore, you will observe that matrices are not static objects, recording information and data; rather, they represent certain types of functions that "act" on vectors, transforming them into other vectors. These "matrix transformations" will begin to play a key role in our study of linear algebra and will shed new light on what you have already learned about vectors and systems of linear equations. Furthermore, matrices arise in many forms other than augmented matrices; we will explore some of the many applications of matrices at the end of this chapter.

In this section, we will consider a few simple examples to illustrate how matrices can transform vectors. In the process, you will get your first glimpse of "matrix arithmetic."

Consider the equations

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= x_1 + 2x_2 \\ y_2 &= \phantom{x_1 + {}} 3x_2 \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

We can view these equations as describing a transformation of the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ into the vector $\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}$. If we denote the matrix of coefficients of the right-hand side by F, then $F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, and we can rewrite the transformation as

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

or, more succinctly, $\mathbf{y} = F\mathbf{x}$. [Think of this expression as analogous to the functional notation $y = f(x)$ you are used to: $\mathbf{x}$ is the independent "variable" here, $\mathbf{y}$ is the dependent "variable," and F is the name of the "function."]

Thus, if $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, then the Equations (1) give

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= -2 + 2\cdot 1 = 0 \\ y_2 &= \phantom{-2 + {}} 3\cdot 1 = 3 \end{aligned} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

We can write this expression as $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Problem 1 Compute $F\mathbf{x}$ for the following vectors $\mathbf{x}$:

(a) $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Problem 2 The heads of the four vectors $\mathbf{x}$ in Problem 1 locate the four corners of a square in the x_1x_2 plane. Draw this square and label its corners A, B, C, and D, corresponding to parts (a), (b), (c), and (d) of Problem 1.

On separate coordinate axes (labeled y_1 and y_2), draw the four points determined by $F\mathbf{x}$ in Problem 1. Label these points A', B', C', and D'. Let's make the (reasonable) assumption that the line segment $\overline{AB}$ is transformed into the line segment $\overline{A'B'}$, and likewise for the other three sides of the square $ABCD$. What geometric figure is represented by $A'B'C'D'$?

Problem 3 The center of square $ABCD$ is the origin $\mathbf{0} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. What is the center of $A'B'C'D'$? What algebraic calculation confirms this?

Now consider the equations

$$\begin{aligned} z_1 &= y_1 - y_2 \\ z_2 &= -2y_1 \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

that transform a vector $\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}$ into the vector $\mathbf{z} = \begin{bmatrix} z_1 \\ z_2 \end{bmatrix}$. We can abbreviate this transformation as $\mathbf{z} = G\mathbf{y}$, where

$$G = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Problem 4 We are going to find out how G transforms the figure $A'B'C'D'$. Compute $G\mathbf{y}$ for each of the four vectors $\mathbf{y}$ that you computed in Problem 1. [That is, compute $\mathbf{z} = G(F\mathbf{x})$. You may recognize this expression as being analogous to the composition of functions with which you are familiar.] Call the corresponding points A'', B'', C'', and D'', and sketch the figure $A''B''C''D''$ on z_1z_2 coordinate axes.

Problem 5 By substituting Equations (1) into Equations (2), obtain equations for z_1 and z_2 in terms of x_1 and x_2. If we denote the matrix of these equations by H, then we have $\mathbf{z} = H\mathbf{x}$. Since we also have $\mathbf{z} = GF\mathbf{x}$, it is reasonable to write

$$H = GF$$

Can you see how the entries of H are related to the entries of F and G?

Problem 6 Let's do the above process the other way around: First transform the square $ABCD$, using G, to obtain figure $A^*B^*C^*D^*$. Then transform the resulting figure, using F, to obtain $A^{**}B^{**}C^{**}D^{**}$. [*Note:* Don't worry about the "variables" $\mathbf{x}$,

y, and **z** here. Simply substitute the coordinates of A, B, C, and D into Equations (2) and then substitute the results into Equations (1).] Are $A^{**}B^{**}C^{**}D^{**}$ and $A''B''C''D''$ the same? What does this tell you about the order in which we perform the transformations F and G?

Problem 7 Repeat Problem 5 with general matrices

$$F = \begin{bmatrix} f_{11} & f_{12} \\ f_{21} & f_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad G = \begin{bmatrix} g_{11} & g_{12} \\ g_{21} & g_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad H = \begin{bmatrix} h_{11} & h_{12} \\ h_{21} & h_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

That is, if Equations (1) and Equations (2) have coefficients as specified by F and G, find the entries of H in terms of the entries of F and G. The result will be a formula for the "product" $H = GF$.

Problem 8 Repeat Problems 1–6 with the following matrices. (Your formula from Problem 7 may help to speed up the algebraic calculations.) Note any similarities or differences that you think are significant.

$$\text{(a)}\ F = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, G = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{(b)}\ F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, G = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{(c)}\ F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, G = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \qquad \text{(d)}\ F = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, G = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

3.1 Matrix Operations

Although we have already encountered matrices, we begin by stating a formal definition and recording some facts for future reference.

Definition A ***matrix*** is a rectangular array of numbers called the ***entries,*** or ***elements,*** of the matrix.

Although numbers will usually be chosen from the set $\mathbb{R}$ of real numbers, they may also be taken from the set $\mathbb{C}$ of complex numbers or from $\mathbb{Z}_p$, where p is prime.

The following are all examples of matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{5} & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & \pi & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 17 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \begin{bmatrix} 5.1 & 1.2 & -1 \\ 6.9 & 0 & 4.4 \\ -7.3 & 9 & 8.5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad [7]$$

The ***size*** of a matrix is a description of the numbers of rows and columns it has. A matrix is called $m \times n$ (pronounced "m by n") if it has m rows and n columns. Thus, the examples above are matrices of sizes 2×2, 2×3, 3×1, 1×4, 3×3, and 1×1, respectively. A $1 \times m$ matrix is called a ***row matrix*** (or ***row vector***), and an $n \times 1$ matrix is called a ***column matrix*** (or ***column vector***).

Technically, there is a distinction between row/column matrices and vectors, but we will not belabor this distinction. We *will*, however, distinguish between *row* matrices/vectors and *column* matrices/vectors. This distinction is important—at the very least—for algebraic computations, as we will demonstrate.

We use *double-subscript* notation to refer to the entries of a matrix A. The entry of A in row i and column j is denoted by a_{ij}. Thus, if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 9 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

then $a_{13} = -1$ and $a_{22} = 5$. (The notation A_{ij} is sometimes used interchangeably with a_{ij}.) We can therefore compactly denote a matrix A by $[a_{ij}]$ (or $[a_{ij}]_{m \times n}$ if it is important to specify the size of A, although the size will usually be clear from the context).

With this notation, a general $m \times n$ matrix A has the form

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

If the columns of A are the vectors $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_n$, then we may represent A as

$$A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \quad \mathbf{a}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{a}_n]$$

If the rows of A are $\mathbf{A}_1, \mathbf{A}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{A}_m$, then we may represent A as

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_1 \\ \mathbf{A}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \mathbf{A}_m \end{bmatrix}$$

The ***diagonal entries*** of A are $a_{11}, a_{22}, a_{33}, \ldots$, and if $m = n$ (that is, if A has the same number of rows as columns), then A is called a ***square matrix.*** A square matrix whose nondiagonal entries are all zero is called a ***diagonal matrix.*** A diagonal matrix all of whose diagonal entries are the same is called a ***scalar matrix.*** If the scalar on the diagonal is 1, the scalar matrix is called an ***identity matrix.***

For example, let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 & 0 \\ -1 & 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The diagonal entries of A are 2 and 4, but A is not square; B is a square matrix of size 2×2 with diagonal entries 3 and 5; C is a diagonal matrix; D is a 3×3 identity matrix. The $n \times n$ identity matrix is denoted by I_n (or simply I if its size is understood).

Since we can view matrices as generalizations of vectors (and, indeed, matrices can and should be thought of as being made up of both row and column vectors), many of the conventions and operations for vectors carry through (in an obvious way) to matrices.

Two matrices are ***equal*** if they have the same size and if their corresponding entries are equal. Thus, if $A = [a_{ij}]_{m \times n}$ and $B = [b_{ij}]_{r \times s}$, then $A = B$ if and only if $m = r$ and $n = s$ and $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$ for all i and j.

Example 3.1

Consider the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 5 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & x \\ 5 & 3 & y \end{bmatrix}$$

Neither A nor B can be equal to C (no matter what the values of x and y), since A and B are 2×2 matrices and C is 2×3. However, $A = B$ if and only if $a = 2$, $b = 0$, $c = 5$, and $d = 3$.

Example 3.2

Consider the matrices

$$R = [1 \quad 4 \quad 3] \quad \text{and} \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Despite the fact that R and C have the same entries in the same order, $R \neq C$ since R is 1×3 and C is 3×1. (If we read R and C aloud, they both sound the same: "one, four, three.") Thus, our distinction between row matrices/vectors and column matrices/vectors is an important one.

Matrix Addition and Scalar Multiplication

Generalizing from vector addition, we define matrix addition *componentwise*. If $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$ are $m \times n$ matrices, their ***sum*** $A + B$ is the $m \times n$ matrix obtained by adding the corresponding entries. Thus,

$$A + B = [a_{ij} + b_{ij}]$$

[We could equally well have defined $A + B$ in terms of vector addition by specifying that each column (or row) of $A + B$ is the sum of the corresponding columns (or rows) of A and B.] If A and B are not the same size, then $A + B$ is not defined.

Example 3.3

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then

$$A + B = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 5 & -1 \\ 1 & 6 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

but neither $A + C$ nor $B + C$ is defined.

The componentwise definition of scalar multiplication will come as no surprise. If A is an $m \times n$ matrix and c is a scalar, then the ***scalar multiple*** cA is the $m \times n$ matrix obtained by multiplying each entry of A by c. More formally, we have

$$cA = c\,[a_{ij}] = [ca_{ij}]$$

[In terms of vectors, we could equivalently stipulate that each column (or row) of cA is c times the corresponding column (or row) of A.]

Example 3.4

For matrix A in Example 3.3,

$$2A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 8 & 0 \\ -4 & 12 & 10 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \tfrac{1}{2}A = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 3 & \frac{5}{2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad (-1)A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -4 & 0 \\ 2 & -6 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

The matrix $(-1)A$ is written as $-A$ and called the ***negative*** of A. As with vectors, we can use this fact to define the ***difference*** of two matrices: If A and B are the same size, then

$$A - B = A + (-B)$$

Example 3.5

For matrices A and B in Example 3.3,

$$A - B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 0 \\ -2 & 6 & 5 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 & 1 \\ -5 & 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

A matrix all of whose entries are zero is called a ***zero matrix*** and denoted by O (or $O_{m \times n}$ if it is important to specify its size). It should be clear that if A is any matrix and O is the zero matrix of the same size, then

$$A + O = A = O + A$$

and

$$A - A = O = -A + A$$

Matrix Multiplication

Mathematicians are sometimes like Lewis Carroll's Humpty Dumpty: "When *I* use a word," Humpty Dumpty said, "it means just what I choose it to mean—neither more nor less" (from *Through the Looking Glass*).

The Introduction in Section 3.0 suggested that there is a "product" of matrices that is analogous to the composition of functions. We now make this notion more precise. The definition we are about to give generalizes what you should have discovered in Problems 5 and 7 in Section 3.0. Unlike the definitions of matrix addition and scalar multiplication, the definition of the product of two matrices is *not* a componentwise definition. Of course, there is nothing to stop us from defining a product of matrices in a componentwise fashion; unfortunately such a definition has few applications and is not as "natural" as the one we now give.

Definition If A is an $m \times n$ matrix and B is an $n \times r$ matrix, then the ***product*** $C = AB$ is an $m \times r$ matrix. The (i, j) entry of the product is computed as follows:

$$c_{ij} = a_{i1}b_{1j} + a_{i2}b_{2j} + \cdots + a_{in}b_{nj}$$

Remarks

- Notice that A and B need not be the same size. However, the number of *columns* of A must be the same as the number of *rows* of B. If we write the sizes of A, B, and AB in order, we can see at a glance whether this requirement is satisfied. Moreover, we can predict the size of the product before doing any calculations, since the number of *rows* of AB is the same as the number of rows of A, while the number of *columns* of AB is the same as the number of columns of B, as shown below:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & & B & = & AB \\ m \times n & & n \times r & & m \times r \end{array}$$

Same

Size of AB

- The formula for the entries of the product looks like a dot product, and indeed it is. It says that the (i, j) entry of the matrix AB is the dot product of the ith row of A and the jth column of B:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{i1} & a_{i2} & \cdots & a_{in} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & \cdots & b_{1j} & \cdots & b_{1r} \\ b_{21} & \cdots & b_{2j} & \cdots & b_{2r} \\ \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ b_{n1} & \cdots & b_{nj} & \cdots & b_{nr} \end{bmatrix}$$

Notice that, in the expression $c_{ij} = a_{i1}b_{1j} + a_{i2}b_{2j} + \cdots + a_{in}b_{nj}$, the "outer subscripts" on each ab term in the sum are always i and j whereas the "inner subscripts" always agree and increase from 1 to n. We see this pattern clearly if we write c_{ij} using summation notation:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{n} a_{ik}b_{kj}$$

Example 3.6

Compute AB if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 \\ -2 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 5 & -2 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution Since A is 2×3 and B is 3×4, the product AB is defined and will be a 2×4 matrix. The first row of the product $C = AB$ is computed by taking the dot product of the first row of A with each of the columns of B in turn. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} c_{11} &= 1(-4) + 3(5) + (-1)(-1) = 12 \\ c_{12} &= 1(0) + 3(-2) + (-1)(2) = -8 \\ c_{13} &= 1(3) + 3(-1) + (-1)(0) = 0 \\ c_{14} &= 1(-1) + 3(1) + (-1)(6) = -4 \end{aligned}$$

The second row of C is computed by taking the dot product of the second row of A with each of the columns of B in turn:

$$\begin{aligned} c_{21} &= (-2)(-4) + (-1)(5) + (1)(-1) = 2 \\ c_{22} &= (-2)(0) + (-1)(-2) + (1)(2) = 4 \\ c_{23} &= (-2)(3) + (-1)(-1) + (1)(0) = -5 \\ c_{24} &= (-2)(-1) + (-1)(1) + (1)(6) = 7 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the product matrix is given by

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & -8 & 0 & -4 \\ 2 & 4 & -5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

(With a little practice, you should be able to do these calculations mentally without writing out all of the details as we have done here. For more complicated examples, a calculator with matrix capabilities or a computer algebra system is preferable.)

Before we go further, we will consider two examples that justify our chosen definition of matrix multiplication.

Example 3.7

Ann and Bert are planning to go shopping for fruit for the next week. They each want to buy some apples, oranges, and grapefruit, but in differing amounts. Table 3.1 lists what they intend to buy. There are two fruit markets nearby—Sam's and Theo's—and their prices are given in Table 3.2. How much will it cost Ann and Bert to do their shopping at each of the two markets?

Table 3.1

	Apples	Grapefruit	Oranges
Ann	6	3	10
Bert	4	8	5

Table 3.2

	Sam's	Theo's
Apple	\$0.10	\$0.15
Grapefruit	\$0.40	\$0.30
Orange	\$0.10	\$0.20

Solution If Ann shops at Sam's, she will spend

$$6(0.10) + 3(0.40) + 10(0.10) = \$2.80$$

If she shops at Theo's, she will spend

$$6(0.15) + 3(0.30) + 10(0.20) = \$3.80$$

Bert will spend

$$4(0.10) + 8(0.40) + 5(0.10) = \$4.10$$

at Sam's and

$$4(0.15) + 8(0.30) + 5(0.20) = \$4.00$$

at Theo's. (Presumably, Ann will shop at Sam's while Bert goes to Theo's.)

The "dot product form" of these calculations suggests that matrix multiplication is at work here. If we organize the given information into a demand matrix D and a price matrix P, we have

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 10 \\ 4 & 8 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.10 & 0.15 \\ 0.40 & 0.30 \\ 0.10 & 0.20 \end{bmatrix}$$

The calculations above are equivalent to computing the product

$$DP = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 3 & 10 \\ 4 & 8 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0.10 & 0.15 \\ 0.40 & 0.30 \\ 0.10 & 0.20 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2.80 & 3.80 \\ 4.10 & 4.00 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, the product matrix DP tells us how much each person's purchases will cost at each store (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3

	Sam's	Theo's
Ann	\$2.80	\$3.80
Bert	\$4.10	\$4.00

Example 3.8

Consider the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 5 \\ -x_1 + 3x_2 + x_3 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + 4x_3 &= 14 \end{aligned} \qquad (1)$$

Observe that the left-hand side arises from the matrix product

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

so the system (1) can be written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & 3 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \\ 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

or $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, where A is the coefficient matrix, $\mathbf{x}$ is the (column) vector of variables, and $\mathbf{b}$ is the (column) vector of constant terms.

You should have no difficulty seeing that *every* linear system can be written in the form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$. In fact, the notation $[A \mid \mathbf{b}]$ for the augmented matrix of a linear system is just shorthand for the matrix equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$. This form will prove to be a tremendously useful way of expressing a system of linear equations, and we will exploit it often from here on.

Combining this insight with Theorem 2.4, we see that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a solution if and only if $\mathbf{b}$ is a linear combination of the columns of A.

There is another fact about matrix operations that will also prove to be quite useful: Multiplication of a matrix by a standard unit vector can be used to "pick out" or "reproduce" a column or row of a matrix. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and consider the products $A\mathbf{e}_3$ and $\mathbf{e}_2A$, with the unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_3$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$ chosen so that the products make sense. Thus,

$$A\mathbf{e}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{e}_2A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Notice that $A\mathbf{e}_3$ gives us the third column of A and $\mathbf{e}_2A$ gives us the second row of A. We record the general result as a theorem.

Theorem 3.1

Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix, $\mathbf{e}_i$ a $1 \times m$ standard unit vector, and $\mathbf{e}_j$ an $n \times 1$ standard unit vector. Then

a. $\mathbf{e}_i A$ is the ith row of A and
b. $A\mathbf{e}_j$ is the jth column of A.

Proof We prove (b) and leave proving (a) as Exercise 41. If $\mathbf{a}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{a}_n$ are the columns of A, then the product $A\mathbf{e}_j$ can be written

$$A\mathbf{e}_j = 0\mathbf{a}_1 + 0\mathbf{a}_2 + \cdots + 1\mathbf{a}_j + \cdots + 0\mathbf{a}_n = \mathbf{a}_j$$

We could also prove (b) by direct calculation:

$$A\mathbf{e}_j = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1j} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & \cdots & a_{2j} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \cdots & a_{mj} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1j} \\ a_{2j} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mj} \end{bmatrix}$$

since the 1 in $\mathbf{e}_j$ is the jth entry.

Partitioned Matrices

It will often be convenient to regard a matrix as being composed of a number of smaller ***submatrices.*** By introducing vertical and horizontal lines into a matrix, we can ***partition*** it into ***blocks.*** There is a natural way to partition many matrices, particularly those arising in certain applications. For example, consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 7 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

It seems natural to partition A as

$$\left[\begin{array}{ccc:cc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & 0 \\ \hdashline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 7 & 2 \end{array}\right] = \begin{bmatrix} I & B \\ O & C \end{bmatrix}$$

where I is the 3×3 identity matrix, B is 3×2, O is the 2×3 zero matrix, and C is 2×2. In this way, we can view A as a 2×2 matrix whose entries are themselves matrices.

When matrices are being multiplied, there is often an advantage to be gained by viewing them as partitioned matrices. Not only does this frequently reveal underlying structures, but it often speeds up computation, especially when the matrices are large and have many blocks of zeros. It turns out that the multiplication of partitioned matrices is just like ordinary matrix multiplication.

We begin by considering some special cases of partitioned matrices. Each gives rise to a different way of viewing the product of two matrices.

Suppose A is $m \times n$ and B is $n \times r$, so the product AB exists. If we partition B in terms of its column vectors, as $B = [\mathbf{b}_1 \vdots \mathbf{b}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{b}_r]$, then

$$AB = A[\mathbf{b}_1 \vdots \mathbf{b}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{b}_r] = [A\mathbf{b}_1 \vdots A\mathbf{b}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots A\mathbf{b}_r]$$

This result is an immediate consequence of the definition of matrix multiplication. The form on the right is called the ***matrix-column representation*** of the product.

Example 3.9

If

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

then

$$A\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore, $AB = [A\mathbf{b}_1 \vdots A\mathbf{b}_2] = \left[\begin{array}{c:c} 13 & 5 \\ 2 & -2 \end{array}\right]$. (Check by ordinary matrix multiplication.)

Remark Observe that the matrix-column representation of AB allows us to write each column of AB as a linear combination of the columns of A with entries from B as the coefficients. For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = 4\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + 3\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(See Exercises 23 and 26.)

Suppose A is $m \times n$ and B is $n \times r$, so the product AB exists. If we partition A in terms of its row vectors, as

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{A}_1 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_2 \\ \hdashline \vdots \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_m \end{array}\right]$$

then

$$AB = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{A}_1 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_2 \\ \hdashline \vdots \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_m \end{array}\right] B = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{A}_1 B \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_2 B \\ \hdashline \vdots \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_m B \end{array}\right]$$

Once again, this result is a direct consequence of the definition of matrix multiplication. The form on the right is called the ***row-matrix representation*** of the product.

Example 3.10

Using the row-matrix representation, compute AB for the matrices in Example 3.9.

Solution We compute

$$\mathbf{A}_1B = [1 \quad 3 \quad 2]\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = [13 \quad 5] \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{A}_2B = [0 \quad -1 \quad 1]\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$= [2 \quad -2]$$

Therefore, $AB = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{A}_1B \\ \hdashline \mathbf{A}_2B \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 5 \\ \hdashline 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$, as before.

The definition of the matrix product AB uses the natural partition of A into rows and B into columns; this form might well be called the ***row-column representation*** of the product. We can also partition A into columns and B into rows; this form is called the ***column-row representation*** of the product.

In this case, we have

$$A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \vdots \mathbf{a}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{a}_n] \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}_1 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_2 \\ \hdashline \vdots \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_n \end{bmatrix}$$

so

$$AB = [\mathbf{a}_1 \vdots \mathbf{a}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{a}_n]\begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}_1 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_2 \\ \hdashline \vdots \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_n \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{a}_1\mathbf{B}_1 + \mathbf{a}_2\mathbf{B}_2 + \cdots + \mathbf{a}_n\mathbf{B}_n \tag{2}$$

Notice that the sum resembles a dot product expansion; the difference is that the individual terms are matrices, not scalars. Let's make sure that this makes sense. Each term $\mathbf{a}_i\mathbf{B}_i$ is the product of an $m \times 1$ and a $1 \times r$ matrix. Thus, each $\mathbf{a}_i\mathbf{B}_i$ is an $m \times r$ matrix—the same size as AB. The products $\mathbf{a}_i\mathbf{B}_i$ are called ***outer products,*** and (2) is called the ***outer product expansion*** of AB.

Example 3.11

Compute the outer product expansion of AB for the matrices in Example 3.9.

Solution We have

$$A = [\mathbf{a}_1 \vdots \mathbf{a}_2 \vdots \mathbf{a}_3] = \left[\begin{array}{c:c:c} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{array}\right] \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{B}_1 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_2 \\ \hdashline \mathbf{B}_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ \hdashline 1 & 2 \\ \hdashline 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The outer products are

$$\mathbf{a}_1\mathbf{B}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}[4 \quad -1] = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{a}_2\mathbf{B}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}[1 \quad 2] = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix},$$

and

$$\mathbf{a}_3\mathbf{B}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}[3 \quad 0] = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Observe that computing each outer product is exactly like filling in a multiplication table.) Therefore, the outer product expansion of AB is

$$\mathbf{a}_1\mathbf{B}_1 + \mathbf{a}_2\mathbf{B}_2 + \mathbf{a}_3\mathbf{B}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 6 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & 5 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = AB$$

We will make use of the outer product expansion in Chapters 5 and 7 when we discuss the Spectral Theorem and the singular value decomposition, respectively.

Each of the foregoing partitions is a special case of partitioning in general. A matrix A is said to be partitioned if horizontal and vertical lines have been introduced, subdividing A into submatrices called blocks. Partitioning allows A to be written as a matrix whose entries are its blocks.

For example,

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|cc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 7 & 2 \end{array}\right] \quad \text{and} \quad B = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc|c} 4 & 3 & 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -5 & 3 & 3 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{array}\right]$$

are partitioned matrices. They have the block structures

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} & B_{13} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} & B_{23} \end{bmatrix}$$

If two matrices are the same size and have been partitioned in the same way, it is clear that they can be added and multiplied by scalars block by block. Less obvious is the fact that, with suitable partitioning, matrices can be multiplied blockwise as well. The next example illustrates this process.

Example 3.12

Consider the matrices A and B above. If we ignore for the moment the fact that their entries are matrices, then A appears to be a 2×2 matrix and B a 2×3 matrix. Their product should thus be a 2×3 matrix given by

$$\begin{aligned} AB &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} B_{11} & B_{12} & B_{13} \\ B_{21} & B_{22} & B_{23} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} + A_{12}B_{21} & A_{11}B_{12} + A_{12}B_{22} & A_{11}B_{13} + A_{12}B_{23} \\ A_{21}B_{11} + A_{22}B_{21} & A_{21}B_{12} + A_{22}B_{22} & A_{21}B_{13} + A_{22}B_{23} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

But all of the products in this calculation are actually *matrix* products, so we need to make sure that they are all defined. A quick check reveals that this is indeed the case, since the numbers of *columns* in the blocks of A (3 and 2) match the numbers of *rows* in the blocks of B. The matrices A and B are said to be ***partitioned conformably for block multiplication.***

Carrying out the calculations indicated gives us the product AB in partitioned form:

$$A_{11}B_{11} + A_{12}B_{21} = I_3B_{11} + A_{12}I_2 = B_{11} + A_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 \\ 5 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$$

(When some of the blocks are zero matrices or identity matrices, as is the case here, these calculations can be done quite quickly.) The calculations for the other five blocks of AB are similar. Check that the result is

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|cc|c} 6 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 & 2 & 1 & 12 \\ 5 & -5 & 3 & 3 & 9 \\ \hline 1 & 7 & 0 & 0 & 23 \\ 7 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 20 \end{array}\right]$$

(Observe that the block in the upper-left corner is the result of our calculations above.) Check that you obtain the same answer by multiplying A by B in the usual way.

Matrix Powers

When A and B are two $n \times n$ matrices, their product AB will also be an $n \times n$ matrix. A special case occurs when $A = B$. It makes sense to define $A^2 = AA$ and, in general, to define A^k as

$$A^k = \underbrace{AA \cdots A}_{k \text{ factors}}$$

if k is a positive integer. Thus, $A^1 = A$, and it is convenient to define $A^0 = I_n$.

Before making too many assumptions, we should ask ourselves to what extent matrix powers behave like powers of real numbers. The following properties follow immediately from the definitions we have just given and are the matrix analogues of the corresponding properties for powers of real numbers.

If A is a square matrix and r and s are nonnegative integers, then

1. $A^rA^s = A^{r+s}$
2. $(A^r)^s = A^{rs}$

In Section 3.3, we will extend the definition and properties to include negative integer powers.

Example 3.13

(a) If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, then

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad A^3 = A^2A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 4 \\ 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

and, in general,

$$A^n = \begin{bmatrix} 2^{n-1} & 2^{n-1} \\ 2^{n-1} & 2^{n-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{for all } n \geq 1$$

The above statement can be proved by mathematical induction, since it is an *infinite* collection of statements, one for each natural number n. (Appendix B gives a brief review of mathematical induction.) The basis step is to prove that the formula holds for $n = 1$. In this case,

$$A^1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2^{1-1} & 2^{1-1} \\ 2^{1-1} & 2^{1-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2^0 & 2^0 \\ 2^0 & 2^0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = A$$

as required.

The induction hypothesis is to assume that

$$A^k = \begin{bmatrix} 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} \\ 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

for some integer $k \geq 1$. The induction step is to prove that the formula holds for $n = k + 1$. Using the definition of matrix powers and the induction hypothesis, we compute

$$\begin{aligned} A^{k+1} = A^kA &= \begin{bmatrix} 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} \\ 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 2^{k-1} + 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} + 2^{k-1} \\ 2^{k-1} + 2^{k-1} & 2^{k-1} + 2^{k-1} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 2^k & 2^k \\ 2^k & 2^k \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 2^{(k+1)-1} & 2^{(k+1)-1} \\ 2^{(k+1)-1} & 2^{(k+1)-1} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the formula holds for all $n \geq 1$ by the principle of mathematical induction.

(b) If $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, then $B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$. Continuing, we find

$$B^3 = B^2B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$B^4 = B^3B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, $B^5 = B$, and the sequence of powers of B repeats in a cycle of four:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \ldots$$

The Transpose of a Matrix

Thus far, all of the matrix operations we have defined are analogous to operations on real numbers, although they may not always behave in the same way. The next operation has no such analogue.

Definition The ***transpose*** of an $m \times n$ matrix A is the $n \times m$ matrix A^T obtained by interchanging the rows and columns of A. That is, the ith column of A^T is the ith row of A for all i.

Example 3.14

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 5 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad C = [5 \quad -1 \quad 2]$$

Then their transposes are

$$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 3 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B^T = \begin{bmatrix} a & c \\ b & d \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad C^T = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The transpose is sometimes used to give an alternative definition of the dot product of two vectors in terms of matrix multiplication. If

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} &= u_1 v_1 + u_2 v_2 + \cdots + u_n v_n \\ &= [u_1 \quad u_2 \quad \cdots \quad u_n] \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \mathbf{u}^T \mathbf{v} \end{aligned}$$

A useful alternative definition of the transpose is given componentwise:

$$(A^T)_{ij} = A_{ji} \quad \text{for all } i \text{ and } j$$

In words, the entry in row i and column j of A^T is the same as the entry in row j and column i of A.

The transpose is also used to define a very important type of square matrix: a symmetric matrix.

Definition A square matrix A is ***symmetric*** if $A^T = A$—that is, if A is equal to its own transpose.

Example 3.15

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then A is symmetric, since $A^T = A$; but B is not symmetric, since $B^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \neq B$.

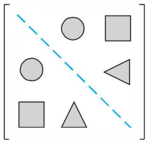


Figure 3.1
A symmetric matrix

A symmetric matrix has the property that it is its own "mirror image" across its main diagonal. Figure 3.1 illustrates this property for a 3×3 matrix. The corresponding shapes represent equal entries; the diagonal entries (those on the dashed line) are arbitrary.

A componentwise definition of a symmetric matrix is also useful. It is simply the algebraic description of the "reflection" property.

A square matrix A is symmetric if and only if $A_{ij} = A_{ji}$ for all i and j.

Exercises 3.1

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E = [4 \quad 2], \quad F = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

In Exercises 1–16, compute the indicated matrices (if possible).

1. $A + 2D$
2. $3D - 2A$
3. $B - C$
4. $C - B^T$
5. AB
6. BD
7. $D + BC$
8. BB^T
9. $E(AF)$
10. $F(DF)$
11. FE
12. EF
13. $B^TC^T - (CB)^T$
14. $DA - AD$
15. A^3
16. $(I_2 - D)^2$

17. Give an example of a nonzero 2×2 matrix A such that $A^2 = O$.

18. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$. Find 2×2 matrices B and C such that $AB = AC$ but $B \neq C$.

19. A factory manufactures three products (doohickies, gizmos, and widgets) and ships them to two warehouses for storage. The number of units of each product shipped to each warehouse is given by the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 200 & 75 \\ 150 & 100 \\ 100 & 125 \end{bmatrix}$$

(where a_{ij} is the number of units of product i sent to warehouse j and the products are taken in alphabetical order). The cost of shipping one unit of each product by truck is \$1.50 per doohickey, \$1.00 per gizmo, and \$2.00 per widget. The corresponding unit costs to ship by train are \$1.75, \$1.50, and \$1.00. Organize these costs into a matrix B and then use matrix multiplication to show how the factory can compare the cost of shipping its products to each of the two warehouses by truck and by train.

20. Referring to Exercise 19, suppose that the unit cost of distributing the products to stores is the same for each product but varies by warehouse because of the distances involved. It costs \$0.75 to distribute one unit from warehouse 1 and \$1.00 to distribute one unit from warehouse 2. Organize these costs into a matrix C and then use matrix multiplication to compute the total cost of distributing each product.

In Exercises 21–22, write the given system of linear equations as a matrix equation of the form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$.

21. $\begin{aligned} x_1 - 2x_2 + 3x_3 &= 0 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - 5x_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}$

22. $\begin{aligned} -x_1 \qquad + 2x_3 &= 1 \\ x_1 - x_2 \qquad &= -2 \\ x_2 + x_3 &= -1 \end{aligned}$

In Exercises 23–28, let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 \\ -3 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 6 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

23. Use the matrix-column representation of the product to write each column of AB as a linear combination of the columns of A.

24. Use the row-matrix representation of the product to write each row of AB as a linear combination of the rows of B.

25. Compute the outer product expansion of AB.

26. Use the matrix-column representation of the product to write each column of BA as a linear combination of the columns of B.

27. Use the row-matrix representation of the product to write each row of BA as a linear combination of the rows of A.

28. Compute the outer product expansion of BA.

In Exercises 29 and 30, assume that the product AB makes sense.

29. Prove that if the columns of B are linearly dependent, then so are the columns of AB.

30. Prove that if the rows of A are linearly dependent, then so are the rows of AB.

In Exercises 31–34, compute AB by block multiplication, using the indicated partitioning.

31. $A = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \end{array}\right], \quad B = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$

32. $A = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 5 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right], \quad B = \left[\begin{array}{c|cc} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 5 & 4 \\ -2 & 3 & 2 \end{array}\right]$

33. $A = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 4 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right], \quad B = \left[\begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right]$

34. $A = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ \hline 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 \end{array}\right], \quad B = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ \hline 1 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{array}\right]$

35. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Compute $A^2, A^3, \ldots, A^7$.
(b) What is A^{2015}? Why?

36. Let $B = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \end{bmatrix}$. Find, with justification, B^{2015}.

37. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Find a formula for A^n $(n \geq 1)$ and verify your formula using mathematical induction.

38. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Show that $A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 2\theta & -\sin 2\theta \\ \sin 2\theta & \cos 2\theta \end{bmatrix}$.

(b) Prove, by mathematical induction, that

$$A^n = \begin{bmatrix} \cos n\theta & -\sin n\theta \\ \sin n\theta & \cos n\theta \end{bmatrix} \text{ for } n \geq 1$$

39. In each of the following, find the 4×4 matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ that satisfies the given condition:

(a) $a_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j}$ (b) $a_{ij} = j - i$

(c) $a_{ij} = (i - 1)^j$ (d) $a_{ij} = \sin\left(\dfrac{(i + j - 1)\pi}{4}\right)$

40. In each of the following, find the 6×6 matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ that satisfies the given condition:

(a) $a_{ij} = \begin{cases} i + j & \text{if } i \leq j \\ 0 & \text{if } i > j \end{cases}$ (b) $a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } |i - j| \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } |i - j| > 1 \end{cases}$

(c) $a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } 6 \leq i + j \leq 8 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

41. Prove Theorem 3.1(a).

3.2 Matrix Algebra

In some ways, the arithmetic of matrices generalizes that of vectors. We do not expect any surprises with respect to addition and scalar multiplication, and indeed there are none. This will allow us to extend to matrices several concepts that we are already familiar with from our work with vectors. In particular, linear combinations, spanning sets, and linear independence carry over to matrices with no difficulty.

However, matrices have other operations, such as matrix multiplication, that vectors do not possess. We should not expect matrix multiplication to behave like multiplication of real numbers unless we can prove that it does; in fact, it does not. In this section, we summarize and prove some of the main properties of matrix operations and begin to develop an algebra of matrices.

Properties of Addition and Scalar Multiplication

All of the algebraic properties of addition and scalar multiplication for vectors (Theorem 1.1) carry over to matrices. For completeness, we summarize these properties in the next theorem.

Theorem 3.2 **Algebraic Properties of Matrix Addition and Scalar Multiplication**

Let A, B, and C be matrices of the same size and let c and d be scalars. Then

a. $A + B = B + A$ Commutativity
b. $(A + B) + C = A + (B + C)$ Associativity
c. $A + O = A$
d. $A + (-A) = O$
e. $c(A + B) = cA + cB$ Distributivity
f. $(c + d)A = cA + dA$ Distributivity
g. $c(dA) = (cd)A$
h. $1A = A$

The proofs of these properties are direct analogues of the corresponding proofs of the vector properties and are left as exercises. Likewise, the comments following Theorem 1.1 are equally valid here, and you should have no difficulty using these properties to perform algebraic manipulations with matrices. (Review Example 1.5 and see Exercises 17 and 18 at the end of this section.)

The associativity property allows us to unambiguously combine scalar multiplication and addition without parentheses. If A, B, and C are matrices of the same size, then

$$(2A + 3B) - C = 2A + (3B - C)$$

and so we can simply write $2A + 3B - C$. Generally, then, if $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_k$ are matrices of the same size and $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ are scalars, we may form the ***linear combination***

$$c_1A_1 + c_2A_2 + \cdots + c_kA_k$$

We will refer to $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ as the ***coefficients*** of the linear combination. We can now ask and answer questions about linear combinations of matrices.

Example 3.16

Let $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Is $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ a linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3?

(b) Is $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ a linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3?

Solution

(a) We want to find scalars c_1, c_2, and c_3 such that $c_1A_1 + c_2A_2 + c_3A_3 = B$. Thus,

$$c_1\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The left-hand side of this equation can be rewritten as

$$\begin{bmatrix} c_2 + c_3 & c_1 + c_3 \\ -c_1 + c_3 & c_2 + c_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Comparing entries and using the definition of matrix equality, we have four linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} c_2 + c_3 &= 1 \\ c_1 \qquad + c_3 &= 4 \\ -c_1 \qquad + c_3 &= 2 \\ c_2 + c_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Gauss-Jordan elimination easily gives

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

(check this!), so $c_1 = 1$, $c_2 = -2$, and $c_3 = 3$. Thus, $A_1 - 2A_2 + 3A_3 = B$, which can be easily checked.

(b) This time we want to solve

$$c_1\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proceeding as in part (a), we obtain the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} c_2 + c_3 &= 1 \\ c_1 \qquad + c_3 &= 2 \\ -c_1 \qquad + c_3 &= 3 \\ c_2 + c_3 &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

Row reduction gives

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 4 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_4 - R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{array}\right]$$

We need go no further: The last row implies that there is no solution. Therefore, in this case, C is not a linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3.

Remark Observe that the columns of the augmented matrix contain the entries of the matrices we are given. If we read the entries of each matrix from left to right and top to bottom, we get the order in which the entries appear in the columns of the augmented matrix. For example, we read A_1 as "0, 1, -1, 0," which corresponds to the first column of the augmented matrix. It is as if we simply "straightened out" the given matrices into column vectors. Thus, we would have ended up with exactly the same system of linear equations as in part (a) if we had asked

$$\text{Is } \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 4 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ a linear combination of } \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}?$$

We will encounter such parallels repeatedly from now on. In Chapter 6, we will explore them in more detail.

We can define the ***span*** of a set of matrices to be the set of all linear combinations of the matrices.

Example 3.17

Describe the span of the matrices A_1, A_2, and A_3 in Example 3.16.

Solution One way to do this is simply to write out a general linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} c_1A_1 + c_2A_2 + c_3A_3 &= c_1\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} c_2 + c_3 & c_1 + c_3 \\ -c_1 + c_3 & c_2 + c_3 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

(which is analogous to the parametric representation of a plane). But suppose we want to know when the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$ is in span(A_1, A_2, A_3). From the representation above, we know that it is when

$$\begin{bmatrix} c_2 + c_3 & c_1 + c_3 \\ -c_1 + c_3 & c_2 + c_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$$

for some choice of scalars c_1, c_2, c_3. This gives rise to a system of linear equations whose left-hand side is exactly the same as in Example 3.16 but whose right-hand side is general. The augmented matrix of this system is

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|c} 0 & 1 & 1 & w \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & x \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & z \end{array}\right]$$

and row reduction produces

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|c} 0 & 1 & 1 & w \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & x \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & y \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & z \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}y \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}y + w \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}y \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & w - z \end{array}\right]$$

(Check this carefully.) The only restriction comes from the last row, where clearly we must have $w - z = 0$ in order to have a solution. Thus, the span of A_1, A_2, and A_3 consists of all matrices $\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$ for which $w = z$. That is, $\operatorname{span}(A_1, A_2, A_3) = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & w \end{bmatrix}\right\}$.

Note If we had known this *before* attempting Example 3.16, we would have seen immediately that $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is a linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3, since it has the necessary form (take $w = 1$, $x = 4$, and $y = 2$), but $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ cannot be a linear combination of A_1, A_2, and A_3, since it does not have the proper form ($1 \neq 4$).

Linear independence also makes sense for matrices. We say that matrices $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_k$ of the same size are ***linearly independent*** if the only solution of the equation

$$c_1A_1 + c_2A_2 + \cdots + c_kA_k = O \tag{1}$$

is the trivial one: $c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_k = 0$. If there are nontrivial coefficients that satisfy (1), then $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_k$ are called ***linearly dependent.***

Example 3.18

Determine whether the matrices A_1, A_2, and A_3 in Example 3.16 are linearly independent.

Solution We want to solve the equation $c_1A_1 + c_2A_2 + c_3A_3 = O$. Writing out the matrices, we have

$$c_1\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_3\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

This time we get a *homogeneous* linear system whose left-hand side is the same as in Examples 3.16 and 3.17. (Are you starting to spot a pattern yet?) The augmented matrix row reduces to give

$$\left[\begin{array}{rrr|c} 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, $c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = 0$, and we conclude that the matrices A_1, A_2, and A_3 are linearly independent.

Properties of Matrix Multiplication

Whenever we encounter a new operation, such as matrix multiplication, we must be careful not to assume too much about it. It would be nice if matrix multiplication behaved like multiplication of real numbers. Although in many respects it does, there are some significant differences.

Example 3.19

Consider the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Multiplying gives

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 4 \\ -3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad BA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, $AB \neq BA$. So, in contrast to multiplication of real numbers, matrix multiplication is *not commutative*—the order of the factors in a product matters!

It is easy to check that $A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (do so!). So, for matrices, the equation $A^2 = O$ does not imply that $A = O$ (unlike the situation for real numbers, where the equation $x^2 = 0$ has only $x = 0$ as a solution).

However gloomy things might appear after the last example, the situation is not really bad at all—you just need to get used to working with matrices and to constantly remind yourself that they are not numbers. The next theorem summarizes the main properties of matrix multiplication.

Theorem 3.3 **Properties of Matrix Multiplication**

Let A, B, and C be matrices (whose sizes are such that the indicated operations can be performed) and let k be a scalar. Then

a. $A(BC) = (AB)C$ — Associativity
b. $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ — Left distributivity
c. $(A + B)C = AC + BC$ — Right distributivity
d. $k(AB) = (kA)B = A(kB)$
e. $I_mA = A = AI_n$ if A is $m \times n$ — Multiplicative identity

Proof We prove (b) and half of (e). We defer the proof of property (a) until Section 3.6. The remaining properties are considered in the exercises.

(b) To prove $A(B + C) = AB + AC$, we let the rows of A be denoted by $\mathbf{A}_i$ and the columns of B and C by $\mathbf{b}_j$ and $\mathbf{c}_j$. Then the jth column of $B + C$ is $\mathbf{b}_j + \mathbf{c}_j$ (since addition is defined componentwise), and thus

$$\begin{aligned}[A(B + C)]_{ij} &= \mathbf{A}_i \cdot (\mathbf{b}_j + \mathbf{c}_j) \\ &= \mathbf{A}_i \cdot \mathbf{b}_j + \mathbf{A}_i \cdot \mathbf{c}_j \\ &= (AB)_{ij} + (AC)_{ij} \\ &= (AB + AC)_{ij}\end{aligned}$$

Since this is true for all i and j, we must have $A(B + C) = AB + AC$.

(e) To prove $AI_n = A$, we note that the identity matrix I_n can be column-partitioned as

$$I_n = [\mathbf{e}_1 \vdots \mathbf{e}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{e}_n]$$

where $\mathbf{e}_i$ is a standard unit vector. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}AI_n &= [A\mathbf{e}_1 \vdots A\mathbf{e}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots A\mathbf{e}_n] \\ &= [\mathbf{a}_1 \vdots \mathbf{a}_2 \vdots \cdots \vdots \mathbf{a}_n] \\ &= A\end{aligned}$$

by Theorem 3.1(b).

We can use these properties to further explore how closely matrix multiplication resembles multiplication of real numbers.

Example 3.20

If A and B are square matrices of the same size, is $(A + B)^2 = A^2 + 2AB + B^2$?

Solution Using properties of matrix multiplication, we compute

$$\begin{aligned}(A + B)^2 &= (A + B)(A + B) \\ &= (A + B)A + (A + B)B && \text{by left distributivity} \\ &= A^2 + BA + AB + B^2 && \text{by right distributivity}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $(A + B)^2 = A^2 + 2AB + B^2$ if and only if $A^2 + BA + AB + B^2 = A^2 + 2AB + B^2$. Subtracting A^2 and B^2 from both sides gives $BA + AB = 2AB$. Subtracting AB from both sides gives $BA = AB$. Thus, $(A + B)^2 = A^2 + 2AB + B^2$ if and only if A and B commute. (Can you give an example of such a pair of matrices? Can you find two matrices that do not satisfy this property?)

Properties of the Transpose

Theorem 3.4 **Properties of the Transpose**

Let A and B be matrices (whose sizes are such that the indicated operations can be performed) and let k be a scalar. Then

a. $(A^T)^T = A$

b. $(A + B)^T = A^T + B^T$

c. $(kA)^T = k(A^T)$

d. $(AB)^T = B^TA^T$

e. $(A^r)^T = (A^T)^r$ for all nonnegative integers r

Proof Properties (a)–(c) are intuitively clear and straightforward to prove (see Exercise 30). Proving property (e) is a good exercise in mathematical induction (see Exercise 31). We will prove (d), since it is not what you might have expected. [Would you have suspected that $(AB)^T = A^TB^T$ might be true?]

First, if A is $m \times n$ and B is $n \times r$, then B^T is $r \times n$ and A^T is $n \times m$. Thus, the product B^TA^T is defined and is $r \times m$. Since AB is $m \times r$, $(AB)^T$ is $r \times m$, and so $(AB)^T$ and B^TA^T have the same size. We must now prove that their corresponding entries are equal.

We denote the ith row of a matrix X by $\text{row}_i(X)$ and its jth column by $\text{col}_j(X)$. Using these conventions, we see that

$$\begin{aligned}[(AB)^T]_{ij} &= (AB)_{ji} \\ &= \text{row}_j(A) \cdot \text{col}_i(B) \\ &= \text{col}_j(A^T) \cdot \text{row}_i(B^T) \\ &= \text{row}_i(B^T) \cdot \text{col}_j(A^T) = [B^TA^T]_{ij}\end{aligned}$$

(Note that we have used the definition of matrix multiplication, the definition of the transpose, and the fact that the dot product is commutative.) Since i and j are arbitrary, this result implies that $(AB)^T = B^TA^T$.

Remark Properties (b) and (d) of Theorem 3.4 can be generalized to sums and products of finitely many matrices:

$$(A_1 + A_2 + \cdots + A_k)^T = A_1^T + A_2^T + \cdots + A_k^T \quad \text{and} \quad (A_1A_2\cdots A_k)^T = A_k^T \cdots A_2^TA_1^T$$

assuming that the sizes of the matrices are such that all of the operations can be performed. You are asked to prove these facts by mathematical induction in Exercises 32 and 33.

Example 3.21

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then $A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$, so $A + A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 5 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$, a symmetric matrix.

We have

$$B^T = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

so

$$BB^T = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 17 & 5 \\ 5 & 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$B^TB = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 20 & 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 10 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, both BB^T and B^TB are symmetric, even though B is not even square! (Check that AA^T and A^TA are also symmetric.)

The next theorem says that the results of Example 3.21 are true in general.

Theorem 3.5

a. If A is a square matrix, then $A + A^T$ is a symmetric matrix.
b. For any matrix A, AA^T and A^TA are symmetric matrices.

Proof We prove (a) and leave proving (b) as Exercise 34. We simply check that

$$(A + A^T)^T = A^T + (A^T)^T = A^T + A = A + A^T$$

(using properties of the transpose and the commutativity of matrix addition). Thus, $A + A^T$ is equal to its own transpose and so, by definition, is symmetric.

Exercises 3.2

In Exercises 1–4, solve the equation for X, given that $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ *and* $B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

1. $X - 2A + 3B = O$

2. $2X = A - B$

3. $2(A + 2B) = 3X$

4. $2(A - B + X) = 3(X - A)$

In Exercises 5–8, write B as a linear combination of the other matrices, if possible.

5. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$, $A_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 9–12, find the general form of the span of the indicated matrices, as in Example 3.17.

9. span(A_1, A_2) in Exercise 5

10. span(A_1, A_2, A_3) in Exercise 6

11. span(A_1, A_2, A_3) in Exercise 7

12. span(A_1, A_2, A_3, A_4) in Exercise 8

In Exercises 13–16, determine whether the given matrices are linearly independent.

13. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 5 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 1 & 9 \\ 4 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

17. Prove Theorem 3.2(a)–(d).

18. Prove Theorem 3.2(e)–(h).

19. Prove Theorem 3.3(c).

20. Prove Theorem 3.3(d).

21. Prove the half of Theorem 3.3(e) that was not proved in the text.

22. Prove that, for square matrices A and B, $AB = BA$ if and only if $(A - B)(A + B) = A^2 - B^2$.

In Exercises 23–25, if $B = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$, *find conditions on a, b, c, and d such that* $AB = BA$.

23. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **24.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **25.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

26. Find conditions on a, b, c, and d such that $B = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ commutes with both $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

27. Find conditions on a, b, c, and d such that $B = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ commutes with every 2×2 matrix.

28. Prove that if AB and BA are both defined, then AB and BA are both square matrices.

A square matrix is called ***upper triangular*** *if all of the entries below the main diagonal are zero. Thus, the form of an upper triangular matrix is*

$$\begin{bmatrix} * & * & \cdots & * & * \\ 0 & * & \cdots & * & * \\ 0 & 0 & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & & * & * \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & * \end{bmatrix}$$

where the entries marked $*$ *are arbitrary. A more formal definition of such a matrix* $A = [a_{ij}]$ *is that* $a_{ij} = 0$ *if* $i > j$.

29. Prove that the product of two upper triangular $n \times n$ matrices is upper triangular.

30. Prove Theorem 3.4(a)–(c).

31. Prove Theorem 3.4(e).

32. Using induction, prove that for all $n \geq 1$, $(A_1 + A_2 + \cdots + A_n)^T = A_1^T + A_2^T + \cdots + A_n^T$.

33. Using induction, prove that for all $n \geq 1$, $(A_1 A_2 \cdots A_n)^T = A_n^T \cdots A_2^T A_1^T$.

34. Prove Theorem 3.5(b).

35. **(a)** Prove that if A and B are symmetric $n \times n$ matrices, then so is $A + B$.

(b) Prove that if A is a symmetric $n \times n$ matrix, then so is kA for any scalar k.

36. **(a)** Give an example to show that if A and B are symmetric $n \times n$ matrices, then AB need not be symmetric.

(b) Prove that if A and B are symmetric $n \times n$ matrices, then AB is symmetric if and only if $AB = BA$.

A square matrix is called ***skew-symmetric*** *if* $A^T = -A$.

37. Which of the following matrices are skew-symmetric?

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **(b)** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 & -1 \\ -3 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **(d)** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 5 \\ 2 & 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

38. Give a componentwise definition of a skew-symmetric matrix.

39. Prove that the main diagonal of a skew-symmetric matrix must consist entirely of zeros.

40. Prove that if A and B are skew-symmetric $n \times n$ matrices, then so is $A + B$.

41. If A and B are skew-symmetric 2×2 matrices, under what conditions is AB skew-symmetric?

42. Prove that if A is an $n \times n$ matrix, then $A - A^T$ is skew-symmetric.

43. **(a)** Prove that any square matrix A can be written as the sum of a symmetric matrix and a skew-symmetric matrix. [*Hint:* Consider Theorem 3.5 and Exercise 42.]

(b) Illustrate part (a) for the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$.

The ***trace*** *of an* $n \times n$ *matrix* $A = [a_{ij}]$ *is the sum of the entries on its main diagonal and is denoted by* $\operatorname{tr}(A)$. *That is,*

$$\operatorname{tr}(A) = a_{11} + a_{22} + \cdots + a_{nn}$$

44. If A and B are $n \times n$ matrices, prove the following properties of the trace:

(a) $\operatorname{tr}(A + B) = \operatorname{tr}(A) + \operatorname{tr}(B)$

(b) $\operatorname{tr}(kA) = k\operatorname{tr}(A)$, where k is a scalar

45. Prove that if A and B are $n \times n$ matrices, then $\operatorname{tr}(AB) = \operatorname{tr}(BA)$.

46. If A is any matrix, to what is $\operatorname{tr}(AA^T)$ equal?

47. Show that there are no 2×2 matrices A and B such that $AB - BA = I_2$.

3.3 The Inverse of a Matrix

In this section, we return to the matrix description $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ of a system of linear equations and look for ways to use matrix algebra to solve the system. By way of analogy, consider the equation $ax = b$, where a, b, and x represent real numbers and we want to solve for x. We can quickly figure out that we want $x = b/a$ as the solution, but we must remind ourselves that this is true only if $a \neq 0$. Proceeding more slowly, assuming that $a \neq 0$, we will reach the solution by the following sequence of steps:

$$ax = b \Rightarrow \frac{1}{a}(ax) = \frac{1}{a}(b) \Rightarrow \left(\frac{1}{a}(a)\right)x = \frac{b}{a} \Rightarrow 1 \cdot x = \frac{b}{a} \Rightarrow x = \frac{b}{a}$$

(This example shows how much we do in our head and how many properties of arithmetic and algebra we take for granted!)

To imitate this procedure for the matrix equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, what do we need? We need to find a matrix A' (analogous to $1/a$) such that $A'A = I$, an identity matrix (analogous to 1). *If* such a matrix exists (analogous to the requirement that $a \neq 0$), then we can do the following sequence of calculations:

$$A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b} \Rightarrow A'(A\mathbf{x}) = A'\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow (A'A)\mathbf{x} = A'\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow I\mathbf{x} = A'\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow \mathbf{x} = A'\mathbf{b}$$

(Why would each of these steps be justified?)

Our goal in this section is to determine precisely when we can find such a matrix A'. In fact, we are going to insist on a bit more: We want not only $A'A = I$ but also $AA' = I$. This requirement forces A and A' to be square matrices. (Why?)

Definition If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, an ***inverse*** of A is an $n \times n$ matrix A' with the property that

$$AA' = I \quad \text{and} \quad A'A = I$$

where $I = I_n$ is the $n \times n$ identity matrix. If such an A' exists, then A is called ***invertible.***

Example 3.22

If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, then $A' = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is an inverse of A, since

$$AA' = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } A'A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -5 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 3.23

Show that the following matrices are not invertible:

(a) $O = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution

(a) It is easy to see that the zero matrix O does not have an inverse. If it did, then there would be a matrix O' such that $OO' = I = O'O$. But the product of the zero matrix with any other matrix is the zero matrix, and so OO' could never equal the identity matrix I. (Notice that this proof makes no reference to the size of the matrices and so is true for $n \times n$ matrices in general.)

(b) Suppose B has an inverse $B' = \begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$. The equation $BB' = I$ gives

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we get the equations

$$\begin{aligned} w \qquad + 2y \qquad &= 1 \\ x \qquad + 2z &= 0 \\ 2w \qquad + 4y \qquad &= 0 \\ 2x \qquad + 4z &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Subtracting twice the first equation from the third yields $0 = -2$, which is clearly absurd. Thus, there is no solution. (Row reduction gives the same result but is not really needed here.) We deduce that no such matrix B' exists; that is, B is not invertible. (In fact, it does not even have an inverse that works on one side, let alone two!)

Remarks

- Even though we have seen that matrix multiplication is not, in general, commutative, A' (if it exists) must satisfy $A'A = AA'$.
- The examples above raise two questions, which we will answer in this section:

(1) How can we know when a matrix has an inverse?
(2) If a matrix does have an inverse, how can we find it?

- We have not ruled out the possibility that a matrix A might have more than one inverse. The next theorem assures us that this cannot happen.

Theorem 3.6 If A is an invertible matrix, then its inverse is unique.

Proof In mathematics, a standard way to show that there is just one of something is to show that there cannot be more than one. So, suppose that A has two inverses—say, A' and A''. Then

$$AA' = I = A'A \quad \text{and} \quad AA'' = I = A''A$$

Thus, $$A' = A'I = A'(AA'') = (A'A)A'' = IA'' = A''$$

Hence, $A' = A''$, and the inverse is unique.

Thanks to this theorem, we can now refer to *the* inverse of an invertible matrix. From now on, when A is invertible, we will denote its (unique) inverse by A^{-1} (pronounced "A inverse").

Warning Do not be tempted to write $A^{-1} = \dfrac{1}{A}$! There is no such operation as "division by a matrix." Even if there were, how on earth could we divide the *scalar* 1 by the *matrix* A? If you ever feel tempted to "divide" by a matrix, what you really want to do is multiply by its inverse.

We can now complete the analogy that we set up at the beginning of this section.

Theorem 3.7 If A is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix, then the system of linear equations given by $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has the unique solution $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ for any $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof Theorem 3.7 essentially formalizes the observation we made at the beginning of this section. We will go through it again, a little more carefully this time. We are asked to prove two things: that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ *has* a solution and that it has *only one* solution. (In mathematics, such a proof is called an "existence and uniqueness" proof.)

To show that a solution exists, we need only verify that $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ works. We check that

$$A(A^{-1}\mathbf{b}) = (AA^{-1})\mathbf{b} = I\mathbf{b} = \mathbf{b}$$

So $A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ satisfies the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, and hence there is *at least* this solution.

To show that this solution is unique, suppose $\mathbf{y}$ is another solution. Then $A\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{b}$, and multiplying both sides of the equation by A^{-1} on the left, we obtain the chain of implications

$$A^{-1}(A\mathbf{y}) = A^{-1}\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow (A^{-1}A)\mathbf{y} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow I\mathbf{y} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b} \Rightarrow \mathbf{y} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$$

Thus, $\mathbf{y}$ is the same solution as before, and therefore the solution is unique.

So, returning to the questions we raised in the Remarks before Theorem 3.6, how can we tell if a matrix is invertible and how can we find its inverse when it is invertible? We will give a general procedure shortly, but the situation for 2×2 matrices is sufficiently simple to warrant being singled out.

Theorem 3.8 If $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$, then A is invertible if $ad - bc \neq 0$, in which case

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{ad - bc}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}$$

If $ad - bc = 0$, then A is not invertible.

The expression $ad - bc$ is called the ***determinant*** of A, denoted det A. The formula for the inverse of $\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ (when it exists) is thus $\dfrac{1}{\det A}$ times the matrix obtained by interchanging the entries on the main diagonal and changing the signs on the other two entries. In addition to giving this formula, Theorem 3.8 says that a 2×2 matrix A is invertible if and only if $\det A \neq 0$. We will see in Chapter 4 that the determinant can be defined for all square matrices and that this result remains true, although there is no simple formula for the inverse of larger square matrices.

Proof Suppose that $\det A = ad - bc \neq 0$. Then

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ad - bc & -ab + ba \\ cd - dc & -cb + da \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} ad - bc & 0 \\ 0 & ad - bc \end{bmatrix} = \det A\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = \det A\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since $\det A \neq 0$, we can multiply both sides of each equation by $1/\det A$ to obtain

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}\left(\frac{1}{\det A}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}\right) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and
$$\left(\frac{1}{\det A}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}\right)\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

[Note that we have used property (d) of Theorem 3.3.] Thus, the matrix

$$\frac{1}{\det A}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}$$

satisfies the definition of an inverse, so A is invertible. Since the inverse of A is unique, by Theorem 3.6, we must have

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det A}\begin{bmatrix} d & -b \\ -c & a \end{bmatrix}$$

Conversely, assume that $ad - bc = 0$. We will consider separately the cases where $a \neq 0$ and where $a = 0$. If $a \neq 0$, then $d = bc/a$, so the matrix can be written as

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ ac/a & bc/a \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ ka & kb \end{bmatrix}$$

where $k = c/a$. In other words, the second row of A is a multiple of the first. Referring to Example 3.23(b), we see that if A has an inverse $\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix}$, then

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ ka & kb \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the corresponding system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned} aw \qquad + by \qquad &= 1 \\ ax \qquad + bz &= 0 \\ kaw \qquad + kby \qquad &= 0 \\ kax \qquad + kbz &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

has no solution. (Why?)

If $a = 0$, then $ad - bc = 0$ implies that $bc = 0$, and therefore either b or c is 0. Thus, A is of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ c & d \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 0 & b \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix}$$

In the first case, $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} w & x \\ y & z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ * & * \end{bmatrix} \neq \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Similarly, $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & b \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix}$ cannot have an inverse. (Verify this.)

Consequently, if $ad - bc = 0$, then A is not invertible.

Example 3.24

Find the inverses of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & -15 \\ 4 & -5 \end{bmatrix}$, if they exist.

Solution We have $\det A = 1(4) - 2(3) = -2 \neq 0$, so A is invertible, with

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{-2}\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

(Check this.)

On the other hand, $\det B = 12(-5) - (-15)(4) = 0$, so B is not invertible.

Example 3.25

Use the inverse of the coefficient matrix to solve the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2y &= 3 \\ 3x + 4y &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

Solution The coefficient matrix is the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$, whose inverse we computed in Example 3.24. By Theorem 3.7, $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has the unique solution $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$. Here we have $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$; thus, the solution to the given system is

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ \frac{3}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -8 \\ \frac{11}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark Solving a linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ via $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ would appear to be a good method. Unfortunately, except for 2×2 coefficient matrices and matrices with certain special forms, it is almost always faster to use Gaussian or Gauss-Jordan elimination to find the solution directly. (See Exercise 13.) Furthermore, the technique of Example 3.25 works only when the coefficient matrix is square and invertible, while elimination methods can always be applied.

Properties of Invertible Matrices

The following theorem records some of the most important properties of invertible matrices.

Theorem 3.9

a. If A is an invertible matrix, then A^{-1} is invertible and

$$(A^{-1})^{-1} = A$$

b. If A is an invertible matrix and c is a nonzero scalar, then cA is an invertible matrix and

$$(cA)^{-1} = \frac{1}{c}A^{-1}$$

c. If A and B are invertible matrices of the same size, then AB is invertible and

$$(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$$

d. If A is an invertible matrix, then A^T is invertible and

$$(A^T)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^T$$

e. If A is an invertible matrix, then A^n is invertible for all nonnegative integers n and

$$(A^n)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^n$$

Proof We will prove properties (a), (c), and (e), leaving properties (b) and (d) to be proven in Exercises 14 and 15.

(a) To show that A^{-1} is invertible, we must argue that there is a matrix X such that

$$A^{-1}X = I = XA^{-1}$$

But A certainly satisfies these equations in place of X, so A^{-1} is invertible and A is *an* inverse of A^{-1}. Since inverses are unique, this means that $(A^{-1})^{-1} = A$.

(c) Here we must show that there is a matrix X such that

$$(AB)X = I = X(AB)$$

The claim is that substituting $B^{-1}A^{-1}$ for X works. We check that

$$(AB)(B^{-1}A^{-1}) = A(BB^{-1})A^{-1} = AIA^{-1} = AA^{-1} = I$$

where we have used associativity to shift the parentheses. Similarly, $(B^{-1}A^{-1})(AB) = I$ (check!), so AB is invertible and its inverse is $B^{-1}A^{-1}$.

(e) The basic idea here is easy enough. For example, when $n = 2$, we have

$$A^2(A^{-1})^2 = AAA^{-1}A^{-1} = AIA^{-1} = AA^{-1} = I$$

Similarly, $(A^{-1})^2A^2 = I$. Thus, $(A^{-1})^2$ is the inverse of A^2. It is not difficult to see that a similar argument works for any higher integer value of n. However, mathematical induction is the way to carry out the proof.

The basis step is when $n = 0$, in which case we are being asked to prove that A^0 is invertible and that

$$(A^0)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^0$$

This is the same as showing that I is invertible and that $I^{-1} = I$, which is clearly true. (Why? See Exercise 16.)

Now we assume that the result is true when $n = k$, where k is a specific nonnegative integer. That is, the induction hypothesis is to assume that A^k is invertible and that

$$(A^k)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^k$$

The induction step requires that we prove that A^{k+1} is invertible and that $(A^{k+1})^{-1} = (A^{-1})^{k+1}$. Now we know from (c) that $A^{k+1} = A^kA$ is invertible, since A and (by hypothesis) A^k are both invertible. Moreover,

$$\begin{aligned}(A^{-1})^{k+1} &= (A^{-1})^kA^{-1} \\ &= (A^k)^{-1}A^{-1} && \text{by the induction hypothesis} \\ &= (AA^k)^{-1} && \text{by property (c)} \\ &= (A^{k+1})^{-1}\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, A^n is invertible for all nonnegative integers n, and $(A^n)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^n$ by the principle of mathematical induction.

Remarks

- While all of the properties of Theorem 3.9 are useful, (c) is the one you should highlight. It is perhaps the most important algebraic property of matrix inverses. It is also the one that is easiest to get wrong. In Exercise 17, you are asked to give a counterexample to show that, contrary to what we might like, $(AB)^{-1} \neq A^{-1}B^{-1}$ in general. The correct property, $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$, is sometimes called the socks-and-shoes rule, because, although we put our socks on before our shoes, we take them off in the reverse order.
- Property (c) generalizes to products of finitely many invertible matrices: If $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n$ are invertible matrices of the same size, then $A_1A_2 \cdots A_n$ is invertible and

$$(A_1A_2 \cdots A_n)^{-1} = A_n^{-1} \cdots A_2^{-1}A_1^{-1}$$

(See Exercise 18.) Thus, we can state:

> The inverse of a product of invertible matrices is the product of their inverses in the reverse order.

- Since, for real numbers, $\dfrac{1}{a+b} \neq \dfrac{1}{a} + \dfrac{1}{b}$, we should not expect that, for square matrices, $(A + B)^{-1} = A^{-1} + B^{-1}$ (and, indeed, this is not true in general; see Exercise 19). In fact, except for special matrices, there is no formula for $(A + B)^{-1}$.
- Property (e) allows us to define negative integer powers of an invertible matrix:

Definition If A is an invertible matrix and n is a positive integer, then A^{-n} is defined by

$$A^{-n} = (A^{-1})^n = (A^n)^{-1}$$

With this definition, it can be shown that the rules for exponentiation, $A^rA^s = A^{r+s}$ and $(A^r)^s = A^{rs}$, hold for all integers r and s, provided A is invertible.

One use of the algebraic properties of matrices is to help solve equations involving matrices. The next example illustrates the process. Note that we must pay particular attention to the order of the matrices in the product.

Example 3.26

Solve the following matrix equation for X (assuming that the matrices involved are such that all of the indicated operations are defined):

$$A^{-1}(BX)^{-1} = (A^{-1}B^3)^2$$

Solution There are many ways to proceed here. One solution is

$$\begin{aligned}
A^{-1}(BX)^{-1} = (A^{-1}B^3)^2 &\Rightarrow ((BX)A)^{-1} = (A^{-1}B^3)^2 \\
&\Rightarrow [((BX)A)^{-1}]^{-1} = [(A^{-1}B^3)^2]^{-1} \\
&\Rightarrow (BX)A = [(A^{-1}B^3)(A^{-1}B^3)]^{-1} \\
&\Rightarrow (BX)A = B^{-3}(A^{-1})^{-1}B^{-3}(A^{-1})^{-1} \\
&\Rightarrow BXA = B^{-3}AB^{-3}A \\
&\Rightarrow B^{-1}BXAA^{-1} = B^{-1}B^{-3}AB^{-3}AA^{-1} \\
&\Rightarrow IXI = B^{-4}AB^{-3}I \\
&\Rightarrow X = B^{-4}AB^{-3}
\end{aligned}$$

(Can you justify each step?) Note the careful use of Theorem 3.9(c) and the expansion of $(A^{-1}B^3)^2$. We have also made liberal use of the associativity of matrix multiplication to simplify the placement (or elimination) of parentheses.

Elementary Matrices

We are going to use matrix multiplication to take a different perspective on the row reduction of matrices. In the process, you will discover many new and important insights into the nature of invertible matrices.

If

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 7 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 8 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

we find that

$$EA = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 7 \\ 8 & 3 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

In other words, multiplying A by E (on the left) has the same effect as interchanging rows 2 and 3 of A. What is significant about E? It is simply the matrix we obtain by applying the same elementary row operation, $R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3$, to the identity matrix I_3. It turns out that this always works.

Definition An ***elementary matrix*** is any matrix that can be obtained by performing an elementary row operation on an identity matrix.

Since there are three types of elementary row operations, there are three corresponding types of elementary matrices. Here are some more elementary matrices.

Example 3.27 Let

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Each of these matrices has been obtained from the identity matrix I_4 by applying a single elementary row operation. The matrix E_1 corresponds to $3R_2$, E_2 to $R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3$, and E_3 to $R_4 - 2R_2$. Observe that when we left-multiply a $4 \times n$ matrix by one of these elementary matrices, the corresponding elementary row operation is performed on the matrix. For example, if

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & a_{43} \end{bmatrix}$$

then

$$E_1A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ 3a_{21} & 3a_{22} & 3a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & a_{43} \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_2A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{41} & a_{42} & a_{43} \end{bmatrix},$$

and

$$E_3A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \\ a_{41} - 2a_{21} & a_{42} - 2a_{22} & a_{43} - 2a_{23} \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 3.27 and Exercises 24–30 should convince you that *any* elementary row operation on *any* matrix can be accomplished by left-multiplying by a suitable elementary matrix. We record this fact as a theorem, the proof of which is omitted.

Theorem 3.10 Let E be the elementary matrix obtained by performing an elementary row operation on I_n. If the same elementary row operation is performed on an $n \times r$ matrix A, the result is the same as the matrix EA.

Remark From a computational point of view, it is not a good idea to use elementary matrices to perform elementary row operations—just do them directly. However, elementary matrices can provide some valuable insights into invertible matrices and the solution of systems of linear equations.

We have already observed that every elementary row operation can be "undone," or "reversed." This same observation applied to elementary matrices shows us that they are invertible.

Example 3.28 Let

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then E_1 corresponds to $R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3$, which is undone by doing $R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3$ again. Thus, $E_1^{-1} = E_1$. (Check by showing that $E_1^2 = E_1E_1 = I$.) The matrix E_2 comes from $4R_2$, which is undone by performing $\frac{1}{4}R_2$. Thus,

$$E_2^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which can be easily checked. Finally, E_3 corresponds to the elementary row operation $R_3 - 2R_1$, which can be undone by the elementary row operation $R_3 + 2R_1$. So, in this case,

$$E_3^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Again, it is easy to check this by confirming that the product of this matrix and E_3, in both orders, is I.)

Notice that not only is each elementary matrix invertible, but its inverse is another elementary matrix of the same type. We record this finding as the next theorem.

Theorem 3.11 Each elementary matrix is invertible, and its inverse is an elementary matrix of the same type.

The Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices

We are now in a position to prove one of the main results in this book—a set of equivalent characterizations of what it means for a matrix to be invertible. In a sense, much of linear algebra is connected to this theorem, either in the development of these characterizations or in their application. As you might expect, given this introduction, we will use this theorem a great deal. Make it your friend!

We refer to Theorem 3.12 as the first version of the Fundamental Theorem, since we will add to it in subsequent chapters. You are reminded that, when we say that a set of statements about a matrix A are equivalent, we mean that, for a given A, the statements are either all true or all false.

Theorem 3.12 **The Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices: Version 1**

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. The following statements are equivalent:

a. A is invertible.
b. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a unique solution for every $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.
c. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution.
d. The reduced row echelon form of A is I_n.
e. A is a product of elementary matrices.

Proof We will establish the theorem by proving the circular chain of implications

$$(a) \Rightarrow (b) \Rightarrow (c) \Rightarrow (d) \Rightarrow (e) \Rightarrow (a)$$

(a) $\Rightarrow$ (b) We have already shown that if A is invertible, then $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has the unique solution $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ for any $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ (Theorem 3.7).

(b) $\Rightarrow$ (c) Assume that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a unique solution for any $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. This implies, in particular, that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has a unique solution. But a homogeneous system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ always has $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ as *one* solution. So in this case, $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ must be *the* solution.

(c) $\Rightarrow$ (d) Suppose that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution. The corresponding system of equations is

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= 0 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

and we are assuming that its solution is

$$\begin{array}{cccc} x_1 & & & = 0 \\ & x_2 & & = 0 \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & x_n = 0 \end{array}$$

In other words, Gauss-Jordan elimination applied to the augmented matrix of the system gives

$$[A\,|\,\mathbf{0}] = \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cccc|c} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] = [I_n\,|\,\mathbf{0}]$$

Thus, the reduced row echelon form of A is I_n.

(d) $\Rightarrow$ (e) If we assume that the reduced row echelon form of A is I_n, then A can be reduced to I_n using a finite sequence of elementary row operations. By Theorem 3.10, each one of these elementary row operations can be achieved by left-multiplying by an appropriate elementary matrix. If the appropriate sequence of elementary matrices is $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_k$ (in that order), then we have

$$E_k \cdots E_2 E_1 A = I_n$$

According to Theorem 3.11, these elementary matrices are all invertible. Therefore, so is their product, and we have

$$A = (E_k \cdots E_2 E_1)^{-1} I_n = (E_k \cdots E_2 E_1)^{-1} = E_1^{-1} E_2^{-1} \cdots E_k^{-1}$$

Again, each E_i^{-1} is another elementary matrix, by Theorem 3.11, so we have written A as a product of elementary matrices, as required.

(e) $\Rightarrow$ (a) If A is a product of elementary matrices, then A is invertible, since elementary matrices are invertible and products of invertible matrices are invertible.

Example 3.29 If possible, express $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ as a product of elementary matrices.

Solution We row reduce A as follows:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$
$$\xrightarrow{R_1 + R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-\frac{1}{3}R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I_2$$

Thus, the reduced row echelon form of A is the identity matrix, so the Fundamental Theorem assures us that A is invertible and can be written as a product of elementary matrices. We have $E_4E_3E_2E_1A = I$, where

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix}$$

are the elementary matrices corresponding to the four elementary row operations used to reduce A to I. As in the proof of the theorem, we have

$$A = (E_4E_3E_2E_1)^{-1} = E_1^{-1}E_2^{-1}E_3^{-1}E_4^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

as required.

Remark Because the sequence of elementary row operations that transforms A into I is not unique, neither is the representation of A as a product of elementary matrices. (Find a different way to express A as a product of elementary matrices.)

"Never bring a cannon on stage in Act I unless you intend to fire it by the last act." –Anton Chekhov

The Fundamental Theorem is surprisingly powerful. To illustrate its power, we consider two of its consequences. The first is that, although the definition of an invertible matrix states that a matrix A is invertible if there is a matrix B such that *both* $AB = I$ *and* $BA = I$ are satisfied, we need only check *one* of these equations. Thus, we can cut our work in half!

Theorem 3.13 Let A be a square matrix. If B is a square matrix such that either $AB = I$ or $BA = I$, then A is invertible and $B = A^{-1}$.

Proof Suppose $BA = I$. Consider the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Left-multiplying by B, we have $BA\mathbf{x} = B\mathbf{0}$. This implies that $\mathbf{x} = I\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Thus, the system represented by $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has the unique solution $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. From the equivalence of (c) and (a) in the Fundamental Theorem, we know that A is invertible. (That is, A^{-1} exists and satisfies $AA^{-1} = I = A^{-1}A$.)

If we now right-multiply both sides of $BA = I$ by A^{-1}, we obtain

$$BAA^{-1} = IA^{-1} \Rightarrow BI = A^{-1} \Rightarrow B = A^{-1}$$

(The proof in the case of $AB = I$ is left as Exercise 41.)

The next consequence of the Fundamental Theorem is the basis for an efficient method of computing the inverse of a matrix.

Theorem 3.14 Let A be a square matrix. If a sequence of elementary row operations reduces A to I, then the same sequence of elementary row operations transforms I into A^{-1}.

Proof If A is row equivalent to I, then we can achieve the reduction by left-multiplying by a sequence $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_k$ of elementary matrices. Therefore, we have $E_k \cdots E_2E_1A = I$. Setting $B = E_k \cdots E_2E_1$ gives $BA = I$. By Theorem 3.13, A is invertible and $A^{-1} = B$. Now applying the same sequence of elementary row operations to I is equivalent to left-multiplying I by $E_k \cdots E_2E_1 = B$. The result is

$$E_k \cdots E_2E_1I = BI = B = A^{-1}$$

Thus, I is transformed into A^{-1} by the same sequence of elementary row operations.

The Gauss-Jordan Method for Computing the Inverse

We can perform row operations on A and I simultaneously by constructing a "super-augmented matrix" $[A \mid I]$. Theorem 3.14 shows that if A is row equivalent to I [which, by the Fundamental Theorem (d) $\Leftrightarrow$ (a), means that A is invertible], then elementary row operations will yield

$$[A \mid I] \longrightarrow [I \mid A^{-1}]$$

If A cannot be reduced to I, then the Fundamental Theorem guarantees us that A is not invertible.

The procedure just described is simply Gauss-Jordan elimination performed on an $n \times 2n$, instead of an $n \times (n + 1)$, augmented matrix. Another way to view this procedure is to look at the problem of finding A^{-1} as solving the matrix equation $AX = I_n$ for an $n \times n$ matrix X. (This is sufficient, by the Fundamental Theorem, since a right inverse of A must be a two-sided inverse.) If we denote the columns of X by $\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_n$, then this matrix equation is equivalent to solving for the columns of X, one at a time. Since the columns of I_n are the standard unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$, we thus have n systems of linear equations, all with coefficient matrix A:

$$A\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{e}_1, \ldots, A\mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{e}_n$$

Since the same sequence of row operations is needed to bring A to reduced row echelon form in each case, the augmented matrices for these systems, $[A \mid \mathbf{e}_1], \ldots, [A \mid \mathbf{e}_n]$, can be combined as

$$[A \mid \mathbf{e}_1\, \mathbf{e}_2 \cdots \mathbf{e}_n] = [A \mid I_n]$$

We now apply row operations to try to reduce A to I_n, which, if successful, will simultaneously solve for the columns of A^{-1}, transforming I_n into A^{-1}.

We illustrate this use of Gauss-Jordan elimination with three examples.

Example 3.30 Find the inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

if it exists.

Solution Gauss-Jordan elimination produces

$$[A \mid I] = \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & -3 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_3 - R_1]{R_2 - 2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 6 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{(-\frac{1}{2})R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3 - R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_2 + 3R_3]{R_1 + R_3} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & 0 & -1 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -5 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1 - 2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 0 & 0 & 9 & -\frac{3}{2} & -5 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -5 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Therefore,

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -\frac{3}{2} & -5 \\ -5 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

(You should always check that $AA^{-1} = I$ by direct multiplication. By Theorem 3.13, we do not need to check that $A^{-1}A = I$ too.)

Remark Notice that we have used the variant of Gauss-Jordan elimination that first introduces all of the zeros *below* the leading 1s, from left to right and top to bottom, and then creates zeros *above* the leading 1s, from right to left and bottom to top. This approach saves on calculations, as we noted in Chapter 2, but you may find it easier, when working by hand, to create *all* of the zeros in each column as you go. The answer, of course, will be the same.

Example 3.31 Find the inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -4 \\ -4 & -1 & 6 \\ -2 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

if it exists.

Solution We proceed as in Example 3.30, adjoining the identity matrix to A and then trying to manipulate $[A \mid I]$ into $[I \mid A^{-1}]$.

$$[A \mid I] = \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 2 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -4 & -1 & 6 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 2 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_3+R_1]{R_2+2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 2 & 1 & -4 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & -6 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_3-3R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rrr|rrr} 1 & 2 & -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -5 & -3 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

At this point, we see that it is not possible to reduce A to I, since there is a row of zeros on the left-hand side of the augmented matrix. Consequently, A is not invertible.

As the next example illustrates, everything works the same way over $\mathbb{Z}_p$, where p is prime.

Example 3.32

Find the inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

if it exists, over $\mathbb{Z}_3$.

Solution 1 We use the Gauss-Jordan method, remembering that all calculations are in $\mathbb{Z}_3$.

$$[A \mid I] = \left[\begin{array}{rr|rr} 2 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{2R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rr|rr} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2+R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rr|rr} 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_1+2R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rr|rr} 1 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, and it is easy to check that, over $\mathbb{Z}_3$, $AA^{-1} = I$.

Solution 2 Since A is a 2×2 matrix, we can also compute A^{-1} using the formula given in Theorem 3.8. The determinant of A is

$$\det A = 2(0) - 2(2) = -1 = 2$$

in $\mathbb{Z}_3$ (since $2 + 1 = 0$). Thus, A^{-1} exists and is given by the formula in Theorem 3.8. We must be careful here, though, since the formula introduces the "fraction" $1/\det A$

and there are no fractions in $\mathbb{Z}_3$. We must use multiplicative inverses rather than division.

Instead of $1/\det A = 1/2$, we use 2^{-1}; that is, we find the number x that satisfies the equation $2x = 1$ in $\mathbb{Z}_3$. It is easy to see that $x = 2$ is the solution we want: In $\mathbb{Z}_3$, $2^{-1} = 2$, since $2(2) = 1$. The formula for A^{-1} now becomes

$$A^{-1} = 2^{-1}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -2 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = 2\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which agrees with our previous solution.

Exercises 3.3

In Exercises 1–10, find the inverse of the given matrix (if it exists) using Theorem 3.8.

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 7 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ **2.** $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 4 \\ 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$ **4.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{3}{4} & \frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{5}{6} & \frac{2}{3} \end{bmatrix}$ **6.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix} -1.5 & -4.2 \\ 0.5 & 2.4 \end{bmatrix}$ **8.** $\begin{bmatrix} 3.55 & 0.25 \\ 8.52 & 0.60 \end{bmatrix}$

9. $\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}$

10. $\begin{bmatrix} 1/a & 1/b \\ 1/c & 1/d \end{bmatrix}$, where neither a, b, c, nor d is 0

In Exercises 11 and 12, solve the given system using the method of Example 3.25.

11. $\begin{aligned} 2x + y &= -1 \\ 5x + 3y &= 2 \end{aligned}$ **12.** $\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 &= 1 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 &= 2 \end{aligned}$

13. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{b}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Find A^{-1} and use it to solve the three systems $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_1$, $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_2$, and $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}_3$.

(b) Solve all three systems at the same time by row reducing the augmented matrix $[A \mid \mathbf{b}_1\ \mathbf{b}_2\ \mathbf{b}_3]$ using Gauss-Jordan elimination.

(c) Carefully count the total number of individual multiplications that you performed in (a) and in (b). You should discover that, even for this 2×2 example, one method uses fewer operations. For larger systems, the difference is even more pronounced, and this explains why computer systems do not use one of these methods to solve linear systems.

14. Prove Theorem 3.9(b).

15. Prove Theorem 3.9(d).

16. Prove that the $n \times n$ identity matrix I_n is invertible and that $I_n^{-1} = I_n$.

17. **(a)** Give a counterexample to show that $(AB)^{-1} \neq A^{-1}B^{-1}$ in general.

(b) Under what conditions on A and B is $(AB)^{-1} = A^{-1}B^{-1}$? Prove your assertion.

18. By induction, prove that if $A_1, A_2, \ldots, A_n$ are invertible matrices of the same size, then the product $A_1A_2 \cdots A_n$ is invertible and $(A_1A_2 \cdots A_n)^{-1} = A_n^{-1} \cdots A_2^{-1}A_1^{-1}$.

19. Give a counterexample to show that $(A + B)^{-1} \neq A^{-1} + B^{-1}$ in general.

In Exercises 20–23, solve the given matrix equation for X. Simplify your answers as much as possible. (In the words of Albert Einstein, "Everything should be made as simple as possible, but not simpler.") Assume that all matrices are invertible.

20. $XA^2 = A^{-1}$ **21.** $AXB = (BA)^2$

22. $(A^{-1}X)^{-1} = A(B^{-2}A)^{-1}$ **23.** $ABXA^{-1}B^{-1} = I + A$

In Exercises 24–30, let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -3 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

In each case, find an elementary matrix E that satisfies the given equation.

24. $EA = B$ **25.** $EB = A$ **26.** $EA = C$

27. $EC = A$ **28.** $EC = D$ **29.** $ED = C$

30. Is there an elementary matrix E such that $EA = D$? Why or why not?

In Exercises 31–38, find the inverse of the given elementary matrix.

31. $\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **32.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

33. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **34.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

35. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **36.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

37. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & c & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, c \neq 0$ **38.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & c \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, c \neq 0$

In Exercises 39 and 40, find a sequence of elementary matrices $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_k$ such that $E_k \cdots E_2E_1A = I$. Use this sequence to write both A and A^{-1} as products of elementary matrices.

39. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ **40.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

41. Prove Theorem 3.13 for the case of $AB = I$.

42. **(a)** Prove that if A is invertible and $AB = O$, then $B = O$.
(b) Give a counterexample to show that the result in part (a) may fail if A is not invertible.

43. **(a)** Prove that if A is invertible and $BA = CA$, then $B = C$.
(b) Give a counterexample to show that the result in part (a) may fail if A is not invertible.

44. A square matrix A is called ***idempotent*** if $A^2 = A$. (The word *idempotent* comes from the Latin *idem*, meaning "same," and *potere*, meaning "to have power." Thus, something that is idempotent has the "same power" when squared.)
(a) Find three idempotent 2×2 matrices.
(b) Prove that the only invertible idempotent $n \times n$ matrix is the identity matrix.

45. Show that if A is a square matrix that satisfies the equation $A^2 - 2A + I = O$, then $A^{-1} = 2I - A$.

46. Prove that if a symmetric matrix is invertible, then its inverse is symmetric also.

47. Prove that if A and B are square matrices and AB is invertible, then both A and B are invertible.

In Exercises 48–63, use the Gauss-Jordan method to find the inverse of the given matrix (if it exists).

48. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ **49.** $\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 4 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

50. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **51.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & a \\ -a & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

52. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & -2 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ **53.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

54. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **55.** $\begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & a & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & a \end{bmatrix}$

56. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & a & 0 \\ b & 0 & c \\ 0 & d & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **57.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

58. $\begin{bmatrix} \sqrt{2} & 0 & 2\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ -4\sqrt{2} & \sqrt{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

59. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ a & b & c & d \end{bmatrix}$ **60.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_2$

61. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$ **62.** $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$

63. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 6 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_7$

Partitioning large square matrices can sometimes make their inverses easier to compute, particularly if the blocks have a nice form. In Exercises 64–68, verify by block multiplication that the inverse of a matrix, if partitioned as shown, is as claimed. (Assume that all inverses exist as needed.)

64. $\begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ O & D \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} A^{-1} & -A^{-1}BD^{-1} \\ O & D^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$

65. $\begin{bmatrix} O & B \\ C & I \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -(BC)^{-1} & (BC)^{-1}B \\ C(BC)^{-1} & I - C(BC)^{-1}B \end{bmatrix}$

66. $\begin{bmatrix} I & B \\ C & I \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} (I - BC)^{-1} & -(I - BC)^{-1}B \\ -C(I - BC)^{-1} & I + C(I - BC)^{-1}B \end{bmatrix}$

67. $\begin{bmatrix} O & B \\ C & D \end{bmatrix}^{-1}$

$= \begin{bmatrix} -(BD^{-1}C)^{-1} & (BD^{-1}C)^{-1}BD^{-1} \\ D^{-1}C(BD^{-1}C)^{-1} & D^{-1} - D^{-1}C(BD^{-1}C)^{-1}BD^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$

68. $\begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} P & Q \\ R & S \end{bmatrix}$, where $P = (A - BD^{-1}C)^{-1}$, $Q = -PBD^{-1}$, $R = -D^{-1}CP$, and $S = D^{-1} + D^{-1}CPBD^{-1}$

In Exercises 69–72, partition the given matrix so that you can apply one of the formulas from Exercises 64–68, and then calculate the inverse using that formula.

69. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

70. The matrix in Exercise 58

71. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

72. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

3.4 The *LU* Factorization

Just as it is natural (and illuminating) to factor a natural number into a product of other natural numbers—for example, $30 = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 5$—it is also frequently helpful to factor matrices as products of other matrices. Any representation of a matrix as a product of two or more other matrices is called a ***matrix factorization.*** For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 9 & -5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

is a matrix factorization.

Needless to say, some factorizations are more useful than others. In this section, we introduce a matrix factorization that arises in the solution of systems of linear equations by Gaussian elimination and is particularly well suited to computer implementation. In subsequent chapters, we will encounter other equally useful matrix factorizations. Indeed, the topic is a rich one, and entire books and courses have been devoted to it.

Consider a system of linear equations of the form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, where A is an $n \times n$ matrix. Our goal is to show that Gaussian elimination implicitly factors A into a product of matrices that then enable us to solve the given system (and any other system with the same coefficient matrix) easily.

The following example illustrates the basic idea.

Example 3.33

Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Row reduction of A proceeds as follows:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_3+R_1]{R_2-2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3+3R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} = U \quad (1)$$

The three elementary matrices E_1, E_2, E_3 that accomplish this reduction of A to echelon form U are (in order):

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence,

$$E_3E_2E_1A = U$$

Solving for A, we get

$$A = E_1^{-1}E_2^{-1}E_3^{-1}U = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}U$$
$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}U = LU$$

Thus, A can be factored as

$$A = LU$$

where U is an *upper triangular* matrix (see the exercises for Section 3.2), and L is *unit lower triangular*. That is, L has the form

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ * & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ * & * & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

with zeros above and 1s on the main diagonal.

The preceding example motivates the following definition.

Definition Let A be a square matrix. A factorization of A as $A = LU$, where L is unit lower triangular and U is upper triangular, is called an ***LU* factorization** of A.

National Portrait Gallery, London

The *LU* factorization was introduced in 1948 by the great English mathematician Alan M. Turing (1912–1954) in a paper entitled "Rounding-off Errors in Matrix Processes" (*Quarterly Journal of Mechanics and Applied Mathematics, 1* (1948), pp. 287–308). During World War II, Turing was instrumental in cracking the German "Enigma" code. However, he is best known for his work in mathematical logic that laid the theoretical groundwork for the development of the digital computer and the modern field of artificial intelligence. The "Turing test" that he proposed in 1950 is still used as one of the benchmarks in addressing the question of whether a computer can be considered "intelligent."

Remarks

- Observe that the matrix A in Example 3.33 had an *LU* factorization because *no row interchanges* were needed in the row reduction of A. Hence, all of the elementary matrices that arose were unit lower triangular. Thus, L was guaranteed to be unit lower triangular because inverses and products of unit lower triangular matrices are also unit lower triangular. (See Exercises 29 and 30.)

If a zero had appeared in a pivot position at any step, we would have had to swap rows to get a nonzero pivot. This would have resulted in L no longer being unit lower triangular. We will comment further on this observation below. (Can you find a matrix for which row interchanges will be necessary?)

- The notion of an LU factorization can be generalized to nonsquare matrices by simply requiring U to be a matrix in row echelon form. (See Exercises 13 and 14.)
- Some books define an LU factorization of a square matrix A to be any factorization $A = LU$, where L is lower triangular and U is upper triangular.

The first remark above is essentially a proof of the following theorem.

Theorem 3.15 If A is a square matrix that can be reduced to row echelon form without using any row interchanges, then A has an LU factorization.

To see why the LU factorization is useful, consider a linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, where the coefficient matrix has an LU factorization $A = LU$. We can rewrite the system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ as $LU\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ or $L(U\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{b}$. If we now define $\mathbf{y} = U\mathbf{x}$, then we can solve for $\mathbf{x}$ in two stages:

1. Solve $L\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{b}$ for $\mathbf{y}$ by *forward substitution* (see Exercises 25 and 26 in Section 2.1).
2. Solve $U\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$ for $\mathbf{x}$ by *back substitution*.

Each of these linear systems is straightforward to solve because the coefficient matrices L and U are both triangular. The next example illustrates the method.

Example 3.34

Use an LU factorization of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ to solve $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, where $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -4 \\ 9 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution In Example 3.33, we found that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = LU$$

As outlined above, to solve $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ (which is the same as $L(U\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{b}$), we first solve $L\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{b}$ for $\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix}$. This is just the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 \qquad\qquad &= 1 \\ 2y_1 + y_2 \qquad &= -4 \\ -y_1 - 2y_2 + y_3 &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

Forward substitution (that is, working from top to bottom) yields

$$y_1 = 1, y_2 = -4 - 2y_1 = -6, y_3 = 9 + y_1 + 2y_2 = -2$$

Thus $\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -6 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$ and we now solve $U\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}$ for $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$. This linear system is

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_1 + \quad x_2 + 3x_3 &= 1 \\ -3x_2 - 3x_3 &= -6 \\ 2x_3 &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

and back substitution quickly produces

$$\begin{aligned} x_3 &= -1, \\ -3x_2 &= -6 + 3x_3 = -9 \ \text{ so that } x_2 = 3, \text{ and} \\ 2x_1 &= 1 - x_2 - 3x_3 = 1 \ \text{ so that } x_1 = \tfrac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the solution to the given system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

An Easy Way to Find *LU* Factorizations

In Example 3.33, we computed the matrix L as a product of elementary matrices. Fortunately, L can be computed directly from the row reduction process without our needing to compute elementary matrices at all. Remember that we are assuming that A can be reduced to row echelon form without using any row interchanges. If this is the case, then the entire row reduction process can be done using only elementary row operations of the form $R_i - kR_j$. (Why do we not need to use the remaining elementary row operation, multiplying a row by a nonzero scalar?) In the operation $R_i - kR_j$, we will refer to the scalar k as the ***multiplier.***

In Example 3.33, the elementary row operations that were used were, in order,

$$\begin{aligned} &R_2 - 2R_1 && \text{(multiplier} = 2) \\ &R_3 + R_1 = R_3 - (-1)R_1 && \text{(multiplier} = -1) \\ &R_3 + 2R_2 = R_3 - (-2)R_2 && \text{(multiplier} = -2) \end{aligned}$$

The multipliers are precisely the entries of L that are below its diagonal! Indeed,

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and $L_{21} = 2$, $L_{31} = -1$, and $L_{32} = -2$. Notice that the elementary row operation $R_i - kR_j$ has its multiplier k placed in the (i, j) entry of L.

Example 3.35

Find an *LU* factorization of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 6 & 4 & 8 & -10 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & -1 \\ -9 & 5 & -2 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution Reducing A to row echelon form, we have

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 6 & 4 & 8 & -10 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & -1 \\ -9 & 5 & -2 & -4 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow[R_4-(-3)R_1]{\substack{R_2-2R_1 \\ R_3-R_1}} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 8 & 7 & -16 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow[R_4-4R_2]{R_3-\frac{1}{2}R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_4-(-1)R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -4 \end{bmatrix} = U$$

The first three multipliers are 2, 1, and -3, and these go into the subdiagonal entries of the first column of L. So, thus far,

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & * & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & * & * & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The next two multipliers are $\frac{1}{2}$ and 4, so we continue to fill out L:

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 4 & * & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The final multiplier, -1, replaces the last $*$ in L to give

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 4 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, an LU factorization of A is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 6 & 4 & 8 & -10 \\ 3 & 2 & 5 & -1 \\ -9 & 5 & -2 & -4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ -3 & 4 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 3 & -4 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -4 \end{bmatrix} = LU$$

as is easily checked.

Remarks

- In applying this method, it is important to note that the elementary row operations $R_i - kR_j$ must be performed from top to bottom within each column (using the diagonal entry as the pivot), and column by column from left to right. To illustrate what can go wrong if we do not obey these rules, consider the following row reduction:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 - 2R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 - R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = U$$

This time the multipliers would be placed in L as follows: $L_{32} = 2$, $L_{21} = 1$. We would get

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

but $A \neq LU$. (Check this! Find a correct *LU* factorization of A.)

- An alternative way to construct L is to observe that the multipliers can be obtained directly from the matrices obtained at the intermediate steps of the row reduction process. In Example 3.33, examine the pivots and the corresponding columns of the matrices that arise in the row reduction

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 6 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = U$$

The first pivot is 2, which occurs in the first column of A. Dividing the entries of this column vector that are on or below the diagonal by the pivot produces

$$\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

The next pivot is -3, which occurs in the second column of A_1. Dividing the entries of this column vector that are on or below the diagonal by the pivot, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{(-3)}\begin{bmatrix} \\ -3 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The final pivot (which we did not need to use) is 2, in the third column of U. Dividing the entries of this column vector that are on or below the diagonal by the pivot, we obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\begin{bmatrix} \\ \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \\ \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

If we place the resulting three column vectors side by side in a matrix, we have

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & & \\ 2 & 1 & \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is exactly L once the above-diagonal entries are filled with zeros.

In Chapter 2, we remarked that the row echelon form of a matrix is not unique. However, if an *invertible* matrix A has an LU factorization $A=LU$, then this factorization is unique.

Theorem 3.16 If A is an invertible matrix that has an LU factorization, then L and U are unique.

Proof Suppose $A = LU$ and $A = L_1U_1$ are two LU factorizations of A. Then $LU = L_1U_1$, where L and L_1 are unit lower triangular and U and U_1 are upper triangular. In fact, U and U_1 are two (possibly different) row echelon forms of A.

By Exercise 30, L_1 is invertible. Because A is invertible, its reduced row echelon form is an identity matrix I by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices. Hence U also row reduces to I (why?) and so U is invertible also. Therefore,

$$L_1^{-1}(LU)U^{-1} = L_1^{-1}(L_1U_1)U^{-1} \quad \text{so} \quad (L_1^{-1}L)(UU^{-1}) = (L_1^{-1}L_1)(U_1U^{-1})$$

Hence,

$$(L_1^{-1}L)I = I(U_1U^{-1}) \quad \text{so} \quad L_1^{-1}L = U_1U^{-1}$$

But $L_1^{-1}L$ is unit lower triangular by Exercise 29, and U_1U^{-1} is upper triangular. (Why?) It follows that $L_1^{-1}L = U_1U^{-1}$ is *both* unit lower triangular *and* upper triangular. The only such matrix is the identity matrix, so $L_1^{-1}L = I$ and $U_1U^{-1} = I$. It follows that $L = L_1$ and $U = U_1$, so the LU factorization of A is unique.

The $P^T LU$ Factorization

We now explore the problem of adapting the LU factorization to handle cases where row interchanges are necessary during Gaussian elimination. Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 6 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

A straightforward row reduction produces

$$A \rightarrow B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \\ 0 & 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is not an upper triangular matrix. However, we can easily convert this into upper triangular form by swapping rows 2 and 3 of B to get

$$U = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 3 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Alternatively, we can swap rows 2 and 3 of A first. To this end, let P be the elementary matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

corresponding to interchanging rows 2 and 3, and let E be the product of the elementary matrices that then reduce PA to U (so that $E^{-1} = L$ is unit lower triangular). Thus $EPA = U$, so $A = (EP)^{-1}U = P^{-1}E^{-1}U = P^{-1}LU$.

Now this handles only the case of a *single* row interchange. In general, P will be the product $P = P_k \cdots P_2P_1$ of all the row interchange matrices $P_1, P_2, \ldots, P_k$ (where P_1 is performed first, and so on). Such a matrix P is called a ***permutation matrix.*** Observe that a permutation matrix arises from permuting the rows of an identity matrix in some order. For example, the following are all permutation matrices:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Fortunately, the inverse of a permutation matrix is easy to compute; in fact, no calculations are needed at all!

Theorem 3.17 If P is a permutation matrix, then $P^{-1} = P^T$.

Proof We must show that $P^TP = I$. But the ith row of P^T is the same as the ith column of P, and these are both equal to the same standard unit vector $\mathbf{e}$, because P is a permutation matrix. So

$$(P^TP)_{ii} = (i\text{th row of } P^T)(i\text{th column of } P) = \mathbf{e}^T\mathbf{e} = \mathbf{e}\cdot\mathbf{e} = 1$$

This shows that diagonal entries of P^TP are all 1s. On the other hand, if $j \neq i$, then the jth column of P is a *different* standard unit vector from $\mathbf{e}$—say $\mathbf{e}'$. Thus, a typical off-diagonal entry of P^TP is given by

$$(P^TP)_{ij} = (i\text{th row of } P^T)(j\text{th column of } P) = \mathbf{e}^T\mathbf{e}' = \mathbf{e}\cdot\mathbf{e}' = 0$$

Hence P^TP is an identity matrix, as we wished to show.

Thus, in general, we can factor a square matrix A as $A = P^{-1}LU = P^TLU$.

Definition Let A be a square matrix. A factorization of A as $A = P^TLU$, where P is a permutation matrix, L is unit lower triangular, and U is upper triangular, is called a ***P^TLU factorization*** of A.

Example 3.36

Find a P^TLU factorization of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution First we reduce A to row echelon form. Clearly, we need at least one row interchange.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_3 - 2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

We have used two row interchanges ($R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2$ and then $R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3$), so the required permutation matrix is

$$P = P_2P_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We now find an LU factorization of PA.

$$PA = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 6 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{R_2 - 2R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix} = U$$

Hence $L_{21} = 2$, and so

$$A = P^TLU = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

The discussion above justifies the following theorem.

Theorem 3.18 Every square matrix has a P^TLU factorization.

Remark Even for an invertible matrix, the P^TLU factorization is not unique. In Example 3.36, a single row interchange $R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3$ also would have worked, leading to a different P. However, once P has been determined, L and U are unique.

Computational Considerations

If A is $n \times n$, then the total number of operations (multiplications and divisions) required to solve a linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ using an LU factorization of A) is $T(n) \approx n^3/3$, the same as is required for Gaussian elimination. (See the Exploration "Counting Operations," in Chapter 2.) This is hardly surprising since the forward elimination phase produces the LU factorization in $\approx n^3/3$ steps, whereas both forward and backward substitution require $\approx n^2/2$ steps. Therefore, for large values of n, the $n^3/3$ term is dominant. From this point of view, then, Gaussian elimination and the LU factorization are equivalent.

However, the LU factorization has other advantages:

- From a storage point of view, the LU factorization is very compact because we can *overwrite* the entries of A with the entries of L and U *as they are computed*. In Example 3.33, we found that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 5 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -3 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = LU$$

This can be stored as

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & -3 & -3 \\ -1 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

with the entries placed in the order (1,1), (1,2), (1,3), (2,1), (3,1), (2,2), (2,3), (3,2), (3,3). In other words, the subdiagonal entries of A are replaced by the corresponding multipliers. (Check that this works!)

- Once an *LU* factorization of A has been computed, it can be used to solve as many linear systems of the form $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ as we like. We just need to apply the method of Example 3.34, varying the vector $\mathbf{b}$ each time.
- For matrices with certain special forms, especially those with a large number of zeros (so-called "sparse" matrices) concentrated off the diagonal, there are methods that will simplify the computation of an *LU* factorization. In these cases, this method is faster than Gaussian elimination in solving $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$.
- For an invertible matrix A, an *LU* factorization of A can be used to find A^{-1}, if necessary. Moreover, this can be done in such a way that it simultaneously yields a factorization of A^{-1}. (See Exercises 15–18.)

Remark If you have a CAS (such as MATLAB) that has the *LU* factorization built in, you may notice some differences between your hand calculations and the computer output. This is because most CAS's will automatically try to perform partial pivoting to reduce roundoff errors. (See the Exploration "Partial Pivoting," in Chapter 2.) Turing's paper is an extended discussion of such errors in the context of matrix factorizations.

This section has served to introduce one of the most useful matrix factorizations. In subsequent chapters, we will encounter other equally useful factorizations.

Exercises 3.4

In Exercises 1–6, solve the system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ using the given LU factorization of A.

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -2 \\ -2 & 3 & -4 \\ 4 & -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -\frac{5}{4} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
$\times \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 4 & -6 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{7}{2} \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{3}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
$\times \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 6 & -4 & 5 & -3 \\ 8 & -4 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & 0 & 7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
$\times \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 5 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 3 & 0 \\ -2 & -5 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 6 & -3 & -4 \\ -5 & -8 & 9 & 9 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ -5 & 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
$\times \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7–12, find an LU factorization of the given matrix.

7. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

9. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 8 & 7 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$ **10.** $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 & -1 \\ 4 & 0 & 4 \\ 3 & 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

11. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 6 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 6 & -6 & 7 \\ -1 & -2 & -9 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 4 & -1 & 2 \\ 4 & 4 & 7 & 3 \\ 6 & 9 & 5 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

Generalize the definition of LU factorization to nonsquare matrices by simply requiring U to be a matrix in row echelon form. With this modification, find an LU factorization of the matrices in Exercises 13 and 14.

13. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ -2 & -7 & 3 & 8 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & 3 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & -3 & -6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

For an invertible matrix with an LU factorization $A = LU$, both L and U will be invertible and $A^{-1} = U^{-1}L^{-1}$. In Exercises 15 and 16, find L^{-1}, U^{-1}, and A^{-1} for the given matrix.

15. A in Exercise 1 **16.** A in Exercise 4

The inverse of a matrix can also be computed by solving several systems of equations using the method of Example 3.34. For an $n \times n$ matrix A, to find its inverse we need to solve $AX = I_n$ for the $n \times n$ matrix X. Writing this equation as $A[\mathbf{x}_1 \ \mathbf{x}_2 \cdots \mathbf{x}_n] = [\mathbf{e}_1 \ \mathbf{e}_2 \cdots \mathbf{e}_n]$, using the matrix-column form of AX, we see that we need to solve n systems of linear equations: $A\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{e}_1, A\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, A\mathbf{x}_n = \mathbf{e}_n$. Moreover, we can use the factorization $A = LU$ to solve each one of these systems.

In Exercises 17 and 18, use the approach just outlined to find A^{-1} for the given matrix. Compare with the method of Exercises 15 and 16.

17. A in Exercise 1 **18.** A in Exercise 4

In Exercises 19–22, write the given permutation matrix as a product of elementary (row interchange) matrices.

19. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **20.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

21. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **22.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 23–25, find a P^TLU factorization of the given matrix A.

23. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 4 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **24.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

25. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 & 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. Prove that there are exactly $n!$ $n \times n$ permutation matrices.

In Exercises 27–28, solve the system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ using the given factorization $A = P^TLU$. Because $PP^T = I$, $P^TLU\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ can be rewritten as $LU\mathbf{x} = P\mathbf{b}$. This system can then be solved using the method of Example 3.34.

27. $$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{5}{2} \end{bmatrix} = P^TLU, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

28. $$A = \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 3 & 5 \\ 4 & 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = P^TLU, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 16 \\ -4 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

29. Prove that a product of unit lower triangular matrices is unit lower triangular.

30. Prove that every unit lower triangular matrix is invertible and that its inverse is also unit lower triangular.

*An **LDU factorization** of a square matrix A is a factorization A = LDU, where L is a unit lower triangular matrix, D is a diagonal matrix, and U is a unit upper triangular matrix (upper triangular with 1s on its diagonal). In Exercises 31 and 32, find an LDU factorization of A.*

31. A in Exercise 1 **32.** A in Exercise 4

33. If A is symmetric and invertible and has an LDU factorization, show that $U = L^T$.

34. If A is symmetric and invertible and $A = LDL^T$ (with L unit lower triangular and D diagonal), prove that this factorization is unique. That is, prove that if we also have $A = L_1D_1L_1^T$ (with L_1 unit lower triangular and D_1 diagonal), then $L = L_1$ and $D = D_1$.

3.5 Subspaces, Basis, Dimension, and Rank

This section introduces perhaps the most important ideas in the entire book. We have already seen that there is an interplay between geometry and algebra: We can often use geometric intuition and reasoning to obtain algebraic results, and the power of algebra will often allow us to extend our findings well beyond the geometric settings in which they first arose.

In our study of vectors, we have already encountered all of the concepts in this section informally. Here, we will start to become more formal by giving definitions for the key ideas. As you'll see, the notion of a *subspace* is simply an algebraic generalization of the geometric examples of lines and planes through the origin. The fundamental concept of a *basis* for a subspace is then derived from the idea of direction vectors for such lines and planes. The concept of a basis will allow us to give a precise definition of *dimension* that agrees with an intuitive, geometric idea of the term, yet is flexible enough to allow generalization to other settings.

You will also begin to see that these ideas shed more light on what you already know about matrices and the solution of systems of linear equations. In Chapter 6, we will encounter all of these fundamental ideas again, in more detail. Consider this section a "getting to know you" session.

A plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ "looks like" a copy of $\mathbb{R}^2$. Intuitively, we would agree that they are both "two-dimensional." Pressed further, we might also say that any calculation that can be done with vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ can also be done in a plane through the origin. In particular, we can add and take scalar multiples (and, more generally, form linear combinations) of vectors in such a plane, and the results are other vectors *in the same plane*. We say that, like $\mathbb{R}^2$, a plane through the origin is *closed* with respect to the operations of addition and scalar multiplication. (See Figure 3.2.)

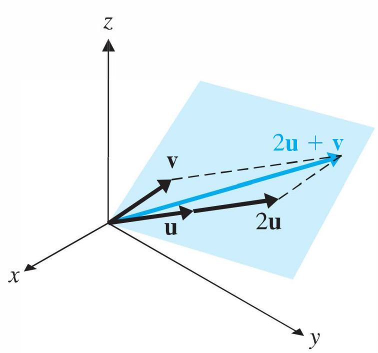


Figure 3.2

But are the vectors in this plane two- or three-dimensional objects? We might argue that they are three-dimensional because they live in $\mathbb{R}^3$ and therefore have three components. On the other hand, they can be described as a linear combination of just two vectors—direction vectors for the plane—and so are two-dimensional objects living in a two-dimensional plane. The notion of a subspace is the key to resolving this conundrum.

Definition A ***subspace*** of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is any collection S of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ such that:

1. The zero vector $\mathbf{0}$ is in S.
2. If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are in S, then $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is in S. (S is ***closed under addition***.)
3. If $\mathbf{u}$ is in S and c is a scalar, then $c\mathbf{u}$ is in S. (S is ***closed under scalar multiplication***.)

We could have combined properties (2) and (3) and required, equivalently, that S be ***closed under linear combinations:***

$$\text{If } \mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_k \text{ are in } S \text{ and } c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k \text{ are scalars,}$$
$$\text{then } c_1\mathbf{u}_1 + c_2\mathbf{u}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{u}_k \text{ is in } S.$$

Example 3.37

Every line and plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$. It should be clear geometrically that properties (1) through (3) are satisfied. Here is an algebraic proof in the case of a plane through the origin. You are asked to give the corresponding proof for a line in Exercise 9.

Let $\mathcal{P}$ be a plane through the origin with direction vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$. Hence, $\mathcal{P} = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2)$. The zero vector $\mathbf{0}$ is in $\mathcal{P}$, since $\mathbf{0} = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2$. Now let

$$\mathbf{u} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2$$

be two vectors in $\mathcal{P}$. Then

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = (c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2) + (d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2) = (c_1 + d_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (c_2 + d_2)\mathbf{v}_2$$

Thus, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ and so is in $\mathcal{P}$.

Now let c be a scalar. Then

$$c\mathbf{u} = c(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2) = (cc_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (cc_2)\mathbf{v}_2$$

which shows that $c\mathbf{u}$ is also a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ and is therefore in $\mathcal{P}$. We have shown that $\mathcal{P}$ satisfies properties (1) through (3) and hence is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

If you look carefully at the details of Example 3.37, you will notice that the fact that $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ were vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ played no role at all in the verification of the properties. Thus, the algebraic method we used should generalize beyond $\mathbb{R}^3$ and apply in situations where we can no longer visualize the geometry. It does. Moreover, the method of Example 3.37 can serve as a "template" in more general settings. When we generalize Example 3.37 to the span of an arbitrary set of vectors in any $\mathbb{R}^n$, the result is important enough to be called a theorem.

Theorem 3.19 Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then $\operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k)$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof Let $S = \operatorname{span}(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k)$. To check property (1) of the definition, we simply observe that the zero vector $\mathbf{0}$ is in S, since $\mathbf{0} = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_k$.

Now let

$$\mathbf{u} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + d_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

be two vectors in S. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} &= (c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k) + (d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + d_k\mathbf{v}_k) \\ &= (c_1 + d_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (c_2 + d_2)\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + (c_k + d_k)\mathbf{v}_k \end{aligned}$$

Thus, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ and so is in S. This verifies property (2).

To show property (3), let c be a scalar. Then

$$\begin{aligned} c\mathbf{u} &= c(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k) \\ &= (cc_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (cc_2)\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + (cc_k)\mathbf{v}_k \end{aligned}$$

which shows that $c\mathbf{u}$ is also a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ and is therefore in S. We have shown that S satisfies properties (1) through (3) and hence is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

We will refer to span$(\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k)$ as ***the subspace spanned by*** $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$. We will often be able to save a lot of work by recognizing when Theorem 3.19 can be applied.

Example 3.38

Show that the set of all vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ that satisfy the conditions $x = 3y$ and $z = -2y$ forms a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Solution Substituting the two conditions into $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ yields

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3y \\ y \\ -2y \end{bmatrix} = y\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since y is arbitrary, the given set of vectors is span$\left(\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}\right)$ and is thus a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, by Theorem 3.19.

Geometrically, the set of vectors in Example 3.38 represents the line through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with direction vector $\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

Example 3.39

Determine whether the set of all vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ that satisfy the conditions $x = 3y + 1$ and $z = -2y$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Solution This time, we have all vectors of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3y + 1 \\ y \\ -2y \end{bmatrix}$$

The zero vector is not of this form. (Why not? Try solving $\begin{bmatrix} 3y + 1 \\ y \\ -2y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.) Hence, property (1) does not hold, so this set cannot be a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Example 3.40

Determine whether the set of all vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, where $y = x^2$, is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

Solution These are the vectors of the form $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ x^2 \end{bmatrix}$—call this set S. This time $\mathbf{0} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ belongs to S (take $x = 0$), so property (1) holds. Let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_1^2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ x_2^2 \end{bmatrix}$ be in S. Then

$$\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ x_1^2 + x_2^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

which, in general, is not in S, since it does not have the correct form; that is, $x_1^2 + x_2^2 \neq (x_1 + x_2)^2$. To be specific, we look for a counterexample. If

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

then both $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are in S, but their sum $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$ is not in S since $5 \neq 3^2$. Thus, property (2) fails and S is not a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$.

Remark In order for a set S to be a subspace of some $\mathbb{R}^n$, we must *prove* that properties (1) through (3) hold *in general*. However, for S to *fail* to be a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$, it is enough to show that *one* of the three properties fails to hold. The easiest course is usually to find a single, specific *counterexample* to illustrate the failure of the property. Once you have done so, there is no need to consider the other properties.

Subspaces Associated with Matrices

A great many examples of subspaces arise in the context of matrices. We have already encountered the most important of these in Chapter 2; we now revisit them with the notion of a subspace in mind.

Definition Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix.

1. The ***row space*** of A is the subspace row(A) of $\mathbb{R}^n$ spanned by the rows of A.
2. The ***column space*** of A is the subspace col(A) of $\mathbb{R}^m$ spanned by the columns of A.

Remark Observe that, by Example 3.9 and the Remark that follows it, col(A) consists precisely of all vectors of the form $A\mathbf{x}$ where $\mathbf{x}$ is in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Example 3.41

Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

(a) Determine whether $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ is in the column space of A.

(b) Determine whether $\mathbf{w} = [4 \quad 5]$ is in the row space of A.

(c) Describe row(A) and col(A).

Solution

(a) By Theorem 2.4 and the discussion preceding it, $\mathbf{b}$ is a linear combination of the columns of A if and only if the linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is consistent. We row reduce the augmented matrix as follows:

$$\left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & -3 & 3 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, the system is consistent (and, in fact, has a unique solution). Therefore, $\mathbf{b}$ is in col(A). (This example is just Example 2.18, phrased in the terminology of this section.)

(b) As we also saw in Section 2.3, elementary row operations simply create linear combinations of the rows of a matrix. That is, they produce vectors only in the row space of the matrix. If the vector $\mathbf{w}$ is in row(A), then $\mathbf{w}$ is a linear combination of the rows of A, so if we augment A by $\mathbf{w}$ as $\left[\begin{array}{c} A \\ \hline \mathbf{w} \end{array}\right]$, it will be possible to apply elementary row operations to this augmented matrix to reduce it to form $\left[\begin{array}{c} A' \\ \hline \mathbf{0} \end{array}\right]$ using only elementary row operations of the form $R_i + kR_j$, where $i > j$—in other words, *working from top to bottom in each column.* (Why?)

In this example, we have

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} A \\ \hline \mathbf{w} \end{array}\right] = \left[\begin{array}{rr} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -3 \\ \hline 4 & 5 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow[R_4 - 4R_1]{R_3 - 3R_1} \left[\begin{array}{rr} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 9 \end{array}\right] \xrightarrow{R_4 - 9R_2} \left[\begin{array}{rr} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Therefore, $\mathbf{w}$ is a linear combination of the rows of A (in fact, these calculations show that $\mathbf{w} = 4[1 \quad -1] + 9[0 \quad 1]$—how?), and thus $\mathbf{w}$ is in row(A).

(c) It is easy to check that, for any vector $\mathbf{w} = [x \quad y]$, the augmented matrix $\left[\begin{array}{c} A \\ \hline \mathbf{w} \end{array}\right]$ reduces to

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ \hline 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

in a similar fashion. Therefore, every vector in $\mathbb{R}^2$ is in row(A), and so row(A) $= \mathbb{R}^2$.

Finding col(A) is identical to solving Example 2.21, wherein we determined that it coincides with the plane (through the origin) in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with equation $3x - z = 0$. (We will discover other ways to answer this type of question shortly.)

Remark We could also have answered part (b) and the first part of part (c) by observing that any question about the *rows* of A is the corresponding question about the *columns* of A^T. So, for example, $\mathbf{w}$ is in row(A) if and only if $\mathbf{w}^T$ is in col(A^T). This is true if and only if the system $A^T\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{w}^T$ is consistent. We can now proceed as in part (a). (See Exercises 21–24.)

The observations we have made about the relationship between elementary row operations and the row space are summarized in the following theorem.

Theorem 3.20 Let B be any matrix that is row equivalent to a matrix A. Then row(B) $=$ row(A).

Proof The matrix A can be transformed into B by a sequence of row operations. Consequently, the rows of B are linear combinations of the rows of A; hence, linear combinations of the rows of B are linear combinations of the rows of A. (See Exercise 21 in Section 2.3.) It follows that row(B) $\subseteq$ row(A).

On the other hand, reversing these row operations transforms B into A. Therefore, the above argument shows that row(A) $\subseteq$ row(B). Combining these results, we have row(A) $=$ row(B).

There is another important subspace that we have already encountered: the set of solutions of a homogeneous system of linear equations. It is easy to prove that this subspace satisfies the three subspace properties.

Theorem 3.21 Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix and let N be the set of solutions of the homogeneous linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Then N is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof [Note that $\mathbf{x}$ must be a (column) vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ in order for $A\mathbf{x}$ to be defined and that $\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}_m$ is the zero vector in $\mathbb{R}^m$.] Since $A\mathbf{0}_n = \mathbf{0}_m$, $\mathbf{0}_n$ is in N. Now let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ be in N. Therefore, $A\mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ and $A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0}$. It follows that

$$A(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{u} + A\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{0} + \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$$

Hence, $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$ is in N. Finally, for any scalar c,

$$A(c\mathbf{u}) = c(A\mathbf{u}) = c\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$$

and therefore $c\mathbf{u}$ is also in N. It follows that N is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Definition Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix. The ***null space*** of A is the subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$ consisting of solutions of the homogeneous linear system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. It is denoted by $\text{null}(A)$.

The fact that the null space of a matrix is a subspace allows us to prove what intuition and examples have led us to understand about the solutions of linear systems: They have either no solution, a unique solution, or infinitely many solutions.

Theorem 3.22 Let A be a matrix whose entries are real numbers. For any system of linear equations $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, exactly one of the following is true:

a. There is no solution.
b. There is a unique solution.
c. There are infinitely many solutions.

At first glance, it is not entirely clear how we should proceed to prove this theorem. A little reflection should persuade you that what we are really being asked to prove is that if (a) and (b) are not true, then (c) is the only other possibility. That is, if there is more than one solution, then there cannot be just two or even finitely many, but there must be infinitely many.

Proof If the system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has either no solutions or exactly one solution, we are done. Assume, then, that there are at least two distinct solutions of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$—say, $\mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{x}_2$. Thus,

$$A\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{b} \quad \text{and} \quad A\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{b}$$

with $\mathbf{x}_1 \neq \mathbf{x}_2$. It follows that

$$A(\mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2) = A\mathbf{x}_1 - A\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{b} - \mathbf{b} = \mathbf{0}$$

Set $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}_1 - \mathbf{x}_2$. Then $\mathbf{x}_0 \neq \mathbf{0}$ and $A\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{0}$. Hence, the null space of A is nontrivial, and since $\text{null}(A)$ is closed under scalar multiplication, $c\mathbf{x}_0$ is in $\text{null}(A)$ for every scalar c. Consequently, the null space of A contains infinitely many vectors (since it contains *at least* every vector of the form $c\mathbf{x}_0$ and there are infinitely many of these).

Now, consider the (infinitely many) vectors of the form $\mathbf{x}_1 + c\mathbf{x}_0$, as c varies through the set of real numbers. We have

$$A(\mathbf{x}_1 + c\mathbf{x}_0) = A\mathbf{x}_1 + cA\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{b} + c\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{b}$$

Therefore, there are infinitely many solutions of the equation $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$.

Basis

We can extract a bit more from the intuitive idea that subspaces are generalizations of planes through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$. A plane is spanned by any two vectors that are parallel to the plane but are not parallel to each other. In algebraic parlance, two such vectors span the plane and are linearly independent. Fewer than two vectors will not work; more than two vectors is not necessary. This is the essence of a *basis* for a subspace.

Definition A ***basis*** for a subspace S of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a set of vectors in S that

1. spans S and
2. is linearly independent.

Example 3.42

In Section 2.3, we saw that the standard unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots \mathbf{e}_n$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ are linearly independent and span $\mathbb{R}^n$. Therefore, they form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$, called the ***standard basis.***

Example 3.43

In Example 2.19, we showed that $\mathbb{R}^2 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}\right)$. Since $\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ are also linearly independent (as they are not multiples), they form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$.

A subspace can (and will) have more than one basis. For example, we have just seen that $\mathbb{R}^2$ has the standard basis $\left\{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right\}$ and the basis $\left\{\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}\right\}$. However, we will prove shortly that the *number* of vectors in a basis for a given subspace will always be the same.

Example 3.44

Find a basis for $S = \text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$, where

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution The vectors $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ already span S, so they will be a basis for S if they are also linearly independent. It is easy to determine that they are not; indeed, $\mathbf{w} = 2\mathbf{u} - 3\mathbf{v}$. Therefore, we can ignore $\mathbf{w}$, since any linear combinations involving $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ can be rewritten to involve $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ alone. (Also see Exercise 47 in Section 2.3.) This implies that $S = \text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w}) = \text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$, and since $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are certainly linearly independent (why?), they form a basis for S. (Geometrically, this means that $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ all lie in the same plane and $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ can serve as a set of direction vectors for this plane.)

Example 3.45

Find a basis for the row space of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 3 & 1 & 6 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution The reduced row echelon form of A is

$$R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

By Theorem 3.20, $\text{row}(A) = \text{row}(R)$, so it is enough to find a basis for the row space of R. But $\text{row}(R)$ is clearly spanned by its nonzero rows, and it is easy to check that the staircase pattern forces the first three rows of R to be linearly independent. (This is a general fact, one that you will need to establish to prove Exercise 33.) Therefore, a basis for the row space of A is

$$\{[1 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 0 \quad -1], [0 \quad 1 \quad 2 \quad 0 \quad 3], [0 \quad 0 \quad 0 \quad 1 \quad 4]\}$$

We can use the method of Example 3.45 to find a basis for the subspace spanned by a given set of vectors.

Example 3.46

Rework Example 3.44 using the method from Example 3.45.

Solution We transpose $\mathbf{u}$, $\mathbf{v}$, and $\mathbf{w}$ to get row vectors and then form a matrix with these vectors as its rows:

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 5 \\ 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & -5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proceeding as in Example 3.45, we reduce B to its reduced row echelon form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \frac{8}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{5} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and use the nonzero row vectors as a basis for the row space. Since we started with column vectors, we must transpose again. Thus, a basis for $\text{span}(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$ is

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ \frac{8}{5} \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -\frac{1}{5} \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Remarks

- In fact, we do not need to go all the way to *reduced* row echelon form—row echelon form is far enough. If U is a row echelon form of A, then the nonzero row vectors of U will form a basis for row(A) (see Exercise 33). This approach has the advantage of (often) allowing us to avoid fractions. In Example 3.46, B can be reduced to

$$U = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 & 5 \\ 0 & -5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

which gives us the basis

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

for span$(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w})$.

- Observe that the methods used in Example 3.44, Example 3.46, and the Remark above will generally produce different bases.

We now turn to the problem of finding a basis for the column space of a matrix A. One method is simply to transpose the matrix. The column vectors of A become the row vectors of A^T, and we can apply the method of Example 3.45 to find a basis for row(A^T). Transposing these vectors then gives us a basis for col(A). (You are asked to do this in Exercises 21–24.) This approach, however, requires performing a new set of row operations on A^T.

Instead, we prefer to take an approach that allows us to use the row reduced form of A that we have already computed. Recall that a product $A\mathbf{x}$ of a matrix and a vector corresponds to a linear combination of the columns of A with the entries of $\mathbf{x}$ as coefficients. Thus, a nontrivial solution to $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ represents a *dependence relation* among the columns of A. Since elementary row operations do not affect the solution set, if A is row equivalent to R, *the columns of A have the same dependence relationships as the columns of R*. This important observation is the basis (no pun intended!) for the technique we now use to find a basis for col(A).

Example 3.47

Find a basis for the column space of the matrix from Example 3.45,

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 3 & 1 & 6 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -3 & 2 & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 & 6 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution Let $\mathbf{a}_i$ denote a column vector of A and let $\mathbf{r}_i$ denote a column vector of the reduced echelon form

$$R = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We can quickly see by inspection that $\mathbf{r}_3 = \mathbf{r}_1 + 2\mathbf{r}_2$ and $\mathbf{r}_5 = -\mathbf{r}_1 + 3\mathbf{r}_2 + 4\mathbf{r}_4$. (Check that, as predicted, the corresponding column vectors of A satisfy the same dependence relations.) Thus, $\mathbf{r}_3$ and $\mathbf{r}_5$ contribute nothing to col(R). The remaining column vectors, $\mathbf{r}_1$, $\mathbf{r}_2$, and $\mathbf{r}_4$, are linearly independent, since they are just standard unit vectors. The corresponding statements are therefore true of the column vectors of A.

Thus, among the column vectors of A, we eliminate the dependent ones ($\mathbf{a}_3$ and $\mathbf{a}_5$), and the remaining ones will be linearly independent and hence form a basis for col(A). What is the fastest way to find this basis? Use the columns of A that correspond to the columns of R *containing the leading 1s*. A basis for col(A) is

$$\{\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_4\} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Warning Elementary row operations change the column space! In our example, $\text{col}(A) \neq \text{col}(R)$, since every vector in col(R) has its fourth component equal to 0 but this is certainly not true of col(A). So we must go back to the original matrix A to get the column vectors for a basis of col(A). To be specific, in Example 3.47, $\mathbf{r}_1$, $\mathbf{r}_2$, and $\mathbf{r}_4$ do *not* form a basis for the column space of A.

Example 3.48

Find a basis for the null space of matrix A from Example 3.47.

Solution There is really nothing new here except the terminology. We simply have to find and describe the solutions of the homogeneous system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. We have already computed the reduced row echelon form R of A, so all that remains to be done in Gauss-Jordan elimination is to solve for the leading variables in terms of the free variables. The final augmented matrix is

$$[R \,|\, \mathbf{0}] = \left[\begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

If

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix}$$

then the leading 1s are in columns 1, 2, and 4, so we solve for x_1, x_2, and x_4 in terms of the free variables x_3 and x_5. We get $x_1 = -x_3 + x_5$, $x_2 = -2x_3 - 3x_5$, and $x_4 = -4x_5$. Setting $x_3 = s$ and $x_5 = t$, we obtain

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \\ x_5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -s + t \\ -2s - 3t \\ s \\ -4t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = s\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 0 \\ -4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = s\mathbf{u} + t\mathbf{v}$$

Thus, $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ span null(A), and since they are linearly independent, they form a basis for null(A).

Following is a summary of the most effective procedure to use to find bases for the row space, the column space, and the null space of a matrix A.

1. Find the reduced row echelon form R of A.
2. Use the nonzero row vectors of R (containing the leading 1s) to form a basis for row(A).
3. Use the column vectors of A that correspond to the columns of R containing the leading 1s (the pivot columns) to form a basis for col(A).
4. Solve for the leading variables of $R\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ in terms of the free variables, set the free variables equal to parameters, substitute back into $\mathbf{x}$, and write the result as a linear combination of f vectors (where f is the number of free variables). These f vectors form a basis for null(A).

If we do not need to find the null space, then it is faster to simply reduce A to row echelon form to find bases for the row and column spaces. Steps 2 and 3 above remain valid (with the substitution of the word "pivots" for "leading 1s").

Dimension and Rank

We have observed that although a subspace will have different bases, each basis has the same number of vectors. This fundamental fact will be of vital importance from here on in this book.

Theorem 3.23 **The Basis Theorem**

Let S be a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then any two bases for S have the same number of vectors.

Sherlock Holmes noted, "When you have eliminated the impossible, whatever remains, *however improbable,* must be the truth" (from *The Sign of Four* by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle).

Proof Let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{u}_r\}$ and $\mathcal{C} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_s\}$ be bases for S. We need to prove that $r = s$. We do so by showing that neither of the other two possibilities, $r < s$ or $r > s$, can occur.

Suppose that $r < s$. We will show that this forces $\mathcal{C}$ to be a linearly dependent set of vectors. To this end, let

$$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_s\mathbf{v}_s = 0 \tag{1}$$

Since $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis for S, we can write each $\mathbf{v}_i$ as a linear combination of the elements $\mathbf{u}_j$:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1 &= a_{11}\mathbf{u}_1 + a_{12}\mathbf{u}_2 + \cdots + a_{1r}\mathbf{u}_r \\ \mathbf{v}_2 &= a_{21}\mathbf{u}_1 + a_{22}\mathbf{u}_2 + \cdots + a_{2r}\mathbf{u}_r \\ &\vdots \\ \mathbf{v}_s &= a_{s1}\mathbf{u}_1 + a_{s2}\mathbf{u}_2 + \cdots + a_{sr}\mathbf{u}_r \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

Substituting the Equations (2) into Equation (1), we obtain

$$c_1(a_{11}\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + a_{1r}\mathbf{u}_r) + c_2(a_{21}\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + a_{2r}\mathbf{u}_r) + \cdots + c_s(a_{s1}\mathbf{u}_1 + \cdots + a_{sr}\mathbf{u}_r) = 0$$

Regrouping, we have

$$(c_1a_{11} + c_2a_{21} + \cdots + c_sa_{s1})\mathbf{u}_1 + (c_1a_{12} + c_2a_{22} + \cdots + c_sa_{s2})\mathbf{u}_2$$
$$+ \cdots + (c_1a_{1r} + c_2a_{2r} + \cdots + c_sa_{sr})\mathbf{u}_r = 0$$

Now, since $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis, the $\mathbf{u}_j$'s are linearly independent. So each of the expressions in parentheses must be zero:

$$\begin{aligned} c_1a_{11} + c_2a_{21} + \cdots + c_sa_{s1} &= 0 \\ c_1a_{12} + c_2a_{22} + \cdots + c_sa_{s2} &= 0 \\ &\vdots \\ c_1a_{1r} + c_2a_{2r} + \cdots + c_sa_{sr} &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

This is a homogeneous system of r linear equations in the s variables $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_s$. (The fact that the variables appear to the left of the coefficients makes no difference.) Since $r < s$, we know from Theorem 2.3 that there are infinitely many solutions. In particular, there is a nontrivial solution, giving a nontrivial dependence relation in Equation (1). Thus, $\mathcal{C}$ is a linearly dependent set of vectors. But this finding contradicts the fact that $\mathcal{C}$ was given to be a basis and hence linearly independent. We conclude that $r < s$ is not possible. Similarly (interchanging the roles of $\mathcal{B}$ and $\mathcal{C}$), we find that $r > s$ leads to a contradiction. Hence, we must have $r = s$, as desired.

Since all bases for a given subspace must have the same number of vectors, we can attach a name to this number.

Definition If S is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$, then the number of vectors in a basis for S is called the ***dimension*** of S, denoted dim S.

Remark The zero vector $\mathbf{0}$ by itself is always a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$. (Why?) Yet any set containing the zero vector (and, in particular, $\{\mathbf{0}\}$) is linearly dependent, so $\{\mathbf{0}\}$ cannot have a basis. We define dim $\{\mathbf{0}\}$ to be 0.

Example 3.49

Since the standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$ has n vectors, dim $\mathbb{R}^n = n$. (Note that this result agrees with our intuitive understanding of dimension for $n \le 3$.)

Example 3.50

In Examples 3.45 through 3.48, we found that row(A) has a basis with three vectors, col(A) has a basis with three vectors, and null(A) has a basis with two vectors. Hence, dim(row(A)) = 3, dim(col(A)) = 3, and dim(null(A)) = 2.

A single example is not enough on which to speculate, but the fact that the row and column spaces in Example 3.50 have the same dimension is no accident. Nor is the fact that the sum of dim(col(A)) and dim(null(A)) is 5, the number of columns of A. We now prove that these relationships are true in general.

Theorem 3.24 The row and column spaces of a matrix A have the same dimension.

Proof Let R be the reduced row echelon form of A. By Theorem 3.20, $\text{row}(A) = \text{row}(R)$, so

$$\begin{aligned} \dim(\text{row}(A)) &= \dim(\text{row}(R)) \\ &= \text{number of nonzero rows of } R \\ &= \text{number of leading 1s of } R \end{aligned}$$

Let this number be called r.

Now $\text{col}(A) \neq \text{col}(R)$, but the columns of A and R have the same dependence relationships. Therefore, $\dim(\text{col}(A)) = \dim(\text{col}(R))$. Since there are r leading 1s, R has r columns that are standard unit vectors, $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_r$. (These will be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^m$ if A and R are $m \times n$ matrices.) These r vectors are linearly independent, and the remaining columns of R are linear combinations of them. Thus, $\dim(\text{col}(R)) = r$. It follows that $\dim(\text{row}(A)) = r = \dim(\text{col}(A))$, as we wished to prove.

The rank of a matrix was first defined in 1878 by Georg Frobenius (1849–1917), although he defined it using determinants and not as we have done here. (See Chapter 4.) Frobenius was a German mathematician who received his doctorate from and later taught at the University of Berlin. Best known for his contributions to group theory, Frobenius used matrices in his work on group representations.

Definition The ***rank*** of a matrix A is the dimension of its row and column spaces and is denoted by $\text{rank}(A)$.

For Example 3.50, we can thus write $\text{rank}(A) = 3$.

Remarks

- The preceding definition agrees with the more informal definition of rank that was introduced in Chapter 2. The advantage of our new definition is that it is much more flexible.
- The rank of a matrix simultaneously gives us information about linear dependence among the row vectors of the matrix *and* among its column vectors. In particular, it tells us the number of rows and columns that are linearly independent (and this number is the same in each case!).

Since the row vectors of A are the column vectors of A^T, Theorem 3.24 has the following immediate corollary.

Theorem 3.25 For any matrix A,

$$\text{rank}(A^T) = \text{rank}(A)$$

Proof We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(A^T) &= \dim(\text{col}(A^T)) \\ &= \dim(\text{row}(A)) \\ &= \text{rank}(A) \end{aligned}$$

Definition The ***nullity*** of a matrix A is the dimension of its null space and is denoted by $\text{nullity}(A)$.

In other words, nullity(A) is the dimension of the solution space of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, which is the same as the number of free variables in the solution. We can now revisit the Rank Theorem (Theorem 2.2), rephrasing it in terms of our new definitions.

Theorem 3.26 **The Rank Theorem**

If A is an $m \times n$ matrix, then

$$\text{rank}(A) + \text{nullity}(A) = n$$

Proof Let R be the reduced row echelon form of A, and suppose that rank$(A) = r$. Then R has r leading 1s, so there are r leading variables and $n - r$ free variables in the solution to $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Since dim(null$(A)) = n - r$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rank}(A) + \text{nullity}(A) &= r + (n - r) \\ &= n \end{aligned}$$

Often, when we need to know the nullity of a matrix, we do not need to know the actual solution of $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. The Rank Theorem is extremely useful in such situations, as the following example illustrates.

Example 3.51

Find the nullity of each of the following matrices:

$$M = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 5 \\ 4 & 7 \\ 3 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and}$$

$$N = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -2 & -1 \\ 4 & 4 & -3 & 1 \\ 2 & 7 & 1 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution Since the two columns of M are clearly linearly independent, rank$(M) = 2$. Thus, by the Rank Theorem, nullity$(M) = 2 - \text{rank}(M) = 2 - 2 = 0$.

There is no obvious dependence among the rows or columns of N, so we apply row operations to reduce it to

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & -2 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We have reduced the matrix far enough (we do not need *reduced* row echelon form here, since we are not looking for a basis for the null space). We see that there are only two nonzero rows, so rank$(N) = 2$. Hence, nullity$(N) = 4 - \text{rank}(N) = 4 - 2 = 2$.

The results of this section allow us to extend the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices (Theorem 3.12).

Theorem 3.27 **The Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices: Version 2**

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. The following statements are equivalent:

a. A is invertible.
b. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a unique solution for every $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.
c. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution.
d. The reduced row echelon form of A is I_n.
e. A is a product of elementary matrices.
f. $\operatorname{rank}(A) = n$
g. $\operatorname{nullity}(A) = 0$
h. The column vectors of A are linearly independent.
i. The column vectors of A span $\mathbb{R}^n$.
j. The column vectors of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.
k. The row vectors of A are linearly independent.
l. The row vectors of A span $\mathbb{R}^n$.
m. The row vectors of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.

National Portrait Gallery, London

The nullity of a matrix was defined in 1884 by James Joseph Sylvester (1814–1887), who was interested in *invariants*—properties of matrices that do not change under certain types of transformations. Born in England, Sylvester became the second president of the London Mathematical Society. In 1878, while teaching at Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore, he founded the *American Journal of Mathematics*, the first mathematical journal in the United States.

Proof We have already established the equivalence of (a) through (e). It remains to be shown that statements (f) to (m) are equivalent to the first five statements.

(f) $\Leftrightarrow$ (g) Since $\operatorname{rank}(A) + \operatorname{nullity}(A) = n$ when A is an $n \times n$ matrix, it follows from the Rank Theorem that $\operatorname{rank}(A) = n$ if and only if $\operatorname{nullity}(A) = 0$.

(f) $\Rightarrow$ (d) $\Rightarrow$ (c) $\Rightarrow$ (h) If $\operatorname{rank}(A) = n$, then the reduced row echelon form of A has n leading 1s and so is I_n. From (d) $\Rightarrow$ (c) we know that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution, which implies that the column vectors of A are linearly independent, since $A\mathbf{x}$ is just a linear combination of the column vectors of A.

(h) $\Rightarrow$ (i) If the column vectors of A are linearly independent, then $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution. Thus, by (c) $\Rightarrow$ (b), $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a unique solution for every $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. This means that every vector $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ can be written as a linear combination of the column vectors of A, establishing (i).

(i) $\Rightarrow$ (j) If the column vectors of A span $\mathbb{R}^n$, then $\operatorname{col}(A) = \mathbb{R}^n$ by definition, so $\operatorname{rank}(A) = \dim(\operatorname{col}(A)) = n$. This is (f), and we have already established that (f) $\Rightarrow$ (h). We conclude that the column vectors of A are linearly independent and so form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$, since, by assumption, they also span $\mathbb{R}^n$.

(j) $\Rightarrow$ (f) If the column vectors of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$, then, in particular, they are linearly independent. It follows that the reduced row echelon form of A contains n leading 1s, and thus $\operatorname{rank}(A) = n$.

The above discussion shows that (f) $\Rightarrow$ (d) $\Rightarrow$ (c) $\Rightarrow$ (h) $\Rightarrow$ (i) $\Rightarrow$ (j) $\Rightarrow$ (f) $\Leftrightarrow$ (g). Now recall that, by Theorem 3.25, $\operatorname{rank}(A^T) = \operatorname{rank}(A)$, so what we have just proved gives us the corresponding results about the column vectors of A^T. These are then results about the *row* vectors of A, bringing (k), (l), and (m) into the network of equivalences and completing the proof.

Theorems such as the Fundamental Theorem are not merely of theoretical interest. They are tremendous labor-saving devices as well. The Fundamental Theorem has already allowed us to cut in half the work needed to check that two square matrices are inverses. It also simplifies the task of showing that certain sets of vectors are bases for $\mathbb{R}^n$. Indeed, when we have a set of n vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, that set will be a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$ if *either* of the necessary properties of linear independence or spanning set is true. The next example shows how easy the calculations can be.

Example 3.52

Show that the vectors

$$\begin{bmatrix}1\\2\\3\end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix}-1\\0\\1\end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } \begin{bmatrix}4\\9\\7\end{bmatrix}$$

form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Solution According to the Fundamental Theorem, the vectors will form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$ if and only if a matrix with these vectors as its columns (or rows) has rank 3. We perform just enough row operations to determine this:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix}1 & -1 & 4\\2 & 0 & 9\\3 & 1 & 7\end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix}1 & -1 & 4\\0 & 2 & 1\\0 & 0 & -7\end{bmatrix}$$

We see that A has rank 3, so the given vectors are a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$ by the equivalence of (f) and (j).

The next theorem is an application of both the Rank Theorem and the Fundamental Theorem. We will require this result in Chapters 5 and 7.

Theorem 3.28

Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix. Then:

a. $\text{rank}(A^TA) = \text{rank}(A)$
b. The $n \times n$ matrix A^TA is invertible if and only if $\text{rank}(A) = n$.

Proof

(a) Since A^TA is $n \times n$, it has the same number of columns as A. The Rank Theorem then tells us that

$$\text{rank}(A) + \text{nullity}(A) = n = \text{rank}(A^TA) + \text{nullity}(A^TA)$$

Hence, to show that $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(A^TA)$, it is enough to show that $\text{nullity}(A) = \text{nullity}(A^TA)$. We will do so by establishing that the null spaces of A and A^TA are the same.

To this end, let $\mathbf{x}$ be in $\text{null}(A)$ so that $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Then $A^TA\mathbf{x} = A^T\mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$, and thus $\mathbf{x}$ is in $\text{null}(A^TA)$. Conversely, let $\mathbf{x}$ be in $\text{null}(A^TA)$. Then $A^TA\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, so $\mathbf{x}^TA^TA\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{0} = 0$. But then

$$(A\mathbf{x}) \cdot (A\mathbf{x}) = (A\mathbf{x})^T(A\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x}^TA^TA\mathbf{x} = 0$$

and hence $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, by Theorem 1.2(d). Therefore, $\mathbf{x}$ is in $\text{null}(A)$, so $\text{null}(A) = \text{null}(A^TA)$, as required.

(b) By the Fundamental Theorem, the $n \times n$ matrix A^TA is invertible if and only if $\text{rank}(A^TA) = n$. But, by (a) this is so if and only if $\text{rank}(A) = n$.

Coordinates

We now return to one of the questions posed at the very beginning of this section: How should we view vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that live in a plane through the origin? Are they two-dimensional or three-dimensional? The notions of basis and dimension will help clarify things.

A plane through the origin is a two-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$, with any set of two direction vectors serving as a basis. Basis vectors locate coordinate axes in the plane/subspace, in turn allowing us to view the plane as a "copy" of $\mathbb{R}^2$. Before we illustrate this approach, we prove a theorem guaranteeing that "coordinates" that arise in this way are unique.

Theorem 3.29 Let S be a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be a basis for S. For every vector $\mathbf{v}$ in S, there is exactly one way to write $\mathbf{v}$ as a linear combination of the basis vectors in $\mathcal{B}$:

$$\mathbf{v} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

Proof Since $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis, it spans S, so $\mathbf{v}$ can be written in *at least one* way as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$. Let one of these linear combinations be

$$\mathbf{v} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

Our task is to show that this is the *only* way to write $\mathbf{v}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$. To this end, suppose that we also have

$$\mathbf{v} = d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + d_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

Then $$c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k = d_1\mathbf{v}_1 + d_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + d_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

Rearranging (using properties of vector algebra), we obtain

$$(c_1 - d_1)\mathbf{v}_1 + (c_2 - d_2)\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + (c_k - d_k)\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$$

Since $\mathcal{B}$ is a basis, $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ are linearly independent. Therefore,

$$(c_1 - d_1) = (c_2 - d_2) = \cdots = (c_k - d_k) = 0$$

In other words, $c_1 = d_1, c_2 = d_2, \ldots, c_k = d_k$, and the two linear combinations are actually the same. Thus, there is exactly one way to write $\mathbf{v}$ as a linear combination of the basis vectors in $\mathcal{B}$.

Definition Let S be a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be a basis for S. Let $\mathbf{v}$ be a vector in S, and write $\mathbf{v} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$. Then $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ are called the ***coordinates of* v *with respect to* $\mathcal{B}$**, and the column vector

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ \vdots \\ c_k \end{bmatrix}$$

is called the ***coordinate vector of* v *with respect to* $\mathcal{B}$.**

Example 3.53 Let $\mathcal{E} = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \mathbf{e}_3\}$ be the standard basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. Find the coordinate vector of

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 7 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

with respect to $\mathcal{E}$.

Solution Since $\mathbf{v} = 2\mathbf{e}_1 + 7\mathbf{e}_2 + 4\mathbf{e}_3$,

$$[\mathbf{v}]_{\mathcal{E}} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 7 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

It should be clear that the coordinate vector of every (column) vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ with respect to the standard basis is just the vector itself.

Example 3.54

In Example 3.44, we saw that $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ are three vectors in the same subspace (plane through the origin) S of $\mathbb{R}^3$ and that $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v}\}$ is a basis for S. Since $\mathbf{w} = 2\mathbf{u} - 3\mathbf{v}$, we have

$$[\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

See Figure 3.3.

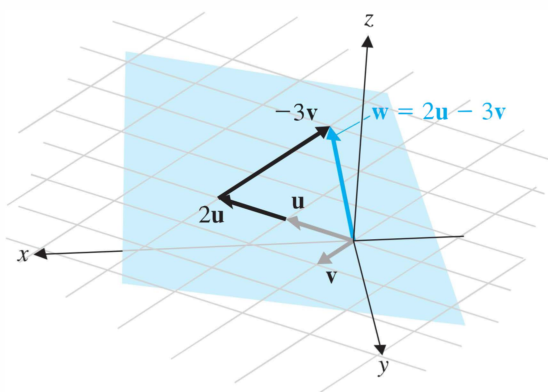


Figure 3.3
The coordinates of a vector with respect to a basis

Exercises 3.5

In Exercises 1–4, let S be the collection of vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that satisfy the given property. In each case, either prove that S forms a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$ or give a counterexample to show that it does not.

1. $x = 0$

2. $x \ge 0, y \ge 0$

3. $y = 2x$

4. $xy \ge 0$

In Exercises 5–8, let S be the collection of vectors $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$ that satisfy the given property. In each case, either prove that S forms a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$ or give a counterexample to show that it does not.

5. $x = y = z$

6. $z = 2x, y = 0$

7. $x - y + z = 1$

8. $|x - y| = |y - z|$

9. Prove that every line through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

10. Suppose S consists of all points in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that are on the x-axis or the y-axis (or both). (S is called the *union* of the two axes.) Is S a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^2$? Why or why not?

In Exercises 11 and 12, determine whether **b** *is in col(A) and whether* **w** *is in row(A), as in Example 3.41.*

11. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{w} = [-1 \quad 1 \quad 1]$

12. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -3 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{w} = [2 \quad 4 \quad -5]$

13. In Exercise 11, determine whether $\mathbf{w}$ is in row(A), using the method described in the Remark following Example 3.41.

14. In Exercise 12, determine whether $\mathbf{w}$ is in row(A), using the method described in the Remark following Example 3.41.

15. If A is the matrix in Exercise 11, is $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ in null(A)?

16. If A is the matrix in Exercise 12, is $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 7 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ in null(A)?

In Exercises 17–20, give bases for row(A), col(A), and null(A).

17. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **18.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -3 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

19. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 & 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 & 1 & 4 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 21–24, find bases for row(A) and col(A) in the given exercises using A^T.

21. Exercise 17 **22.** Exercise 18

23. Exercise 19 **24.** Exercise 20

25. Explain carefully why your answers to Exercises 17 and 21 are both correct even though there appear to be differences.

26. Explain carefully why your answers to Exercises 18 and 22 are both correct even though there appear to be differences.

In Exercises 27–30, find a basis for the span of the given vectors.

27. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ **28.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $[2 \quad -3 \quad 1], [1 \quad -1 \quad 0], [4 \quad -4 \quad 1]$

30. $[0 \quad 1 \quad -2 \quad 1], [3 \quad 1 \quad -1 \quad 0], [2 \quad 1 \quad 5 \quad 1]$

For Exercises 31 and 32, find bases for the spans of the vectors in the given exercises from among the vectors themselves.

31. Exercise 29 **32.** Exercise 30

33. Prove that if R is a matrix in echelon form, then a basis for row(R) consists of the nonzero rows of R.

34. Prove that if the columns of A are linearly independent, then they must form a basis for col(A).

For Exercises 35–38, give the rank and the nullity of the matrices in the given exercises.

35. Exercise 17

36. Exercise 18

37. Exercise 19

38. Exercise 20

39. If A is a 3×5 matrix, explain why the columns of A must be linearly dependent.

40. If A is a 4×2 matrix, explain why the rows of A must be linearly dependent.

41. If A is a 3×5 matrix, what are the possible values of nullity(A)?

42. If A is a 4×2 matrix, what are the possible values of nullity(A)?

In Exercises 43 and 44, find all possible values of rank(A) as a varies.

43. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & a \\ -2 & 4a & 2 \\ a & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **44.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 3 & -2 \\ -2 & -1 & a \end{bmatrix}$

Answer Exercises 45–48 by considering the matrix with the given vectors as its columns.

45. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$?

46. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$?

47. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^4$?

48. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^4$?

49. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{Z}_2^3$?

50. Do $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ form a basis for $\mathbb{Z}_3^3$?

In Exercises 51 and 52, show that $\mathbf{w}$ *is in span*$(\mathcal{B})$ *and find the coordinate vector* $[\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}}$.

51. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 6 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

52. $\mathcal{B} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, \mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 53–56, compute the rank and nullity of the given matrices over the indicated $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

53. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_2$ **54.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$

55. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$

56. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 6 & 3 & 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & 2 & 5 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_7$

57. If A is $m \times n$, prove that every vector in null(A) is orthogonal to every vector in row(A).

58. If A and B are $n \times n$ matrices of rank n, prove that AB has rank n.

59. **(a)** Prove that rank$(AB) \le$ rank(B). [*Hint:* Review Exercise 29 in Section 3.1.]
(b) Give an example in which rank$(AB) <$ rank(B).

60. **(a)** Prove that rank$(AB) \le$ rank(A). [*Hint:* Review Exercise 30 in Section 3.1 or use transposes and Exercise 59(a).]
(b) Give an example in which rank$(AB) <$ rank(A).

61. **(a)** Prove that if U is invertible, then rank$(UA) =$ rank(A). [*Hint:* $A = U^{-1}(UA)$.]
(b) Prove that if V is invertible, then rank$(AV) =$ rank(A).

62. Prove that an $m \times n$ matrix A has rank 1 if and only if A can be written as the outer product $\mathbf{u}\mathbf{v}^T$ of a vector $\mathbf{u}$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

63. If an $m \times n$ matrix A has rank r, prove that A can be written as the sum of r matrices, each of which has rank 1. [*Hint:* Find a way to use Exercise 62.]

64. Prove that, for $m \times n$ matrices A and B, rank $(A + B) \le$ rank(A) + rank(B).

65. Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix such that $A^2 = O$. Prove that rank$(A) \le n/2$. [*Hint:* Show that col$(A) \subseteq$ null(A) and use the Rank Theorem.]

66. Let A be a skew-symmetric $n \times n$ matrix. (See page 162).
(a) Prove that $\mathbf{x}^T A\mathbf{x} = 0$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.
(b) Prove that $I + A$ is invertible. [*Hint:* Show that null$(I + A) = \{\mathbf{0}\}$.]

3.6 Introduction to Linear Transformations

In this section, we begin to explore one of the themes from the introduction to this chapter. There we saw that matrices can be used to transform vectors, acting as a type of "function" of the form $\mathbf{w} = T(\mathbf{v})$, where the independent variable $\mathbf{v}$ and the dependent variable $\mathbf{w}$ are vectors. We will make this notion more precise now and look at several examples of such matrix transformations, leading to the concept of a *linear transformation*—a powerful idea that we will encounter repeatedly from here on.

We begin by recalling some of the basic concepts associated with functions. You will be familiar with most of these ideas from other courses in which you encountered functions of the form $f: \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ [such as $f(x) = x^2$] that transform real numbers into real numbers. What is new here is that vectors are involved and we are interested only in functions that are "compatible" with the vector operations of addition and scalar multiplication.

Consider an example. Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then

$$A\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

This shows that A transforms $\mathbf{v}$ into $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

We can describe this transformation more generally. The matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix}$$

gives a formula that shows how A transforms an arbitrary vector $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$ into the vector $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$. We denote this transformation by T_A and write

$$T_A\left(\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}\right) = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix}$$

(Although technically sloppy, omitting the parentheses in definitions such as this one is a common convention that saves some writing. The description of T_A becomes

$$T_A\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix}$$

with this convention.)

With this example in mind, we now consider some terminology. A ***transformation*** (or ***mapping*** or ***function***) T from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}^m$ is a rule that assigns to each vector $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ a unique vector $T(\mathbf{v})$ in $\mathbb{R}^m$. The ***domain*** of T is $\mathbb{R}^n$, and the ***codomain*** of T is $\mathbb{R}^m$. We indicate this by writing $T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$. For a vector $\mathbf{v}$ in the domain of T, the vector $T(\mathbf{v})$ in the codomain is called the ***image*** of $\mathbf{v}$ under (the action of) T. The set of all possible images $T(\mathbf{v})$ (as $\mathbf{v}$ varies throughout the domain of T) is called the ***range*** of T.

In our example, the domain of T_A is $\mathbb{R}^2$ and its codomain is $\mathbb{R}^3$, so we write $T_A: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$. The image of $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ is $\mathbf{w} = T_A(\mathbf{v}) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$. What is the range of

T_A? It consists of all vectors in the codomain $\mathbb{R}^3$ that are of the form

$$T_A\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

which describes the set of all linear combinations of the column vectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ of A. In other words, the range of T is the column space of A! (We will have more to say about this later—for now we'll simply note it as an interesting observation.) Geometrically, this shows that the range of T_A is the plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with direction vectors given by the column vectors of A. Notice that the range of T_A is strictly smaller than the codomain of T_A.

Linear Transformations

The example T_A above is a special case of a more general type of transformation called a *linear transformation*. We will consider the general definition in Chapter 6, but the essence of it is that these are the transformations that "preserve" the vector operations of addition and scalar multiplication.

Definition A transformation $T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is called a ***linear transformation*** if

1. $T(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{u}) + T(\mathbf{v})$ for all $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and
2. $T(c\mathbf{v}) = cT(\mathbf{v})$ for all $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and all scalars c.

Example 3.55

Consider once again the transformation $T : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ defined by

$$T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix}$$

Let's check that T is a linear transformation. To verify (1), we let

$$\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) &= T\left(\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}\right) = T\left(\begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ y_1 + y_2 \end{bmatrix}\right) = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ 2(x_1 + x_2) - (y_1 + y_2) \\ 3(x_1 + x_2) + 4(y_1 + y_2) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ 2x_1 + 2x_2 - y_1 - y_2 \\ 3x_1 + 3x_2 + 4y_1 + 4y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ (2x_1 - y_1) + (2x_2 - y_2) \\ (3x_1 + 4y_1) + (3x_2 + 4y_2) \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ 2x_1 - y_1 \\ 3x_1 + 4y_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ 2x_2 - y_2 \\ 3x_2 + 4y_2 \end{bmatrix} = T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \end{bmatrix} + T\begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = T(\mathbf{u}) + T(\mathbf{v}) \end{aligned}$$

To show (2), we let $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ and let c be a scalar. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
T(c\mathbf{v}) &= T\left(c\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}\right) = T\left(\begin{bmatrix} cx \\ cy \end{bmatrix}\right) \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} cx \\ 2(cx) - (cy) \\ 3(cx) + 4(cy) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} cx \\ c(2x - y) \\ c(3x + 4y) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= c\begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix} = cT\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = cT(\mathbf{v})
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, T is a linear transformation.

Remark The definition of a linear transformation can be streamlined by combining (1) and (2) as shown below.

$T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is a linear transformation if

$$T(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2) = c_1T(\mathbf{v}_1) + c_2T(\mathbf{v}_2) \quad \text{for all } \mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2 \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^n \text{ and scalars } c_1, c_2$$

In Exercise 53, you will be asked to show that the statement above is equivalent to the original definition. In practice, this equivalent formulation can save some writing—try it!

Although the linear transformation T in Example 3.55 originally arose as a *matrix* transformation T_A, it is a simple matter to recover the matrix A from the definition of T given in the example. We observe that

$$T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 2x - y \\ 3x + 4y \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

so $T = T_A$, where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$. (Notice that when the variables x and y are lined up, the matrix A is just their coefficient matrix.)

Recognizing that a transformation is a matrix transformation is important, since, as the next theorem shows, all matrix transformations are linear transformations.

Theorem 3.30 Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix. Then the matrix transformation $T_A : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ defined by

$$T_A(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x} \quad (\text{for } \mathbf{x} \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^n)$$

is a linear transformation.

Proof Let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let c be a scalar. Then

$$T_A(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}) = A(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{u} + A\mathbf{v} = T_A(\mathbf{u}) + T_A(\mathbf{v})$$

and

$$T_A(c\mathbf{v}) = A(c\mathbf{v}) = c(A\mathbf{v}) = cT_A(\mathbf{v})$$

Hence, T_A is a linear transformation.

Example 3.56

Let $F : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the transformation that sends each point to its reflection in the x-axis. Show that F is a linear transformation.

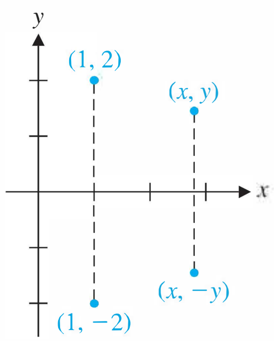


Figure 3.4
Reflection in the x-axis

Solution From Figure 3.4, it is clear that F sends the point (x, y) to the point $(x, -y)$. Thus, we may write

$$F\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ -y \end{bmatrix}$$

We could proceed to check that F is linear, as in Example 3.55 (this one is even easier to check!), but it is faster to observe that

$$\begin{bmatrix} x \\ -y \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore, $F\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = A\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$, where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$, so F is a matrix transformation. It now follows, by Theorem 3.30, that F is a linear transformation.

Example 3.57

Let $R : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the transformation that rotates each point 90° counterclockwise about the origin. Show that R is a linear transformation.

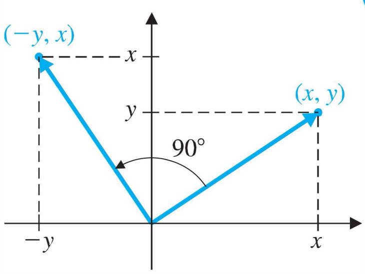


Figure 3.5
A 90° rotation

Solution As Figure 3.5 shows, R sends the point (x, y) to the point $(-y, x)$. Thus, we have

$$R\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -y \\ x \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence, R is a matrix transformation and is therefore linear.

Observe that if we multiply a matrix by standard basis vectors, we obtain the columns of the matrix. For example,

$$\begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \\ e & f \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ c \\ e \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \\ e & f \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b \\ d \\ f \end{bmatrix}$$

We can use this observation to show that *every* linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}^m$ arises as a matrix transformation.

Theorem 3.31 Let $T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ be a linear transformation. Then T is a matrix transformation. More specifically, $T = T_A$, where A is the $m \times n$ matrix

$$A = [T(\mathbf{e}_1) \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_2) \vdots \cdots \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_n)]$$

Proof Let $\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$ be the standard basis vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let $\mathbf{x}$ be a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$. We can write $\mathbf{x} = x_1\mathbf{e}_1 + x_2\mathbf{e}_2 + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{e}_n$ (where the x_i's are the components of $\mathbf{x}$). We also know that $T(\mathbf{e}_1), T(\mathbf{e}_2), \ldots, T(\mathbf{e}_n)$ are (column) vectors in $\mathbb{R}^m$. Let $A = [T(\mathbf{e}_1) \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_2) \vdots \cdots \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_n)]$ be the $m \times n$ matrix with these vectors as its columns. Then

$$\begin{aligned} T(\mathbf{x}) &= T(x_1\mathbf{e}_1 + x_2\mathbf{e}_2 + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{e}_n) \\ &= x_1T(\mathbf{e}_1) + x_2T(\mathbf{e}_2) + \cdots + x_nT(\mathbf{e}_n) \\ &= [T(\mathbf{e}_1) \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_2) \vdots \cdots \vdots T(\mathbf{e}_n)] \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = A\mathbf{x} \end{aligned}$$

as required.

The matrix A in Theorem 3.31 is called the ***standard matrix of the linear transformation T.***

Example 3.58 Show that a rotation about the origin through an angle θ defines a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$ and find its standard matrix.

Solution Let R_θ be the rotation. We will give a geometric argument to establish the fact that R_θ is linear. Let $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ be vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$. If they are not parallel, then Figure 3.6(a) shows the parallelogram rule that determines $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$. If we now apply R_θ, the entire parallelogram is rotated through the angle θ, as shown in Figure 3.6(b). But the diagonal of this parallelogram must be $R_\theta(\mathbf{u}) + R_\theta(\mathbf{v})$, again by the parallelogram rule. Hence, $R_\theta(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = R_\theta(\mathbf{u}) + R_\theta(\mathbf{v})$. (What happens if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are parallel?)

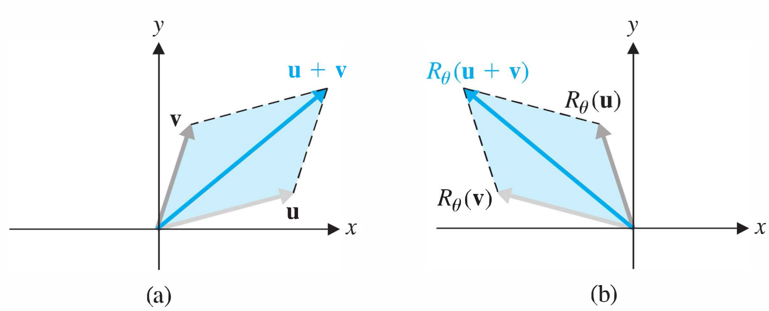


Figure 3.6

Similarly, if we apply R_θ to $\mathbf{v}$ and $c\mathbf{v}$, we obtain $R_\theta(\mathbf{v})$ and $R_\theta(c\mathbf{v})$, as shown in Figure 3.7. But since the rotation does not affect lengths, we must then have $R_\theta(c\mathbf{v}) = cR_\theta(\mathbf{v})$, as required. (Draw diagrams for the cases $0 < c < 1$, $-1 < c < 0$, and $c < -1$.)

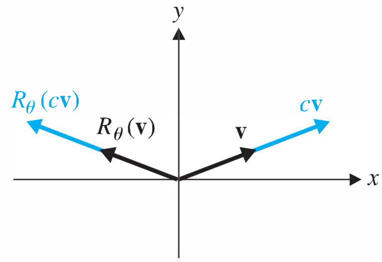


Figure 3.7

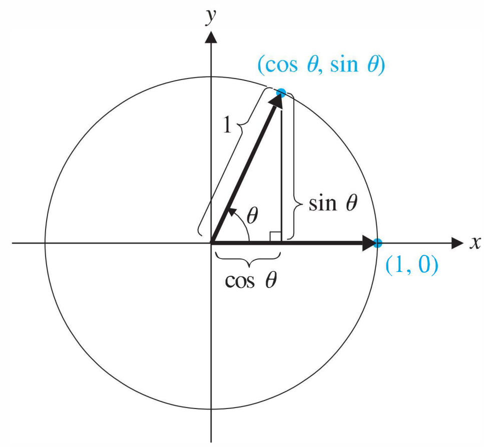


Figure 3.8
$R_\theta(\mathbf{e}_1)$

Therefore, R_θ is a linear transformation. According to Theorem 3.31, we can find its matrix by determining its effect on the standard basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$ of $\mathbb{R}^2$. Now, as Figure 3.8 shows, $R_\theta\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}\cos\theta\\ \sin\theta\end{bmatrix}$.

We can find $R_\theta\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$ similarly, but it is faster to observe that $R_\theta\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$ must be perpendicular (counterclockwise) to $R_\theta\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix}$ and so, by Example 3.57, $R_\theta\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}-\sin\theta\\ \cos\theta\end{bmatrix}$ (Figure 3.9).

Therefore, the standard matrix of R_θ is $\begin{bmatrix}\cos\theta & -\sin\theta\\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta\end{bmatrix}$.

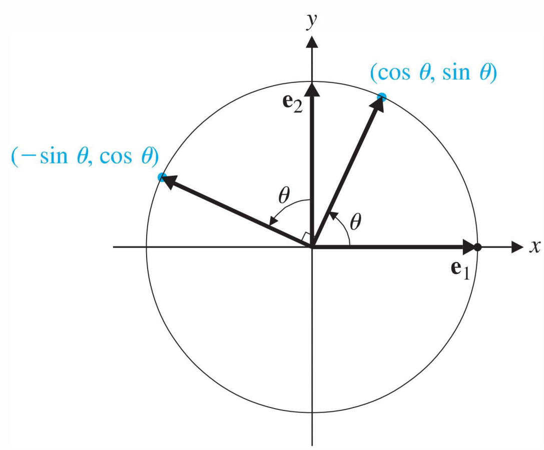


Figure 3.9
$R_\theta(\mathbf{e}_2)$

The result of Example 3.58 can now be used to compute the effect of any rotation. For example, suppose we wish to rotate the point $(2, -1)$ through $60°$ about the origin. (The convention is that a positive angle corresponds to a counterclockwise

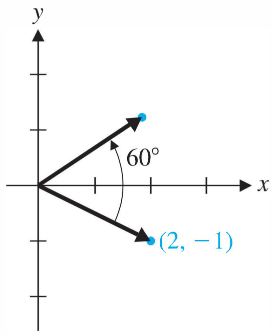


Figure 3.10
A 60° rotation

rotation, while a negative angle is clockwise.) Since $\cos 60° = 1/2$ and $\sin 60° = \sqrt{3}/2$, we compute

$$R_{60}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 60° & -\sin 60° \\ \sin 60° & \cos 60° \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & -\sqrt{3}/2 \\ \sqrt{3}/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} (2+\sqrt{3})/2 \\ (2\sqrt{3}-1)/2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, the image of the point $(2, -1)$ under this rotation is the point $((2+\sqrt{3})/2, (2\sqrt{3}-1)/2) \approx (1.87, 1.23)$, as shown in Figure 3.10.

Example 3.59

(a) Show that the transformation $P : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ that projects a point onto the x-axis is a linear transformation and find its standard matrix.
(b) More generally, if ℓ is a line through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^2$, show that the transformation $P_\ell : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ that projects a point onto ℓ is a linear transformation and find its standard matrix.

Solution (a) As Figure 3.11 shows, P sends the point (x, y) to the point $(x, 0)$. Thus,

$$P\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = x\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + y\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

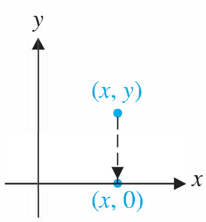


Figure 3.11
A projection

It follows that P is a matrix transformation (and hence a linear transformation) with standard matrix $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

(b) Let the line ℓ have direction vector $\mathbf{d}$ and let $\mathbf{v}$ be an arbitrary vector. Then P_ℓ is given by $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v})$, the projection of $\mathbf{v}$ onto $\mathbf{d}$, which you'll recall from Section 1.2 has the formula

$$\text{proj}_{\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{v}) = \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d}$$

Thus, to show that P_ℓ is linear, we proceed as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P_\ell(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v}) &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot(\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{v})}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} \\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{u}+\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} \\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{u}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}+\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} \\ &= \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{u}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d}+\left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{v}}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} = P_\ell(\mathbf{u})+P_\ell(\mathbf{v}) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, $P_\ell(c\mathbf{v}) = cP_\ell(\mathbf{v})$ for any scalar c (Exercise 52). Hence, P_ℓ is a linear transformation.

To find the standard matrix of P_ℓ, we apply Theorem 3.31. If we let $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix}$, then

$$P_\ell(\mathbf{e}_1) = \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{e}_1}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} = \frac{d_1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1^2 \\ d_1 d_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$P_\ell(\mathbf{e}_2) = \left(\frac{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{e}_2}{\mathbf{d}\cdot\mathbf{d}}\right)\mathbf{d} = \frac{d_2}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1 d_2 \\ d_2^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, the standard matrix of the projection is

$$A = \frac{1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1^2 & d_1 d_2 \\ d_1 d_2 & d_2^2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1^2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) & d_1 d_2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) \\ d_1 d_2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) & d_2^2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) \end{bmatrix}$$

As a check, note that in part (a) we could take $\mathbf{d} = \mathbf{e}_1$ as a direction vector for the x-axis. Therefore, $d_1 = 1$ and $d_2 = 0$, and we obtain $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, as before.

New Linear Transformations from Old

If $T : \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $S : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^p$ are linear transformations, then we may follow T by S to form the ***composition*** of the two transformations, denoted $S \circ T$. Notice that, in order for $S \circ T$ to make sense, the codomain of T and the domain of S must match (in this case, they are both $\mathbb{R}^n$) and the resulting composite transformation $S \circ T$ goes from the domain of T to the codomain of S (in this case, $S \circ T : \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^p$). Figure 3.12 shows schematically how this composition works. The formal definition of composition of transformations is taken directly from this figure and is the same as the corresponding definition of composition of ordinary functions:

$$(S \circ T)(\mathbf{v}) = S(T(\mathbf{v}))$$

Of course, we would like $S \circ T$ to be a linear transformation too, and happily we find that it is. We can demonstrate this by showing that $S \circ T$ satisfies the definition of a linear transformation (which we will do in Chapter 6), but, since for the time being we are assuming that linear transformations and matrix transformations are the same thing, it is enough to show that $S \circ T$ is a matrix transformation. We will use the notation $[T]$ for the standard matrix of a linear transformation T.

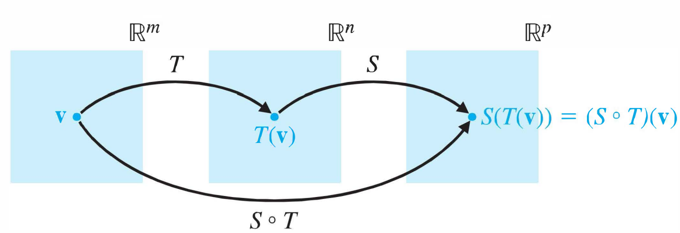


Figure 3.12
The composition of transformations

Theorem 3.32 Let $T: \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^n$ and $S: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^p$ be linear transformations. Then $S \circ T: \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^p$ is a linear transformation. Moreover, their standard matrices are related by

$$[S \circ T] = [S][T]$$

Proof Let $[S] = A$ and $[T] = B$. (Notice that A is $p \times n$ and B is $n \times m$.) If $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector in $\mathbb{R}^m$, then we simply compute

$$(S \circ T)(\mathbf{v}) = S(T(\mathbf{v})) = S(B\mathbf{v}) = A(B\mathbf{v}) = (AB)\mathbf{v}$$

(Notice here that the dimensions of A and B guarantee that the product AB makes sense.) Thus, we see that the effect of $S \circ T$ is to multiply vectors by AB, from which it follows immediately that $S \circ T$ is a matrix (hence, linear) transformation with $[S \circ T] = [S][T]$.

Isn't this a great result? Say it in words: "The matrix of the composite is the product of the matrices." What a lovely formula!

Example 3.60 Consider the linear transformation $T: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ from Example 3.55, defined by

$$T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the linear transformation $S: \mathbb{R}^3 \to \mathbb{R}^4$ defined by

$$S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2y_1 + y_3 \\ 3y_2 - y_3 \\ y_1 - y_2 \\ y_1 + y_2 + y_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Find $S \circ T: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^4$.

Solution We see that the standard matrices are

$$[S] = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad [T] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

so Theorem 3.32 gives

$$[S \circ T] = [S][T] = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 \\ 3 & -7 \\ -1 & 1 \\ 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

It follows that

$$(S \circ T)\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 4 \\ 3 & -7 \\ -1 & 1 \\ 6 & 3 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5x_1 + 4x_2 \\ 3x_1 - 7x_2 \\ -x_1 + x_2 \\ 6x_1 + 3x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

(In Exercise 29, you will be asked to check this result by setting

$$\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix} = T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 \\ 3x_1 + 4x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

and substituting these values into the definition of S, thereby calculating $(S \circ T)\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ directly.)

Example 3.61

Find the standard matrix of the transformation that first rotates a point 90° counterclockwise about the origin and then reflects the result in the x-axis.

Solution The rotation R and the reflection F were discussed in Examples 3.57 and 3.56, respectively, where we found their standard matrices to be $[R] = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $[F] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$. It follows that the composition $F \circ R$ has for its matrix

$$[F \circ R] = [F][R] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Check that this result is correct by considering the effect of $F \circ R$ on the standard basis vectors $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$. Note the importance of the *order* of the transformations: R is performed before F, but we write $F \circ R$. In this case, $R \circ F$ also makes sense. Is $R \circ F = F \circ R$?)

Inverses of Linear Transformations

Consider the effect of a 90° counterclockwise rotation about the origin followed by a 90° clockwise rotation about the origin. Clearly this leaves every point in $\mathbb{R}^2$ unchanged. If we denote these transformations by R_{90} and R_{-90} (remember that a negative angle measure corresponds to clockwise direction), then we may express this as $(R_{90} \circ R_{-90})(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}$ for every $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Note that, in this case, if we perform the transformations in the other order, we get the same end result: $(R_{-90} \circ R_{90})(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}$ for every $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

Thus, $R_{90} \circ R_{-90}$ (and $R_{-90} \circ R_{90}$ too) is a linear transformation that leaves every vector in $\mathbb{R}^2$ unchanged. Such a transformation is called an ***identity transformation.*** Generally, we have one such transformation for every $\mathbb{R}^n$—namely, $I : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ such that $I(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}$ for every $\mathbf{v}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. (If it is important to keep track of the dimension of the space, we might write I_n for clarity.)

So, with this notation, we have $R_{90} \circ R_{-90} = I = R_{-90} \circ R_{90}$. A pair of transformations that are related to each other in this way are called ***inverse transformations.***

Definition Let S and T be linear transformations from $\mathbb{R}^n$ to $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then S and T are ***inverse transformations*** if $S \circ T = I_n$ and $T \circ S = I_n$.

Remark Since this definition is symmetric with respect to S and T, we will say that, when this situation occurs, S is the inverse of T and T is the inverse of S. Furthermore, we will say that S and T are ***invertible.***

In terms of matrices, we see immediately that if S and T are inverse transformations, then $[S][T] = [S \circ T] = [I] = I$, where the last I is the identity *matrix*. (Why is the standard matrix of the identity transformation the identity matrix?) We must also have $[T][S] = [T \circ S] = [I] = I$. This shows that $[S]$ and $[T]$ are inverse matrices. It shows something more: If a linear transformation T is invertible, then its standard matrix $[T]$ must be invertible, and since matrix inverses are unique, this means that the inverse of T is also unique. Therefore, we can unambiguously use the notation T^{-1} to refer to *the* inverse of T. Thus, we can rewrite the above equations as $[T][T^{-1}] = I = [T^{-1}][T]$, showing that the matrix of T^{-1} is the inverse matrix of $[T]$. We have just proved the following theorem.

Theorem 3.33 Let $T: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ be an invertible linear transformation. Then its standard matrix $[T]$ is an invertible matrix, and

$$[T^{-1}] = [T]^{-1}$$

Remark Say this one in words too: “The matrix of the inverse is the inverse of the matrix.” Fabulous!

Example 3.62 Find the standard matrix of a 60° clockwise rotation about the origin in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

Solution Earlier we computed the matrix of a 60° counterclockwise rotation about the origin to be

$$[R_{60}] = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & -\sqrt{3}/2 \\ \sqrt{3}/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since a 60° clockwise rotation is the inverse of a 60° counterclockwise rotation, we can apply Theorem 3.33 to obtain

$$[R_{-60}] = [(R_{60})^{-1}] = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & -\sqrt{3}/2 \\ \sqrt{3}/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & \sqrt{3}/2 \\ -\sqrt{3}/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Check the calculation of the matrix inverse. The fastest way is to use the 2×2 shortcut from Theorem 3.8. Also, check that the resulting matrix has the right effect on the standard basis in $\mathbb{R}^2$ by drawing a diagram.)

Example 3.63 Determine whether projection onto the x-axis is an invertible transformation, and if it is, find its inverse.

Solution The standard matrix of this projection P is $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$, which is not invertible since its determinant is 0. Hence, P is not invertible either.

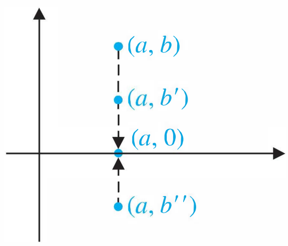


Figure 3.13
Projections are not invertible

Remark Figure 3.13 gives some idea why P in Example 3.63 is not invertible. The projection "collapses" $\mathbb{R}^2$ onto the x-axis. For P to be invertible, we would have to have a way of "undoing" it, to recover the point (a, b) we started with. However, there are infinitely many candidates for the image of $(a, 0)$ under such a hypothetical "inverse." Which one should we use? We cannot simply say that P^{-1} must send $(a, 0)$ to (a, b), since this cannot be a *definition* when we have no way of knowing what b should be. (See Exercise 42.)

Associativity

Theorem 3.3(a) in Section 3.2 stated the associativity property for matrix multiplication: $A(BC) = (AB)C$. (If you didn't try to prove it then, do so now. Even with all matrices restricted 2×2, you will get some feeling for the notational complexity involved in an "elementwise" proof, which should make you appreciate the proof we are about to give.)

Our approach to the proof is via linear transformations. We have seen that every $m \times n$ matrix A gives rise to a linear transformation $T_A : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$; conversely, every linear transformation $T : \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ has a corresponding $m \times n$ matrix $[T]$. The two correspondences are inversely related; that is, given A, $[T_A] = A$, and given T, $T_{[T]} = T$.

Let $R = T_A$, $S = T_B$, and $T = T_C$. Then, by Theorem 3.32,

$$A(BC) = (AB)C \quad \text{if and only if} \quad R \circ (S \circ T) = (R \circ S) \circ T$$

We now prove the latter identity. Let $\mathbf{x}$ be in the domain of T [and hence in the domain of both $R \circ (S \circ T)$ and $(R \circ S) \circ T$—why?]. To prove that $R \circ (S \circ T) = (R \circ S) \circ T$, it is enough to prove that they have the same effect on $\mathbf{x}$. By repeated application of the definition of composition, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(R \circ (S \circ T))(\mathbf{x}) &= R((S \circ T)(\mathbf{x})) \\ &= R(S(T(\mathbf{x}))) \\ &= (R \circ S)(T(\mathbf{x})) = ((R \circ S) \circ T)(\mathbf{x})\end{aligned}$$

as required. (Carefully check how the definition of composition has been used four times.)

This section has served as an introduction to linear transformations. In Chapter 6, we will take a more detailed and more general look at these transformations. The exercises that follow also contain some additional explorations of this important concept.

Exercises 3.6

1. Let $T_A : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ be the matrix transformation corresponding to $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$. Find $T_A(\mathbf{u})$ and $T_A(\mathbf{v})$, where $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

2. Let $T_A : \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^3$ be the matrix transformation corresponding to $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$. Find $T_A(\mathbf{u})$ and $T_A(\mathbf{v})$, where $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

In Exercises 3–6, prove that the given transformation is a linear transformation, using the definition (or the Remark following Example 3.55).

3. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x+y \\ x-y \end{bmatrix}$

4. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -y \\ x+2y \\ 3x-4y \end{bmatrix}$

5. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x-y+z \\ 2x+y-3z \end{bmatrix}$

6. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x+z \\ y+z \\ x+y \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7–10, give a counterexample to show that the given transformation is not a linear transformation.

7. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y \\ x^2 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} |x| \\ |y| \end{bmatrix}$

9. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} xy \\ x+y \end{bmatrix}$

10. $T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x+1 \\ y-1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 11–14, find the standard matrix of the linear transformation in the given exercise.

11. Exercise 3

12. Exercise 4

13. Exercise 5

14. Exercise 6

In Exercises 15–18, show that the given transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$ is linear by showing that it is a matrix transformation.

15. F reflects a vector in the y-axis.

16. R rotates a vector 45° counterclockwise about the origin.

17. D stretches a vector by a factor of 2 in the x-component and a factor of 3 in the y-component.

18. P projects a vector onto the line $y = x$.

19. The three types of elementary matrices give rise to five types of 2×2 matrices with one of the following forms:

$$\begin{bmatrix} k & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & k \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & k \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ or } \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ k & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Each of these elementary matrices corresponds to a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$. Draw pictures to illustrate the effect of each one on the unit square with vertices at (0, 0), (1, 0), (0, 1), and (1, 1).

In Exercises 20–25, find the standard matrix of the given linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$.

20. Counterclockwise rotation through 120° about the origin

21. Clockwise rotation through 30° about the origin

22. Projection onto the line $y = 2x$

23. Projection onto the line $y = -x$

24. Reflection in the line $y = x$

25. Reflection in the line $y = -x$

26. Let ℓ be a line through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^2$, P_ℓ the linear transformation that projects a vector onto ℓ, and F_ℓ the transformation that reflects a vector in ℓ.

(a) Draw diagrams to show that F_ℓ is linear.

(b) Figure 3.14 suggests a way to find the matrix of F_ℓ, using the fact that the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other. Prove that $F_\ell(\mathbf{x}) = 2P_\ell(\mathbf{x}) - \mathbf{x}$, and use this result to show that the standard matrix of F_ℓ is

$$\frac{1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1^2 - d_2^2 & 2d_1d_2 \\ 2d_1d_2 & -d_1^2 + d_2^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

(where the direction vector of ℓ is $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix}$).

(c) If the angle between ℓ and the positive x-axis is θ, show that the matrix of F_ℓ is

$$\begin{bmatrix} \cos 2\theta & \sin 2\theta \\ \sin 2\theta & -\cos 2\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

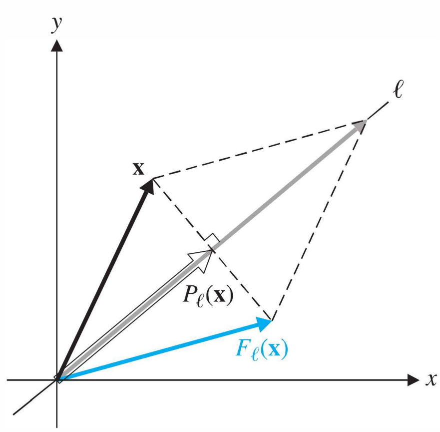


Figure 3.14

In Exercises 27 and 28, apply part (b) or (c) of Exercise 26 to find the standard matrix of the transformation.

27. Reflection in the line $y = 2x$

28. Reflection in the line $y = \sqrt{3}x$

29. Check the formula for $S \circ T$ in Example 3.60, by performing the suggested direct substitution.

In Exercises 30–35, verify Theorem 3.32 by finding the matrix of $S \circ T$ (a) by direct substitution and (b) by matrix multiplication of $[S][T]$.

30. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 - x_2 \\ x_1 + x_2 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2y_1 \\ -y_2 \end{bmatrix}$

31. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + 2x_2 \\ -3x_1 + x_2 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 + 3y_2 \\ y_1 - y_2 \end{bmatrix}$

32. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ -x_1 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 + 3y_2 \\ 2y_1 + y_2 \\ y_1 - y_2 \end{bmatrix}$

33. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 - x_3 \\ 2x_1 - x_2 + x_3 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4y_1 - 2y_2 \\ -y_1 + y_2 \end{bmatrix}$

34. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + 2x_2 \\ 2x_2 - x_3 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 - y_2 \\ y_1 + y_2 \\ -y_1 + y_2 \end{bmatrix}$

35. $T\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 + x_2 \\ x_2 + x_3 \\ x_1 + x_3 \end{bmatrix}, S\begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 - y_2 \\ y_2 - y_3 \\ -y_1 + y_3 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 36–39, find the standard matrix of the composite transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$.

36. Counterclockwise rotation through 60°, followed by reflection in the line $y = x$

37. Reflection in the y-axis, followed by clockwise rotation through 30°

38. Clockwise rotation through 45°, followed by projection onto the y-axis, followed by clockwise rotation through 45°

39. Reflection in the line $y = x$, followed by counterclockwise rotation through 30°, followed by reflection in the line $y = -x$

In Exercises 40–43, use matrices to prove the given statements about transformations from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$.

40. If R_θ denotes a rotation (about the origin) through the angle θ, then $R_\alpha \circ R_\beta = R_{\alpha+\beta}$.

41. If θ is the angle between lines ℓ and m (through the origin), then $F_m \circ F_\ell = R_{+2\theta}$. (See Exercise 26.)

42. **(a)** If P is a projection, then $P \circ P = P$.

(b) The matrix of a projection can never be invertible.

43. If ℓ, m, and n are three lines through the origin, then $F_n \circ F_m \circ F_\ell$ is also a reflection in a line through the origin.

44. Let T be a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$ (or from $\mathbb{R}^3$ to $\mathbb{R}^3$). Prove that T maps a straight line to a straight line or a point. [*Hint:* Use the vector form of the equation of a line.]

45. Let T be a linear transformation from $\mathbb{R}^2$ to $\mathbb{R}^2$ (or from $\mathbb{R}^3$ to $\mathbb{R}^3$). Prove that T maps parallel lines to parallel lines, a single line, a pair of points, or a single point.

In Exercises 46–51, let ABCD be the square with vertices $(-1, 1)$, $(1, 1)$, $(1, -1)$, and $(-1, -1)$. Use the results in Exercises 44 and 45 to find and draw the image of ABCD under the given transformation.

46. T in Exercise 3

47. D in Exercise 17

48. P in Exercise 18

49. The projection in Exercise 22

50. T in Exercise 31

51. The transformation in Exercise 37

52. Prove that $P_\ell(c\mathbf{v}) = cP_\ell(\mathbf{v})$ for any scalar c [Example 3.59(b)].

53. Prove that $T: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is a linear transformation if and only if

$$T(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2) = c_1T(\mathbf{v}_1) + c_2T(\mathbf{v}_2)$$

for all $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ and scalars c_1, c_2.

54. Prove that (as noted at the beginning of this section) the range of a linear transformation $T: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is the column space of its matrix $[T]$.

55. If A is an invertible 2×2 matrix, what does the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices assert about the corresponding linear transformation T_A in light of Exercise 19?

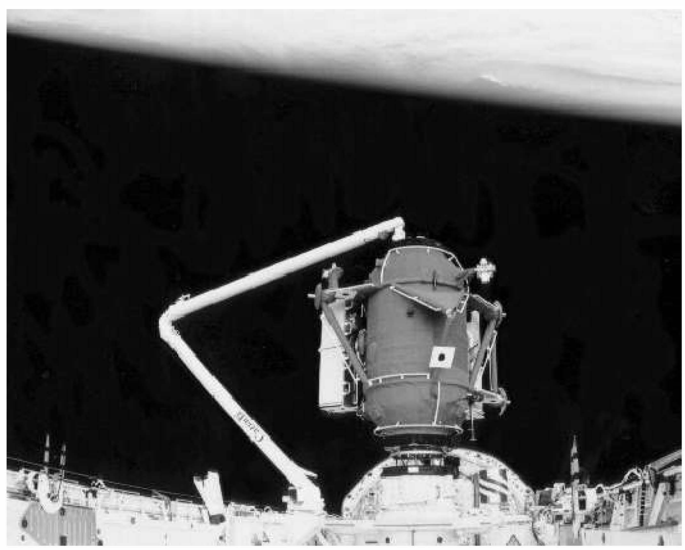
Vignette

Robotics

In 1981, the U.S. Space Shuttle *Columbia* blasted off equipped with a device called the Shuttle Remote Manipulator System (SRMS). This robotic arm, known as Canadarm, has proved to be a vital tool in all subsequent space shuttle missions, providing strong, yet precise and delicate handling of its payloads (see Figure 3.15).

Canadarm has been used to place satellites into their proper orbit and to retrieve malfunctioning ones for repair, and it has also performed critical repairs to the shuttle itself. Notably, the robotic arm was instrumental in the successful repair of the *Hubble Space Telescope*. Since 1998, Canadarm has played an important role in the assembly and operation of the *International Space Station*.

NASA



NASA

Figure 3.15
Canadarm

A robotic arm consists of a series of *links* of fixed length connected at *joints* where they can rotate. Each link can therefore rotate in space, or (through the effect of the other links) be translated parallel to itself, or move by a combination (composition) of rotations and translations. Before we can design a mathematical model for a robotic arm, we need to understand how rotations and translations work in composition. To simplify matters, we will assume that our arm is in $\mathbb{R}^2$.

In Section 3.6, we saw that the matrix of a rotation R about the origin through an angle θ is a linear transformation with matrix $\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$ (Figure 3.16(a)). If $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$, then a ***translation along*** $\mathbf{v}$ is the transformation

$$T(\mathbf{x}) = \mathbf{x} + \mathbf{v} \quad \text{or, equivalently,} \quad T\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x + a \\ y + b \end{bmatrix}$$

(Figure 3.16(b)).

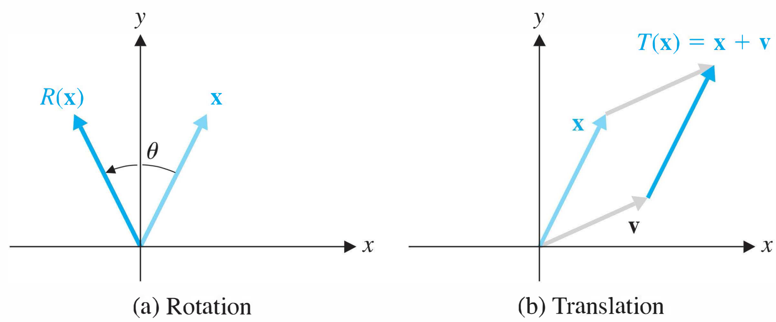


Figure 3.16

Unfortunately, translation is not a linear transformation, because $T(\mathbf{0}) \neq \mathbf{0}$. However, there is a trick that will get us around this problem. We can represent the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ as the vector $\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ in $\mathbb{R}^3$. This is called representing $\mathbf{x}$ in ***homogeneous coordinates.*** Then the matrix multiplication

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & a \\ 0 & 1 & b \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x + a \\ y + b \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

represents the translated vector $T(\mathbf{x})$ in homogeneous coordinates.

We can treat rotations in homogeneous coordinates too. The matrix multiplication

$$\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x\cos\theta - y\sin\theta \\ x\sin\theta + y\cos\theta \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

represents the rotated vector $R(\mathbf{x})$ in homogeneous coordinates. The composition $T \circ R$ that gives the rotation R followed by the translation T is now represented by the product

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & a \\ 0 & 1 & b \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & 0 \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta & a \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta & b \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

[Note that $R \circ T \neq T \circ R$.]

To model a robotic arm, we give each link its own coordinate system (called a *frame*) and examine how one link moves in relation to those to which it is directly connected. To be specific, we let the coordinate axes for the link A_i be x_i and y_i, with the x_i-axis aligned with the link. The length of A_i is denoted by a_i, and the angle between x_i and x_{i-1} is denoted by θ_i. The joint between A_i and A_{i-1} is at the point $(0, 0)$ relative to A_i and $(a_{i-1}, 0)$ relative to A_{i-1}. Hence, relative to A_{i-1}, the coordinate system for A_i has been rotated through θ_i and then translated along $\begin{bmatrix} a_{i-1} \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (Figure 3.17). This transformation is represented in homogeneous coordinates by the matrix

$$T_i = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta_i & -\sin\theta_i & a_{i-1} \\ \sin\theta_i & \cos\theta_i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

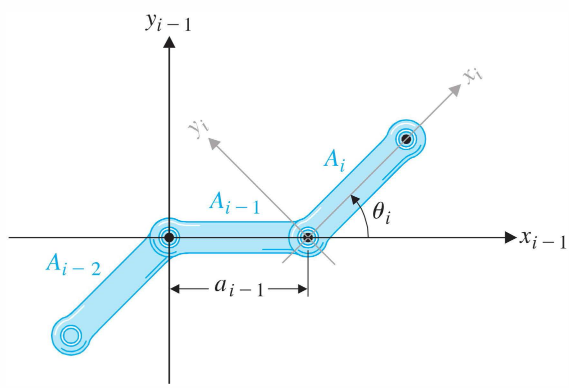


Figure 3.17

To give a specific example, consider Figure 3.18(a). It shows an arm with three links in which A_1 is in its initial position and each of the other two links has been rotated 45° from the previous link. We will take the length of each link to be 2 units. Figure 3.18(b) shows A_3 in its initial frame. The transformation

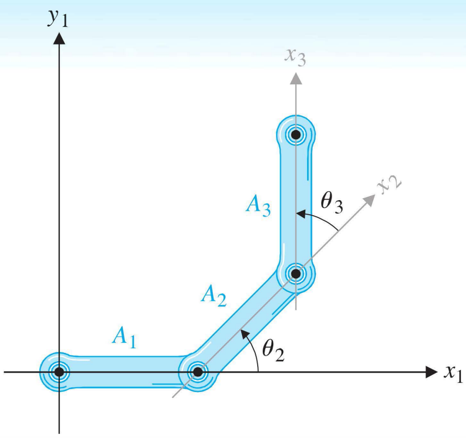
$$T_3 = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 45 & -\sin 45 & 2 \\ \sin 45 & \cos 45 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 2 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

causes a rotation of 45° and then a translation by 2 units. As shown in 3.18(c), this places A_3 in its appropriate position relative to A_2's frame. Next, the transformation

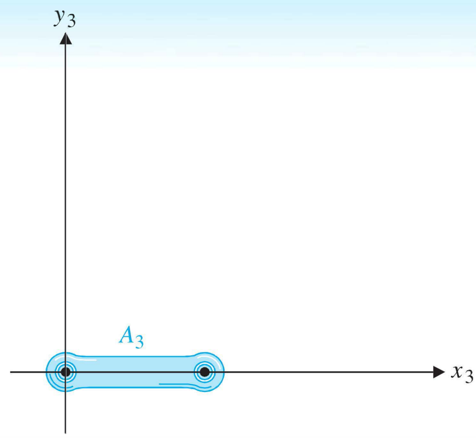
$$T_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \cos 45 & -\sin 45 & 2 \\ \sin 45 & \cos 45 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 2 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

is applied to the previous result. This places both A_3 and A_2 in their correct position relative to A_1, as shown in Figure 3.18(d). Normally, a third transformation T_1 (a rotation) would be applied to the previous result, but in our case, T_1 is the identity transformation because A_1 stays in its initial position.

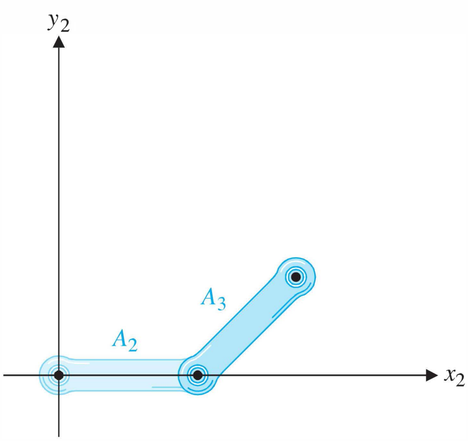
Typically, we want to know the coordinates of the end (the "hand") of the robotic arm, given the length and angle parameters—this is known as *forward kinematics*. Following the above sequence of calculations and referring to Figure 3.18, we see that



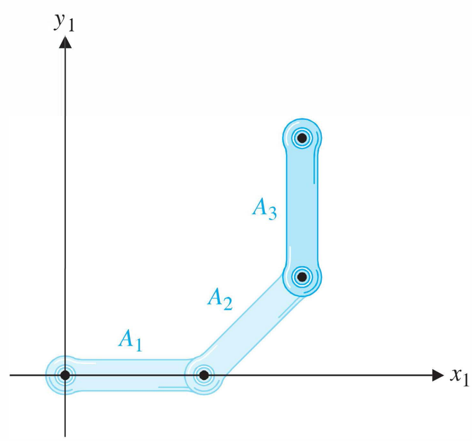
(a) A three-link chain



(b) A_3 in its initial frame



(c) T_3 puts A_3 in A_2's initial frame



(d) T_2T_3 puts A_3 in A_1's initial frame

Figure 3.18

we need to determine where the point $(2, 0)$ ends up after T_3 and T_2 are applied. Thus, the arm's hand is at

$$T_2T_3\begin{bmatrix}2\\0\\1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}1/\sqrt{2} & -1/\sqrt{2} & 2\\ 1/\sqrt{2} & 1/\sqrt{2} & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 1\end{bmatrix}^2\begin{bmatrix}2\\0\\1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}0 & -1 & 2+\sqrt{2}\\ 1 & 0 & \sqrt{2}\\ 0 & 0 & 1\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix}2\\0\\1\end{bmatrix}$$
$$= \begin{bmatrix}2+\sqrt{2}\\ 2+\sqrt{2}\\ 1\end{bmatrix}$$

which represents the point $(2+\sqrt{2}, 2+\sqrt{2})$ in homogeneous coordinates. It is easily checked from Figure 3.18(a) that this is correct.

The methods used in this example generalize to robotic arms in three dimensions, although in $\mathbb{R}^3$ there are more degrees of freedom and hence more variables. The method of homogeneous coordinates is also useful in other applications, notably computer graphics.

3.7 Applications

Markov Chains

A market research team is conducting a controlled survey to determine people's preferences in toothpaste. The sample consists of 200 people, each of whom is asked to try two brands of toothpaste over a period of several months. Based on the responses to the survey, the research team compiles the following statistics about toothpaste preferences.

Of those using Brand A in any month, 70% continue to use it the following month, while 30% switch to Brand B; of those using Brand B in any month, 80% continue to use it the following month, while 20% switch to Brand A. These findings are summarized in Figure 3.19, in which the percentages have been converted into decimals; we will think of them as probabilities.

Andrei A. Markov (1856–1922) was a Russian mathematician who studied and later taught at the University of St. Petersburg. He was interested in number theory, analysis, and the theory of continued fractions, a recently developed field that Markov applied to probability theory. Markov was also interested in poetry, and one of the uses to which he put Markov chains was the analysis of patterns in poems and other literary texts.

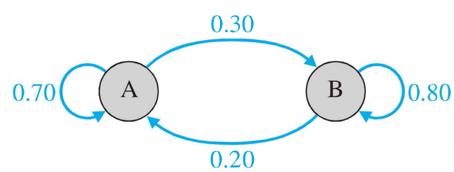


Figure 3.19

Figure 3.19 is a simple example of a (finite) ***Markov chain.*** It represents an evolving process consisting of a finite number of *states.* At each step or point in time, the process may be in any one of the states; at the next step, the process can remain in its present state or switch to one of the other states. The state to which the process moves at the next step and the probability of its doing so depend *only* on the present state and not on the past history of the process. These probabilities are called *transition probabilities* and are assumed to be constants (that is, the probability of moving from state i to state j is always the same).

Example 3.64

In the toothpaste survey described above, there are just two states—using Brand A and using Brand B—and the transition probabilities are those indicated in Figure 3.19. Suppose that, when the survey begins, 120 people are using Brand A and 80 people are using Brand B. How many people will be using each brand 1 month later? 2 months later?

Solution The number of Brand A users after 1 month will be 70% of those initially using Brand A (those who remain loyal to Brand A) plus 20% of the Brand B users (those who switch from B to A):

$$0.70(120) + 0.20(80) = 100$$

Similarly, the number of Brand B users after 1 month will be a combination of those who switch to Brand B and those who continue to use it:

$$0.30(120) + 0.80(80) = 100$$

We can summarize these two equations in a single matrix equation:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 120 \\ 80 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 100 \end{bmatrix}$$

Let's call the matrix P and label the vectors $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 120 \\ 80 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 100 \end{bmatrix}$. (Note that the components of each vector are the numbers of Brand A and Brand B users, in that order, after the number of months indicated by the subscript.) Thus, we have $\mathbf{x}_1 = P\mathbf{x}_0$.

Extending the notation, let $\mathbf{x}_k$ be the vector whose components record the distribution of toothpaste users after k months. To determine the number of users of each brand after 2 months have elapsed, we simply apply the same reasoning, starting with $\mathbf{x}_1$ instead of $\mathbf{x}_0$. We obtain

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 100 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 90 \\ 110 \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we see that there are now 90 Brand A users and 110 Brand B users.

The vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ in Example 3.64 are called the ***state vectors*** of the Markov chain, and the matrix P is called its ***transition matrix.*** We have just seen that a Markov chain satisfies the relation

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = P\mathbf{x}_k \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

From this result it follows that we can compute an arbitrary state vector *iteratively* once we know $\mathbf{x}_0$ and P. In other words, a Markov chain is *completely determined* by its transition probabilities and its initial state.

Remarks

- Suppose, in Example 3.64, we wanted to keep track of not the *actual* numbers of toothpaste users but, rather, the *relative* numbers using each brand. We could convert the data into percentages or fractions by dividing by 200, the total number of users. Thus, we would start with

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{120}{200} \\ \frac{80}{200} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.60 \\ 0.40 \end{bmatrix}$$

to reflect the fact that, initially, the Brand A–Brand B split is 60%–40%. Check by direct calculation that $P\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 0.50 \end{bmatrix}$, which can then be taken as $\mathbf{x}_1$ (in agreement with the 50–50 split we computed above). Vectors such as these, with nonnegative components that add up to 1, are called ***probability vectors.***

- Observe how the transition probabilities are arranged within the transition matrix P. We can think of the columns as being labeled with the *present* states and the rows as being labeled with the *next* states:

$$\begin{array}{cc} & \textit{Present} \\ & \begin{array}{cc} \ \ \text{A} & \ \ \text{B} \end{array} \\ \textit{Next} \ \begin{array}{c} \text{A} \\ \text{B} \end{array} & \begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix} \end{array}$$

The word *stochastic* is derived from the Greek adjective *stokhastikos,* meaning "capable of aiming" (or guessing). It has come to be applied to anything that is governed by the laws of probability in the sense that probability makes predictions about the likelihood of things happening. In probability theory, "stochastic processes" form a generalization of Markov chains.

Note also that the columns of P are probability vectors; any square matrix with this property is called a ***stochastic matrix.***

We can realize the deterministic nature of Markov chains in another way. Note that we can write

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = P(P\mathbf{x}_0) = P^2\mathbf{x}_0$$

and, in general,

$$\mathbf{x}_k = P^k\mathbf{x}_0 \quad \text{for } k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$$

This leads us to examine the powers of a transition matrix. In Example 3.64, we have

$$P^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.55 & 0.30 \\ 0.45 & 0.70 \end{bmatrix}$$

What are we to make of the entries of this matrix? The first thing to observe is that P^2 is another stochastic matrix, since its columns sum to 1. (You are asked to prove this in Exercise 14.) Could it be that P^2 is also a transition matrix of some kind? Consider one of its entries—say, $(P^2)_{21} = 0.45$. The tree diagram in Figure 3.20 clarifies where this entry came from.

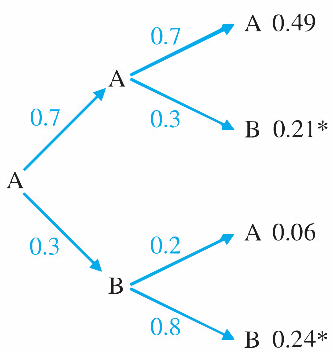


Figure 3.20

There are four possible state changes that can occur over 2 months, and these correspond to the four branches (or paths) of length 2 in the tree. Someone who initially is using Brand A can end up using Brand B 2 months later in two different ways (marked * in the figure): The person can continue to use A after 1 month and then switch to B (with probability $0.7(0.3) = 0.21$), or the person can switch to B after 1 month and then stay with B (with probability $0.3(0.8) = 0.24$). The sum of these probabilities gives an overall probability of 0.45. Observe that these calculations are *exactly* what we do when we compute $(P^2)_{21}$.

It follows that $(P^2)_{21} = 0.45$ represents the probability of moving from state 1 (Brand A) to state 2 (Brand B) in two transitions. (Note that the order of the subscripts is the *reverse* of what you might have guessed.) The argument can be generalized to show that

$(P^k)_{ij}$ is the probability of moving from state j to state i in k transitions.

In Example 3.64, what will happen to the distribution of toothpaste users in the long run? Let's work with probability vectors as state vectors. Continuing our calculations (rounding to three decimal places), we find

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.60 \\ 0.40 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 0.50 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 0.50 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.45 \\ 0.55 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{x}_3 = P\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.45 \\ 0.55 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.425 \\ 0.575 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.412 \\ 0.588 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.406 \\ 0.594 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\mathbf{x}_6 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.403 \\ 0.597 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_7 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.402 \\ 0.598 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_8 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.401 \\ 0.599 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_9 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.400 \\ 0.600 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.400 \\ 0.600 \end{bmatrix}$$

and so on. It appears that the state vectors approach (or *converge to*) the vector $\begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$, implying that eventually 40% of the toothpaste users in the survey will be using Brand A and 60% will be using Brand B. Indeed, it is easy to check that, once this distribution is reached, it will never change. We simply compute

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.70 & 0.20 \\ 0.30 & 0.80 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$$

A state vector $\mathbf{x}$ with the property that $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$ is called a ***steady state vector.*** In Chapter 4, we will prove that every Markov chain has a unique steady state vector. For now, let's accept this as a fact and see how we can find such a vector without doing any iterations at all.

We begin by rewriting the matrix equation $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$ as $P\mathbf{x} = I\mathbf{x}$, which can in turn be rewritten as $(I - P)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$. Now this is just a homogeneous system of linear equations with coefficient matrix $I - P$, so the augmented matrix is $[I - P\,|\,\mathbf{0}]$. In Example 3.64, we have

$$[I - P \,|\, \mathbf{0}] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 - 0.70 & -0.20 & 0 \\ -0.30 & 1 - 0.80 & 0 \end{array}\right] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 0.30 & -0.20 & 0 \\ -0.30 & 0.20 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

which reduces to

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & -\frac{2}{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

So, if our steady state vector is $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$, then x_2 is a free variable and the parametric solution is

$$x_1 = \tfrac{2}{3}t, \quad x_2 = t$$

If we require $\mathbf{x}$ to be a probability vector, then we must have

$$1 = x_1 + x_2 = \tfrac{2}{3}t + t = \tfrac{5}{3}t$$

Therefore, $x_2 = t = \frac{3}{5} = 0.6$ and $x_1 = \frac{2}{5} = 0.4$, so $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$, in agreement with our iterative calculations above. (If we require $\mathbf{x}$ to contain the *actual* distribution, then in this example we must have $x_1 + x_2 = 200$, from which it follows that $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 80 \\ 120 \end{bmatrix}$.)

Example 3.65

A psychologist places a rat in a cage with three compartments, as shown in Figure 3.21. The rat has been trained to select a door at random whenever a bell is rung and to move through it into the next compartment.

(a) If the rat is initially in compartment 1, what is the probability that it will be in compartment 2 after the bell has rung twice? three times?

(b) In the long run, what proportion of its time will the rat spend in each compartment?

Solution Let $P = [p_{ij}]$ be the transition matrix for this Markov chain. Then

$$p_{21} = p_{31} = \tfrac{1}{2},\ p_{12} = p_{13} = \tfrac{1}{3},\ p_{32} = p_{23} = \tfrac{2}{3},\ \text{and}\ p_{11} = p_{22} = p_{33} = 0$$

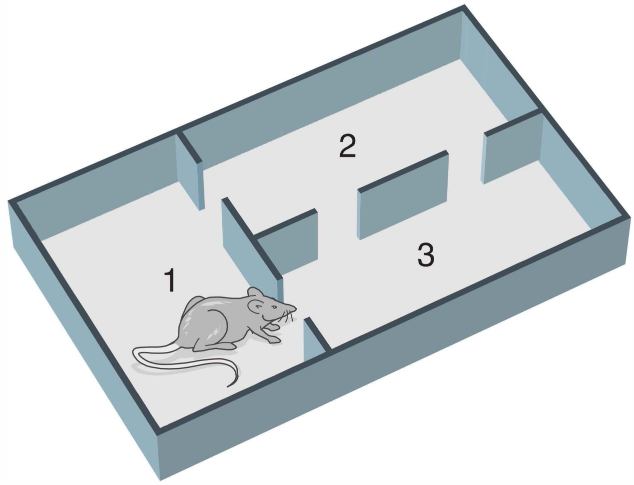


Figure 3.21

(Why? Remember that p_{ij} is the probability of moving from j to i.) Therefore,

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the initial state vector is

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(a) After one ring of the bell, we have

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = P\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0.5 \\ 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Continuing (rounding to three decimal places), we find

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = P\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0.333 \\ 0.333 \\ 0.333 \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$\mathbf{x}_3 = P\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{9} \\ \frac{7}{18} \\ \frac{7}{18} \end{bmatrix} \approx \begin{bmatrix} 0.222 \\ 0.389 \\ 0.389 \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore, after two rings, the probability that the rat is in compartment 2 is $\frac{1}{3} \approx 0.333$, and after three rings, the probability that the rat is in compartment 2 is $\frac{7}{18} \approx 0.389$. [Note that these questions could also be answered by computing $(P^2)_{21}$ and $(P^3)_{21}$.]

(b) This question is asking for the steady state vector $\mathbf{x}$ as a probability vector. As we saw above, $\mathbf{x}$ must be in the null space of $I - P$, so we proceed to solve the system

$$[I - P \mid \mathbf{0}] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -\frac{1}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 & -\frac{2}{3} & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{2}{3} & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -\frac{2}{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Hence, if $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$, then $x_3 = t$ is free and $x_1 = \frac{2}{3}t$, $x_2 = t$. Since $\mathbf{x}$ must be a probability vector, we need $1 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = \frac{8}{3}t$. Thus, $t = \frac{3}{8}$ and

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{3}{8} \\ \frac{3}{8} \end{bmatrix}$$

which tells us that, in the long run, the rat spends $\frac{1}{4}$ of its time in compartment 1 and $\frac{3}{8}$ of its time in each of the other two compartments.

Linear Economic Models

We now revisit the economic models that we first encountered in Section 2.4 and recast these models in terms of matrices. Example 2.33 illustrated the Leontief closed model. The system of equations we needed to solve was

$$\begin{aligned} \tfrac{1}{4}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{3}x_2 + \tfrac{1}{2}x_3 &= x_1 \\ \tfrac{1}{4}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{3}x_2 + \tfrac{1}{4}x_3 &= x_2 \\ \tfrac{1}{2}x_1 + \tfrac{1}{3}x_2 + \tfrac{1}{4}x_3 &= x_3 \end{aligned}$$

In matrix form, this is the equation $E\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$, where

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} 1/4 & 1/3 & 1/2 \\ 1/4 & 1/3 & 1/4 \\ 1/2 & 1/3 & 1/4 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

The matrix E is called an ***exchange matrix*** and the vector $\mathbf{x}$ is called a ***price vector***. In general, if $E = [e_{ij}]$, then e_{ij} represents the fraction (or percentage) of industry j's output that is consumed by industry i and x_i is the price charged by industry i for its output.

In a closed economy, the sum of each column of E is 1. Since the entries of E are also nonnegative, E is a stochastic matrix and the problem of finding a solution to the equation

$$E\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x} \tag{1}$$

is precisely the same as the problem of finding the steady state vector of a Markov chain! Thus, to find a price vector x that satisfies $E\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$, we solve the equivalent homogeneous equation $(I - E)\mathbf{x} = 0$. There will always be infinitely many solutions; we seek a solution where the prices are all nonnegative and at least one price is positive.

The Leontief open model is more interesting. In Example 2.34, we needed to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 0.2x_1 + 0.5x_2 + 0.1x_3 + 10 \\ x_2 &= 0.4x_1 + 0.2x_2 + 0.2x_3 + 10 \\ x_3 &= 0.1x_1 + 0.3x_2 + 0.3x_3 + 30 \end{aligned}$$

In matrix form, we have

$$\mathbf{x} = C\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{d} \quad \textit{or} \quad (I - C)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{d} \tag{2}$$

where

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.5 & 0.1 \\ 0.4 & 0.2 & 0.2 \\ 0.1 & 0.3 & 0.3 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}, \ \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 10 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix}$$

The matrix C is called the ***consumption matrix,*** x is the ***production vector,*** and $\mathbf{d}$ is the ***demand vector.*** In general, if $C = [c_{ij}]$, $\mathbf{x} = [x_i]$, and $\mathbf{d} = [d_i]$, then c_{ij} represents the dollar value of industry i's output that is needed to produce one dollar's worth of industry j's output, x_i is the dollar value (price) of industry i's output, and d_i is the dollar value of the external demand for industry i's output. Once again, we are interested in finding a production vector $\mathbf{x}$ with nonnegative entries such that at least one entry is positive. We call such a vector $\mathbf{x}$ a ***feasible solution.***

Example 3.66

Determine whether there is a solution to the Leontief open model determined by the following consumption matrices:

(a) $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1/4 & 1/3 \\ 1/2 & 1/3 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & 1/2 \\ 1/2 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution (a) We have

$$I - C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 1/4 & 1/3 \\ 1/2 & 1/3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3/4 & -1/3 \\ -1/2 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix}$$

so the equation $(I - C)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{d}$ becomes

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3/4 & -1/3 \\ -1/2 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

In practice, we would row reduce the corresponding augmented matrix to determine a solution. However, in this case, it is instructive to notice that the coefficient matrix $I - C$ is invertible and then to apply Theorem 3.7. We compute

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3/4 & -1/3 \\ -1/2 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3/2 & 9/4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since d_1, d_2, and all entries of $(I - C)^{-1}$ are nonnegative, so are x_1 and x_2. Thus, we can find a feasible solution for *any* nonzero demand vector.

(b) In this case,

$$I - C = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & -1/2 \\ -1/2 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad (I - C)^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & -6 \\ -6 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$$

so that

$$\mathbf{x} = (I - C)^{-1}\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & -6 \\ -6 & -6 \end{bmatrix}\mathbf{d}$$

Since all entries of $(I - C)^{-1}$ are negative, this will not produce a feasible solution for *any* nonzero demand vector $\mathbf{d}$.

Motivated by Example 3.66, we have the following definition. (For two $m \times n$ matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$, we will write $A \geq B$ if $a_{ij} \geq b_{ij}$ for all i and j. Similarly, we may define $A > B$, $A \leq B$, and so on. A matrix A is called nonnegative if $A \geq O$ and positive if $A > O$.)

Definition A consumption matrix C is called ***productive*** if $I - C$ is invertible and $(I - C)^{-1} \geq O$.

We now give three results that give criteria for a consumption matrix to be productive.

Theorem 3.34 Let C be a consumption matrix. Then C is productive if and only if there exists a production vector $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$ such that $\mathbf{x} > C\mathbf{x}$.

Proof Assume that C is productive. Then $I - C$ is invertible and $(I - C)^{-1} \geq O$. Let

$$\mathbf{j} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then $\mathbf{x} = (I - C)^{-1}\mathbf{j} \geq 0$ and $(I - C)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{j} > 0$. Thus, $\mathbf{x} - C\mathbf{x} > 0$ or, equivalently, $\mathbf{x} > C\mathbf{x}$.

Conversely, assume that there exists a vector $\mathbf{x} \geq 0$ such that $\mathbf{x} > C\mathbf{x}$. Since $C \geq O$ and $C \neq O$, we have $\mathbf{x} > 0$ by Exercise 35. Furthermore, there must exist a real number λ with $0 < \lambda < 1$ such that $C\mathbf{x} < \lambda\mathbf{x}$. But then

$$C^2\mathbf{x} = C(C\mathbf{x}) \leq C(\lambda\mathbf{x}) = \lambda(C\mathbf{x}) < \lambda(\lambda\mathbf{x}) = \lambda^2\mathbf{x}$$

By induction, it can be shown that $0 \leq C^n\mathbf{x} < \lambda^n\mathbf{x}$ for all $n \geq 0$. (Write out the details of this induction proof.) Since $0 < \lambda < 1$, λ^n approaches 0 as n gets large. Therefore, as $n \to \infty$, $\lambda^n\mathbf{x} \to 0$ and hence $C^n\mathbf{x} \to 0$. Since $\mathbf{x} > 0$, we must have $C^n \to O$ as $n \to \infty$.

Now consider the matrix equation

$$(I - C)(I + C + C^2 + \cdots + C^{n-1}) = I - C^n$$

As $n \to \infty$, $C^n \to O$, so we have

$$(I - C)(I + C + C^2 + \dots) = I - O = I$$

Therefore, $I - C$ is invertible, with its inverse given by the infinite matrix series $I + C + C^2 + \dots$. Since all the terms in this series are nonnegative, we also have

$$(I - C)^{-1} = I + C + C^2 + \dots \geq O$$

Hence, C is productive.

Remarks

- The infinite series $I + C + C^2 + \dots$ is the matrix analogue of the geometric series $1 + x + x^2 + \dots$. You may be familiar with the fact that, for $|x| < 1$, $1 + x + x^2 + \dots = 1/(1 - x)$.
- Since the vector $C\mathbf{x}$ represents the amounts consumed by each industry, the inequality $\mathbf{x} > C\mathbf{x}$ means that there is some level of production for which each industry is producing more than it consumes.
- For an alternative approach to the first part of the proof of Theorem 3.34, see Exercise 42 in Section 4.6.

Corollary 3.35 Let C be a consumption matrix. If the sum of each row of C is less than 1, then C is productive.

The word *corollary* comes from the Latin word *corollarium,* which refers to a garland given as a reward. Thus, a corollary is a little extra reward that follows from a theorem.

Proof If

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

then $C\mathbf{x}$ is a vector consisting of the row sums of C. If each row sum of C is less than 1, then the condition $\mathbf{x} > C\mathbf{x}$ is satisfied. Hence, C is productive.

Corollary 3.36 Let C be a consumption matrix. If the sum of each column of C is less than 1, then C is productive.

Proof If each column sum of C is less than 1, then each row sum of C^T is less than 1. Hence, C^T is productive, by Corollary 3.35. Therefore, by Theorems 3.9(d) and 3.4,

$$((I - C)^{-1})^T = ((I - C)^T)^{-1} = (I^T - C^T)^{-1} = (I - C^T)^{-1} \geq O$$

It follows that $(I - C)^{-1} \geq O$ too and, thus, C is productive.

You are asked to give alternative proofs of Corollaries 3.35 and 3.36 in Exercise 52 of Section 7.2.

It follows from the definition of a consumption matrix that the sum of column j is the total dollar value of all the inputs needed to produce one dollar's worth of industry j's output—that is, industry j's income exceeds its expenditures. We say that such an industry is ***profitable.*** Corollary 3.36 can therefore be rephrased to state that a consumption matrix is productive if all industries are profitable.

P. H. Leslie, "On the Use of Matrices in Certain Population Mathematics," *Biometrika* **33** (1945), pp. 183–212.

Population Growth

One of the most popular models of population growth is a matrix-based model, first introduced by P. H. Leslie in 1945. The *Leslie model* describes the growth of the female portion of a population, which is assumed to have a maximum lifespan. The females are divided into age classes, all of which span an equal number of years. Using data about the average birthrates and survival probabilities of each class, the model is then able to determine the growth of the population over time.

Example 3.67

A certain species of German beetle, the Vollmar-Wasserman beetle (or VW beetle, for short), lives for at most 3 years. We divide the female VW beetles into three age classes of 1 year each: youths (0–1 year), juveniles (1–2 years), and adults (2–3 years). The youths do not lay eggs; each juvenile produces an average of four female beetles; and each adult produces an average of three females.

The survival rate for youths is 50% (that is, the probability of a youth's surviving to become a juvenile is 0.5), and the survival rate for juveniles is 25%. Suppose we begin with a population of 100 female VW beetles: 40 youths, 40 juveniles, and 20 adults. Predict the beetle population for each of the next 5 years.

Solution After 1 year, the number of youths will be the number produced during that year:

$$40 \times 4 + 20 \times 3 = 220$$

The number of juveniles will simply be the number of youths that have survived:

$$40 \times 0.5 = 20$$

Likewise, the number of adults will be the number of juveniles that have survived:

$$40 \times 0.25 = 10$$

We can combine these into a single matrix equation

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 40 \\ 40 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 220 \\ 20 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

or $L\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}_1$, where $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 40 \\ 40 \\ 20 \end{bmatrix}$ is the initial population distribution vector and $\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 220 \\ 20 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$ is the distribution after 1 year. We see that the structure of the equation is exactly the same as for Markov chains: $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = L\mathbf{x}_k$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$ (although the interpretation is quite different). It follows that we can iteratively compute successive population distribution vectors. (It also follows that $\mathbf{x}_k = L^k\mathbf{x}_0$ for $k = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, as for Markov chains, but we will not use this fact here.)

We compute

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = L\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 220 \\ 20 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 110 \\ 110 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_3 = L\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 110 \\ 110 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 455 \\ 55 \\ 27.5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_4 = L\mathbf{x}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 455 \\ 55 \\ 27.5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 302.5 \\ 227.5 \\ 13.75 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_5 = L\mathbf{x}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 302.5 \\ 227.5 \\ 13.75 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 951.2 \\ 151.2 \\ 56.88 \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore, the model predicts that after 5 years there will be approximately 951 young female VW beetles, 151 juveniles, and 57 adults. (*Note:* You could argue that we should have rounded to the nearest integer at each step—for example, 28 adults after step 3—which would have affected the subsequent iterations. We elected *not* to do this, since the calculations are only approximations anyway and it is much easier to use a calculator or CAS if you do not round as you go.)

The matrix L in Example 3.67 is called a ***Leslie matrix.*** In general, if we have a population with n age classes of equal duration, L will be an $n \times n$ matrix with the following structure:

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & b_3 & \cdots & b_{n-1} & b_n \\ s_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_3 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & s_{n-1} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Here, $b_1, b_2, \ldots$ are the *birth parameters* (b_i = the average numbers of females produced by each female in class i) and $s_1, s_2, \ldots$ are the *survival probabilities* (s_i = the probability that a female in class i survives into class $i + 1$).

What are we to make of our calculations? Overall, the beetle population appears to be increasing, although there are some fluctuations, such as a decrease from 250 to 225 from year 1 to year 2. Figure 3.22 shows the change in the population in each of the three age classes and clearly shows the growth, with fluctuations.

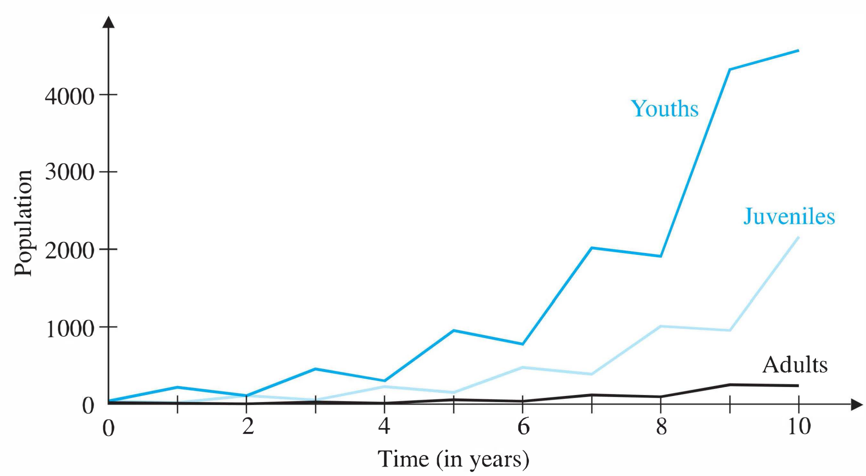


Figure 3.22

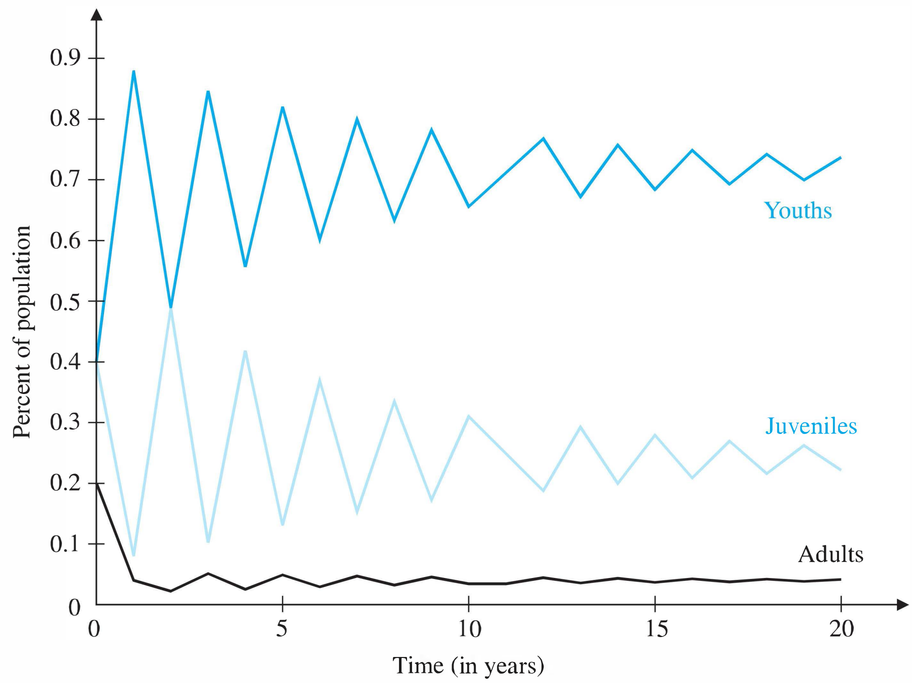


Figure 3.23

If, instead of plotting the *actual* population, we plot the *relative* population in each class, a different pattern emerges. To do this, we need to compute the fraction of the population in each age class in each year; that is, we need to divide each distribution vector by the sum of its components. For example, after 1 year, we have

$$\frac{1}{250}\mathbf{x}_1 = \frac{1}{250}\begin{bmatrix} 220 \\ 20 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.88 \\ 0.08 \\ 0.04 \end{bmatrix}$$

which tells us that 88% of the population consists of youths, 8% is juveniles, and 4% is adults. If we plot this type of data over time, we get a graph like the one in Figure 3.23, which shows clearly that the proportion of the population in each class is approaching a steady state. It turns out that the steady state vector in this example is

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.72 \\ 0.24 \\ 0.04 \end{bmatrix}$$

That is, in the long run, 72% of the population will be youths, 24% juveniles, and 4% adults. (In other words, the population is distributed among the three age classes in the ratio 18:6:1.) We will see how to determine this ratio exactly in Chapter 4.

Graphs and Digraphs

There are many situations in which it is important to be able to model the interrelationships among a finite set of objects. For example, we might wish to describe various types of networks (roads connecting towns, airline routes connecting cities, communication links connecting satellites, etc.) or relationships among groups or individuals (friendship relationships in a society, predator-prey relationships in

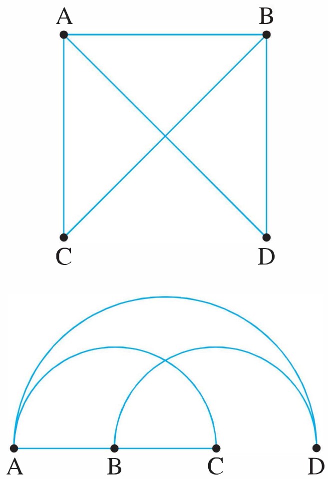


Figure 3.24
Two representations of the same graph

The term *vertex* (*vertices* is the plural) comes from the Latin verb *vertere*, which means "to turn." In the context of graphs (and geometry), a vertex is a corner—a point where an edge "turns" into a different edge.

an ecosystem, dominance relationships in a sport, etc.). Graphs are ideally suited to modeling such networks and relationships, and it turns out that matrices are a useful tool in their study.

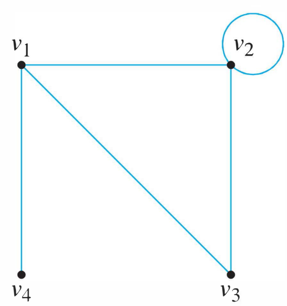
A ***graph*** consists of a finite set of points (called *vertices*) and a finite set of *edges*, each of which connects two (not necessarily distinct) vertices. We say that two vertices are *adjacent* if they are the endpoints of an edge. Figure 3.24 shows an example of the same graph drawn in two different ways. The graphs are the "same" in the sense that all we care about are the adjacency relationships that identify the edges.

We can record the essential information about a graph in a matrix and use matrix algebra to help us answer certain questions about the graph. This is particularly useful if the graphs are large, since computers can handle the calculations very quickly.

Definition If G is a graph with n vertices, then its ***adjacency matrix*** is the $n \times n$ matrix A [or $A(G)$] defined by

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if there is an edge between vertices } i \text{ and } j \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Figure 3.25 shows a graph and its associated adjacency matrix.



$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Figure 3.25
A graph with adjacency matrix A

Remark Observe that the adjacency matrix of a graph is necessarily a symmetric matrix. (Why?) Notice also that a diagonal entry a_{ii} of A is zero unless there is a loop at vertex i. In some situations, a graph may have more than one edge between a pair of vertices. In such cases, it may make sense to modify the definition of the adjacency matrix so that a_{ij} equals the *number* of edges between vertices i and j.

We define a ***path*** in a graph to be a sequence of edges that allows us to travel from one vertex to another continuously. The ***length*** of a path is the number of edges it contains, and we will refer to a path with k edges as a ***k-path.*** For example, in the graph of Figure 3.25, $v_1v_3v_2v_1$ is a 3-path, and $v_4v_1v_2v_2v_1v_3$ is a 5-path. Notice that the first of these is *closed* (it begins and ends at the same vertex); such a path is called a ***circuit.*** The second uses the edge between v_1 and v_2 twice; a path that does *not* include the same edge more than once is called a ***simple*** path.

We can use the powers of a graph's adjacency matrix to give us information about the paths of various lengths in the graph. Consider the square of the adjacency matrix in Figure 3.25:

$$A^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

What do the entries of A^2 represent? Look at the (2, 3) entry. From the definition of matrix multiplication, we know that

$$(A^2)_{23} = a_{21}a_{13} + a_{22}a_{23} + a_{23}a_{33} + a_{24}a_{43}$$

The only way this expression can result in a nonzero number is if at least one of the products $a_{2k}a_{k3}$ that make up the sum is nonzero. But $a_{2k}a_{k3}$ is nonzero if and only if both a_{2k} and a_{k3} are nonzero, which means that there is an edge between v_2 and v_k as well as an edge between v_k and v_3. Thus, there will be a 2-path between vertices 2 and 3 (via vertex k). In our example, this happens for $k = 1$ and for $k = 2$, so

$$\begin{aligned}(A^2)_{23} &= a_{21}a_{13} + a_{22}a_{23} + a_{23}a_{33} + a_{24}a_{43} \\ &= 1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 0 + 0 \cdot 0 \\ &= 2\end{aligned}$$

which tells us that there are two 2-paths between vertices 2 and 3. (Check to see that the remaining entries of A^2 correctly give 2-paths in the graph.) The argument we have just given can be generalized to yield the following result, whose proof we leave as Exercise 72.

If A is the adjacency matrix of a graph G, then the (i, j) entry of A^k is equal to the number of k-paths between vertices i and j.

Example 3.68

How many 3-paths are there between v_1 and v_2 in Figure 3.25?

Solution We need the (1, 2) entry of A^3, which is the dot product of row 1 of A^2 and column 2 of A. The calculation gives

$$(A^3)_{12} = 3 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot 0 = 6$$

so there are six 3-paths between vertices 1 and 2, which can be easily checked.

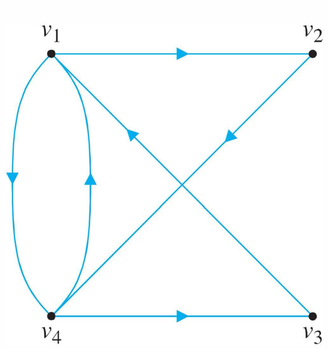


Figure 3.26
A digraph

In many applications that can be modeled by a graph, the vertices are ordered by some type of relation that imposes a direction on the edges. For example, directed edges might be used to represent one-way routes in a graph that models a transportation network or predator-prey relationships in a graph modeling an ecosystem. A graph with directed edges is called a ***digraph.*** Figure 3.26 shows an example.

An easy modification to the definition of adjacency matrices allows us to use them with digraphs.

Definition If G is a digraph with n vertices, then its ***adjacency matrix*** is the $n \times n$ matrix A [or $A(G)$] defined by

$$a_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if there is an edge from vertex } i \text{ to vertex } j \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Thus, the adjacency matrix for the digraph in Figure 3.26 is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Not surprisingly, the adjacency matrix of a digraph is not symmetric in general. (When would it be?) You should have no difficulty seeing that A^k now contains the numbers of *directed* k-paths between vertices, where we insist that all edges along a path flow in the same direction. (See Exercise 72.) The next example gives an application of this idea.

Example 3.69

Five tennis players (Djokovic, Federer, Nadal, Roddick, and Safin) compete in a round-robin tournament in which each player plays every other player once. The digraph in Figure 3.27 summarizes the results. A directed edge from vertex i to vertex j means that player i defeated player j. (A digraph in which there is exactly one directed edge between every pair of vertices is called a ***tournament***.)

The adjacency matrix for the digraph in Figure 3.27 is

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

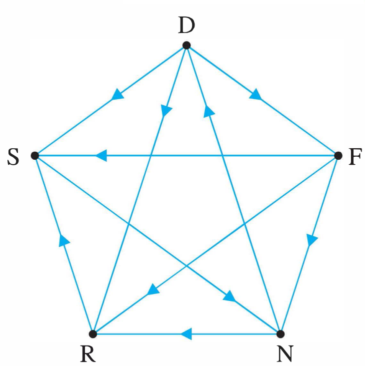


Figure 3.27
A tournament

where the order of the vertices (and hence the rows and columns of A) is determined alphabetically. Thus, Federer corresponds to row 2 and column 2, for example.

Suppose we wish to rank the five players, based on the results of their matches. One way to do this might be to count the number of wins for each player. Observe that the number of wins each player had is just the sum of the entries in the corresponding row; equivalently, the vector containing all the row sums is given by the product $A\mathbf{j}$, where

$$\mathbf{j} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

In our case, we have

$$A\mathbf{j} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which produces the following ranking:

First: Djokovic, Federer (tie)
Second: Nadal
Third: Roddick, Safin (tie)

Are the players who tied in this ranking equally strong? Djokovic might argue that since he defeated Federer, he deserves first place. Roddick would use the same type of argument to break the tie with Safin. However, Safin could argue that he has two "indirect" victories because he beat Nadal, who defeated *two* others; furthermore, he might note that Roddick has only *one* indirect victory (over Safin, who then defeated Nadal).

Since in a group of ties there may not be a player who defeated all the others in the group, the notion of indirect wins seems more useful. Moreover, an indirect victory corresponds to a 2-path in the digraph, so we can use the square of the adjacency matrix. To compute both wins and indirect wins for each player, we need the row sums of the matrix $A + A^2$, which are given by

$$(A + A^2)\mathbf{j} = \left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right) \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 & 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 8 \\ 7 \\ 6 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, we would rank the players as follows: Djokovic, Federer, Nadal, Safin, Roddick. Unfortunately, this approach is not guaranteed to break all ties.

Exercises 3.7

Markov Chains

In Exercises 1–4, let $P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 & 0.3 \\ 0.5 & 0.7 \end{bmatrix}$ *be the transition matrix for a Markov chain with two states. Let* $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$ *be the initial state vector for the population.*

1. Compute $\mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{x}_2$.

2. What proportion of the state 1 population will be in state 2 after two steps?

3. What proportion of the state 2 population will be in state 2 after two steps?

4. Find the steady state vector.

In Exercises 5–8, let $P = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ *be the transition matrix for a Markov chain with three states. Let* $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 120 \\ 180 \\ 90 \end{bmatrix}$ *be the initial state vector for the population.*

5. Compute $\mathbf{x}_1$ and $\mathbf{x}_2$.

6. What proportion of the state 1 population will be in state 1 after two steps?

7. What proportion of the state 2 population will be in state 3 after two steps?

8. Find the steady state vector.

9. Suppose that the weather in a particular region behaves according to a Markov chain. Specifically, suppose that the probability that tomorrow will be a wet day is 0.662 if today is wet and 0.250 if today is dry. The probability that tomorrow will be a dry day is 0.750 if today is dry and 0.338 if today is wet. [This exercise is based on an actual study of rainfall in Tel Aviv over a 27-year period. See K. R. Gabriel and J. Neumann, "A Markov Chain Model for Daily Rainfall Occurrence at Tel Aviv," *Quarterly Journal of the Royal Meteorological Society, 88* (1962), pp. 90–95.]

(a) Write down the transition matrix for this Markov chain.

(b) If Monday is a dry day, what is the probability that Wednesday will be wet?

(c) In the long run, what will the distribution of wet and dry days be?

10. Data have been accumulated on the heights of children relative to their parents. Suppose that the probabilities that a tall parent will have a tall, medium-height, or short child are 0.6, 0.2, and 0.2, respectively; the probabilities that a medium-height parent will have a tall, medium-height, or short child are 0.1, 0.7, and 0.2, respectively; and the probabilities that a short parent will have a tall, medium-height, or short child are 0.2, 0.4, and 0.4, respectively.

(a) Write down the transition matrix for this Markov chain.

(b) What is the probability that a short person will have a tall grandchild?

(c) If 20% of the current population is tall, 50% is of medium height, and 30% is short, what will the distribution be in three generations?

(d) What proportion of the population will be tall, of medium height, and short in the long run?

11. A study of piñon (pine) nut crops in the American southwest from 1940 to 1947 hypothesized that nut production followed a Markov chain. [See D. H. Thomas, "A Computer Simulation Model of Great Basin Shoshonean Subsistence and Settlement Patterns," in D. L. Clarke, ed., *Models in Archaeology* (London: Methuen, 1972).] The data suggested that if one year's crop was good, then the probabilities that the following year's crop would be good, fair, or poor were 0.08, 0.07, and 0.85, respectively; if one year's crop was fair, then the probabilities that the following year's crop would be good, fair, or poor were 0.09, 0.11, and 0.80, respectively; if one year's crop was poor, then the probabilities that the following year's crop would be good, fair, or poor were 0.11, 0.05, and 0.84, respectively.

(a) Write down the transition matrix for this Markov chain.

(b) If the piñon nut crop was good in 1940, find the probabilities of a good crop in the years 1941 through 1945.

(c) In the long run, what proportion of the crops will be good, fair, and poor?

12. Robots have been programmed to traverse the maze shown in Figure 3.28 and at each junction randomly choose which way to go.

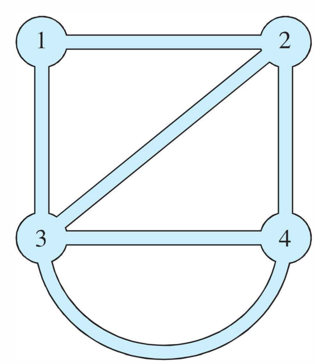


Figure 3.28

(a) Construct the transition matrix for the Markov chain that models this situation.

(b) Suppose we start with 15 robots at each junction. Find the steady state distribution of robots. (Assume that it takes each robot the same amount of time to travel between two adjacent junctions.)

13. Let $\mathbf{j}$ denote a row vector consisting entirely of 1s. Prove that a nonnegative matrix P is a stochastic matrix if and only if $\mathbf{j}P = \mathbf{j}$.

14. (a) Show that the product of two 2×2 stochastic matrices is also a stochastic matrix.

(b) Prove that the product of two $n \times n$ stochastic matrices is also a stochastic matrix.

(c) If a 2×2 stochastic matrix P is invertible, prove that P^{-1} is also a stochastic matrix.

Suppose we want to know the average (or expected) number of steps it will take to go from state i to state j in a Markov chain. It can be shown that the following computation answers this question: Delete the jth row and the jth column of the transition matrix P to get a new matrix Q. (Keep the rows and columns of Q labeled as they were in P.) The expected number of steps from state i to state j is given by the sum of the entries in the column of $(I - Q)^{-1}$ labeled i.

15. In Exercise 9, if Monday is a dry day, what is the expected number of days until a wet day?

16. In Exercise 10, what is the expected number of generations until a short person has a tall descendant?

17. In Exercise 11, if the piñon nut crop is fair one year, what is the expected number of years until a good crop occurs?

18. In Exercise 12, starting from each of the other junctions, what is the expected number of moves until a robot reaches junction 4?

Linear Economic Models

In Exercises 19–26, determine which of the matrices are exchange matrices. For those that are exchange matrices, find a nonnegative price vector that satisfies Equation (1).

19. $\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & 1/4 \\ 1/2 & 3/4 \end{bmatrix}$

20. $\begin{bmatrix} 1/3 & 2/3 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}$

21. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.4 & 0.7 \\ 0.6 & 0.4 \end{bmatrix}$

22. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & 0.6 \\ 0.9 & 0.4 \end{bmatrix}$

23. $\begin{bmatrix} 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/3 & 3/2 & 0 \\ 1/3 & -1/2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

24. $\begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/3 \\ 1/2 & 0 & 2/3 \end{bmatrix}$

25. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.3 & 0 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.5 & 0.3 \\ 0.4 & 0.5 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 & 0.70 & 0.35 \\ 0.25 & 0.30 & 0.25 \\ 0.25 & 0 & 0.40 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 27–30, determine whether the given consumption matrix is productive.

27. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.3 \\ 0.5 & 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.20 & 0.10 & 0.10 \\ 0.30 & 0.15 & 0.45 \\ 0.15 & 0.30 & 0.50 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.35 & 0.25 & 0 \\ 0.15 & 0.55 & 0.35 \\ 0.45 & 0.30 & 0.60 \end{bmatrix}$

30. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.4 & 0.1 & 0.4 \\ 0.3 & 0.2 & 0.2 & 0.1 \\ 0 & 0.4 & 0.5 & 0.3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0.2 & 0.2 \end{bmatrix}$

*In Exercises 31–34, a consumption matrix C and a demand vector **d** are given. In each case, find a feasible production vector **x** that satisfies Equation (2).*

31. $C = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & 1/4 \\ 1/2 & 1/2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

32. $C = \begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & 0.4 \\ 0.3 & 0.2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

33. $C = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 & 0.2 & 0.1 \\ 0 & 0.4 & 0.2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

CAS **34.** $C = \begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & 0.4 & 0.1 \\ 0 & 0.2 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.2 & 0.3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.1 \\ 3.5 \\ 2.0 \end{bmatrix}$

35. Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix, $A \geq O$. Suppose that $A\mathbf{x} < \mathbf{x}$ for some $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$. Prove that $\mathbf{x} > \mathbf{0}$.

36. Let A, B, C, and D be $n \times n$ matrices and $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Prove the following inequalities:

(a) If $A \geq B \geq O$ and $C \geq D \geq O$, then $AC \geq BD \geq O$.

(b) If $A > B$ and $\mathbf{x} \geq \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{x} \neq \mathbf{0}$, then $A\mathbf{x} > B\mathbf{x}$.

Population Growth

37. A population with two age classes has a Leslie matrix $L = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 0.6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. If the initial population vector is $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1$, $\mathbf{x}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}_3$.

38. A population with three age classes has a Leslie matrix $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0.2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. If the initial population vector is $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 4 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1$, $\mathbf{x}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}_3$.

39. A population with three age classes has a Leslie matrix $L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0.7 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. If the initial population vector is $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 100 \\ 100 \end{bmatrix}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1$, $\mathbf{x}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}_3$.

40. A population with four age classes has a Leslie matrix $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 2 & 5 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.7 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0.3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. If the initial population vector is $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 10 \\ 10 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1$, $\mathbf{x}_2$, and $\mathbf{x}_3$.

41. A certain species with two age classes of 1 year's duration has a survival probability of 80% from class 1 to class 2. Empirical evidence shows that, on average, each female gives birth to five females per year. Thus, two possible Leslie matrices are

$$L_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 \\ 0.8 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad L_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 0.8 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(a) Starting with $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$, compute $\mathbf{x}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_{10}$ in each case.

(b) For each case, plot the relative size of each age class over time (as in Figure 3.23). What do your graphs suggest?

42. Suppose the Leslie matrix for the VW beetle is $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 20 \\ 0.1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Starting with an arbitrary $\mathbf{x}_0$, determine the behavior of this population.

43. Suppose the Leslie matrix for the VW beetle is $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 20 \\ s & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Investigate the effect of varying the survival probability s of the young beetles.

CAS **44.** Woodland caribou are found primarily in the western provinces of Canada and the American northwest. The average lifespan of a female is about 14 years. The birth and survival rates for each age bracket are given in Table 3.4, which shows that caribou cows do not give birth at all during their first 2 years and give birth to about one calf per year during their middle years. The mortality rate for young calves is very high.

Table 3.4

Age (years)	Birth Rate	Survival Rate
0–2	0.0	0.3
2–4	0.4	0.7
4–6	1.8	0.9
6–8	1.8	0.9
8–10	1.8	0.9
10–12	1.6	0.6
12–14	0.6	0.0

The numbers of woodland caribou reported in Jasper National Park in Alberta in 1990 are shown in Table 3.5. Using a CAS, predict the caribou population for 1992 and 1994. Then project the population for the years 2010 and 2020. What do you conclude? (What assumptions does this model make, and how could it be improved?)

Table 3.5 Woodland Caribou Population in Jasper National Park, 1990

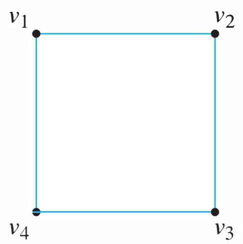
Age (years)	Number
0–2	10
2–4	2
4–6	8
6–8	5
8–10	12
10–12	0
12–14	1

Source: World Wildlife Fund Canada

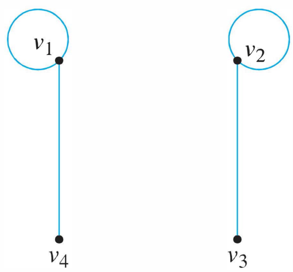
Graphs and Digraphs

In Exercises 45–48, determine the adjacency matrix of the given graph.

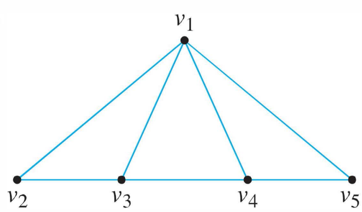
45



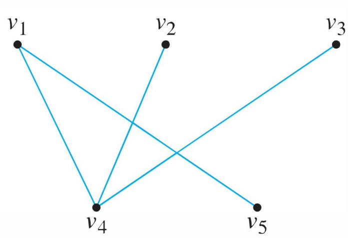
46.



47.



48.



In Exercises 49–52, draw a graph that has the given adjacency matrix.

49. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

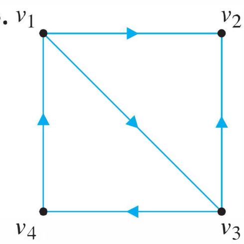
50. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

51. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

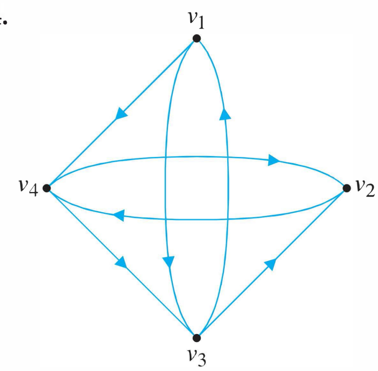
52. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 53–56, determine the adjacency matrix of the given digraph.

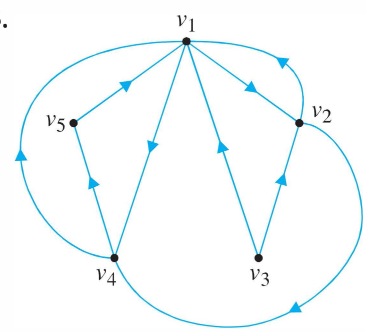
53.



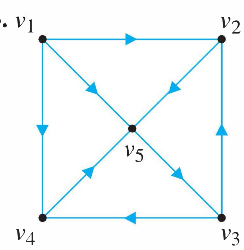
54.



55.



56.



In Exercises 57–60, draw a digraph that has the given adjacency matrix.

57. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

58. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

59. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **60.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 61–68, use powers of adjacency matrices to determine the number of paths of the specified length between the given vertices.

61. Exercise 50, length 2, v_1 and v_2

62. Exercise 52, length 2, v_1 and v_2

63. Exercise 50, length 3, v_1 and v_3

64. Exercise 52, length 4, v_2 and v_2

65. Exercise 57, length 2, v_1 to v_3

66. Exercise 57, length 3, v_4 to v_1

67. Exercise 60, length 3, v_4 to v_1

68. Exercise 60, length 4, v_1 to v_4

69. Let A be the adjacency matrix of a graph G.

(a) If row i of A is all zeros, what does this imply about G?

(b) If column j of A is all zeros, what does this imply about G?

70. Let A be the adjacency matrix of a digraph D.

(a) If row i of A^2 is all zeros, what does this imply about D?

(b) If column j of A^2 is all zeros, what does this imply about D?

71. Figure 3.29 is the digraph of a tournament with six players, P_1 to P_6. Using adjacency matrices, rank the players first by determining wins only and then by using the notion of combined wins and indirect wins, as in Example 3.69.

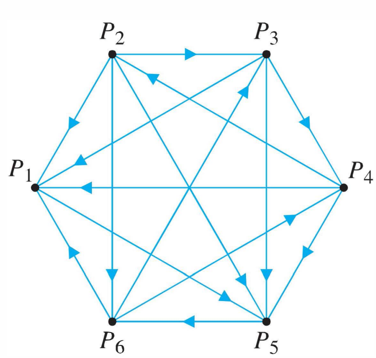


Figure 3.29

72. Figure 3.30 is a digraph representing a food web in a small ecosystem. A directed edge from a to b indicates that a has b as a source of food. Construct the adjacency matrix A for this digraph and use it to answer the following questions.

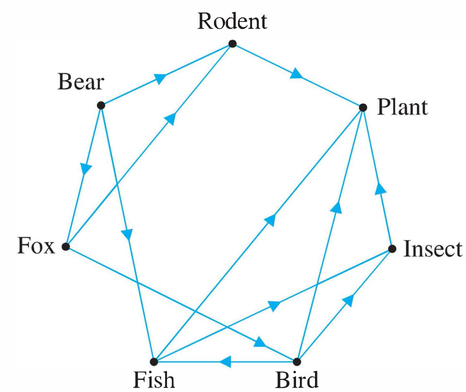


Figure 3.30

(a) Which species has the most direct sources of food? How does A show this?

(b) Which species is a direct source of food for the most other species? How does A show this?

(c) If a eats b and b eats c, we say that a has c as an indirect source of food. How can we use A to determine which species has the most indirect food sources? Which species has the most direct and indirect food sources combined?

(d) Suppose that pollutants kill the plants in this food web, and we want to determine the effect this change will have on the ecosystem. Construct a new adjacency matrix A^* from A by deleting the row and column corresponding to plants. Repeat parts (a) to (c) and determine which species are the most and least affected by the change.

(e) What will the long-term effect of the pollution be? What matrix calculations will show this?

73. Five people are all connected by e-mail. Whenever one of them hears a juicy piece of gossip, he or she passes it along by e-mailing it to someone else in the group according to Table 3.6.

(a) Draw the digraph that models this "gossip network" and find its adjacency matrix A.

Table 3.6

Sender	Recipients
Ann	Carla, Ehaz
Bert	Carla, Dana
Carla	Ehaz
Dana	Ann, Carla
Ehaz	Bert

(b) Define a *step* as the time it takes a person to e-mail everyone on his or her list. (Thus, in one step, gossip gets from Ann to both Carla and Ehaz.) If Bert hears a rumor, how many steps will it take for everyone else to hear the rumor? What matrix calculation reveals this?

(c) If Ann hears a rumor, how many steps will it take for everyone else to hear the rumor? What matrix calculation reveals this?

(d) In general, if A is the adjacency matrix of a digraph, how can we tell if vertex i is connected to vertex j by a path (of some length)?

[The gossip network in this exercise is reminiscent of the notion of "six degrees of separation" (found in the play and film by that name), which suggests that any two people are connected by a path of acquaintances whose length is at most 6. The game "Six Degrees of Kevin Bacon" more frivolously asserts that all actors are connected to the actor Kevin Bacon in such a way.]

74. Let A be the adjacency matrix of a graph G.

(a) By induction, prove that for all $n \geq 1$, the (i, j) entry of A^n is equal to the number of n-paths between vertices i and j.

(b) How do the statement and proof in part (a) have to be modified if G is a digraph?

75. If A is the adjacency matrix of a digraph G, what does the (i, j) entry of AA^T represent if $i \neq j$?

A graph is called ***bipartite*** *if its vertices can be subdivided into two sets U and V such that every edge has one endpoint in U and the other endpoint in V. For example, the graph in Exercise 48 is bipartite with* $U = \{v_1, v_2, v_3\}$ *and* $V = \{v_4, v_5\}$. *In Exercises 76–79, determine whether a graph with the given adjacency matrix is bipartite.*

76. The adjacency matrix in Exercise 49

77. The adjacency matrix in Exercise 52

78. The adjacency matrix in Exercise 51

79. $$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

80. (a) Prove that a graph is bipartite if and only if its vertices can be labeled so that its adjacency matrix can be partitioned as

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{c:c} O & B \\ \hdashline B^T & O \end{array}\right]$$

(b) Using the result in part (a), prove that a bipartite graph has no circuits of odd length.

Chapter Review

Key Definitions and Concepts

basis, 198
Basis Theorem, 202
column matrix (vector), 138
column space of a matrix, 195
composition of linear transformations, 219
coordinate vector with respect to a basis, 208
diagonal matrix, 139
dimension, 203
elementary matrix, 170
Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices, 172, 206
identity matrix, 139
inverse of a square matrix, 163
inverse of a linear transformation, 221
linear combination of matrices, 154
linear dependence/independence of matrices, 157
linear transformation, 213
LU factorization, 181
matrix, 138
matrix addition, 140
matrix factorization, 180
matrix multiplication, 141
matrix powers, 149
negative of a matrix, 140
null space of a matrix, 197
nullity of a matrix, 204
outer product, 147
partitioned matrices (block multiplication), 145, 148
permutation matrix, 187

properties of matrix algebra, 154, 158, 159, 167
rank of a matrix, 204
Rank Theorem, 205
representations of matrix products, 146–148
row matrix (vector), 138
row space of a matrix, 195
scalar matrix, 139
scalar multiple of a matrix, 140
span of a set of matrices, 156
square matrix, 139
standard matrix of a linear transformation, 216
subspace, 192
symmetric matrix, 151
transpose of a matrix, 151
zero matrix, 141

Review Questions

1. Mark each of the following statements true or false:

(a) For any matrix A, both AA^T and A^TA are defined.

(b) If A and B are matrices such that $AB = O$ and $A \neq O$, then $B = O$.

(c) If A, B, and X are invertible matrices such that $XA = B$, then $X = A^{-1}B$.

(d) The inverse of an elementary matrix is an elementary matrix.

(e) The transpose of an elementary matrix is an elementary matrix.

(f) The product of two elementary matrices is an elementary matrix.

(g) If A is an $m \times n$ matrix, then the null space of A is a subspace of $\mathbb{R}^n$.

(h) Every plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ is a two-dimensional subspace of $\mathbb{R}^3$.

(i) The transformation $T: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ defined by $T(\mathbf{x}) = -\mathbf{x}$ is a linear transformation.

(j) If $T: \mathbb{R}^4 \to \mathbb{R}^5$ is a linear transformation, then there is a 4×5 matrix A such that $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ for all $\mathbf{x}$ in the domain of T.

In Exercises 2–7, let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ *and* $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & -1 \\ 3 & -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$. *Compute the indicated matrices, if possible.*

2. A^2B **3.** A^2B^2 **4.** $B^TA^{-1}B$

5. $(BB^T)^{-1}$ **6.** $(B^TB)^{-1}$

7. The outer product expansion of AA^T

8. If A is a matrix such that $A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/2 & -1 \\ -3/2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$, find A.

9. If $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and X is a matrix such that

$$AX = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -3 \\ 5 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ find } X.$$

10. If possible, express the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$ as a product of elementary matrices.

11. If A is a square matrix such that $A^3 = O$, show that $(I - A)^{-1} = I + A + A^2$.

12. Find an LU factorization of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

13. Find bases for the row space, column space, and null space of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -4 & 5 & 8 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 & 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 4 & -8 & 3 & 2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$.

14. Suppose matrices A and B are row equivalent. Do they have the same row space? Why or why not? Do A and B have the same column space? Why or why not?

15. If A is an invertible matrix, explain why A and A^T must have the same null space. Is this true if A is a noninvertible square matrix? Explain.

16. If A is a square matrix whose rows add up to the zero vector, explain why A cannot be invertible.

17. Let A be an $m \times n$ matrix with linearly independent columns. Explain why A^TA must be an invertible matrix. Must AA^T also be invertible? Explain.

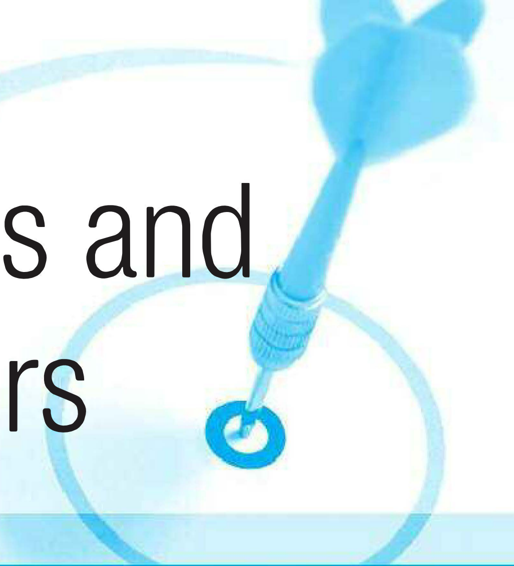
18. Find a linear transformation $T: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ such that

$$T\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } T\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

19. Find the standard matrix of the linear transformation $T: \mathbb{R}^2 \to \mathbb{R}^2$ that corresponds to a counterclockwise rotation of 45° about the origin followed by a projection onto the line $y = -2x$.

20. Suppose that $T: \mathbb{R}^n \to \mathbb{R}^n$ is a linear transformation and suppose that $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector such that $T(\mathbf{v}) \neq \mathbf{0}$ but $T^2(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{0}$ (where $T^2 = T \circ T$). Prove that $\mathbf{v}$ and $T(\mathbf{v})$ are linearly independent.

4 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors



Almost every combination of the adjectives proper, latent, characteristic, eigen *and* secular, *with the nouns* root, number *and* value, *has been used in the literature for what we call a proper value.*

—Paul R. Halmos
Finite Dimensional Vector Spaces
(2nd edition)
Van Nostrand, 1958, p. 102

4.0 Introduction: A Dynamical System on Graphs

CAS

We saw in the last chapter that iterating matrix multiplication often produces interesting results. Both Markov chains and the Leslie model of population growth exhibit steady states in certain situations. One of the goals of this chapter is to help you understand such behavior. First we will look at another iterative process, or ***dynamical system,*** that uses matrices. (In the problems that follow, you will find it helpful to use a CAS or a calculator with matrix capabilities to facilitate the computations.)

Our example involves graphs (see Section 3.7). A ***complete graph*** is any graph in which every vertex is adjacent to every other vertex. If a complete graph has n vertices, it is denoted by K_n. For example, Figure 4.1 shows a representation of K_4.

Problem 1 Pick any vector $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^4$ with nonnegative entries and label the vertices of K_4 with the components of $\mathbf{x}$, so that v_1 is labeled with x_1, and so on. Compute the adjacency matrix A of K_4 and relabel the vertices of the graph with the corresponding components of $A\mathbf{x}$. Try this for several vectors $\mathbf{x}$ and explain, in terms of the graph, how the new labels can be determined from the old labels.

Problem 2 Now *iterate* the process in Problem 1. That is, for a given choice of $\mathbf{x}$, relabel the vertices as described above and then apply A again (and again, and again) until a pattern emerges. Since components of the vectors themselves will get quite large, we will *scale* them by dividing each vector by its *largest component* after each iteration. Thus, if a computation results in the vector

$$\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

we will replace it by

$$\tfrac{1}{4}\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.5 \\ 0.25 \\ 0.25 \end{bmatrix}$$

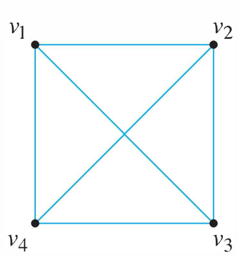


Figure 4.1
K_4

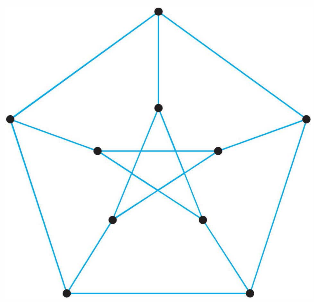


Figure 4.2

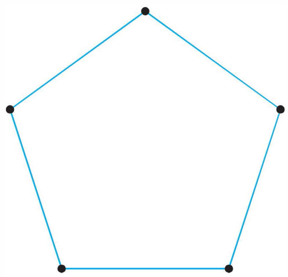


Figure 4.3

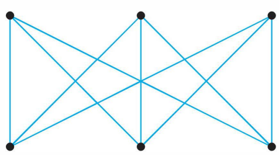


Figure 4.4

Note that this process guarantees that the largest component of each vector will now be 1. Do this for K_4, then K_3 and K_5. Use at least ten iterations and two-decimal-place accuracy. What appears to be happening?

Problem 3 You should have noticed that, in each case, the labeling vector is approaching a certain vector (a steady state label!). Label the vertices of the complete graphs with this steady state vector and apply the adjacency matrix A one more time (without scaling). What is the relationship between the new labels and the old ones?

Problem 4 Make a conjecture about the general case K_n. What is the steady state label? What happens if we label K_n with the steady state vector and apply the adjacency matrix A without scaling?

Problem 5 The ***Petersen graph*** is shown in Figure 4.2. Repeat the process in Problems 1 through 3 with this graph.

We will now explore the process with some other classes of graphs to see if they behave the same way. The ***cycle*** C_n is the graph with n vertices arranged in a cyclic fashion. For example, C_5 is the graph shown in Figure 4.3.

Problem 6 Repeat the process of Problems 1 through 3 with cycles C_n for various *odd* values of n and make a conjecture about the general case.

Problem 7 Repeat Problem 6 with *even* values of n. What happens?

A bipartite graph is a ***complete bipartite graph*** (see Exercises 74–78 in Section 3.7) if its vertices can be partitioned into sets U and V such that every vertex in U is adjacent to every vertex in V, and vice versa. If U and V each have n vertices, then the graph is denoted by $K_{n,n}$. For example, $K_{3,3}$ is the graph in Figure 4.4.

Problem 8 Repeat the process of Problems 1 through 3 with complete bipartite graphs $K_{n,n}$ for various values of n. What happens?

By the end of this chapter, you will be in a position to explain the observations you have made in this Introduction.

4.1 Introduction to Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

In Chapter 3, we encountered the notion of a steady state vector in the context of two applications: Markov chains and the Leslie model of population growth. For a Markov chain with transition matrix P, a steady state vector $\mathbf{x}$ had the property that $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$; for a Leslie matrix L, a steady state vector was a population vector $\mathbf{x}$ satisfying $L\mathbf{x} = r\mathbf{x}$, where r represented the steady state growth rate. For example, we saw that

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.7 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 18 \\ 6 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = 1.5\begin{bmatrix} 18 \\ 6 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

In this chapter, we investigate this phenomenon more generally. That is, for a square matrix A, we ask whether there exist nonzero vectors $\mathbf{x}$ such that $A\mathbf{x}$ is just a scalar multiple of $\mathbf{x}$. This is the *eigenvalue problem*, and it is one of the most central problems in linear algebra. It has applications throughout mathematics and in many other fields as well.

The German adjective *eigen* means "own" or "characteristic of." *Eigenvalues* and *eigenvectors* are characteristic of a matrix in the sense that they contain important information about the nature of the matrix. The letter λ (lambda), the Greek equivalent of the English letter L, is used for eigenvalues because at one time they were also known as *latent values*. The prefix *eigen* is pronounced "EYE-gun."

Definition Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. A scalar λ is called an ***eigenvalue*** of A if there is a nonzero vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$. Such a vector $\mathbf{x}$ is called an ***eigenvector*** of A corresponding to λ.

Example 4.1

Show that $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and find the corresponding eigenvalue.

Solution We compute

$$A\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} = 4\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = 4\mathbf{x}$$

from which it follows that $\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of A corresponding to the eigenvalue 4.

Example 4.2

Show that 5 is an eigenvalue of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and determine all eigenvectors corresponding to this eigenvalue.

Solution We must show that there is a *nonzero* vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $A\mathbf{x} = 5\mathbf{x}$. But this equation is equivalent to the equation $(A - 5I)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$, so we need to compute the null space of the matrix $A - 5I$. We find that

$$A - 5I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since the columns of this matrix are clearly linearly dependent, the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices implies that its null space is nonzero. Thus, $A\mathbf{x} = 5\mathbf{x}$ has a nontrivial solution, so 5 is an eigenvalue of A. We find its eigenvectors by computing the null space:

$$[A - 5I \mid 0] = \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} -4 & 2 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, if $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue 5, it satisfies $x_1 - \frac{1}{2}x_2 = 0$, or $x_1 = \frac{1}{2}x_2$, so these eigenvectors are of the form

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2}x_2 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

That is, they are the nonzero multiples of $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (or, equivalently, the nonzero multiples of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$).

The set of all eigenvectors corresponding to an eigenvalue λ of an $n \times n$ matrix A is just the set of *nonzero* vectors in the null space of $A - \lambda I$. It follows that this set of eigenvectors, together with the zero vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$, *is* the null space of $A - \lambda I$.

Definition Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix and let λ be an eigenvalue of A. The collection of all eigenvectors corresponding to λ, together with the zero vector, is called the ***eigenspace*** of λ and is denoted by E_λ.

Therefore, in Example 4.2, $E_5 = \left\{ t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$.

Example 4.3

Show that $\lambda = 6$ is an eigenvalue of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 1 & -2 \\ -3 & 3 & 6 \\ 2 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and find a basis for its eigenspace.

Solution As in Example 4.2, we compute the null space of $A - 6I$. Row reduction produces

$$A - 6I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 \\ -3 & -3 & 6 \\ 2 & 2 & -4 \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we see that the null space of $A - 6I$ is nonzero. Hence, 6 is an eigenvalue of A, and the eigenvectors corresponding to this eigenvalue satisfy $x_1 + x_2 - 2x_3 = 0$, or $x_1 = -x_2 + 2x_3$. It follows that

$$E_6 = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -x_2 + 2x_3 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \left\{ x_2\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + x_3\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

In $\mathbb{R}^2$, we can give a geometric interpretation of the notion of an eigenvector. The equation $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$ says that the vectors $A\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{x}$ are parallel. Thus, $\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of A if and only if A transforms $\mathbf{x}$ into a parallel vector [or, equivalently, if and only if $T_A(\mathbf{x})$ is parallel to $\mathbf{x}$, where T_A is the matrix transformation corresponding to A].

Example 4.4

Find the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ geometrically.

Solution We recognize that A is the matrix of a reflection F in the x-axis (see Example 3.56). The only vectors that F maps parallel to themselves are vectors parallel to the y-axis (i.e., multiples of $\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$), which are reversed (eigenvalue -1), and vectors parallel to the x-axis (i.e., multiples of $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$), which are sent to themselves (eigenvalue 1) (see Figure 4.5). Accordingly, $\lambda = -1$ and $\lambda = 1$ are the eigenvalues of A, and the corresponding eigenspaces are

$$E_{-1} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right) \quad \text{and} \quad E_1 = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

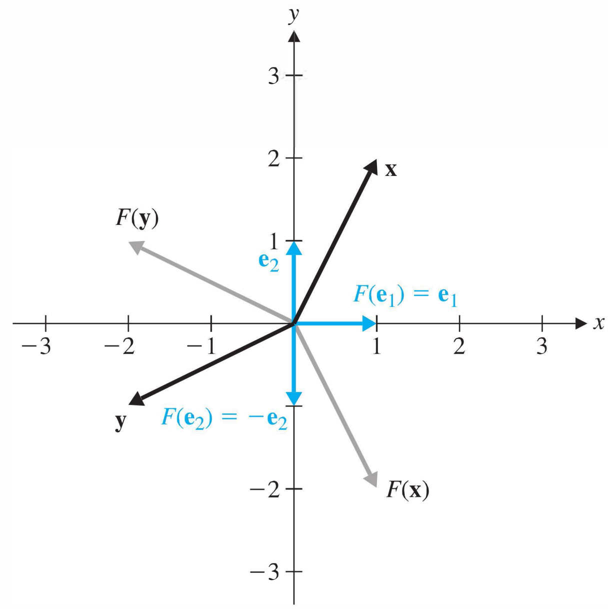


Figure 4.5
The eigenvectors of a reflection

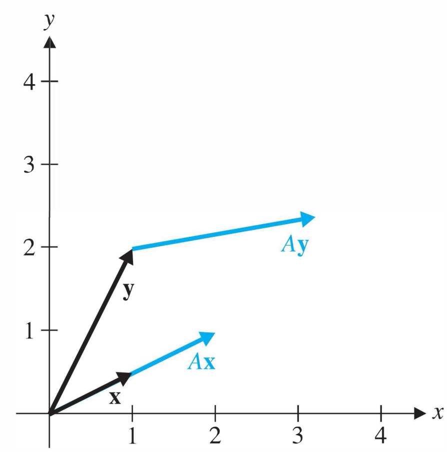
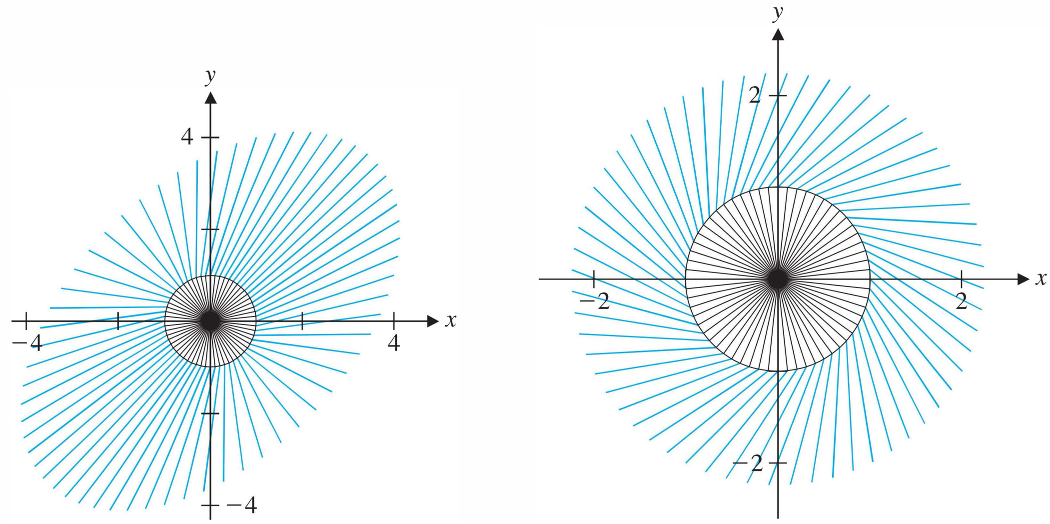


Figure 4.6

The discussion is based on the article "Eigenpictures: Picturing the Eigenvector Problem" by Steven Schonefeld in *The College Mathematics Journal 26* (1996), pp. 316–319.

Another way to think of eigenvectors geometrically is to draw $\mathbf{x}$ and $A\mathbf{x}$ head-to-tail. Then $\mathbf{x}$ will be an eigenvector of A if and only if $\mathbf{x}$ and $A\mathbf{x}$ are aligned in a straight line. In Figure 4.6, $\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of A but $\mathbf{y}$ is not.

If $\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of A corresponding to the eigenvalue λ, then so is any nonzero multiple of $\mathbf{x}$. So, if we want to search for eigenvectors geometrically, we need only consider the effect of A on *unit* vectors. Figure 4.7(a) shows what happens when we transform unit vectors with the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ of Example 4.1 and display the results head-to-tail, as in Figure 4.6. We can see that the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector, but we also notice that there appears to be an eigenvector in the second quadrant. Indeed, this is the case, and it turns out to be the vector $\begin{bmatrix} -1/\sqrt{2} \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$.



(a) (b)

Figure 4.7

In Figure 4.7(b), we see what happens when we use the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$. There are no eigenvectors at all!

We now know how to find eigenvectors once we have the corresponding eigenvalues, and we have a geometric interpretation of them—but one question remains: How do we first find the eigenvalues of a given matrix? The key is the observation that λ is an eigenvalue of A if and only if the null space of $A - \lambda I$ is nontrivial.

Recall from Section 3.3 that the determinant of a 2×2 matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ is the expression $\det A = ad - bc$, and A is invertible if and only if $\det A$ is nonzero. Furthermore, the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices guarantees that a matrix has a nontrivial null space if and only if it is noninvertible—hence, if and only if its determinant is zero. Putting these facts together, we see that (for 2×2 matrices at least) λ is an eigenvalue of A if and only if $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$. This fact characterizes eigenvalues, and we will soon generalize it to square matrices of arbitrary size. For the moment, though, let's see how to use it with 2×2 matrices.

Example 4.5

Find all of the eigenvalues and corresponding eigenvectors of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ from Example 4.1.

Solution The preceding remarks show that we must find all solutions λ of the equation $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$. Since

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = \det \begin{bmatrix} 3 - \lambda & 1 \\ 1 & 3 - \lambda \end{bmatrix} = (3 - \lambda)(3 - \lambda) - 1 = \lambda^2 - 6\lambda + 8$$

we need to solve the quadratic equation $\lambda^2 - 6\lambda + 8 = 0$. The solutions to this equation are easily found to be $\lambda = 4$ and $\lambda = 2$. These are therefore the eigenvalues of A.

To find the eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda = 4$, we compute the null space of $A - 4I$. We find

$$[A - 4I \,|\, \mathbf{0}] = \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

from which it follows that $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda = 4$ if and only if $x_1 - x_2 = 0$ or $x_1 = x_2$. Hence, the eigenspace $E_4 = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}\right\} = \left\{x_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

Similarly, for $\lambda = 2$, we have

$$[A - 2I \,|\, 0] = \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \rightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rr|r} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

so $\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda = 2$ if and only if $y_1 + y_2 = 0$ or $y_1 = -y_2$. Thus, the eigenspace $E_2 = \left\{\begin{bmatrix} -y_2 \\ y_2 \end{bmatrix}\right\} = \left\{y_2\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$.

Figure 4.8 shows graphically how the eigenvectors of A are transformed when multiplied by A: an eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$ in the eigenspace E_4 is transformed into $4\mathbf{x}$, and an eigenvector $\mathbf{y}$ in the eigenspace E_2 is transformed into $2\mathbf{y}$. As Figure 4.7(a) shows, the eigenvectors of A are the *only* vectors in $\mathbb{R}^2$ that are transformed into scalar multiples of themselves when multiplied by A.

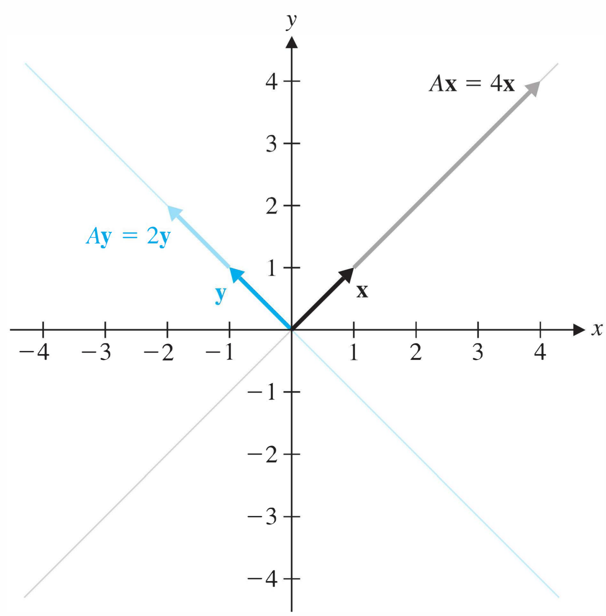


Figure 4.8
How A transforms eigenvectors

Remark You will recall that a polynomial equation with real coefficients (such as the quadratic equation in Example 4.5) need not have real roots; it may have *complex* roots. (See Appendix C.) It is also possible to compute eigenvalues and eigenvectors when the entries of a matrix come from $\mathbb{Z}_p$, where p is prime. Thus, it is important to specify the setting we intend to work in before we set out to compute the eigenvalues of a matrix. However, unless otherwise specified, the eigenvalues of a matrix whose entries are *real* numbers will be assumed to be real as well.

Example 4.6

Interpret the matrix in Example 4.5 as a matrix over $\mathbb{Z}_3$ and find its eigenvalues in that field.

Solution The solution proceeds exactly as above, except we work modulo 3. Hence, the quadratic equation $\lambda^2 - 6\lambda + 8 = 0$ becomes $\lambda^2 + 2 = 0$. This equation is the same as $\lambda^2 = -2 = 1$, giving $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = -1 = 2$ as the eigenvalues in $\mathbb{Z}_3$. (Check that the same answer would be obtained by *first* reducing A modulo 3 to obtain $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and then working with this matrix.)

Example 4.7

Find the eigenvalues of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (a) over $\mathbb{R}$ and (b) over the complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$.

Solution We must solve the equation

$$0 = \det(A - \lambda I) = \det\begin{bmatrix} -\lambda & -1 \\ 1 & -\lambda \end{bmatrix} = \lambda^2 + 1$$

a + bi

(a) Over $\mathbb{R}$, there are no solutions, so A has no real eigenvalues.

(b) Over $\mathbb{C}$, the solutions are $\lambda = i$ and $\lambda = -i$. (See Appendix C.)

In the next section, we will extend the notion of determinant from 2×2 to $n \times n$ matrices, which in turn will allow us to find the eigenvalues of arbitrary square matrices. (In fact, this isn't quite true—but we will at least be able to find a polynomial equation that the eigenvalues of a given matrix must satisfy.)

Exercises 4.1

In Exercises 1–6, show that $\mathbf{v}$ *is an eigenvector of* A *and find the corresponding eigenvalue.*

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 5 & -7 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7–12, show that λ is an eigenvalue of A and find one eigenvector corresponding to this eigenvalue.

7. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = 3$

8. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = -1$

9. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 \\ -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = 1$

10. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -2 \\ 5 & -7 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = -6$

11. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = -1$

12. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \lambda = 2$

In Exercises 13–18, find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of A geometrically.

13. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ (reflection in the y-axis)

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (reflection in the line $y = x$)

15. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (projection onto the x-axis)

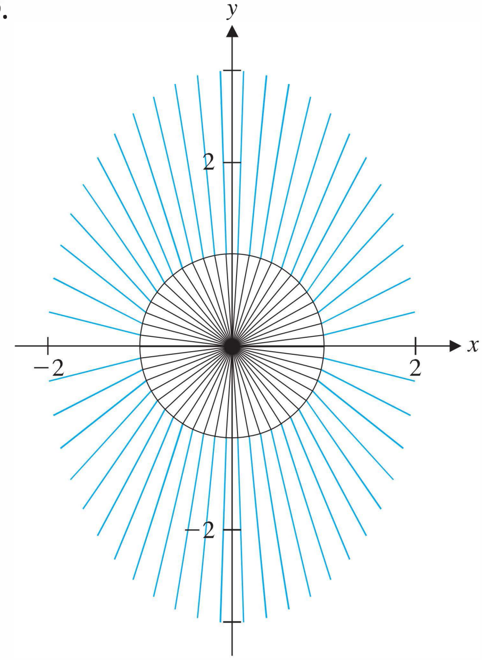
16. $A = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{16}{25} & \frac{12}{25} \\ \frac{12}{25} & \frac{9}{25} \end{bmatrix}$ (projection onto the line through the origin with direction vector $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} \end{bmatrix}$)

17. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ (stretching by a factor of 2 horizontally and a factor of 3 vertically)

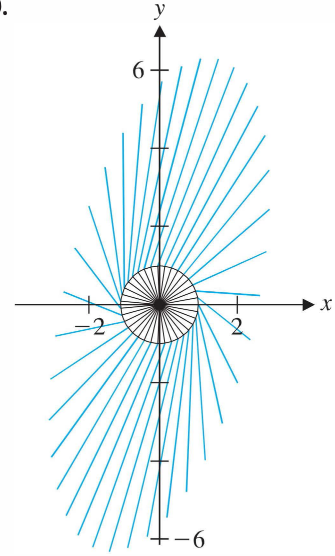
18. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (counterclockwise rotation of 90° about the origin)

In Exercises 19–22, the unit vectors $\mathbf{x}$ *in* $\mathbb{R}^2$ *and their images* $A\mathbf{x}$ *under the action of a* 2×2 *matrix A are drawn head-to-tail, as in Figure 4.7. Estimate the eigenvectors and eigenvalues of A from each "eigenpicture."*

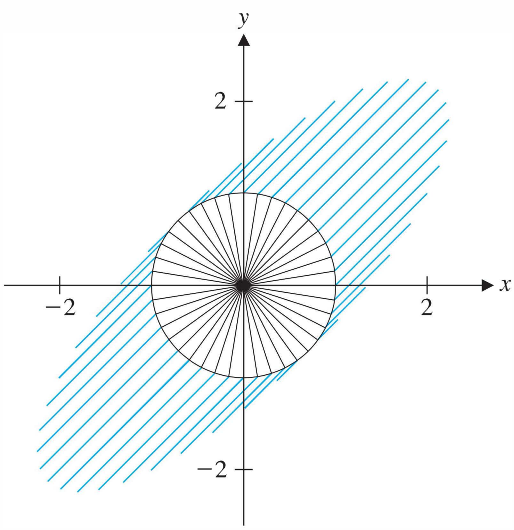
19.



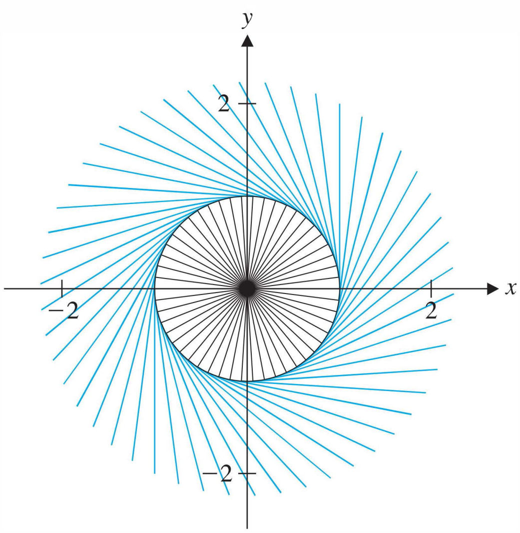
20.



21.



22.



In Exercises 23–26, use the method of Example 4.5 to find all of the eigenvalues of the matrix A. Give bases for each of the corresponding eigenspaces. Illustrate the eigenspaces and the effect of multiplying eigenvectors by A as in Figure 4.8.

23. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **24.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 6 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

25. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 5 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ **26.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

a + bi

In Exercises 27–30, find all of the eigenvalues of the matrix A over the complex numbers $\mathbb{C}$. Give bases for each of the corresponding eigenspaces.

27. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **28.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

29. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & i \\ i & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **30.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1+i \\ 1-i & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 31–34, find all of the eigenvalues of the matrix A over the indicated $\mathbb{Z}_p$.

31. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$ **32.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_3$

33. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$ **34.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 4 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ over $\mathbb{Z}_5$

35. **(a)** Show that the eigenvalues of the 2×2 matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$$

are the solutions of the quadratic equation $\lambda^2 - \operatorname{tr}(A)\lambda + \det A = 0$, where $\operatorname{tr}(A)$ is the trace of A. (See page 162.)

(b) Show that the eigenvalues of the matrix A in part (a) are

$$\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}\left(a + d \pm \sqrt{(a-d)^2 + 4bc}\right)$$

(c) Show that the trace and determinant of the matrix A in part (a) are given by

$$\operatorname{tr}(A) = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 \quad \text{and} \quad \det A = \lambda_1\lambda_2$$

where λ_1 and λ_2 are the eigenvalues of A.

36. Consider again the matrix A in Exercise 35. Give conditions on a, b, c, and d such that A has

(a) two distinct real eigenvalues,
(b) one real eigenvalue, and
(c) no real eigenvalues.

37. Show that the eigenvalues of the upper triangular matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 0 & d \end{bmatrix}$$

are $\lambda = a$ and $\lambda = d$, and find the corresponding eigenspaces.

a + bi **38.** Let a and b be real numbers. Find the eigenvalues and corresponding eigenspaces of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{bmatrix}$$

over the complex numbers.

4.2 Determinants

Historically, determinants preceded matrices—a curious fact in light of the way linear algebra is taught today, with matrices before determinants. Nevertheless, determinants arose independently of matrices in the solution of many practical problems, and the theory of determinants was well developed almost two centuries before matrices were deemed worthy of study in and of themselves. A snapshot of the history of determinants is presented at the end of this section.

Recall that the determinant of the 2×2 matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ is

$$\det A = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$$

We first encountered this expression when we determined ways to compute the inverse of a matrix. In particular, we found that

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \frac{1}{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}} \begin{bmatrix} a_{22} & -a_{12} \\ -a_{21} & a_{11} \end{bmatrix}$$

The determinant of a matrix A is sometimes also denoted by $|A|$, so for the 2×2 matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ we may also write

$$|A| = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix} = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{12}a_{21}$$

Warning This notation for the determinant is reminiscent of absolute value notation. It is easy to mistake $\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{vmatrix}$, the notation for determinant, for $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$, the notation for the matrix itself. Do not confuse these. Fortunately, it will usually be clear from the context which is intended.

We define the determinant of a 1×1 matrix $A = [a]$ to be

$$\det A = |a| = a$$

(Note that we really have to be careful with notation here: $|a|$ does *not* denote the absolute value of a in this case.) How then should we define the determinant of a 3×3 matrix? If you ask your CAS for the inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{bmatrix}$$

the answer will be equivalent to

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\Delta} \begin{bmatrix} ei - fh & ch - bi & bf - ce \\ fg - di & ai - cg & cd - af \\ dh - eg & bg - ah & ae - bd \end{bmatrix}$$

where $\Delta = aei - afh - bdi + bfg + cdh - ceg$. Observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta &= aei - afh - bdi + bfg + cdh - ceg \\ &= a(ei - fh) - b(di - fg) + c(dh - eg) \\ &= a\begin{vmatrix} e & f \\ h & i \end{vmatrix} - b\begin{vmatrix} d & f \\ g & i \end{vmatrix} + c\begin{vmatrix} d & e \\ g & h \end{vmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

and that each of the entries in the matrix portion of A^{-1} appears to be the determinant of a 2×2 submatrix of A. In fact, this is true, and it is the basis of the definition of the determinant of a 3×3 matrix. The definition is *recursive* in the sense that the determinant of a 3×3 matrix is defined in terms of determinants of 2×2 matrices.

Definition Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$. Then the ***determinant*** of A is the scalar

$$\det A = |A| = a_{11}\begin{vmatrix} a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} - a_{12}\begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix} + a_{13}\begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{vmatrix} \tag{1}$$

Notice that each of the 2×2 determinants is obtained by deleting the row and column of A that contain the entry the determinant is being multiplied by. For example, the first summand is a_{11} multiplied by the determinant of the submatrix obtained by deleting row 1 and column 1. Notice also that the plus and minus signs alternate in Equation (1). If we denote by A_{ij} the submatrix of a matrix A obtained by deleting row i and column j, then we may abbreviate Equation (1) as

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= a_{11} \det A_{11} - a_{12} \det A_{12} + a_{13} \det A_{13} \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{3} (-1)^{1+j} a_{1j} \det A_{1j} \end{aligned}$$

For any square matrix A, $\det A_{ij}$ is called the ***(i, j)-minor*** of A.

Example 4.8 Compute the determinant of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -3 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= 5\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - (-3)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} + 2\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 5(0 - (-2)) + 3(3 - 4) + 2(-1 - 0) \\ &= 5(2) + 3(-1) + 2(-1) = 5 \end{aligned}$$

With a little practice, you should find that you can easily work out 2×2 determinants in your head. Writing out the second line in the above solution is then unnecessary.

Another method for calculating the determinant of a 3×3 matrix is analogous to the method for calculating the determinant of a 2×2 matrix. Copy the first two columns of A to the right of the matrix and take the products of the elements on the six diagonals shown below. Attach plus signs to the products from the downward-sloping diagonals and attach minus signs to the products from the upward-sloping diagonals.

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & & - \quad - & - \\
\left[\begin{array}{ccc} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{array}\right. & & & \left.\begin{array}{cc} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{array}\right. & \\
 & & & + \quad + & +
\end{array}
\qquad (2)
$$

This method gives

$$a_{11}a_{22}a_{33} + a_{12}a_{23}a_{31} + a_{13}a_{21}a_{32} - a_{31}a_{22}a_{13} - a_{32}a_{23}a_{11} - a_{33}a_{21}a_{12}$$

In Exercise 19, you are asked to check that this result agrees with that from Equation (1) for a 3×3 determinant.

Example 4.9 Calculate the determinant of the matrix in Example 4.8 using the method shown in (2).

Solution We adjoin to A its first two columns and compute the six indicated products:

$$
\begin{array}{cccccc}
 & & & 0 & -10 & -9 \\
\left[\begin{array}{ccc} 5 & -3 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \end{array}\right] & & & \begin{array}{cc} 5 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 \end{array} & & \\
 & & & 0 & -12 & -2
\end{array}
$$

Adding the three products at the bottom and subtracting the three products at the top gives

$$\det A = 0 + (-12) + (-2) - 0 - (-10) - (-9) = 5$$

as before.

Warning We are about to define determinants for arbitrary square matrices. However, there is *no* analogue of the method in Example 4.9 for larger matrices. It is valid *only* for 3×3 matrices.

Determinants of $n \times n$ Matrices

The definition of the determinant of a 3×3 matrix extends naturally to arbitrary square matrices.

Definition Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be an $n \times n$ matrix, where $n \geq 2$. Then the ***determinant*** of A is the scalar

$$
\begin{aligned}
\det A = |A| &= a_{11} \det A_{11} - a_{12} \det A_{12} + \cdots + (-1)^{1+n} a_{1n} \det A_{1n} \\
&= \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} a_{1j} \det A_{1j}
\end{aligned}
\qquad (3)
$$

It is convenient to combine a minor with its plus or minus sign. To this end, we define the ***(i, j)*-cofactor of *A*** to be

$$C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} \det A_{ij}$$

With this notation, definition (3) becomes

$$\det A = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{1j} C_{1j} \tag{4}$$

Exercise 20 asks you to check that this definition correctly gives the formula for the determinant of a 2×2 matrix when $n = 2$.

Definition (4) is often referred to as ***cofactor expansion along the first row***. It is an amazing fact that we get exactly the same result by expanding along *any* row (or even *any column*)! We summarize this fact as a theorem but defer the proof until the end of this section (since it is somewhat lengthy and would interrupt our discussion if we were to present it here).

Theorem 4.1 **The Laplace Expansion Theorem**

The determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$, where $n \geq 2$, can be computed as

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= a_{i1}C_{i1} + a_{i2}C_{i2} + \cdots + a_{in}C_{in} \\ &= \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}C_{ij} \end{aligned} \tag{5}$$

(which is the ***cofactor expansion along the* i*th row***) and also as

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= a_{1j}C_{1j} + a_{2j}C_{2j} + \cdots + a_{nj}C_{nj} \\ &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_{ij}C_{ij} \end{aligned} \tag{6}$$

(the ***cofactor expansion along the* j*th column***).

Since $C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} \det A_{ij}$, each cofactor is plus or minus the corresponding minor, with the correct sign given by the term $(-1)^{i+j}$. A quick way to determine whether the sign is $+$ or $-$ is to remember that the signs form a "checkerboard" pattern:

$$\begin{bmatrix} + & - & + & - & \cdots \\ - & + & - & + & \cdots \\ + & - & + & - & \cdots \\ - & + & - & + & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 4.10

Compute the determinant of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -3 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

by (a) cofactor expansion along the third row and (b) cofactor expansion along the second column.

Solution

(a) We compute

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= a_{31}C_{31} + a_{32}C_{32} + a_{33}C_{33} \\ &= 2\begin{vmatrix} -3 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 \end{vmatrix} - (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} + 3\begin{vmatrix} 5 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 2(-6) + 8 + 3(3) \\ &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

(b) In this case, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= a_{12}C_{12} + a_{22}C_{22} + a_{32}C_{32} \\ &= -(-3)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} + 0\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - (-1)\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= 3(-1) + 0 + 8 \\ &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

Pierre Simon Laplace (1749–1827) was born in Normandy, France, and was expected to become a clergyman until his mathematical talents were noticed at school. He made many important contributions to calculus, probability, and astronomy. He was an examiner of the young Napoleon Bonaparte at the Royal Artillery Corps and later, when Napoleon was in power, served briefly as Minister of the Interior and then Chancellor of the Senate. Laplace was granted the title of Count of the Empire in 1806 and received the title of Marquis de Laplace in 1817.

Notice that in part (b) of Example 4.10 we needed to do fewer calculations than in part (a) because we were expanding along a column that contained a zero entry—namely, a_{22}; therefore, we did not need to compute C_{22}. It follows that the Laplace Expansion Theorem is most useful when the matrix contains a row or column with lots of zeros, since, by choosing to expand along that row or column, we minimize the number of cofactors we need to compute.

Example 4.11

Compute the determinant of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 0 & 1 \\ 5 & 4 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution First, notice that column 3 has only one nonzero entry; we should therefore expand along this column. Next, note that the +/− pattern assigns a minus sign to the entry $a_{23} = 2$. Thus, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\det A &= a_{13}C_{13} + a_{23}C_{23} + a_{33}C_{33} + a_{43}C_{43} \\ &= 0(C_{13}) + 2C_{23} + 0(C_{33}) + 0(C_{43}) \\ &= -2\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

We now continue by expanding along the third row of the determinant above (the third column would also be a good choice) to get

$$\begin{aligned}\det A &= -2\left(-2\begin{vmatrix} -3 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix}\right) \\ &= -2(-2(-8) - 5) \\ &= -2(11) = -22\end{aligned}$$

(Note that the $+/-$ pattern for the 3×3 minor is not that of the original matrix but that of a 3×3 matrix in general.)

The Laplace expansion is particularly useful when the matrix is (upper or lower) triangular.

Example 4.12

Compute the determinant of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 1 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 3 & 2 & 5 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We expand along the first column to get

$$\det A = 2\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 2 & 5 & 7 \\ 0 & 1 & 6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

(We have omitted all cofactors corresponding to zero entries.) Now we expand along the first column again:

$$\det A = 2 \cdot 3\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 6 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

Continuing to expand along the first column, we complete the calculation:

$$\det A = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 1\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 1 \cdot (5(-1) - 2 \cdot 0) = 2 \cdot 3 \cdot 1 \cdot 5 \cdot (-1) = -30$$

Example 4.12 should convince you that the determinant of a triangular matrix is the product of its diagonal entries. You are asked to give a proof of this fact in Exercise 21. We record the result as a theorem.

Theorem 4.2 The determinant of a triangular matrix is the product of the entries on its main diagonal. Specifically, if $A = [a_{ij}]$ is an $n \times n$ triangular matrix, then

$$\det A = a_{11}a_{22}\cdots a_{nn}$$

Note In general (that is, unless the matrix is triangular or has some other special form), computing a determinant by cofactor expansion is not efficient. For example, the determinant of a 3×3 matrix has $6 = 3!$ summands, each requiring two multiplications, and then five additions and subtractions are needed to finish off the calculations. For an $n \times n$ matrix, there will be $n!$ summands, each with $n - 1$ multiplications, and then $n! - 1$ additions and subtractions. The total number of operations is thus

$$T(n) = (n - 1)n! + n! - 1 > n!$$

Even the fastest of supercomputers cannot calculate the determinant of a moderately large matrix using cofactor expansion. To illustrate: Suppose we needed to calculate a 50×50 determinant. (Matrices *much* larger than 50×50 are used to store the data from digital images such as those transmitted over the Internet or taken by a digital camera.) To calculate the determinant directly would require, in general, more than 50! operations, and $50! \approx 3 \times 10^{64}$. If we had a computer that could perform a trillion (10^{12}) operations per second, it would take approximately 3×10^{52} seconds, or almost 10^{45} years, to finish the calculations. To put this in perspective, consider that astronomers estimate the age of the universe to be at least 10 billion (10^{10}) years. Thus, on even a very fast supercomputer, calculating a 50×50 determinant by cofactor expansion would take more than 10^{30} times the age of the universe!

Fortunately, there are better methods—and we now turn to developing more computationally effective means of finding determinants. First, we need to look at some of the properties of determinants.

Properties of Determinants

The most efficient way to compute determinants is to use row reduction. However, not every elementary row operation leaves the determinant of a matrix unchanged. The next theorem summarizes the main properties you need to understand in order to use row reduction effectively.

Theorem 4.3 Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be a square matrix.

a. If A has a zero row (column), then $\det A = 0$.
b. If B is obtained by interchanging two rows (columns) of A, then $\det B = -\det A$.
c. If A has two identical rows (columns), then $\det A = 0$.
d. If B is obtained by multiplying a row (column) of A by k, then $\det B = k \det A$.
e. If A, B, and C are identical except that the ith row (column) of C is the sum of the ith rows (columns) of A and B, then $\det C = \det A + \det B$.
f. If B is obtained by adding a multiple of one row (column) of A to another row (column), then $\det B = \det A$.

Proof We will prove (b) as Lemma 4.14 at the end of this section. The proofs of properties (a) and (f) are left as exercises. We will prove the remaining properties in terms of rows; the corresponding proofs for columns are analogous.

(c) If A has two identical rows, swap them to obtain the matrix B. Clearly, $B = A$, so $\det B = \det A$. On the other hand, by (b), $\det B = -\det A$. Therefore, $\det A = -\det A$, so $\det A = 0$.

(d) Suppose row i of A is multiplied by k to produce B; that is, $b_{ij} = ka_{ij}$ for $j = 1, \ldots, n$. Since the cofactors C_{ij} of the elements in the ith rows of A and B are identical (why?), expanding along the ith row of B gives

$$\det B = \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{ij}C_{ij} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} ka_{ij}C_{ij} = k\sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}C_{ij} = k \det A$$

(e) As in (d), the cofactors C_{ij} of the elements in the ith rows of A, B, and C are identical. Moreover, $c_{ij} = a_{ij} + b_{ij}$ for $j = 1, \ldots, n$. We expand along the ith row of C to obtain

$$\det C = \sum_{j=1}^{n} c_{ij}C_{ij} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (a_{ij} + b_{ij})C_{ij} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}C_{ij} + \sum_{j=1}^{n} b_{ij}C_{ij} = \det A + \det B$$

Notice that properties (b), (d), and (f) are related to elementary row operations. Since the echelon form of a square matrix is necessarily upper triangular, we can combine these properties with Theorem 2 to calculate determinants efficiently. (See Exploration: Counting Operations in Chapter 2, which shows that row reduction of an $n \times n$ matrix uses on the order of n^3 operations, far fewer than the $n!$ needed for cofactor expansion.) The next examples illustrate the computation of determinants using row reduction.

Example 4.13

Compute $\det A$ if

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 & 3 \\ -4 & -6 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 & 6 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 7 \\ 5 & -1 & -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution

(a) Using property (f) and then property (a), we have

$$\det A = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 & 3 \\ -4 & -6 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \overset{R_3+2R_1}{=} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

(b) We reduce A to echelon form as follows (there are other possible ways to do this):

$$\det A = \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 & 6 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 7 \\ 5 & -1 & -3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \overset{R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2}{=} -\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 0 & -3 & 6 \\ 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 7 \\ 5 & -1 & -3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \overset{R_1/3}{=} -3\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 2 & 4 & 5 & 7 \\ 5 & -1 & -3 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\overset{\substack{R_3-2R_1 \\ R_4-5R_1}}{=} -3\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \\ 0 & 4 & 7 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -9 \end{vmatrix} \overset{R_2 \leftrightarrow R_4}{=} -(-3)\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -9 \\ 0 & 4 & 7 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & -4 & 5 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\overset{\substack{R_3+4R_2 \\ R_4+2R_2}}{=} 3\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 2 & -9 \\ 0 & 0 & 15 & -33 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -13 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 3 \cdot 1 \cdot (-1) \cdot 15 \cdot (-13) = 585$$

Remark By Theorem 4.3, we can also use elementary column operations in the process of computing determinants, and we can "mix and match" elementary row and column operations. For example, in Example 4.13(a), we could have started by adding column 3 to column 1 to create a leading 1 in the upper left-hand corner. In fact, the method we used was faster, but in other examples column operations may speed up the calculations. Keep this in mind when you work determinants by hand.

Determinants of Elementary Matrices

Recall from Section 3.3 that an elementary matrix results from performing an elementary row operation on an identity matrix. Setting $A = I_n$ in Theorem 4.3 yields the following theorem.

Theorem 4.4 Let E be an $n \times n$ elementary matrix.

a. If E results from interchanging two rows of I_n, then $\det E = -1$.
b. If E results from multiplying one row of I_n by k, then $\det E = k$.
c. If E results from adding a multiple of one row of I_n to another row, then $\det E = 1$.

The word *lemma* is derived from the Greek verb *lambanein*, which means "to grasp." In mathematics, a lemma is a "helper theorem" that we "grasp hold of" and use to prove another, usually more important, theorem.

Proof Since $\det I_n = 1$, applying (b), (d), and (f) of Theorem 4.3 immediately gives (a), (b), and (c), respectively, of Theorem 4.4.

Next, recall that multiplying a matrix B by an elementary matrix *on the left* performs the corresponding elementary row operation on B. We can therefore rephrase (b), (d), and (f) of Theorem 4.3 succinctly as the following lemma, the proof of which is straightforward and is left as Exercise 43.

Lemma 4.5 Let B be an $n \times n$ matrix and let E be an $n \times n$ elementary matrix. Then

$$\det(EB) = (\det E)(\det B)$$

We can use Lemma 4.5 to prove the main theorem of this section: a characterization of invertibility in terms of determinants.

Theorem 4.6 A square matrix A is invertible if and only if $\det A \neq 0$.

Proof Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix and let R be the reduced row echelon form of A. We will show first that $\det A \neq 0$ if and only if $\det R \neq 0$. Let $E_1, E_2, \ldots, E_r$ be the elementary matrices corresponding to the elementary row operations that reduce A to R. Then

$$E_r \cdots E_2 E_1 A = R$$

Taking determinants of both sides and repeatedly applying Lemma 4.5, we obtain

$$(\det E_r) \cdots (\det E_2)(\det E_1)(\det A) = \det R$$

By Theorem 4.4, the determinants of all the elementary matrices are nonzero. We conclude that $\det A \neq 0$ if and only if $\det R \neq 0$.

Now suppose that A is invertible. Then, by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices, $R = I_n$, so $\det R = 1 \neq 0$. Hence, $\det A \neq 0$ also. Conversely, if $\det A \neq 0$, then $\det R \neq 0$, so R cannot contain a zero row, by Theorem 4.3(a). It follows that R must be I_n (why?), so A is invertible, by the Fundamental Theorem again.

Determinants and Matrix Operations

Let's now try to determine what relationship, if any, exists between determinants and some of the basic matrix operations. Specifically, we would like to find formulas for $\det(kA)$, $\det(A + B)$, $\det(AB)$, $\det(A^{-1})$, and $\det(A^T)$ in terms of $\det A$ and $\det B$.

Theorem 4.3(d) does *not* say that $\det(kA) = k \det A$. The correct relationship between scalar multiplication and determinants is given by the following theorem.

Theorem 4.7 If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, then

$$\det(kA) = k^n \det A$$

You are asked to give a proof of this theorem in Exercise 44.

Unfortunately, there is no simple formula for $\det(A + B)$, and in general, $\det(A + B) \neq \det A + \det B$. (Find two 2×2 matrices that verify this.) It therefore comes as a pleasant surprise to find out that determinants are quite compatible with matrix multiplication. Indeed, we have the following nice formula due to Cauchy.

Augustin Louis Cauchy (1789–1857) was born in Paris and studied engineering but switched to mathematics because of poor health. A brilliant and prolific mathematician, he published over 700 papers, many on quite difficult problems. His name can be found on many theorems and definitions in differential equations, infinite series, probability theory, algebra, and physics. He is noted for introducing rigor into calculus, laying the foundation for the branch of mathematics known as analysis. Politically conservative, Cauchy was a royalist, and in 1830 he followed Charles X into exile. He returned to France in 1838 but did not return to his post at the Sorbonne until the university dropped its requirement that faculty swear an oath of loyalty to the new king.

Theorem 4.8 If A and B are $n \times n$ matrices, then

$$\det(AB) = (\det A)(\det B)$$

Proof We consider two cases: A invertible and A not invertible.

If A is invertible, then, by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices, it can be written as a product of elementary matrices—say,

$$A = E_1E_2\cdots E_k$$

Then $AB = E_1E_2\cdots E_kB$, so k applications of Lemma 4.5 give

$$\det(AB) = \det(E_1E_2\cdots E_kB) = (\det E_1)(\det E_2)\cdots(\det E_k)(\det B)$$

Continuing to apply Lemma 4.5, we obtain

$$\det(AB) = \det(E_1E_2\cdots E_k)\det B = (\det A)(\det B)$$

On the other hand, if A is not invertible, then neither is AB, by Exercise 47 in Section 3.3. Thus, by Theorem 4.6, $\det A = 0$ and $\det(AB) = 0$. Consequently, $\det(AB) = (\det A)(\det B)$, since both sides are zero.

Example 4.14 Applying Theorem 4.8 to $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, we find that

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 3 \\ 16 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

and that $\det A = 4$, $\det B = 3$, and $\det(AB) = 12 = 4 \cdot 3 = (\det A)(\det B)$, as claimed. (Check these assertions!)

The next theorem gives a nice relationship between the determinant of an invertible matrix and the determinant of its inverse.

Theorem 4.9 If A is invertible, then

$$\det(A^{-1}) = \frac{1}{\det A}$$

Proof Since A is invertible, $AA^{-1} = I$, so $\det(AA^{-1}) = \det I = 1$. Hence, $(\det A)(\det A^{-1}) = 1$, by Theorem 4.8, and since $\det A \neq 0$ (why?), dividing by $\det A$ yields the result.

Example 4.15 Verify Theorem 4.9 for the matrix A of Example 4.14.

Solution We compute

$$A^{-1} = \tfrac{1}{4}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{3}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

so

$$\det A^{-1} = \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) - \left(-\frac{1}{4}\right)\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{3}{8} - \frac{1}{8} = \frac{1}{4} = \frac{1}{\det A}$$

Remark The beauty of Theorem 4.9 is that sometimes we do not need to know *what* the inverse of a matrix is, but only that it *exists*, or to know what its determinant is. For the matrix A in the last two examples, once we know that $\det A = 4 \neq 0$, we immediately can deduce that A is invertible and that $\det A^{-1} = \frac{1}{4}$ without actually computing A^{-1}.

We now relate the determinant of a matrix A to that of its transpose A^T. Since the rows of A^T are just the columns of A, evaluating $\det A^T$ by expanding along the first row is identical to evaluating $\det A$ by expanding along its first column, which the Laplace Expansion Theorem allows us to do. Thus, we have the following result.

Theorem 4.10 For any square matrix A,

$$\det A = \det A^T$$

Cramer's Rule and the Adjoint

Gabriel Cramer (1704–1752) was a Swiss mathematician. The rule that bears his name was published in 1750, in his treatise *Introduction to the Analysis of Algebraic Curves*. As early as 1730, however, special cases of the formula were known to other mathematicians, including the Scotsman Colin Maclaurin (1698–1746), perhaps the greatest of the British mathematicians who were the "successors of Newton."

In this section, we derive two useful formulas relating determinants to the solution of linear systems and the inverse of a matrix. The first of these, ***Cramer's Rule,*** gives a formula for describing the solution of certain systems of n linear equations in n variables entirely in terms of determinants. While this result is of little practical use beyond 2×2 systems, it is of great theoretical importance.

We will need some new notation for this result and its proof. For an $n \times n$ matrix A and a vector $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$, let $A_i(\mathbf{b})$ denote the matrix obtained by replacing the ith column of A by $\mathbf{b}$. That is,

$$A_i(\mathbf{b}) = [\mathbf{a}_1 \cdots \underset{\substack{\uparrow \\ \text{Column } i}}{\mathbf{b}} \cdots \mathbf{a}_n]$$

Theorem 1.11 **Cramer's Rule**

Let A be an invertible $n \times n$ matrix and let $\mathbf{b}$ be a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then the unique solution $\mathbf{x}$ of the system $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ is given by

$$x_i = \frac{\det(A_i(\mathbf{b}))}{\det A} \quad \text{for } i = 1, \ldots, n$$

Proof The columns of the identity matrix $I = I_n$ are the standard unit vectors $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n$. If $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$, then

$$\begin{aligned} AI_i(\mathbf{x}) &= A[\mathbf{e}_1 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{x} \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{e}_n] = [A\mathbf{e}_1 \quad \cdots \quad A\mathbf{x} \quad \cdots \quad A\mathbf{e}_n] \\ &= [\mathbf{a}_1 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{b} \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{a}_n] = A_i(\mathbf{b}) \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, by Theorem 4.8,

$$(\det A)(\det I_i(\mathbf{x})) = \det(AI_i(\mathbf{x})) = \det(A_i(\mathbf{b}))$$

Now

$$\det I_i(\mathbf{x}) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & x_1 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & x_2 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & x_i & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & x_{n-1} & \cdots & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & x_n & \cdots & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = x_i$$

as can be seen by expanding along the ith row. Thus, $(\det A)x_i = \det(A_i(\mathbf{b}))$, and the result follows by dividing by $\det A$ (which is nonzero, since A is invertible).

Example 4.16

Use Cramer's Rule to solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 + 2x_2 &= 2 \\ -x_1 + 4x_2 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Solution We compute

$$\det A = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 6, \quad \det(A_1(\mathbf{b})) = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 6, \quad \text{and} \quad \det(A_2(\mathbf{b})) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$
$$= 3$$

By Cramer's Rule,

$$x_1 = \frac{\det(A_1(\mathbf{b}))}{\det A} = \frac{6}{6} = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad x_2 = \frac{\det(A_2(\mathbf{b}))}{\det A} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Remark As noted previously, Cramer's Rule is computationally inefficient for all but small systems of linear equations because it involves the calculation of many determinants. The effort expended to compute just one of these determinants, using even the most efficient method, would be better spent using Gaussian elimination to solve the system directly.

The final result of this section is a formula for the inverse of a matrix in terms of determinants. This formula was hinted at by the formula for the inverse of a 3×3 matrix, which was given without proof at the beginning of this section. Thus, we have come full circle.

Let's discover the formula for ourselves. If A is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix, its inverse is the (unique) matrix X that satisfies the equation $AX = I$. Solving for X one column at a time, let $\mathbf{x}_j$ be the jth column of X. That is,

$$\mathbf{x}_j = \begin{bmatrix} x_{1j} \\ \vdots \\ x_{ij} \\ \vdots \\ x_{nj} \end{bmatrix}$$

Therefore, $A\mathbf{x}_j = \mathbf{e}_j$, and by Cramer's Rule,

$$x_{ij} = \frac{\det(A_i(\mathbf{e}_j))}{\det A}$$

However,

$$\det(A_i(\mathbf{e}_j)) = \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{ccccccc} & & & i\text{th column} & & & \\ & & & \downarrow & & & \end{array} \\ \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots \\ a_{j1} & a_{j2} & \cdots & 1 & \cdots & a_{jn} \\ \vdots & \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix} \end{array} = (-1)^{j+i}\det A_{ji} = C_{ji}$$

which is the (j, i)-cofactor of A.

It follows that $x_{ij} = (1/\det A)C_{ji}$, so $A^{-1} = X = (1/\det A)\,[C_{ji}] = (1/\det A)\,[C_{ij}]^T$. In words, the inverse of A is the *transpose* of the matrix of cofactors of A, divided by the determinant of A.

The matrix

$$[C_{ji}] = [C_{ij}]^T = \begin{bmatrix} C_{11} & C_{21} & \cdots & C_{n1} \\ C_{12} & C_{22} & \cdots & C_{n2} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ C_{1n} & C_{2n} & \cdots & C_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

is called the ***adjoint*** (or ***adjugate***) of A and is denoted by adj A. The result we have just proved can be stated as follows.

Theorem 4.12 Let A be an invertible $n \times n$ matrix. Then

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det A} \operatorname{adj} A$$

Example 4.17 Use the adjoint method to compute the inverse of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We compute $\det A = -2$ and the nine cofactors

$$C_{11} = +\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -18 \quad C_{12} = -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 1 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 10 \quad C_{13} = +\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = 4$$

$$C_{21} = -\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = 3 \quad C_{22} = +\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & -3 \end{vmatrix} = -2 \quad C_{23} = -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 1 & 3 \end{vmatrix} = -1$$

$$C_{31} = +\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = 10 \quad C_{32} = -\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 4 \end{vmatrix} = -6 \quad C_{33} = +\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix} = -2$$

The adjoint is the *transpose* of the matrix of cofactors—namely,

$$\operatorname{adj} A = \begin{bmatrix} -18 & 10 & 4 \\ 3 & -2 & -1 \\ 10 & -6 & -2 \end{bmatrix}^T = \begin{bmatrix} -18 & 3 & 10 \\ 10 & -2 & -6 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det A} \operatorname{adj} A = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} -18 & 3 & 10 \\ 10 & -2 & -6 \\ 4 & -1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -\frac{3}{2} & -5 \\ -5 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & \frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

which is the same answer we obtained (with less work) in Example 3.30.

Proof of the Laplace Expansion Theorem

Unfortunately, there is no short, easy proof of the Laplace Expansion Theorem. The proof we give has the merit of being relatively straightforward. We break it down into several steps, the first of which is to prove that cofactor expansion along the first row of a matrix is the same as cofactor expansion along the first column.

Lemma 4.13 Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then

$$a_{11}C_{11} + a_{12}C_{12} + \cdots + a_{1n}C_{1n} = \det A = a_{11}C_{11} + a_{21}C_{21} + \cdots + a_{n1}C_{n1} \qquad (7)$$

Proof We prove this lemma by induction on n. For $n = 1$, the result is trivial. Now assume that the result is true for $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ matrices; this is our induction hypothesis. Note that, by the definition of cofactor (or minor), all of the terms containing a_{11} are accounted for by the summand $a_{11}C_{11}$. We can therefore ignore terms containing a_{11}.

The ith summand on the right-hand side of Equation (7) is $a_{i1}C_{i1} = a_{i1}(-1)^{i+1}$ det A_{i1}. Now we expand det A_{i1} along the first row:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{12} & a_{13} & \cdots & a_{1j} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots \\ a_{i-1,2} & a_{i-1,3} & \cdots & a_{i-1,j} & \cdots & a_{i-1,n} \\ a_{i+1,2} & a_{i+1,3} & \cdots & a_{i+1,j} & \cdots & a_{i+1,n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n2} & a_{n3} & \cdots & a_{nj} & \cdots & a_{n,n} \end{vmatrix}$$

The jth term in this expansion of det A_{i1} is $a_{1j}(-1)^{1+j-1}$ det $A_{1i,1j}$, where the notation $A_{kl,rs}$ denotes the submatrix of A obtained by deleting rows k and l and columns r and s. Combining these, we see that the term containing $a_{i1}a_{1j}$ on the right-hand side of Equation (7) is

$$a_{i1}(-1)^{i+1}a_{1j}(-1)^{1+j-1} \det A_{1i,1j} = (-1)^{i+j+1}a_{i1}a_{1j} \det A_{1i,1j}$$

What is the term containing $a_{i1}a_{1j}$ on the left-hand side of Equation (7)? The factor a_{1j} occurs in the jth summand, $a_{1j}C_{1j} = a_{1j}(-1)^{1+j}$ det A_{1j}. By the induction hypothesis, we can expand det A_{1j} along its first column:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{21} & \cdots & a_{2,j-1} & a_{2,j+1} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ a_{31} & \cdots & a_{3,j-1} & a_{3,j+1} & \cdots & a_{3n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots \\ a_{i1} & \cdots & a_{i,j-1} & a_{i,j+1} & \cdots & a_{in} \\ \vdots & ⋰ & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{n,j-1} & a_{n,j+1} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

The ith term in this expansion of det A_{1j} is $a_{i1}(-1)^{(i-1)+1}$ det $A_{1i,1j}$, so the term containing $a_{i1}a_{1j}$ on the left-hand side of Equation (7) is

$$a_{1j}(-1)^{1+j}a_{i1}(-1)^{(i-1)+1} \det A_{1i,1j} = (-1)^{i+j+1}a_{i1}a_{1j} \det A_{1i,1j}$$

which establishes that the left- and right-hand sides of Equation (7) are equivalent.

Next, we prove property (b) of Theorem 4.3.

Lemma 4.14 Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix and let B be obtained by interchanging any two rows (columns) of A. Then

$$\det B = -\det A$$

Proof Once again, the proof is by induction on n. The result can be easily checked when $n = 2$, so assume that it is true for $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$ matrices. We will prove that the result is true for $n \times n$ matrices. First, we prove that it holds when two adjacent rows of A are interchanged—say, rows r and $r + 1$.

By Lemma 4.13, we can evaluate $\det B$ by cofactor expansion along its first column. The ith term in this expansion is $(-1)^{1+i} b_{i1} \det B_{i1}$. If $i \neq r$ and $i \neq r + 1$, then $b_{i1} = a_{i1}$ and B_{i1} is an $(n - 1) \times (n - 1)$ submatrix that is identical to A_{i1} except that two adjacent rows have been interchanged.

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{i1} & a_{i2} & \cdots & a_{in} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{r+1,1} & a_{r+1,2} & \cdots & a_{r+1,n} \\ a_{r1} & a_{r2} & \cdots & a_{rn} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

Thus, by the induction hypothesis, $\det B_{i1} = -\det A_{i1}$ if $i \neq r$ and $i \neq r + 1$.

If $i = r$, then $b_{i1} = a_{r+1,1}$ and $B_{i1} = A_{r+1,1}$.

$$\begin{array}{r} \\ \\ \text{Row } i \rightarrow \\ \\ \\ \\ \end{array} \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{r+1,1} & a_{r+1,2} & \cdots & a_{r+1,n} \\ a_{r1} & a_{r2} & \cdots & a_{rn} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

Therefore, the rth summand in $\det B$ is

$$(-1)^{r+1} b_{r1} \det B_{r1} = (-1)^{r+1} a_{r+1,1} \det A_{r+1,1} = -(-1)^{(r+1)+1} a_{r+1,1} \det A_{r+1,1}$$

Similarly, if $i = r + 1$, then $b_{i1} = a_{r1}$, $B_{i1} = A_{r1}$, and the $(r + 1)$st summand in $\det B$ is

$$(-1)^{(r+1)+1} b_{r+1,1} \det B_{r+1,1} = (-1)^{r} a_{r1} \det A_{r1} = -(-1)^{r+1} a_{r1} \det A_{r1}$$

In other words, the rth and $(r + 1)$st terms in the first column cofactor expansion of $\det B$ are the *negatives* of the $(r + 1)$st and rth terms, respectively, in the first column cofactor expansion of $\det A$.

Substituting all of these results into $\det B$ and using Lemma 4.13 again, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \det B &= \sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+1} b_{i1} \det B_{i1} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq r, r+1}}^{n} (-1)^{i+1} b_{i1} \det B_{i1} + (-1)^{r+1} b_{r1} \det B_{r1} + (-1)^{(r+1)+1} b_{r+1,1} \det B_{r+1,1} \\ &= \sum_{\substack{i=1 \\ i \neq r, r+1}}^{n} (-1)^{i+1} a_{i1}(-\det A_{i1}) - (-1)^{(r+1)+1} a_{r+1,1} \det A_{r+1,1} - (-1)^{r+1} a_{r1} \det A_{r1} \\ &= -\sum_{i=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+1} a_{i1} \det A_{i1} \\ &= -\det A \end{aligned}$$

This proves the result for $n \times n$ matrices if adjacent rows are interchanged. To see that it holds for arbitrary row interchanges, we need only note that, for example, rows r and s, where $r < s$, can be swapped by performing $2(s - r) - 1$ interchanges of adjacent rows (see Exercise 67). Since the number of interchanges is *odd* and each one changes the sign of the determinant, the net effect is a change of sign, as desired.

The proof for column interchanges is analogous, except that we expand along row 1 instead of along column 1.

We can now prove the Laplace Expansion Theorem.

Proof of Theorem 4.1 Let B be the matrix obtained by moving row i of A to the top, using $i - 1$ interchanges of adjacent rows. By Lemma 4.14, $\det B = (-1)^{i-1} \det A$. But $b_{1j} = a_{ij}$ and $B_{1j} = A_{ij}$ for $j = 1, \dots, n$.

$$\det B = \begin{vmatrix} a_{i1} & \cdots & a_{ij} & \cdots & a_{in} \\ a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1j} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{i-1,1} & \cdots & a_{i-1,j} & \cdots & a_{i-1,n} \\ a_{i+1,1} & \cdots & a_{i+1,j} & \cdots & a_{i+1,n} \\ \vdots & & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \cdots & a_{nj} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \det A &= (-1)^{i-1} \det B = (-1)^{i-1} \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} b_{1j} \det B_{1j} \\ &= (-1)^{i-1} \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{1+j} a_{ij} \det A_{ij} = \sum_{j=1}^{n} (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det A_{ij} \end{aligned}$$

which gives the formula for cofactor expansion along row i.

The proof for column expansion is similar, invoking Lemma 4.13 so that we can use column expansion instead of row expansion (see Exercise 68).

A Brief History of Determinants

As noted at the beginning of this section, the history of determinants predates that of matrices. Indeed, determinants were first introduced, independently, by Seki in 1683 and Leibniz in 1693. In 1748, determinants appeared in Maclaurin's *Treatise on Algebra*, which included a treatment of Cramer's Rule up to the 4×4 case. In 1750, Cramer himself proved the general case of his rule, applying it to curve fitting, and in 1772, Laplace gave a proof of his expansion theorem.

The term *determinant* was not coined until 1801, when it was used by Gauss. Cauchy made the first use of determinants in the modern sense in 1812. Cauchy, in fact, was responsible for developing much of the early theory of determinants, including several important results that we have mentioned: the product rule for determinants, the characteristic polynomial, and the notion of a diagonalizable matrix. Determinants did not become widely known until 1841, when Jacobi popularized them, albeit in the context of functions of several variables, such as are encountered in a multivariable calculus course. (These types of determinants were called "Jacobians" by Sylvester around 1850, a term that is still used today.)

A self-taught child prodigy, Takakazu Seki Kōwa (1642–1708) was descended from a family of samurai warriors. In addition to discovering determinants, he wrote about diophantine equations, magic squares, and Bernoulli numbers (before Bernoulli) and quite likely made discoveries in calculus.

Gottfried Wilhelm von Leibniz (1646–1716) was born in Leipzig and studied law, theology, philosophy, and mathematics. He is probably best known for developing (with Newton, independently) the main ideas of differential and integral calculus. However, his contributions to other branches of mathematics are also impressive. He developed the notion of a determinant, knew versions of Cramer's Rule and the Laplace Expansion Theorem before others were given credit for them, and laid the foundation for matrix theory through work he did on quadratic forms. Leibniz also was the first to develop the binary system of arithmetic. He believed in the importance of good notation and, along with the familiar notation for derivatives and integrals, introduced a form of subscript notation for the coefficients of a linear system that is essentially the notation we use today.

By the late 19th century, the theory of determinants had developed to the stage that entire books were devoted to it, including Dodgson's *An Elementary Treatise on Determinants* in 1867 and Thomas Muir's monumental five-volume work, which appeared in the early 20th century. While their history is fascinating, today determinants are of theoretical more than practical interest. Cramer's Rule is a hopelessly inefficient method for solving a system of linear equations, and numerical methods have replaced any use of determinants in the computation of eigenvalues. Determinants are used, however, to give students an initial understanding of the characteristic polynomial (as in Sections 4.1 and 4.3).

Exercises 4.2

Compute the determinants in Exercises 1–6 using cofactor expansion along the first row and along the first column.

1. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 5 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

2. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 & -2 \\ -1 & 3 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

3. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$

4. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

5. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

6. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{vmatrix}$

Compute the determinants in Exercises 7–15 using cofactor expansion along any row or column that seems convenient.

7. $\begin{vmatrix} 5 & 2 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 0 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

8. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

9. $\begin{vmatrix} -4 & 1 & 3 \\ 2 & -2 & 4 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

10. $\begin{vmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta & \tan\theta \\ 0 & \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ 0 & \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{vmatrix}$

11. $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & 0 \\ 0 & a & b \\ a & 0 & b \end{vmatrix}$

12. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & a & 0 \\ b & c & d \\ 0 & e & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

13. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 5 & 2 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 4 & 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

14. $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 & 3 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 & -3 \end{vmatrix}$

15. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & a \\ 0 & 0 & b & c \\ 0 & d & e & f \\ g & h & i & j \end{vmatrix}$

In Exercises 16–18, compute the indicated 3×3 determinants using the method of Example 4.9.

16. The determinant in Exercise 6

17. The determinant in Exercise 8

18. The determinant in Exercise 11

19. Verify that the method indicated in (2) agrees with Equation (1) for a 3×3 determinant.

20. Verify that definition (4) agrees with the definition of a 2×2 determinant when $n = 2$.

21. Prove Theorem 4.2. [*Hint:* A proof by induction would be appropriate here.]

In Exercises 22–25, evaluate the given determinant using elementary row and/or column operations and Theorem 4.3 to reduce the matrix to row echelon form.

22. The determinant in Exercise 1

23. The determinant in Exercise 9

24. The determinant in Exercise 13

25. The determinant in Exercise 14

In Exercises 26–34, use properties of determinants to evaluate the given determinant by inspection. Explain your reasoning.

26. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & -2 \\ 2 & 2 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

27. $\begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$

28. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$

29. $\begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 & -4 \\ 1 & -3 & -2 \\ -1 & 5 & 2 \end{vmatrix}$

30. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 6 & 4 \end{vmatrix}$

31. $\begin{vmatrix} 4 & 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 0 & -2 \\ 5 & 4 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

32. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

33. $\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix}$

34. $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}$

Find the determinants in Exercises 35–40, assuming that

$$\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} = 4$$

35. $\begin{vmatrix} 2a & 2b & 2c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix}$

36. $\begin{vmatrix} 2a & b/3 & -c \\ 2d & e/3 & -f \\ 2g & h/3 & -i \end{vmatrix}$

37. $\begin{vmatrix} d & e & f \\ a & b & c \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix}$

38. $\begin{vmatrix} a-c & b & c \\ d-f & e & f \\ g-i & h & i \end{vmatrix}$

39. $\begin{vmatrix} 2c & b & a \\ 2f & e & d \\ 2i & h & g \end{vmatrix}$

40. $\begin{vmatrix} a+2g & b+2h & c+2i \\ 3d+2g & 3e+2h & 3f+2i \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix}$

41. Prove Theorem 4.3(a).

42. Prove Theorem 4.3(f).

43. Prove Lemma 4.5.

44. Prove Theorem 4.7.

In Exercises 45 and 46, use Theorem 4.6 to find all values of k for which A is invertible.

45. $A = \begin{bmatrix} k & -k & 3 \\ 0 & k+1 & 1 \\ k & -8 & k-1 \end{bmatrix}$

46. $A = \begin{bmatrix} k & k & 0 \\ k^2 & 2 & k \\ 0 & k & k \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 47–52, assume that A and B are $n \times n$ matrices with $\det A = 3$ and $\det B = -2$. Find the indicated determinants.

47. $\det(AB)$

48. $\det(A^2)$

49. $\det(B^{-1}A)$

50. $\det(2A)$

51. $\det(3B^T)$

52. $\det(AA^T)$

In Exercises 53–56, A and B are $n \times n$ matrices.

53. Prove that $\det(AB) = \det(BA)$.

54. If B is invertible, prove that $\det(B^{-1}AB) = \det(A)$.

55. If A is idempotent (that is, $A^2 = A$), find all possible values of $\det(A)$.

56. A square matrix A is called ***nilpotent*** if $A^m = O$ for some $m > 1$. (The word *nilpotent* comes from the Latin *nil*, meaning "nothing," and *potere*, meaning "to have power." A nilpotent matrix is thus one that becomes "nothing"—that is, the zero matrix—when raised to some power.) Find all possible values of $\det(A)$ if A is nilpotent.

In Exercises 57–60, use Cramer's Rule to solve the given linear system.

57. $\begin{aligned} x + y &= 1 \\ x - y &= 2 \end{aligned}$

58. $\begin{aligned} 2x - y &= 5 \\ x + 3y &= -1 \end{aligned}$

59. $\begin{aligned} 2x + y + 3z &= 1 \\ y + z &= 1 \\ z &= 1 \end{aligned}$

60. $\begin{aligned} x + y - z &= 1 \\ x + y + z &= 2 \\ x - y \quad &= 3 \end{aligned}$

In Exercises 61–64, use Theorem 4.12 to compute the inverse of the coefficient matrix for the given exercise.

61. Exercise 57

62. Exercise 58

63. Exercise 59

64. Exercise 60

65. If A is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix, show that adj A is also invertible and that

$$(\text{adj } A)^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det A}A = \text{adj } (A^{-1})$$

66. If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, prove that

$$\det(\text{adj } A) = (\det A)^{n-1}$$

67. Verify that if $r < s$, then rows r and s of a matrix can be interchanged by performing $2(s - r) - 1$ interchanges of adjacent rows.

68. Prove that the Laplace Expansion Theorem holds for column expansion along the jth column.

69. Let A be a square matrix that can be partitioned as

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} P & Q \\ \hline O & S \end{array}\right]$$

where P and S are square matrices. Such a matrix is said to be in ***block (upper) triangular form.*** Prove that

$$\det A = (\det P)(\det S)$$

[*Hint:* Try a proof by induction on the number of rows of P.]

70. (a) Give an example to show that if A can be partitioned as

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} P & Q \\ \hline R & S \end{array}\right]$$

where P, Q, R, and S are all square, then it is not necessarily true that

$$\det A = (\det P)(\det S) - (\det Q)(\det R)$$

(b) Assume that A is partitioned as in part (a) and that P is invertible. Let

$$B = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} P^{-1} & O \\ \hline -RP^{-1} & I \end{array}\right]$$

Compute $\det(BA)$ using Exercise 69 and use the result to show that

$$\det A = \det P \det(S - RP^{-1}Q)$$

[The matrix $S - RP^{-1}Q$ is called the ***Schur complement*** of P in A, after Issai Schur (1875–1941), who was born in Belarus but spent most of his life in Germany. He is known mainly for his fundamental work on the representation theory of groups, but he also worked in number theory, analysis, and other areas.]

(c) Assume that A is partitioned as in part (a), that P is invertible, and that $PR = RP$. Prove that

$$\det A = \det(PS - RQ)$$

Writing Project

Which Came First: The Matrix or the Determinant?

The way in which matrices and determinants are taught today—matrices before determinants—bears little resemblance to the way these topics developed historically. There is a brief history of determinants at the end of Section 4.2.

Write a report on the history of matrices and determinants. How did the notations used for each evolve over time? Who were some of the key mathematicians involved and what were their contributions?

1. Florian Cajori, *A History of Mathematical Notations* (New York: Dover, 1993).
2. Howard Eves, *An Introduction to the History of Mathematics* (Sixth Edition) (Philadelphia: Saunders College Publishing, 1990).
3. Victor J. Katz, *A History of Mathematics: An Introduction* (Third Edition) (Reading, MA: Addison Wesley Longman, 2008).
4. Eberhard Knobloch, Determinants, in Ivor Grattan-Guinness, ed., *Companion Encyclopedia of the History and Philosophy of the Mathematical Sciences* (London: Routledge, 2013).

Vignette

Lewis Carroll's Condensation Method

Charles Lutwidge Dodgson (1832–1898) is much better known by his pen name, Lewis Carroll, under which he wrote *Alice's Adventures in Wonderland* and *Through the Looking Glass*. He also wrote several mathematics books and collections of logic puzzles.

In 1866, Charles Dodgson—better known by his pseudonym Lewis Carroll—published his only mathematical research paper. In it, he described a "new and brief method" for computing determinants, which he called "condensation." Although not well known today and rendered obsolete by numerical methods for evaluating determinants, the condensation method is very useful for hand calculation. When calculators or computer algebra systems are not available, many students find condensation to be their method of choice. It requires only the ability to compute 2×2 determinants.

We require the following terminology.

Definition If A is an $n \times n$ matrix with $n \geq 3$, the ***interior*** of A, denoted $\text{int}(A)$, is the $(n-2) \times (n-2)$ matrix obtained by deleting the first row, last row, first column, and last column of A.

We will illustrate the condensation method for the 5×5 matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & -1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 & 1 & -4 \\ 2 & -1 & 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 & -1 & 2 & -2 \\ -4 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Begin by setting A_0 equal to the 6×6 matrix all of whose entries are 1. Then, we set $A_1 = A$. It is useful to imagine A_0 as the base of a pyramid with A_1 centered on top of A_0. We are going to add successively smaller and smaller layers to the pyramid until we reach a 1×1 matrix at the top—this will contain $\det A$. (Figure 4.9)

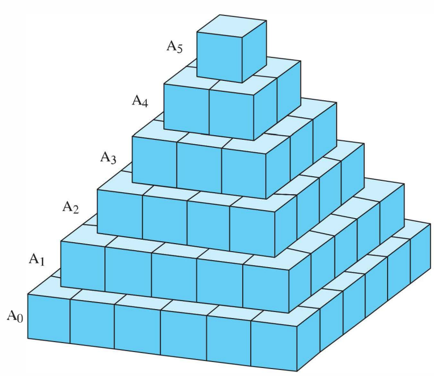


Figure 4.9

This vignette is based on the article "Lewis Carroll's Condensation Method for Evaluating Determinants" by Adrian Rice and Eve Torrence in *Math Horizons*, November 2006, pp. 12–15. For further details of the condensation method, see David M. Bressoud, *Proofs and Confirmations: The Story of the Alternating Sign Matrix Conjecture*, MAA Spectrum Series (Cambridge University Press, 1999).

Next, we "condense" A_1 into a 4×4 matrix A'_2 whose entries are the determinants of all 2×2 submatrices of A_1:

$$A'_2 = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 1 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & -1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -4 \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 2 & -2 \\ 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 11 & -7 & -8 \\ -5 & 7 & 1 & 5 \\ 5 & -1 & 5 & -4 \\ 7 & 1 & -1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now we divide each entry of A'_2 by the corresponding entry of $\operatorname{int}(A_0)$ to get matrix A_2. Since A_0 is all 1s, this means $A_2 = A'_2$.

We repeat the procedure, constructing A'_3 from the 2×2 submatrices of A_2 and then dividing each entry of A'_3 by the corresponding entry of $\operatorname{int}(A_1)$, and so on. We obtain:

$$A'_3 = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 11 \\ -5 & 7 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 11 & -7 \\ 7 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -7 & -8 \\ 1 & 5 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} -5 & 7 \\ 5 & -1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 7 & 1 \\ -1 & 5 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 5 & -4 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 7 & 1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} -1 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 5 & -4 \\ -1 & 6 \end{vmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 62 & 60 & -27 \\ -30 & 36 & -29 \\ 12 & -4 & 26 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 62/2 & 60/3 & -27/1 \\ -30/-1 & 36/2 & -29/1 \\ 12/1 & -4/-1 & 26/2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 31 & 20 & -27 \\ 30 & 18 & -29 \\ 12 & 4 & 13 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$A'_4 = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 31 & 20 \\ 30 & 18 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 20 & -27 \\ 18 & -29 \end{vmatrix} \\ \begin{vmatrix} 30 & 18 \\ 12 & 4 \end{vmatrix} & \begin{vmatrix} 18 & -29 \\ 4 & 13 \end{vmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -42 & -94 \\ -96 & 350 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$A_4 = \begin{bmatrix} -42/7 & -94/1 \\ -96/(-1) & 350/5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & -94 \\ 96 & 70 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A'_5 = \begin{bmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} -6 & -94 \\ 96 & 70 \end{vmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = [8604],$$

$$A_5 = [8604/18] = [478]$$

As can be checked by other methods, $\det A = 478$. In general, for an $n \times n$ matrix A, the condensation method will produce a 1×1 matrix A_n containing $\det A$.

Clearly, the method breaks down if the interior of any of the A'_i s contains a zero, since we would then be trying to divide by zero to construct A_{i+1}. However, careful use of elementary row and column operations can be used to eliminate the zeros so that we can proceed.

Exploration

Geometric Applications of Determinants

This exploration will reveal some of the amazing applications of determinants to geometry. In particular, we will see that determinants are closely related to area and volume formulas and can be used to produce the equations of lines, planes, and certain other curves. Most of these ideas arose when the theory of determinants was being developed as a subject in its own right.

The Cross Product

Recall from Exploration: The Cross Product in Chapter 1 that the cross product of $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{bmatrix}$ is the vector $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$ defined by

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} u_2v_3 - u_3v_2 \\ u_3v_1 - u_1v_3 \\ u_1v_2 - u_2v_1 \end{bmatrix}$$

If we write this cross product as $(u_2v_3 - u_3v_2)\mathbf{e}_1 - (u_1v_3 - u_3v_1)\mathbf{e}_2 + (u_1v_2 - u_2v_1)\mathbf{e}_3$, where $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ are the standard basis vectors, then we see that the *form* of this formula is

$$\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} = \det \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{e}_1 & u_1 & v_1 \\ \mathbf{e}_2 & u_2 & v_2 \\ \mathbf{e}_3 & u_3 & v_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

if we expand along the first column. (This is not a proper determinant, of course, since $\mathbf{e}_1$, $\mathbf{e}_2$, and $\mathbf{e}_3$ are vectors, not scalars; however, it gives a useful way of remembering the somewhat awkward cross product formula. It also lets us use properties of determinants to verify some of the properties of the cross product.)

Now let's revisit some of the exercises from Chapter 1.

1. Use the determinant version of the cross product to compute $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}$.

(a) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -4 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$

2. If $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ u_3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ v_3 \end{bmatrix}$, and $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \\ w_3 \end{bmatrix}$, show that

$$\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) = \det \begin{bmatrix} u_1 & v_1 & w_1 \\ u_2 & v_2 & w_2 \\ u_3 & v_3 & w_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

3. Use properties of determinants (and Problem 2 above, if necessary) to prove the given property of the cross product.

(a) $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{u} = -(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$ (b) $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{0} = \mathbf{0}$

(c) $\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{u} = \mathbf{0}$ (d) $\mathbf{u} \times k\mathbf{v} = k(\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v})$

(e) $\mathbf{u} \times (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{w}$ (f) $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = 0$ and $\mathbf{v} \cdot (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) = 0$

(g) $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}) = (\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}) \cdot \mathbf{w}$ (the ***triple scalar product identity***)

Area and Volume

We can now give a geometric interpretation of the determinants of 2×2 and 3×3 matrices. Recall that if $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$, then the area $\mathcal{A}$ of the parallelogram determined by these vectors is given by $\mathcal{A} = \|\mathbf{u} \times \mathbf{v}\|$. (See Exploration: The Cross Product in Chapter 1.)

4. Let $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{bmatrix}$. Show that the area $\mathcal{A}$ of the parallelogram determined by $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ is given by

$$\mathcal{A} = \left| \det \begin{bmatrix} u_1 & v_1 \\ u_2 & v_2 \end{bmatrix} \right|$$

[*Hint:* Write $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ as $\begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.]

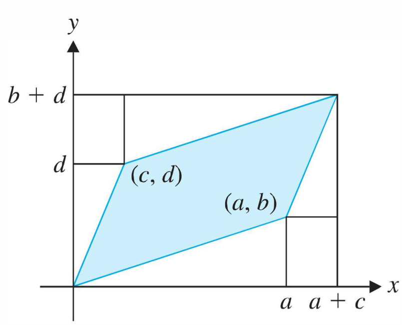


Figure 4.10

5. Derive the area formula in Problem 4 geometrically, using Figure 4.10 as a guide. [*Hint:* Subtract areas from the large rectangle until the parallelogram remains.] Where does the absolute value sign come from in this case?

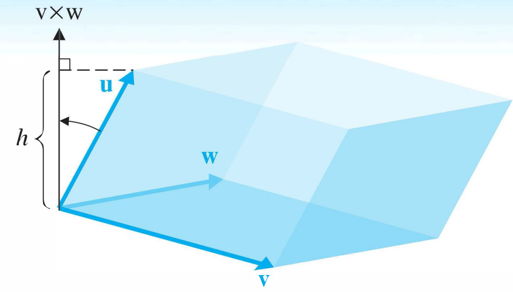


Figure 4.11

6. Find the area of the parallelogram determined by **u** and **v**.

$$\text{(a) } \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{(b) } \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Generalizing from Problems 4–6, consider a ***parallelepiped,*** a three-dimensional solid resembling a "slanted" brick, whose six faces are all parallelograms with opposite faces parallel and congruent (Figure 4.11). Its volume is given by the area of its base times its height.

7. Prove that the volume $\mathcal{V}$ of the parallelepiped determined by **u**, **v**, and **w** is given by the absolute value of the determinant of the 3×3 matrix $[\mathbf{u} \quad \mathbf{v} \quad \mathbf{w}]$ with **u**, **v**, and **w** as its columns. [*Hint:* From Figure 4.11 you can see that the height h can be expressed as $h = \|\mathbf{u}\|\cos\theta$, where θ is the angle between **u** and $\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w}$. Use this fact to show that $\mathcal{V} = |\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})|$ and apply the result of Problem 2.]

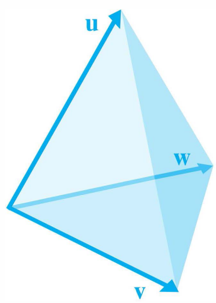


Figure 4.12

8. Show that the volume $\mathcal{V}$ of the tetrahedron determined by **u**, **v**, and **w** (Figure 4.12) is given by

$$\mathcal{V} = \tfrac{1}{6}|\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} \times \mathbf{w})|$$

[*Hint:* From geometry, we know that the volume of such a solid is $\mathcal{V} = \frac{1}{3}$(area of the base)(height).]

Now let's view these geometric interpretations from a transformational point of view. Let A be a 2×2 matrix and let P be the parallelogram determined by the vectors **u** and **v**. We will consider the effect of the matrix transformation T_A on the area of P. Let $T_A(P)$ denote the parallelogram determined by $T_A(\mathbf{u}) = A\mathbf{u}$ and $T_A(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$.

9. Prove that the area of $T_A(P)$ is given by $|\det A|$(area of P).

10. Let A be a 3×3 matrix and let P be the parallelepiped determined by the vectors **u**, **v**, and **w**. Let $T_A(P)$ denote the parallelepiped determined by $T_A(\mathbf{u}) = A\mathbf{u}$, $T_A(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$, and $T_A(\mathbf{w}) = A\mathbf{w}$. Prove that the volume of $T_A(P)$ is given by $|\det A|$(volume of P).

The preceding problems illustrate that the determinant of a matrix captures what the corresponding matrix transformation does to the area or volume of figures upon which the transformation acts. (Although we have considered only certain types of figures, the result is perfectly general and can be made rigorous. We will not do so here.)

Lines and Planes

Suppose we are given two distinct points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) in the plane. There is a unique line passing through these points, and its equation is of the form

$$ax + by + c = 0$$

Since the two given points are on this line, their coordinates satisfy this equation. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} ax_1 + by_1 + c &= 0 \\ ax_2 + by_2 + c &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The three equations together can be viewed as a system of linear equations in the variables a, b, and c. Since there *is* a nontrivial solution (i.e., the line exists), the coefficient matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

cannot be invertible, by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices. Consequently, its determinant must be zero, by Theorem 4.6. Expanding this determinant gives the equation of the line.

The equation of the line through the points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) is given by

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

11. Use the method described above to find the equation of the line through the given points.

(a) $(2, 3)$ and $(-1, 0)$ (b) $(1, 2)$ and $(4, 3)$

12. Prove that the three points (x_1, y_1), (x_2, y_2), and (x_3, y_3) are collinear (lie on the same line) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

13. Show that the equation of the plane through the three noncollinear points (x_1, y_1, z_1), (x_2, y_2, z_2), and (x_3, y_3, z_3) is given by

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

What happens if the three points *are* collinear? [*Hint:* Explain what happens when row reduction is used to evaluate the determinant.]

14. Prove that the four points (x_1, y_1, z_1), (x_2, y_2, z_2), (x_3, y_3, z_3), and (x_4, y_4, z_4) are coplanar (lie in the same plane) if and only if

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \\ x_4 & y_4 & z_4 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

Curve Fitting

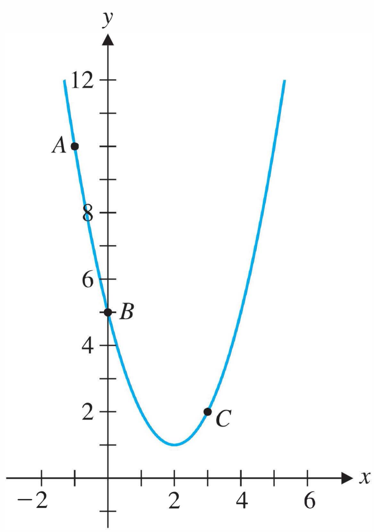


Figure 4.13

When data arising from experimentation take the form of points (x, y) that can be plotted in the plane, it is often of interest to find a relationship between the variables x and y. Ideally, we would like to find a function whose graph passes through all of the points. Sometimes all we want is an approximation (see Section 7.3), but exact results are also possible in certain situations.

15. From Figure 4.13 it appears as though we may be able to find a parabola passing through the points $A(-1, 10)$, $B(0, 5)$, and $C(3, 2)$. The equation of such a parabola is of the form $y = a + bx + cx^2$. By substituting the given points into this equation, set up a system of three linear equations in the variables a, b, and c. *Without solving the system,* use Theorem 4.6 to argue that it must have a unique solution. Then solve the system to find the equation of the parabola in Figure 4.13.

16. Use the method of Problem 15 to find the polynomials of degree at most 2 that pass through the following sets of points.

(a) $A(1, -1)$, $B(2, 4)$, $C(3, 3)$ (b) $A(-1, -3)$, $B(1, -1)$, $C(3, 1)$

17. Generalizing from Problems 15 and 16, suppose a_1, a_2, and a_3 are distinct real numbers. For any real numbers b_1, b_2, and b_3, we want to show that there is a unique quadratic with equation of the form $y = a + bx + cx^2$ passing through the points (a_1, b_1), (a_2, b_2), and (a_3, b_3). Do this by demonstrating that the coefficient matrix of the associated linear system has the determinant

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_1 & a_1^2 \\ 1 & a_2 & a_2^2 \\ 1 & a_3 & a_3^2 \end{vmatrix} = (a_2 - a_1)(a_3 - a_1)(a_3 - a_2)$$

which is necessarily nonzero. (Why?)

18. Let a_1, a_2, a_3, and a_4 be distinct real numbers. Show that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_1 & a_1^2 & a_1^3 \\ 1 & a_2 & a_2^2 & a_2^3 \\ 1 & a_3 & a_3^2 & a_3^3 \\ 1 & a_4 & a_4^2 & a_4^3 \end{vmatrix} = (a_2 - a_1)(a_3 - a_1)(a_4 - a_1)(a_3 - a_2)(a_4 - a_2)(a_4 - a_3) \neq 0$$

For any real numbers b_1, b_2, b_3, and b_4, use this result to prove that there is a unique cubic with equation $y = a + bx + cx^2 + dx^3$ passing through the four points (a_1, b_1), (a_2, b_2), (a_3, b_3), and (a_4, b_4). (Do *not* actually solve for a, b, c, and d.)

19. Let $a_1, a_2, \ldots, a_n$ be n real numbers. Prove that

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & a_1 & a_1^2 & \cdots & a_1^{n-1} \\ 1 & a_2 & a_2^2 & \cdots & a_2^{n-1} \\ 1 & a_3 & a_3^2 & \cdots & a_3^{n-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & a_n & a_n^2 & \cdots & a_n^{n-1} \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{1 \le i < j \le n} (a_j - a_i)$$

where $\prod_{1 \le i < j \le n} (a_j - a_i)$ means the product of all terms of the form $(a_j - a_i)$, where $i < j$ and both i and j are between 1 and n. [The determinant of a matrix of this form (or its transpose) is called a ***Vandermonde determinant***, named after the French mathematician A. T. Vandermonde (1735–1796).]

Deduce that for any n points in the plane whose x-coordinates are all distinct, there is a unique polynomial of degree $n - 1$ whose graph passes through the given points.

4.3 Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors of $n \times n$ Matrices

Now that we have defined the determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix, we can continue our discussion of eigenvalues and eigenvectors in a general context. Recall from Section 4.1 that λ is an eigenvalue of A if and only if $A - \lambda I$ is noninvertible. By Theorem 4.6, this is true if and only if $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$. To summarize:

The eigenvalues of a square matrix A are precisely the solutions λ of the equation

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$$

When we expand $\det(A - \lambda I)$, we get a polynomial in λ, called the ***characteristic polynomial*** of A. The equation $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$ is called the ***characteristic equation*** of A. For example, if $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$, its characteristic polynomial is

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = \begin{vmatrix} a-\lambda & b \\ c & d-\lambda \end{vmatrix} = (a-\lambda)(d-\lambda) - bc = \lambda^2 - (a+d)\lambda + (ad - bc)$$

If A is $n \times n$, its characteristic polynomial will be of degree n. According to the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra (see Appendix D), a polynomial of degree n with real or complex coefficients has at most n distinct roots. Applying this fact to the characteristic polynomial, we see that an $n \times n$ matrix with real or complex entries has at most n distinct eigenvalues.

Let's summarize the procedure we will follow (for now) to find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors (eigenspaces) of a matrix.

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix.

1. Compute the characteristic polynomial $\det(A - \lambda I)$ of A.
2. Find the eigenvalues of A by solving the characteristic equation $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$ for λ.
3. For each eigenvalue λ, find the null space of the matrix $A - \lambda I$. This is the eigenspace E_λ, the nonzero vectors of which are the eigenvectors of A corresponding to λ.
4. Find a basis for each eigenspace.

Example 4.18

Find the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenspaces of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We follow the procedure outlined previously. The characteristic polynomial is

$$\begin{aligned}\det(A - \lambda I) &= \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 4-\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\ &= -\lambda \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 1 \\ -5 & 4-\lambda \end{vmatrix} - \begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 4-\lambda \end{vmatrix} \\ &= -\lambda(\lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 5) - (-2) \\ &= -\lambda^3 + 4\lambda^2 - 5\lambda + 2\end{aligned}$$

To find the eigenvalues, we need to solve the characteristic equation $\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$ for λ. The characteristic polynomial factors as $-(\lambda - 1)^2(\lambda - 2)$. (The Factor Theorem is helpful here; see Appendix D.) Thus, the characteristic equation is $-(\lambda - 1)^2(\lambda - 2) = 0$, which clearly has solutions $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = 2$. Since $\lambda = 1$ is a multiple root and $\lambda = 2$ is a simple root, let us label them $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$ and $\lambda_3 = 2$.

To find the eigenvectors corresponding to $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$, we find the null space of

$$A - 1I = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 4-1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Row reduction produces

$$[A - I \mid 0] = \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -5 & 3 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

(We knew in advance that we *must* get at least one zero row. Why?) Thus, $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$ is in the eigenspace E_1 if and only if $x_1 - x_3 = 0$ and $x_2 - x_3 = 0$. Setting the free variable $x_3 = t$, we see that $x_1 = t$ and $x_2 = t$, from which it follows that

$$E_1 = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} t \\ t \\ t \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \left\{ t \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

To find the eigenvectors corresponding to $\lambda_3 = 2$, we find the null space of $A - 2I$ by row reduction:

$$[A - 2I \mid 0] = \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} -2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -5 & 2 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{rrr|r} 1 & 0 & -\frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

So $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$ is in the eigenspace E_2 if and only if $x_1 = \frac{1}{4}x_3$ and $x_2 = \frac{1}{2}x_3$. Setting the free variable $x_3 = t$, we have

$$E_2 = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4}t \\ \frac{1}{2}t \\ t \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \left\{ t \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right) = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

where we have cleared denominators in the basis by multiplying through by the least common denominator 4. (Why is this permissible?)

Remark Notice that in Example 4.18, A is a 3×3 matrix but has only two distinct eigenvalues. However, if we count multiplicities, A has exactly three eigenvalues ($\lambda = 1$ twice and $\lambda = 2$ once). This is what the Fundamental Theorem of Algebra guarantees. Let us define the ***algebraic multiplicity*** of an eigenvalue to be its multiplicity as a root of the characteristic equation. Thus, $\lambda = 1$ has algebraic multiplicity 2 and $\lambda = 2$ has algebraic multiplicity 1.

Next notice that each eigenspace has a basis consisting of just one vector. In other words, $\dim E_1 = \dim E_2 = 1$. Let us define the ***geometric multiplicity*** of an eigenvalue λ to be $\dim E_\lambda$, the dimension of its corresponding eigenspace. As you will see in Section 4.4, a comparison of these two notions of multiplicity is important.

Example 4.19

Find the eigenvalues and the corresponding eigenspaces of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution The characteristic equation is

$$0 = \det(A - \lambda I) = \begin{vmatrix} -1-\lambda & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -\lambda & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & -1-\lambda \end{vmatrix} = -\lambda \begin{vmatrix} -1-\lambda & 1 \\ 1 & -1-\lambda \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= -\lambda(\lambda^2 + 2\lambda) = -\lambda^2(\lambda + 2)$$

Hence, the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$ and $\lambda_3 = -2$. Thus, the eigenvalue 0 has algebraic multiplicity 2 and the eigenvalue -2 has algebraic multiplicity 1.

For $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$, we compute

$$[A - 0I\,|\,0] = [A\,|\,0] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

from which it follows that an eigenvector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$ in E_0 satisfies $x_1 = x_3$. Therefore, both x_2 and x_3 are free. Setting $x_2 = s$ and $x_3 = t$, we have

$$E_0 = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} t \\ s \\ t \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \left\{ s\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

For $\lambda_3 = -2$,

$$[A - (-2)I\,|\,0] = [A + 2I\,|\,0] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -3 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

so $x_3 = t$ is free and $x_1 = -x_3 = -t$ and $x_2 = 3x_3 = 3t$. Consequently,

$$E_{-2} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -t \\ 3t \\ t \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \left\{ t \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

It follows that $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$ has geometric multiplicity 2 and $\lambda_3 = -2$ has geometric multiplicity 1. (Note that the algebraic multiplicity equals the geometric multiplicity for each eigenvalue.)

In some situations, the eigenvalues of a matrix are very easy to find. If A is a triangular matrix, then so is $A - \lambda I$, and Theorem 4.2 says that $\det(A - \lambda I)$ is just the product of the diagonal entries. This implies that the characteristic equation of a triangular matrix is

$$(a_{11} - \lambda)(a_{22} - \lambda)\cdots(a_{nn} - \lambda) = 0$$

from which it follows immediately that the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = a_{11}, \lambda_2 = a_{22}, \ldots, \lambda_n = a_{nn}$. We summarize this result as a theorem and illustrate it with an example.

Theorem 4.15 The eigenvalues of a triangular matrix are the entries on its main diagonal.

Example 4.20 The eigenvalues of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 5 & 7 & 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

are $\lambda_1 = 2$, $\lambda_2 = 1$, $\lambda_3 = 3$, and $\lambda_4 = -2$, by Theorem 4.15. Indeed, the characteristic polynomial is just $(2 - \lambda)(1 - \lambda)(3 - \lambda)(-2 - \lambda)$.

Note that diagonal matrices are a special case of Theorem 4.15. In fact, a diagonal matrix is both upper and lower triangular.

Eigenvalues capture much important information about the behavior of a matrix. Once we know the eigenvalues of a matrix, we can deduce a great many things without doing any more work. The next theorem is one of the most important in this regard.

Theorem 4.16 A square matrix A is invertible if and only if 0 is *not* an eigenvalue of A.

Proof Let A be a square matrix. By Theorem 4.6, A is invertible if and only if $\det A \neq 0$. But $\det A \neq 0$ is equivalent to $\det(A - 0I) \neq 0$, which says that 0 is not a root of the characteristic equation of A (i.e., 0 is not an eigenvalue of A).

We can now extend the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices to include results we have proved in this chapter.

Theorem 4.17 **The Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices: Version 3**

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. The following statements are equivalent:

a. A is invertible.
b. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ has a unique solution for every $\mathbf{b}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.
c. $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$ has only the trivial solution.
d. The reduced row echelon form of A is I_n.
e. A is a product of elementary matrices.
f. $\text{rank}(A) = n$
g. $\text{nullity}(A) = 0$
h. The column vectors of A are linearly independent.
i. The column vectors of A span $\mathbb{R}^n$.
j. The column vectors of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.
k. The row vectors of A are linearly independent.
l. The row vectors of A span $\mathbb{R}^n$.
m. The row vectors of A form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$.
n. $\det A \neq 0$
o. 0 is not an eigenvalue of A.

Proof The equivalence (a) $\Leftrightarrow$ (n) is Theorem 4.6, and we just proved (a) $\Leftrightarrow$ (o) in Theorem 4.16.

There are nice formulas for the eigenvalues of the powers and inverses of a matrix.

Theorem 4.18 Let A be a square matrix with eigenvalue λ and corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$.

a. For any positive integer n, λ^n is an eigenvalue of A^n with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$.
b. If A is invertible, then $1/\lambda$ is an eigenvalue of A^{-1} with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$.
c. If A is invertible, then for any integer n, λ^n is an eigenvalue of A^n with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$.

Proof We are given that $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$.

(a) We proceed by induction on n. For $n = 1$, the result is just what has been given. Assume the result is true for $n = k$. That is, assume that, for some positive integer k, $A^k\mathbf{x} = \lambda^k\mathbf{x}$. We must now prove the result for $n = k + 1$. But

$$A^{k+1}\mathbf{x} = A(A^k\mathbf{x}) = A(\lambda^k\mathbf{x})$$

by the induction hypothesis. Using property (d) of Theorem 3.3, we have

$$A(\lambda^k\mathbf{x}) = \lambda^k(A\mathbf{x}) = \lambda^k(\lambda\mathbf{x}) = \lambda^{k+1}\mathbf{x}$$

Thus, $A^{k+1}\mathbf{x} = \lambda^{k+1}\mathbf{x}$, as required. By induction, the result is true for all integers $n \geq 1$.

(b) You are asked to prove this property in Exercise 13.

(c) You are asked to prove this property in Exercise 14.

The next example shows one application of this theorem.

Example 4.21

Compute $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{10} \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$; then what we want to find is $A^{10}\mathbf{x}$. The eigenvalues of A are $\lambda_1 = -1$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$, with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. That is,

$$A\mathbf{v}_1 = -\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \text{and} \quad A\mathbf{v}_2 = 2\mathbf{v}_2$$

(Check this.) Since $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2\}$ forms a basis for $\mathbb{R}^2$ (why?), we can write $\mathbf{x}$ as a linear combination of $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$. Indeed, as is easily checked, $\mathbf{x} = 3\mathbf{v}_1 + 2\mathbf{v}_2$.

Therefore, using Theorem 4.18(a), we have

$$\begin{aligned} A^{10}\mathbf{x} &= A^{10}(3\mathbf{v}_1 + 2\mathbf{v}_2) = 3(A^{10}\mathbf{v}_1) + 2(A^{10}\mathbf{v}_2) \\ &= 3(\lambda_1^{10})\mathbf{v}_1 + 2(\lambda_2^{10})\mathbf{v}_2 \\ &= 3(-1)^{10}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} + 2(2^{10})\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 + 2^{11} \\ -3 + 2^{12} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2051 \\ 4093 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

This is certainly a lot easier than computing A^{10} first; in fact, there are no matrix multiplications at all!

When it can be used, the method of Example 4.21 is quite general. We summarize it as the following theorem, which you are asked to prove in Exercise 42.

Theorem 4.19

Suppose the $n \times n$ matrix A has eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ with corresponding eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_m$. If $\mathbf{x}$ is a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ that can be expressed as a linear combination of these eigenvectors—say,

$$\mathbf{x} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\mathbf{v}_m$$

then, for any integer k,

$$A^k\mathbf{x} = c_1\lambda_1^k\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_2^k\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_m\lambda_m^k\mathbf{v}_m$$

Warning The catch here is the "if" in the second sentence. There is absolutely no guarantee that such a linear combination is possible. The best possible situation would be if there were a basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$ consisting of eigenvectors of A; we will explore this possibility further in the next section. As a step in that direction, however, we have the following theorem, which states that eigenvectors corresponding to *distinct* eigenvalues are linearly independent.

Theorem 4.20

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix and let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_m$ be distinct eigenvalues of A with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$. Then $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly independent.

Proof The proof is indirect. We will assume that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly *dependent* and show that this assumption leads to a contradiction.

If $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent, then one of these vectors must be expressible as a linear combination of the previous ones. Let $\mathbf{v}_{k+1}$ be the first of the vectors $\mathbf{v}_i$ that can be so expressed. In other words, $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ are linearly independent, but there are scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ such that

$$\mathbf{v}_{k+1} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k \tag{1}$$

Multiplying both sides of Equation (1) by A from the left and using the fact that $A\mathbf{v}_i = \lambda_i\mathbf{v}_i$ for each i, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_{k+1}\mathbf{v}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{v}_{k+1} &= A(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k) \\ &= c_1A\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2A\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_kA\mathbf{v}_k \qquad (2) \\ &= c_1\lambda_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\lambda_k\mathbf{v}_k \end{aligned}$$

Now we multiply both sides of Equation (1) by λ_{k+1} to get

$$\lambda_{k+1}\mathbf{v}_{k+1} = c_1\lambda_{k+1}\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_{k+1}\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\lambda_{k+1}\mathbf{v}_k \tag{3}$$

When we subtract Equation (3) from Equation (2), we obtain

$$0 = c_1(\lambda_1 - \lambda_{k+1})\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2(\lambda_2 - \lambda_{k+1})\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k(\lambda_k - \lambda_{k+1})\mathbf{v}_k$$

The linear independence of $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k$ implies that

$$c_1(\lambda_1 - \lambda_{k+1}) = c_2(\lambda_2 - \lambda_{k+1}) = \cdots = c_k(\lambda_k - \lambda_{k+1}) = 0$$

Since the eigenvalues λ_i are all distinct, the terms in parentheses $(\lambda_i - \lambda_{k+1})$, $i = 1, \ldots, k$, are all nonzero. Hence, $c_1 = c_2 = \cdots = c_k = 0$. This implies that

$$\mathbf{v}_{k+1} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k = 0\mathbf{v}_1 + 0\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + 0\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$$

which is impossible, since the eigenvector $\mathbf{v}_{k+1}$ cannot be zero. Thus, we have a contradiction, which means that our assumption that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ are linearly dependent is false. It follows that $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_m$ must be linearly independent.

Exercises 4.3

In Exercises 1–12, compute (a) the characteristic polynomial of A, (b) the eigenvalues of A, (c) a basis for each eigenspace of A, and (d) the algebraic and geometric multiplicity of each eigenvalue.

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & 2 \\ -1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

9. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 5 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

11. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

13. Prove Theorem 4.18(b).

14. Prove Theorem 4.18(c). [*Hint:* Combine the proofs of parts (a) and (b) and see the fourth Remark following Theorem 3.9 (page 169).]

In Exercises 15 and 16, A is a 2×2 matrix with eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ *and* $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ *corresponding to eigenvalues* $\lambda_1 = \frac{1}{2}$ *and* $\lambda_2 = 2$*, respectively, and* $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

15. Find $A^{10}\mathbf{x}$.

16. Find $A^k\mathbf{x}$. What happens as k becomes large (i.e., $k \to \infty$)?

In Exercises 17 and 18, A is a 3×3 matrix with eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, *and* $\mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ *corresponding to eigenvalues* $\lambda_1 = -\frac{1}{3}$, $\lambda_2 = \frac{1}{3}$, *and* $\lambda_3 = 1$*, respectively, and* $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

17. Find $A^{20}\mathbf{x}$.

18. Find $A^k\mathbf{x}$. What happens as k becomes large (i.e., $k \to \infty$)?

19. (a) Show that, for any square matrix A, A^T and A have the same characteristic polynomial and hence the same eigenvalues.

(b) Give an example of a 2×2 matrix A for which A^T and A have different eigenspaces.

20. Let A be a nilpotent matrix (that is, $A^m = O$ for some $m > 1$). Show that $\lambda = 0$ is the only eigenvalue of A.

21. Let A be an idempotent matrix (that is, $A^2 = A$). Show that $\lambda = 0$ and $\lambda = 1$ are the only possible eigenvalues of A.

22. If $\mathbf{v}$ is an eigenvector of A with corresponding eigenvalue λ and c is a scalar, show that $\mathbf{v}$ is an eigenvector of $A - cI$ with corresponding eigenvalue $\lambda - c$.

23. (a) Find the eigenvalues and eigenspaces of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(b) Using Theorem 4.18 and Exercise 22, find the eigenvalues and eigenspaces of A^{-1}, $A - 2I$, and $A + 2I$.

24. Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices with eigenvalues λ and μ, respectively.

(a) Give an example to show that $\lambda + \mu$ need not be an eigenvalue of $A + B$.

(b) Give an example to show that $\lambda\mu$ need not be an eigenvalue of AB.

(c) Suppose λ and μ correspond to the *same* eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$. Show that, in this case, $\lambda + \mu$ is an eigenvalue of $A + B$ and $\lambda\mu$ is an eigenvalue of AB.

25. If A and B are two row equivalent matrices, do they necessarily have the same eigenvalues? Either prove that they do or give a counterexample.

Let $p(x)$ be the polynomial

$$p(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0$$

*The **companion matrix** of $p(x)$ is the $n \times n$ matrix*

$$C(p) = \begin{bmatrix} -a_{n-1} & -a_{n-2} & \cdots & -a_1 & -a_0 \\ 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \qquad (4)$$

26. Find the companion matrix of $p(x) = x^2 - 7x + 12$ and then find the characteristic polynomial of $C(p)$.

27. Find the companion matrix of $p(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 4x + 12$ and then find the characteristic polynomial of $C(p)$.

28. (a) Show that the companion matrix $C(p)$ of $p(x) = x^2 + ax + b$ has characteristic polynomial $\lambda^2 + a\lambda + b$.

(b) Show that if λ is an eigenvalue of the companion matrix $C(p)$ in part (a), then $\begin{bmatrix} \lambda \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector of $C(p)$ corresponding to λ.

29. (a) Show that the companion matrix $C(p)$ of $p(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ has characteristic polynomial $-(\lambda^3 + a\lambda^2 + b\lambda + c)$.

(b) Show that if λ is an eigenvalue of the companion matrix $C(p)$ in part (a), then $\begin{bmatrix} \lambda^2 \\ \lambda \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector of $C(p)$ corresponding to λ.

30. Construct a nontriangular 2×2 matrix with eigenvalues 2 and 5. [*Hint:* Use Exercise 28.]

31. Construct a nontriangular 3×3 matrix with eigenvalues -2, 1, and 3. [*Hint:* Use Exercise 29.]

32. (a) Use mathematical induction to prove that, for $n \geq 2$, the companion matrix $C(p)$ of $p(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0$ has characteristic polynomial $(-1)^n p(\lambda)$. [*Hint:* Expand by cofactors along the last column. You may find it helpful to introduce the polynomial $q(x) = (p(x) - a_0)/x$.]

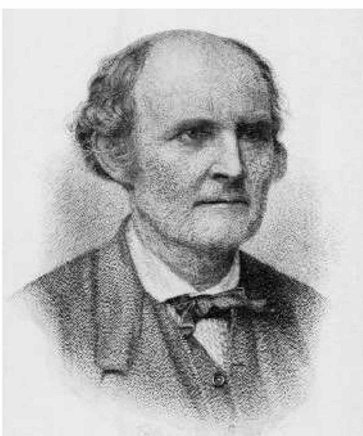
(b) Show that if λ is an eigenvalue of the companion matrix $C(p)$ in Equation (4), then an eigenvector corresponding to λ is given by

$$\begin{bmatrix} \lambda^{n-1} \\ \lambda^{n-2} \\ \vdots \\ \lambda \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

If $p(x) = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0$ and A is a square matrix, we can define a square matrix $p(A)$ by

$$p(A) = A^n + a_{n-1}A^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1A + a_0I$$

An important theorem in advanced linear algebra says that if $c_A(\lambda)$ is the characteristic polynomial of the matrix A, then $c_A(A) = O$ (in words, every matrix satisfies its characteristic equation). This is the celebrated ***Cayley-Hamilton Theorem,*** *named after Arthur Cayley (1821–1895), pictured below, and Sir William Rowan Hamilton (see page 2). Cayley proved this theorem in 1858. Hamilton discovered it, independently, in his work on quaternions, a generalization of the complex numbers.*



Bettmann/CORBIS

33. Verify the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem for $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$.

That is, find the characteristic polynomial $c_A(\lambda)$ of A and show that $c_A(A) = O$.

34. Verify the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem for

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

The Cayley-Hamilton Theorem can be used to calculate powers and inverses of matrices. For example, if A is a 2×2 matrix with characteristic polynomial $c_A(\lambda) = \lambda^2 + a\lambda + b$, then $A^2 + aA + bI = O$, so

$$A^2 = -aA - bI$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} A^3 &= AA^2 = A(-aA - bI) \\ &= -aA^2 - bA \\ &= -a(-aA - bI) - bA \\ &= (a^2 - b)A + abI \end{aligned}$$

It is easy to see that by continuing in this fashion we can express any positive power of A as a linear combination of I and A. From $A^2 + aA + bI = O$, we also obtain $A(A + aI) = -bI$, so

$$A^{-1} = -\frac{1}{b}A - \frac{a}{b}I$$

provided $b \neq 0$.

35. For the matrix A in Exercise 33, use the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem to compute A^2, A^3, and A^4 by expressing each as a linear combination of I and A.

36. For the matrix A in Exercise 34, use the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem to compute A^3 and A^4 by expressing each as a linear combination of I, A, and A^2.

37. For the matrix A in Exercise 33, use the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem to compute A^{-1} and A^{-2} by expressing each as a linear combination of I and A.

38. For the matrix A in Exercise 34, use the Cayley-Hamilton Theorem to compute A^{-1} and A^{-2} by expressing each as a linear combination of I, A, and A^2.

39. Show that if the square matrix A can be partitioned as

$$A = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} P & Q \\ \hline O & S \end{array}\right]$$

where P and S are square matrices, then the characteristic polynomial of A is $c_A(\lambda) = c_P(\lambda)c_S(\lambda)$. [*Hint:* Use Exercise 69 in Section 4.2.]

40. Let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$ be a complete set of eigenvalues (repetitions included) of the $n \times n$ matrix A. Prove that

$$\det(A) = \lambda_1\lambda_2\cdots\lambda_n \quad \text{and}$$
$$\operatorname{tr}(A) = \lambda_1 + \lambda_2 + \cdots + \lambda_n$$

[*Hint:* The characteristic polynomial of A factors as

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = (-1)^n(\lambda - \lambda_1)(\lambda - \lambda_2)\cdots(\lambda - \lambda_n)$$

Find the constant term and the coefficient of λ^{n-1} on the left and right sides of this equation.]

41. Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices. Prove that the sum of *all* the eigenvalues of $A + B$ is the sum of all the eigenvalues of A and B individually. Prove that the product of *all* the eigenvalues of AB is the product of all the eigenvalues of A and B individually. (Compare this exercise with Exercise 24.)

42. Prove Theorem 4.19.

Writing Project **The History of Eigenvalues**

Like much of linear algebra, the way the topic of eigenvalues is taught today does not correspond to its historical development. Eigenvalues arose out of problems in systems of differential equations before the concept of a matrix was even formulated.

Write a report on the historical development of eigenvalues. Describe the types of mathematical problems in which they originally arose. Who were some of the key mathematicians involved with these problems? How did the terminology for eigenvalues change over time?

1. Thomas Hawkins, Cauchy and the Spectral Theory of Matrices, *Historia Mathematica 2* (1975), pp. 1–29.
2. Victor J. Katz, *A History of Mathematics: An Introduction* (Third Edition) (Reading, MA: Addison Wesley Longman, 2008).
3. Morris Kline, *Mathematical Thought from Ancient to Modern Times* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1972).

4.4 Similarity and Diagonalization

As you saw in the last section, triangular and diagonal matrices are nice in the sense that their eigenvalues are transparently displayed. It would be pleasant if we could relate a given square matrix to a triangular or diagonal one in such a way that they had exactly the same eigenvalues. Of course, we already know one procedure for converting a square matrix into triangular form—namely, Gaussian elimination. Unfortunately, this process does not preserve the eigenvalues of the matrix. In this section, we consider a different sort of transformation of a matrix that does behave well with respect to eigenvalues.

Similar Matrices

Definition Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices. We say that A ***is similar to*** B if there is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix P such that $P^{-1}AP = B$. If A is similar to B, we write $A \sim B$.

Remarks

- If $A \sim B$, we can write, equivalently, that $A = PBP^{-1}$ or $AP = PB$.
- Similarity is a *relation* on square matrices in the same sense that "less than or equal to" is a relation on the integers. Note that there is a *direction* (or *order*) implicit in the definition. Just as $a \leq b$ does not necessarily imply $b \leq a$, we should not assume that $A \sim B$ implies $B \sim A$. (In fact, this *is* true, as we will prove in the next theorem, but it does not follow immediately from the definition.)
- The matrix P depends on A and B. It is not unique for a given pair of similar matrices A and B. To see this, simply take $A = B = I$, in which case $I \sim I$, since $P^{-1}IP = I$ for *any* invertible matrix P.

Example 4.22

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$. Then $A \sim B$, since

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus, $AP = PB$ with $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$. (Note that it is not necessary to compute P^{-1}. See the first Remark before Example 4.22.)

Theorem 4.21

Let A, B, and C be $n \times n$ matrices.

a. $A \sim A$
b. If $A \sim B$, then $B \sim A$.
c. If $A \sim B$ and $B \sim C$, then $A \sim C$.

Proof (a) This property follows from the fact that $I^{-1}AI = A$.

(b) If $A \sim B$, then $P^{-1}AP = B$ for some invertible matrix P. As noted in the first Remark on the previous page, this is equivalent to $PBP^{-1} = A$. Setting $Q = P^{-1}$, we have $Q^{-1}BQ = (P^{-1})^{-1}BP^{-1} = PBP^{-1} = A$. Therefore, by definition, $B \sim A$.

(c) You are asked to prove property (c) in Exercise 30.

Remark Any relation satisfying the three properties of Theorem 4.21 is called an ***equivalence relation.*** Equivalence relations arise frequently in mathematics, and objects that are related via an equivalence relation usually share important properties. We are about to see that this is true of similar matrices.

Theorem 4.22

Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices with $A \sim B$. Then

a. $\det A = \det B$
b. A is invertible if and only if B is invertible.
c. A and B have the same rank.
d. A and B have the same characteristic polynomial.
e. A and B have the same eigenvalues.
f. $A^m \sim B^m$ for all integers $m \geq 0$.
g. If A is invertible, then $A^m \sim B^m$ for all integers m.

Proof We prove (a) and (d) and leave the remaining properties as exercises. If $A \sim B$, then $P^{-1}AP = B$ for some invertible matrix P.

(a) Taking determinants of both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \det B &= \det(P^{-1}AP) = (\det P^{-1})(\det A)(\det P) \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{\det P}\right)(\det A)(\det P) = \det A \end{aligned}$$

(d) The characteristic polynomial of B is

$$\begin{aligned} \det(B - \lambda I) &= \det(P^{-1}AP - \lambda I) \\ &= \det(P^{-1}AP - \lambda P^{-1}IP) \end{aligned}$$

$$= \det(P^{-1}AP - P^{-1}(\lambda I)P)$$
$$= \det(P^{-1}(A - \lambda I)P) = \det(A - \lambda I)$$

with the last step following as in (a). Thus, $\det(B - \lambda I) = \det(A - \lambda I)$; that is, the characteristic polynomials of B and A are the same.

Remark Two matrices may have properties (a) through (e) (and more) in common and yet still not be similar. For example, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ both have determinant 1 and rank 2, are invertible, and have characteristic polynomial $(1 - \lambda)^2$ and eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$. But A is not similar to B, since $P^{-1}AP = P^{-1}IP = I \neq B$ for any invertible matrix P.

Theorem 4.22 is most useful in showing that two matrices are *not* similar, since A and B cannot be similar if any of properties (a) through (e) fails.

Example 4.23

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ are not similar, since $\det A = -3$ but $\det B = 3$.

(b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ are not similar, since the characteristic polynomial of A is $\lambda^2 - 3\lambda - 4$ while that of B is $\lambda^2 - 4$. (Check this.) Note that A and B do have the same determinant and rank, however.

Diagonalization

The best possible situation is when a square matrix is similar to a diagonal matrix. As you are about to see, whether a matrix is diagonalizable is closely related to the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix.

Definition An $n \times n$ matrix A is ***diagonalizable*** if there is a diagonal matrix D such that A is similar to D—that is, if there is an invertible $n \times n$ matrix P such that $P^{-1}AP = D$.

Example 4.24

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is diagonalizable since, if $P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ and $D = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$, then $P^{-1}AP = D$, as can be easily checked. (Actually, it is faster to check the equivalent statement $AP = PD$, since it does not require finding P^{-1}.)

Example 4.24 begs the question of where matrices P and D came from. Observe that the diagonal entries 4 and -1 of D are the eigenvalues of A, since they are the roots of its characteristic polynomial, which we found in Example 4.23(b). The origin of matrix P is less obvious, but, as we are about to demonstrate, its entries are obtained from the eigenvectors of A. Theorem 4.23 makes this connection precise.

Theorem 4.23 Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix. Then A is diagonalizable if and only if A has n linearly independent eigenvectors.

More precisely, there exist an invertible matrix P and a diagonal matrix D such that $P^{-1}AP = D$ if and only if the columns of P are n linearly independent eigenvectors of A and the diagonal entries of D are the eigenvalues of A corresponding to the eigenvectors in P in the same order.

Proof Suppose first that A is similar to the diagonal matrix D via $P^{-1}AP = D$ or, equivalently, $AP = PD$. Let the columns of P be $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{p}_n$ and let the diagonal entries of D be $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$. Then

$$A[\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{p}_n] = [\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{p}_n]\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix} \tag{1}$$

or

$$[A\mathbf{p}_1 \quad A\mathbf{p}_2 \quad \cdots \quad A\mathbf{p}_n] = [\lambda_1\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \lambda_2\mathbf{p}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \lambda_n\mathbf{p}_n] \tag{2}$$

where the right-hand side is just the column-row representation of the product PD. Equating columns, we have

$$A\mathbf{p}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{p}_1, A\mathbf{p}_2 = \lambda_2\mathbf{p}_2, \ldots, A\mathbf{p}_n = \lambda_n\mathbf{p}_n$$

which proves that the column vectors of P are eigenvectors of A whose corresponding eigenvalues are the diagonal entries of D in the same order. Since P is invertible, its columns are linearly independent, by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices.

Conversely, if A has n linearly independent eigenvectors $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{p}_n$ with corresponding eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$, respectively, then

$$A\mathbf{p}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{p}_1, A\mathbf{p}_2 = \lambda_2\mathbf{p}_2, \ldots, A\mathbf{p}_n = \lambda_n\mathbf{p}_n$$

This implies Equation (2) above, which is equivalent to Equation (1). Consequently, if we take P to be the $n \times n$ matrix with columns $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{p}_n$, then Equation (1) becomes $AP = PD$. Since the columns of P are linearly independent, the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices implies that P is invertible, so $P^{-1}AP = D$; that is, A is diagonalizable.

Example 4.25 If possible, find a matrix P that diagonalizes

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We studied this matrix in Example 4.18, where we discovered that it has eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$ and $\lambda_3 = 2$. The eigenspaces have the following bases:

$$\text{For } \lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1, E_1 \text{ has basis } \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$\text{For } \lambda_3 = 2, E_2 \text{ has basis } \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}.$$

Since all other eigenvectors are just multiples of one of these two basis vectors, there cannot be three linearly independent eigenvectors. By Theorem 4.23, therefore, A is not diagonalizable.

Example 4.26

If possible, find a matrix P that diagonalizes

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution This is the matrix of Example 4.19. There, we found that the eigenvalues of A are $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$ and $\lambda_3 = -2$, with the following bases for the eigenspaces:

$$\text{For } \lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0,\ E_0 \text{ has basis } \mathbf{p}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } \mathbf{p}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

$$\text{For } \lambda_3 = -2,\ E_{-2} \text{ has basis } \mathbf{p}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

It is straightforward to check that these three vectors are linearly independent. Thus, if we take

$$P = [\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_2 \quad \mathbf{p}_3] = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

then P is invertible. Furthermore,

$$P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = D$$

as can be easily checked. (If you are checking by hand, it is much easier to check the equivalent equation $AP = PD$.)

Remarks

- When there are enough eigenvectors, they can be placed into the columns of P in any order. However, the eigenvalues will come up on the diagonal of D in the same order as their corresponding eigenvectors in P. For example, if we had chosen

$$P = [\mathbf{p}_1 \quad \mathbf{p}_3 \quad \mathbf{p}_2] = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

then we would have found

$$P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

- In Example 4.26, you were asked to check that the eigenvectors $\mathbf{p}_1$, $\mathbf{p}_2$, and $\mathbf{p}_3$ were linearly independent. Was it necessary to check this? We knew that $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2\}$ was linearly independent, since it was a basis for the eigenspace E_0. We also knew that the sets $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_3\}$ and $\{\mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3\}$ were linearly independent, by Theorem 4.20. But we could *not* conclude from this information that $\{\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, \mathbf{p}_3\}$ was linearly independent. The next theorem, however, guarantees that linear independence is preserved when the bases of different eigenspaces are combined.

Theorem 4.24 Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix and let $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$ be distinct eigenvalues of A. If $\mathcal{B}_i$ is a basis for the eigenspace E_{λ_i}, then $\mathcal{B} = \mathcal{B}_1 \cup \mathcal{B}_2 \cup \cdots \cup \mathcal{B}_k$ (i.e., the total collection of basis vectors for all of the eigenspaces) is linearly independent.

Proof Let $\mathcal{B}_i = \{\mathbf{v}_{i1}, \mathbf{v}_{i2}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{in_i}\}$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$. We have to show that

$$\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_{11}, \mathbf{v}_{12}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{1n_1}, \mathbf{v}_{21}, \mathbf{v}_{22}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{2n_2}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{k1}, \mathbf{v}_{k2}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{kn_k}\}$$

is linearly independent. Suppose some nontrivial linear combination of these vectors is the zero vector—say,

$$(c_{11}\mathbf{v}_{11} + \cdots + c_{1n_1}\mathbf{v}_{1n_1}) + (c_{21}\mathbf{v}_{21} + \cdots + c_{2n_2}\mathbf{v}_{2n_2}) + \cdots + (c_{k1}\mathbf{v}_{k1} + \cdots + c_{kn_k}\mathbf{v}_{kn_k}) = 0 \tag{3}$$

Denoting the sums in parentheses by $\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots \mathbf{x}_k$, we can write Equation (3) as

$$\mathbf{x}_1 + \mathbf{x}_2 + \cdots + \mathbf{x}_k = 0 \tag{4}$$

Now each $\mathbf{x}_i$ is in E_{λ_i} (why?) and so either is an eigenvector corresponding to λ_i or is $\mathbf{0}$. But, since the eigenvalues λ_i are distinct, if *any* of the factors $\mathbf{x}_i$ is an eigenvector, they are linearly independent, by Theorem 4.20. Yet Equation (4) is a linear *dependence* relationship; this is a contradiction. We conclude that Equation (3) must be trivial; that is, all of its coefficients are zero. Hence, $\mathcal{B}$ is linearly independent.

There is one case in which diagonalizability is automatic: an $n \times n$ matrix with n distinct eigenvalues.

Theorem 4.25 If A is an $n \times n$ matrix with n distinct eigenvalues, then A is diagonalizable.

Proof Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$ be eigenvectors corresponding to the n distinct eigenvalues of A. (Why could there not be *more* than n such eigenvectors?) By Theorem 4.20, $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$ are linearly independent, so, by Theorem 4.23, A is diagonalizable.

Example 4.27 The matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 & 7 \\ 0 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

has eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = 2$, $\lambda_2 = 5$, and $\lambda_3 = -1$, by Theorem 4.15. Since these are three distinct eigenvalues for a 3×3 matrix, A is diagonalizable, by Theorem 4.25. (If we actually require a matrix P such that $P^{-1}AP$ is diagonal, we must still compute bases for the eigenspaces, as in Example 4.19 and Example 4.26 above.)

The final theorem of this section is an important result that characterizes diagonalizable matrices in terms of the two notions of multiplicity that were introduced following Example 4.18. It gives precise conditions under which an $n \times n$ matrix can be diagonalized, even when it has fewer than n eigenvalues, as in Example 4.26. We first prove a lemma that holds whether or not a matrix is diagonalizable.

Lemma 4.26 If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, then the geometric multiplicity of each eigenvalue is less than or equal to its algebraic multiplicity.

Proof Suppose λ_1 is an eigenvalue of A with geometric multiplicity p; that is, $\dim E_{\lambda_1} = p$. Specifically, let E_{λ_1} have basis $\mathcal{B}_1 = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p\}$. Let Q be any invertible $n \times n$ matrix having $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_p$ as its first p columns—say,

$$Q = [\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{v}_p \quad \mathbf{v}_{p+1} \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{v}_n]$$

or, as a partitioned matrix,

$$Q = [U \mid V]$$

Let

$$Q^{-1} = \left[\begin{array}{c} C \\ \hline D \end{array}\right]$$

where C is $p \times n$.

Since the columns of U are eigenvectors corresponding to λ_1, $AU = \lambda_1 U$. We also have

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} I_p & O \\ \hline O & I_{n-p} \end{array}\right] = I_n = Q^{-1}Q = \left[\begin{array}{c} C \\ \hline D \end{array}\right][U \mid V] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} CU & CV \\ \hline DU & DV \end{array}\right]$$

from which we obtain $CU = I_p$, $CV = O$, $DU = O$, and $DV = I_{n-p}$. Therefore,

$$Q^{-1}AQ = \left[\begin{array}{c} C \\ \hline D \end{array}\right]A[U \mid V] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} CAU & CAV \\ \hline DAU & DAV \end{array}\right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} \lambda_1 CU & CAV \\ \hline \lambda_1 DU & DAV \end{array}\right] = \left[\begin{array}{c|c} \lambda_1 I_p & CAV \\ \hline O & DAV \end{array}\right]$$

By Exercise 69 in Section 4.2, it follows that

$$\det(Q^{-1}AQ - \lambda I) = (\lambda_1 - \lambda)^p \det(DAV - \lambda I) \tag{5}$$

But $\det(Q^{-1}AQ - \lambda I)$ is the characteristic polynomial of $Q^{-1}AQ$, which is the same as the characteristic polynomial of A, by Theorem 4.22(d). Thus, Equation (5) implies that the algebraic multiplicity of λ_1 is at least p, its geometric multiplicity.

Theorem 4.27 **The Diagonalization Theorem**

Let A be an $n \times n$ matrix whose distinct eigenvalues are $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_k$. The following statements are equivalent:

a. A is diagonalizable.
b. The union $\mathcal{B}$ of the bases of the eigenspaces of A (as in Theorem 4.24) contains n vectors.
c. The algebraic multiplicity of each eigenvalue equals its geometric multiplicity.

Proof (a) $\Rightarrow$ (b) If A is diagonalizable, then it has n linearly independent eigenvectors, by Theorem 4.23. If n_i of these eigenvectors correspond to the eigenvalue λ_i, then $\mathcal{B}_i$ contains at least n_i vectors. (We already know that these n_i vectors are linearly independent; the only thing that might prevent them from being a basis for E_{λ_i} is that they might not span it.) Thus, $\mathcal{B}$ contains at least n vectors. But, by Theorem 4.24, $\mathcal{B}$ is a linearly independent set in $\mathbb{R}^n$; hence, it contains exactly n vectors.

(b) $\Rightarrow$ (c) Let the geometric multiplicity of λ_i be $d_i = \dim E_{\lambda_i}$ and let the algebraic multiplicity of λ_i be m_i. By Lemma 4.26, $d_i \leq m_i$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$. Now assume that property (b) holds. Then we also have

$$n = d_1 + d_2 + \cdots + d_k \leq m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_k$$

But $m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_k = n$, since the sum of the algebraic multiplicities of the eigenvalues of A is just the degree of the characteristic polynomial of A—namely, n.

It follows that $d_1 + d_2 + \cdots + d_k = m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_k$, which implies that

$$(m_1 - d_1) + (m_2 - d_2) + \cdots + (m_k - d_k) = 0 \qquad (6)$$

Using Lemma 4.26 again, we know that $m_i - d_i \geq 0$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$, from which we can deduce that each summand in Equation (6) is zero; that is, $m_i = d_i$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

(c) $\Rightarrow$ (a) If the algebraic multiplicity m_i and the geometric multiplicity d_i are equal for each eigenvalue λ_i of A, then $\mathcal{B}$ has $d_1 + d_2 + \cdots + d_k = m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_k = n$ vectors, which are linearly independent, by Theorem 4.24. Thus, these are n linearly independent eigenvectors of A, and A is diagonalizable, by Theorem 4.23.

Example 4.28

(a) The matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ from Example 4.18 has two distinct eigenvalues, $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$ and $\lambda_3 = 2$. Since the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 1$ has algebraic multiplicity 2 but geometric multiplicity 1, A is not diagonalizable, by the Diagonalization Theorem. (See also Example 4.25.)

(b) The matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & -3 \\ 1 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ from Example 4.19 also has two distinct eigenvalues, $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = 0$ and $\lambda_3 = -2$. The eigenvalue 0 has algebraic and geometric multiplicity 2, and the eigenvalue -2 has algebraic and geometric multiplicity 1. Thus, this matrix *is* diagonalizable, by the Diagonalization Theorem. (This agrees with our findings in Example 4.26.)

We conclude this section with an application of diagonalization to the computation of the powers of a matrix.

Example 4.29

Compute A^{10} if $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution In Example 4.21, we found that this matrix has eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = -1$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$, with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$. It follows (from any one of a number of theorems in this section) that A is diagonalizable and $P^{-1}AP = D$, where

$$P = [\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2] = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad D = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solving for A, we have $A = PDP^{-1}$ and, by Theorem 4.22(f), $A^n = PD^nP^{-1}$ for all $n \geq 1$.

Since

$$D^n = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^n = \begin{bmatrix} (-1)^n & 0 \\ 0 & 2^n \end{bmatrix}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} A^n = PD^nP^{-1} &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} (-1)^n & 0 \\ 0 & 2^n \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} (-1)^n & 0 \\ 0 & 2^n \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{3} & -\frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} \dfrac{2(-1)^n + 2^n}{3} & \dfrac{(-1)^{n+1} + 2^n}{3} \\ \dfrac{2(-1)^{n+1} + 2^{n+1}}{3} & \dfrac{(-1)^{n+2} + 2^{n+1}}{3} \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Since we were only asked for A^{10}, this is more than we needed. But now we can simply set $n = 10$ to find

$$A^{10} = \begin{bmatrix} \dfrac{2(-1)^{10} + 2^{10}}{3} & \dfrac{(-1)^{11} + 2^{10}}{3} \\ \dfrac{2(-1)^{11} + 2^{11}}{3} & \dfrac{(-1)^{12} + 2^{11}}{3} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 342 & 341 \\ 682 & 683 \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercises 4.4

In Exercises 1–4, show that A and B are not similar matrices.

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -4 & 6 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -1 \\ -5 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 4 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 5–7, a diagonalization of the matrix A is given in the form $P^{-1}AP = D$. List the eigenvalues of A and bases for the corresponding eigenspaces.

5. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 5 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{6} \\ \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & -\frac{2}{3} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

$= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{8} & \frac{1}{8} \\ -\frac{1}{4} & \frac{3}{4} & -\frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{5}{8} & -\frac{3}{8} & -\frac{3}{8} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \\ 3 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$
$= \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 8–15, determine whether A is diagonalizable and, if so, find an invertible matrix P and a diagonal matrix D such that $P^{-1}AP = D$.

8. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$ **9.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 4 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

10. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **11.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **13.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **15.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 16–23, use the method of Example 4.29 to compute the indicated power of the matrix.

16. $\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 6 \\ -3 & 5 \end{bmatrix}^9$ **17.** $\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 6 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}^{10}$

18. $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -3 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^{-6}$ **19.** $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^k$

20. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^8$ **21.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}^{2015}$

22. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}^k$ **23.** $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & -2 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^k$

In Exercises 24–29, find all (real) values of k for which A is diagonalizable.

24. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 0 & k \end{bmatrix}$ **25.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & k \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $A = \begin{bmatrix} k & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **27.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & k \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & k & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **29.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & k \\ 1 & 1 & k \\ 1 & 1 & k \end{bmatrix}$

30. Prove Theorem 4.21(c).

31. Prove Theorem 4.22(b).

32. Prove Theorem 4.22(c).

33. Prove Theorem 4.22(e).

34. Prove Theorem 4.22(f).

35. Prove Theorem 4.22(g).

36. If A and B are invertible matrices, show that AB and BA are similar.

37. Prove that if A and B are similar matrices, then $\operatorname{tr}(A) = \operatorname{tr}(B)$. [*Hint:* Find a way to use Exercise 45 from Section 3.2.]

In general, it is difficult to show that two matrices are similar. However, if two similar matrices are diagonalizable, the task becomes easier. In Exercises 38–41, show that A and B are similar by showing that they are similar to the same diagonal matrix. Then find an invertible matrix P such that $P^{-1}AP = B$.

38. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

39. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -3 \\ 4 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -6 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$

40. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -5 \\ 1 & 2 & -1 \\ 2 & 2 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$

41. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & -2 & 0 \\ 6 & 5 & 0 \\ 4 & 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$

42. Prove that if A is similar to B, then A^T is similar to B^T.

43. Prove that if A is diagonalizable, so is A^T.

44. Let A be an invertible matrix. Prove that if A is diagonalizable, so is A^{-1}.

45. Prove that if A is a diagonalizable matrix with only one eigenvalue λ, then A is of the form $A = \lambda I$. (Such a matrix is called a ***scalar matrix.***)

46. Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices, each with n distinct eigenvalues. Prove that A and B have the same eigenvectors if and only if $AB = BA$.

47. Let A and B be similar matrices. Prove that the algebraic multiplicities of the eigenvalues of A and B are the same.

48. Let A and B be similar matrices. Prove that the geometric multiplicities of the eigenvalues of A and B are the same. [*Hint:* Show that, if $B = P^{-1}AP$, then every eigenvector of B is of the form $P^{-1}\mathbf{v}$ for some eigenvector $\mathbf{v}$ of A.]

49. Prove that if A is a diagonalizable matrix such that every eigenvalue of A is either 0 or 1, then A is idempotent (that is, $A^2 = A$).

50. Let A be a nilpotent matrix (that is, $A^m = O$ for some $m > 1$). Prove that if A is diagonalizable, then A must be the zero matrix.

51. Suppose that A is a 6×6 matrix with characteristic polynomial $c_A(\lambda) = (1 + \lambda)(1 - \lambda)^2(2 - \lambda)^3$.

(a) Prove that it is not possible to find three linearly independent vectors $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3$ in $\mathbb{R}^6$ such that $A\mathbf{v}_1 = \mathbf{v}_1, A\mathbf{v}_2 = \mathbf{v}_2$, and $A\mathbf{v}_3 = \mathbf{v}_3$.

(b) If A is diagonalizable, what are the dimensions of the eigenspaces E_{-1}, E_1, and E_2?

52. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Prove that A is diagonalizable if $(a - d)^2 + 4bc > 0$ and is not diagonalizable if $(a - d)^2 + 4bc < 0$.

(b) Find two examples to demonstrate that if $(a - d)^2 + 4bc = 0$, then A may or may not be diagonalizable.

4.5 Iterative Methods for Computing Eigenvalues

At this point, the only method we have for computing the eigenvalues of a matrix is to solve the characteristic equation. However, there are several problems with this method that render it impractical in all but small examples. The first problem is that it depends on the computation of a determinant, which is a very time-consuming process for large matrices. The second problem is that the characteristic equation is a polynomial equation, and there are no formulas for solving polynomial equations of degree higher than 4 (polynomials of degrees 2, 3, and 4 can be solved using the quadratic formula and its analogues). Thus, we are forced to *approximate* eigenvalues in most practical problems. Unfortunately, methods for approximating the roots of a polynomial are quite sensitive to roundoff error and are therefore unreliable.

Instead, we bypass the characteristic polynomial altogether and take a different approach, approximating an eigenvector first and then using this eigenvector to find the corresponding eigenvalue. In this section, we will explore several variations on one such method that is based on a simple iterative technique.

In 1824, the Norwegian mathematician Niels Henrik Abel (1802–1829) proved that a general fifth-degree (quintic) polynomial equation is not *solvable by radicals;* that is, there is no formula for its roots in terms of its coefficients that uses only the operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and taking nth roots. In a paper written in 1830 and published posthumously in 1846, the French mathematician Evariste Galois (1811–1832) gave a more complete theory that established conditions under which an arbitrary polynomial equation can be solved by radicals. Galois's work was instrumental in establishing the branch of algebra called *group theory*; his approach to polynomial equations is now known as *Galois theory*.

The Power Method

The power method applies to an $n \times n$ matrix that has a ***dominant eigenvalue*** λ_1—that is, an eigenvalue that is larger in absolute value than all of the other eigenvalues. For example, if a matrix has eigenvalues $-4, -3, 1$, and 3, then -4 is the dominant eigenvalue, since $4 = |-4| > |-3| \geq |3| \geq |1|$. On the other hand, a matrix with eigenvalues $-4, -3, 3$, and 4 has no dominant eigenvalue.

The power method proceeds iteratively to produce a sequence of scalars that converges to λ_1 and a sequence of vectors that converges to the corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{v}_1$, the ***dominant eigenvector.*** For simplicity, we will assume that the matrix A is diagonalizable. The following theorem is the basis for the power method.

Theorem 4.28 Let A be an $n \times n$ diagonalizable matrix with dominant eigenvalue λ_1. Then there exists a nonzero vector $\mathbf{x}_0$ such that the sequence of vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ defined by

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = A\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_2 = A\mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_3 = A\mathbf{x}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{x}_k = A\mathbf{x}_{k-1}, \ldots$$

approaches a dominant eigenvector of A.

Proof We may assume that the eigenvalues of A have been labeled so that

$$|\lambda_1| > |\lambda_2| \geq |\lambda_3| \geq \cdots \geq |\lambda_n|$$

Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$ be the corresponding eigenvectors. Since $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$ are linearly independent (why?), they form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^n$. Consequently, we can write $\mathbf{x}_0$ as a linear combination of these eigenvectors—say,

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{v}_n$$

Now $\mathbf{x}_1 = A\mathbf{x}_0$, $\mathbf{x}_2 = A\mathbf{x}_1 = A(A\mathbf{x}_0) = A^2\mathbf{x}_0$, $\mathbf{x}_3 = A\mathbf{x}_2 = A(A^2\mathbf{x}_0) = A^3\mathbf{x}_0$, and, generally,

$$\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0 \quad \text{for } k \geq 1$$

As we saw in Example 4.21,

$$\begin{aligned} A^k\mathbf{x}_0 &= c_1\lambda_1^k\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_2^k\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n\lambda_n^k\mathbf{v}_n \\ &= \lambda_1^k\left(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}\right)^k\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n\left(\frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1}\right)^k\mathbf{v}_n\right) \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

where we have used the fact that $\lambda_1 \neq 0$.

The fact that λ_1 is the dominant eigenvalue means that each of the fractions $\lambda_2/\lambda_1, \lambda_3/\lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n/\lambda_1$, is less than 1 in absolute value. Thus,

$$\left(\frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1}\right)^k, \left(\frac{\lambda_3}{\lambda_1}\right)^k, \ldots, \left(\frac{\lambda_n}{\lambda_1}\right)^k$$

all go to zero as $k \to \infty$. It follows that

$$\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0 \to \lambda_1^k c_1\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \text{as } k \to \infty \tag{2}$$

Now, since $\lambda_1 \neq 0$ and $\mathbf{v}_1 \neq \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{x}_k$ is approaching a *nonzero* multiple of $\mathbf{v}_1$ (that is, an eigenvector corresponding to λ_1) *provided* $c_1 \neq 0$. (This is the required condition on the initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$: It must have a nonzero component c_1 in the direction of the dominant eigenvector $\mathbf{v}_1$.)

Example 4.30

Approximate the dominant eigenvector of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ using the method of Theorem 4.28.

Solution We will take $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ as the initial vector. Then

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = A\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = A\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

We continue in this fashion to obtain the values of $\mathbf{x}_k$ in Table 4.1.

Table 4.1

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\2\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}3\\2\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}5\\6\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}11\\10\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}21\\22\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}43\\42\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}85\\86\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}171\\170\end{bmatrix}$
r_k	—	0.50	1.50	0.83	1.10	0.95	1.02	0.99	1.01
l_k	—	1.00	3.00	1.67	2.20	1.91	2.05	1.98	2.01

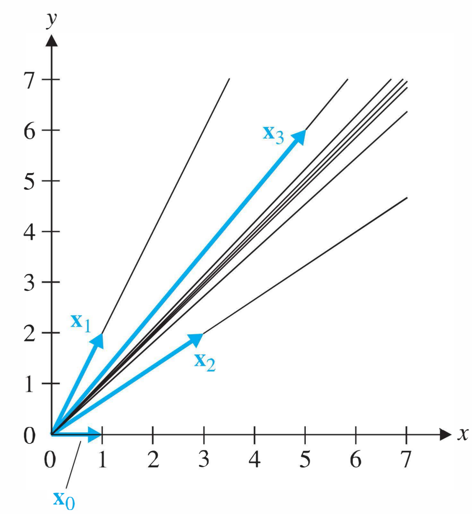


Figure 4.14

Figure 4.14 shows what is happening geometrically. We know that the eigenspace for the dominant eigenvector will have dimension 1. (Why? See Exercise 46.) Therefore, it is a line through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^2$. The first few iterates $\mathbf{x}_k$ are shown along with the directions they determine. It appears as though the iterates are converging on the line whose direction vector is $\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix}$. To confirm that this is the dominant eigenvector we seek, we need only observe that the ratio r_k of the first to the second component of $\mathbf{x}_k$ gets very close to 1 as k increases. The second line in the body of Table 4.1 gives these values, and you can see clearly that r_k is indeed approaching 1. We deduce that a dominant eigenvector of A is $\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix}$.

Once we have found a dominant eigenvector, how can we find the corresponding dominant eigenvalue? One approach is to observe that if an $\mathbf{x}_k$ is approximately a dominant eigenvector of A for the dominant eigenvalue λ_1, then

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k \approx \lambda_1\mathbf{x}_k$$

It follows that the ratio l_k of the first component of $\mathbf{x}_{k+1}$ to that of $\mathbf{x}_k$ will approach λ_1 as k increases. Table 4.1 gives the values of l_k, and you can see that they are approaching 2, which is the dominant eigenvalue.

There is a drawback to the method of Example 4.30: The components of the iterates $\mathbf{x}_k$ get very large very quickly and can cause significant roundoff errors. To avoid this drawback, we can multiply each iterate by some scalar that reduces the magnitude of its components. Since scalar multiples of the iterates $\mathbf{x}_k$ will still converge to a dominant eigenvector, this approach is acceptable. There are various ways to accomplish it. One is to normalize each $\mathbf{x}_k$ by dividing it by $\|\mathbf{x}_k\|$ (i.e., to make each iterate a *unit* vector). An easier method—and the one we will use—is to divide each $\mathbf{x}_k$ by the component with the maximum absolute value, so that the largest component is now 1. This method is called ***scaling.*** Thus, if m_k denotes the component of $\mathbf{x}_k$ with the maximum absolute value, we will replace $\mathbf{x}_k$ by $\mathbf{y}_k = (1/m_k)\mathbf{x}_k$.

We illustrate this approach with the calculations from Example 4.30. For $\mathbf{x}_0$, there is nothing to do, since $m_0 = 1$. Hence,

$$\mathbf{y}_0 = \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We then compute $\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$ as before, but now we scale with $m_1 = 2$ to get

$$\mathbf{y}_1 = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\mathbf{x}_1 = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now the calculations change. We take

$$\mathbf{x}_2 = A\mathbf{y}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and scale to get

$$\mathbf{y}_2 = \left(\frac{1}{1.5}\right)\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.67 \end{bmatrix}$$

The next few calculations are summarized in Table 4.2.

You can now see clearly that the sequence of vectors $\mathbf{y}_k$ is converging to $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, a dominant eigenvector. Moreover, the sequence of scalars m_k converges to the corresponding dominant eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 2$.

Table 4.2

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.67 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.83 \\ 1.67 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.91 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.95 \\ 1.91 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.98 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.99 \\ 1.98 \end{bmatrix}$
$\mathbf{y}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.67 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.83 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.91 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.95 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.98 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.99 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0.99 \end{bmatrix}$
m_k	1	2	1.5	2	1.83	2	1.95	2	1.99

This method, called the ***power method,*** is summarized below.

The Power Method

Let A be a diagonalizable $n \times n$ matrix with a corresponding dominant eigenvalue λ_1.

1. Let $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{y}_0$ be any initial vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$ whose largest component is 1.
2. Repeat the following steps for $k = 1, 2, \ldots$:
   (a) Compute $\mathbf{x}_k = A\mathbf{y}_{k-1}$.
   (b) Let m_k be the component of $\mathbf{x}_k$ with the largest absolute value.
   (c) Set $\mathbf{y}_k = (1/m_k)\mathbf{x}_k$.

For most choices of $\mathbf{x}_0$, m_k converges to the dominant eigenvalue λ_1 and $\mathbf{y}_k$ converges to a dominant eigenvector.

Example 4.31

Use the power method to approximate the dominant eigenvalue and a dominant eigenvector of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 & -6 \\ -4 & 12 & -12 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution Taking as our initial vector

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

we compute the entries in Table 4.3.

You can see that the vectors $\mathbf{y}_k$ are approaching $\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.50 \end{bmatrix}$ and the scalars m_k are approaching 16. This suggests that they are, respectively, a dominant eigenvector and the dominant eigenvalue of A.

Remarks

- If the initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$ has a zero component in the direction of the dominant eigenvector $\mathbf{v}_1$ (i.e., if $c = 0$ in the proof of Theorem 4.28), then the power method

Table 4.3

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ -4 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -9.33 \\ -19.33 \\ 11.67 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 8.62 \\ 17.31 \\ -9.00 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 8.12 \\ 16.25 \\ -8.20 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 8.03 \\ 16.05 \\ -8.04 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 8.01 \\ 16.01 \\ -8.01 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 8.00 \\ 16.00 \\ -8.00 \end{bmatrix}$
$\mathbf{y}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -0.17 \\ -0.67 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.48 \\ 1 \\ -0.60 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.52 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.50 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.50 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.50 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 0.50 \\ 1 \\ -0.50 \end{bmatrix}$
m_k	1	6	-19.33	17.31	16.25	16.05	16.01	16.00

will not converge to a dominant eigenvector. However, it is quite likely that during the calculation of the subsequent iterates, at some point roundoff error will produce an $\mathbf{x}_k$ with a nonzero component in the direction of $\mathbf{v}_1$. The power method will then start to converge to a multiple of $\mathbf{v}_1$. (This is one instance where roundoff errors actually help!)

- The power method still works when there is a *repeated* dominant eigenvalue, or even when the matrix is not diagonalizable, under certain conditions. Details may be found in most modern textbooks on numerical analysis. (See Exercises 21–24.)
- For some matrices the power method converges rapidly to a dominant eigenvector, while for others the convergence may be quite slow. A careful look at the proof of Theorem 4.28 reveals why. Since $|\lambda_2/\lambda_1| \geq |\lambda_3/\lambda_1| \geq \cdots \geq |\lambda_n/\lambda_1|$, if $|\lambda_2/\lambda_1|$ is close to zero, then $(\lambda_2/\lambda_1)^k, \ldots, (\lambda_n/\lambda_1)^k$ will all approach zero rapidly. Equation (2) then shows that $\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0$ will approach $\lambda_1^k c_1\mathbf{v}_1$ rapidly too.

As an illustration, consider Example 4.31. The eigenvalues are 16, 4, and 2, so $\lambda_2/\lambda_1 = 4/16 = 0.25$. Since $0.25^7 \approx 0.00006$, by the seventh iteration we should have close to four-decimal-place accuracy. This is exactly what we saw.

- There is an alternative way to estimate the dominant eigenvalue λ_1 of a matrix A in conjunction with the power method. First, observe that if $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda_1\mathbf{x}$, then

$$\frac{(A\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \frac{(\lambda_1\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{x}}{\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \frac{\lambda_1(\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x})}{\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \lambda_1$$

The expression $R(\mathbf{x}) = ((A\mathbf{x})\cdot\mathbf{x})/(\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x})$ is called a ***Rayleigh quotient.*** As we compute the iterates $\mathbf{x}_k$, the successive Rayleigh quotients $R(\mathbf{x}_k)$ should approach λ_1. In fact, for symmetric matrices, the Rayleigh quotient method is about twice as fast as the scaling factor method. (See Exercises 17–20.)

John William Strutt (1842–1919), Baron Rayleigh, was a British physicist who made major contributions to the fields of acoustics and optics. In 1871, he gave the first correct explanation of why the sky is blue, and in 1895, he discovered the inert gas argon, for which discovery he received the Nobel Prize in 1904. Rayleigh was president of the Royal Society from 1905 to 1908 and became chancellor of Cambridge University in 1908. He used Rayleigh quotients in an 1873 paper on vibrating systems and later in his book *The Theory of Sound.*

The Shifted Power Method and the Inverse Power Method

The power method can help us approximate the *dominant* eigenvalue of a matrix, but what should we do if we want the other eigenvalues? Fortunately, there are several variations of the power method that can be applied.

The ***shifted power method*** uses the observation that, if λ is an eigenvalue of A, then $\lambda - \alpha$ is an eigenvalue of $A - \alpha I$ for any scalar α (Exercise 22 in Section 4.3). Thus, if λ_1 is the dominant eigenvalue of A, the eigenvalues of $A - \lambda_1 I$ will be 0, $\lambda_2 - \lambda_1, \lambda_3 - \lambda_1, \ldots, \lambda_n - \lambda_1$. We can then apply the power method to compute $\lambda_2 - \lambda_1$, and from this value we can find λ_2. Repeating this process will allow us to compute all of the eigenvalues.

Example 4.32

Use the shifted power method to compute the second eigenvalue of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ from Example 4.30.

Solution In Example 4.30, we found that $\lambda_1 = 2$. To find λ_2, we apply the power method to

$$A - 2I = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

We take $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, but other choices will also work. The calculations are summarized in Table 4.4.

Table 4.4

k	0	1	2	3	4
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1.5 \\ -3 \end{bmatrix}$
$\mathbf{y}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} -0.5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$
m_k	1	2	-3	-3	-3

Our choice of $\mathbf{x}_0$ has produced the eigenvalue -3 after only two iterations. Therefore, $\lambda_2 - \lambda_1 = -3$, so $\lambda_2 = \lambda_1 - 3 = 2 - 3 = -1$ is the second eigenvalue of A.

Recall from property (b) of Theorem 4.18 that if A is invertible with eigenvalue λ, then A^{-1} has eigenvalue $1/\lambda$. Therefore, if we apply the power method to A^{-1}, its dominant eigenvalue will be the *reciprocal of the smallest* (in magnitude) eigenvalue of A. To use this ***inverse power method,*** we follow the same steps as in the power method, except that in step 2(a) we compute $\mathbf{x}_k = A^{-1}\mathbf{y}_{k-1}$. (In practice, we don't actually compute A^{-1} explicitly; instead, we solve the equivalent equation $A\mathbf{x}_k = \mathbf{y}_{k-1}$ for $\mathbf{x}_k$ using Gaussian elimination. This turns out to be faster.)

Example 4.33

Use the inverse power method to compute the second eigenvalue of the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ from Example 4.30.

Solution We start, as in Example 4.30, with $\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{y}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. To solve $A\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{y}_0$, we use row reduction:

$$[A \mid \mathbf{y}_0] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, $\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, so $\mathbf{y}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. Then we get $\mathbf{x}_2$ from $A\mathbf{x}_2 = \mathbf{y}_1$:

$$[A \mid \mathbf{y}_1] = \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 0.5 \\ 0 & 1 & -0.5 \end{array}\right]$$

Hence, $\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 \\ -0.5 \end{bmatrix}$, and, by scaling, we get $\mathbf{y}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$. Continuing, we get the values shown in Table 4.5, where the values m_k are converging to -1. Thus, the smallest eigenvalue of A is the reciprocal of -1 (which is also -1). This agrees with our previous finding in Example 4.32.

Table 4.5

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-0.5\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.5\\1.5\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-0.83\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-1.1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-0.95\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-1.02\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-0.99\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.5\\-1.01\end{bmatrix}$
$\mathbf{y}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\-1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.33\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.6\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.45\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.52\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.49\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.51\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.50\\1\end{bmatrix}$
m_k	1	1	0.5	1.5	-0.83	-1.1	-0.95	-1.02	-0.99	-1.01

The Shifted Inverse Power Method

The most versatile of the variants of the power method is one that combines the two just mentioned. It can be used to find an approximation for *any* eigenvalue, provided we have a close approximation to that eigenvalue. In other words, if a scalar α is given, the ***shifted inverse power method*** will find the eigenvalue λ of A that is closest to α.

If λ is an eigenvalue of A and $\alpha \neq \lambda$, then $A - \alpha I$ is invertible if α is not an eigenvalue of A and $1/(\lambda - \alpha)$ is an eigenvalue of $(A - \alpha I)^{-1}$. (See Exercise 45.) If α is close to λ, then $1/(\lambda - \alpha)$ will be a dominant eigenvalue of $(A - \alpha I)^{-1}$. In fact, if α is *very* close to λ, then $1/(\lambda - \alpha)$ will be *much* bigger in magnitude than the next eigenvalue, so (as noted in the third Remark following Example 4.31) the convergence will be very rapid.

Example 4.34 Use the shifted inverse power method to approximate the eigenvalue of

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 & -6 \\ -4 & 12 & -12 \\ -2 & -2 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

that is closest to 5.

Solution Shifting, we have

$$A - 5I = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 5 & -6 \\ -4 & 7 & -12 \\ -2 & -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now we apply the inverse power method with

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{y}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We solve $(A - 5I)\mathbf{x}_1 = \mathbf{y}_0$ for $\mathbf{x}_1$:

$$[A - 5I \mid \mathbf{y}_0] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} -5 & 5 & -6 & 1 \\ -4 & 7 & -12 & 1 \\ -2 & -2 & 5 & 1 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -0.61 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -0.88 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -0.39 \end{array}\right]$$

Table 4.6

k	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$\mathbf{x}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.61\\-0.88\\-0.39\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.41\\-0.69\\-0.35\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.47\\-0.89\\-0.44\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.49\\-0.95\\-0.48\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.50\\-0.98\\-0.49\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.50\\-0.99\\-0.50\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}-0.50\\-1.00\\-0.50\end{bmatrix}$
$\mathbf{y}_k$	$\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\\1\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.69\\1.00\\0.45\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.59\\1.00\\0.51\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.53\\1.00\\0.50\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.51\\1.00\\0.50\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.50\\1.00\\0.50\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.50\\1.00\\0.50\end{bmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix}0.50\\1.00\\0.50\end{bmatrix}$
m_k	1	-0.88	-0.69	-0.89	-0.95	-0.98	-0.99	-1.00

This gives

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix}-0.61\\-0.88\\-0.39\end{bmatrix}, \quad m_1 = -0.88, \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{y}_1 = \frac{1}{m_1}\mathbf{x}_1 = -\frac{1}{0.88}\begin{bmatrix}-0.61\\-0.88\\-0.39\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix}0.69\\1\\0.45\end{bmatrix}$$

We continue in this fashion to obtain the values in Table 4.6, from which we deduce that the eigenvalue of A closest to 5 is approximately $5 + 1/m_7 \approx 5 + 1/(-1) = 4$, which, in fact, is exact.

The power method and its variants represent only one approach to the computation of eigenvalues. In Chapter 5, we will discuss another method based on the QR factorization of a matrix. For a more complete treatment of this topic, you can consult almost any textbook on numerical methods.

Gerschgorin's Theorem

a + bi

We owe this theorem to the Russian mathematician S. Gerschgorin (1901–1933), who stated it in 1931. It did not receive much attention until 1949, when it was resurrected by Olga Taussky-Todd in a note she published in the *American Mathematical Monthly.*

In this section, we have discussed several variations on the power method for approximating the eigenvalues of a matrix. All of these methods are iterative, and the speed with which they converge depends on the choice of initial vector. If only we had some "inside information" about the location of the eigenvalues of a given matrix, then we could make a judicious choice of the initial vector and perhaps speed up the convergence of the iterative process.

Fortunately, there is a way to estimate the location of the eigenvalues of any matrix. ***Gerschgorin's Disk Theorem*** states that the eigenvalues of a (real or complex) $n \times n$ matrix all lie inside the union of n circular disks in the complex plane.

Definition Let $A = [a_{ij}]$ be a (real or complex) $n \times n$ matrix, and let r_i denote the sum of the absolute values of the off-diagonal entries in the ith row of A; that is, $r_i = \sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}|$. The ***ith Gerschgorin disk*** is the circular disk D_i in the complex plane with center a_{ii} and radius r_i. That is,

$$D_i = \{z \text{ in } \mathbb{C} : |z - a_{ii}| \leq r_i\}$$

Olga Taussky-Todd (1906–1995) was born in Olmütz in the Austro-Hungarian Empire (now Olmuac in the Czech Republic). She received her doctorate in number theory from the University of Vienna in 1930. During World War II, she worked for the National Physical Laboratory in London, where she investigated the problem of flutter in the wings of supersonic aircraft. Although the problem involved differential equations, the stability of an aircraft depended on the eigenvalues of a related matrix. Taussky-Todd remembered Gerschgorin's Theorem from her graduate studies in Vienna and was able to use it to simplify the otherwise laborious computations needed to determine the eigenvalues relevant to the flutter problem.

Taussky-Todd moved to the United States in 1947, and ten years later she became the first woman appointed to the California Institute of Technology. In her career, she produced over 200 publications and received numerous awards. She was instrumental in the development of the branch of mathematics now known as matrix theory.

Example 4.35

Sketch the Gerschgorin disks and the eigenvalues for the following matrices:

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution (a) The two Gerschgorin disks are centered at 2 and -3 with radii 1 and 2, respectively. The characteristic polynomial of A is $\lambda^2 + \lambda - 8$, so the eigenvalues are

$$\lambda = (-1 \pm \sqrt{1^2 - 4(-8)})/2 \approx 2.37, -3.37$$

Figure 4.15 shows that the eigenvalues are contained within the two Gerschgorin disks.

(b) The two Gerschgorin disks are centered at 1 and 3 with radii $|-3| = 3$ and 2, respectively. The characteristic polynomial of A is $\lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 9$, so the eigenvalues are

$$\lambda = (4 \pm \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(9)})/2 = 2 \pm i\sqrt{5} \approx 2 + 2.23i, 2 - 2.23i$$

Figure 4.16 plots the location of the eigenvalues relative to the Gerschgorin disks.

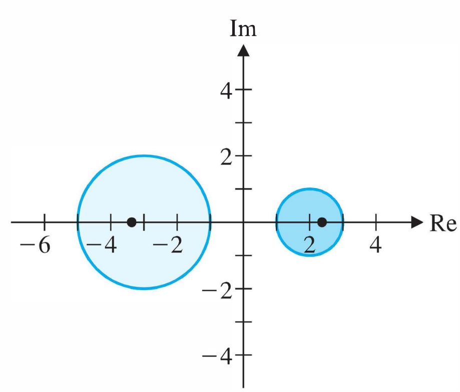


Figure 4.15

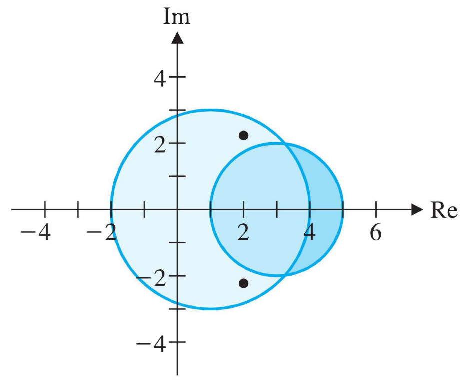


Figure 4.16

As Example 4.35 suggests, the eigenvalues of a matrix are contained within its Gerschgorin disks. The next theorem verifies that this is so.

Theorem 4.29 **Gerschgorin's Disk Theorem**

Let A be an $n \times n$ (real or complex) matrix. Then every eigenvalue of A is contained within a Gerschgorin disk.

Proof Let λ be an eigenvalue of A with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$. Let x_i be the entry of $\mathbf{x}$ with the largest absolute value—and hence nonzero. (Why?) Then $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, the ith row of which is

$$[a_{i1} \quad a_{i2} \cdots a_{in}]\begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = \lambda x_i \quad \text{or} \quad \sum_{j=1}^{n} a_{ij}x_j = \lambda x_i$$

Rearranging, we have

$$(\lambda - a_{ii})x_i = \sum_{j \neq i} a_{ij}x_j \quad \text{or} \quad \lambda - a_{ii} = \frac{\sum_{j \neq i} a_{ij}x_j}{x_i}$$

because $x_i \neq 0$. Taking absolute values and using properties of absolute value (see Appendix C), we obtain

$$|\lambda - a_{ii}| = \left| \frac{\sum_{j \neq i} a_{ij}x_j}{x_i} \right| = \frac{\left| \sum_{j \neq i} a_{ij}x_j \right|}{|x_i|} \leq \frac{\sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}x_j|}{|x_i|} = \frac{\sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}||x_j|}{|x_i|} \leq \sum_{j \neq i} |a_{ij}| = r_i$$

because $|x_j| \leq |x_i|$ for $j \neq i$.

This establishes that the eigenvalue λ is contained within the Gerschgorin disk centered at a_{ii} with radius r_i.

Remarks

- There is a corresponding version of the preceding theorem for Gerschgorin disks whose radii are the sum of the off-diagonal entries in the ith *column* of A.
- It can be shown that if k of the Gerschgorin disks are disjoint from the other disks, then exactly k eigenvalues are contained within the union of these k disks. In particular, if a single disk is disjoint from the other disks, then it must contain exactly one eigenvalue of the matrix. Example 4.35(a) illustrates this.
- Note that in Example 4.35(a), 0 is not contained in a Gerschgorin disk; that is, 0 is not an eigenvalue of A. Hence, without any further computation, we can deduce that the matrix A is invertible by Theorem 4.16. This observation is particularly useful when applied to larger matrices, because the Gerschgorin disks can be determined directly from the entries of the matrix.

Example 4.36

Consider the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 6 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 2 & 0 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$. Gerschgorin's Theorem tells us that the eigenvalues of A are contained within three disks centered at 2, 6, and 8 with radii 1, 1, and 2, respectively. See Figure 4.17(a). Because the first disk is disjoint from the other two, it must contain exactly one eigenvalue, by the second Remark after Theorem 4.29. Because the characteristic polynomial of A has real coefficients, if it has complex roots (i.e., eigenvalues of A), they must occur in conjugate pairs. (See Appendix D.) Hence there is a unique real eigenvalue between 1 and 3, and the union of the other two disks contains two (possibly complex) eigenvalues whose real parts lie between 5 and 10.

On the other hand, the first Remark after Theorem 4.29 tells us that the same three eigenvalues of A are contained in disks centered at 2, 6, and 8 with radii $\frac{5}{2}$, 1, and $\frac{1}{2}$, respectively. See Figure 4.17(b). These disks are mutually disjoint, so each contains a single (and hence real) eigenvalue. Combining these results, we deduce that A has three real eigenvalues, one in each of the intervals [1, 3], [5, 7], and [7.5, 8.5]. (Compute the actual eigenvalues of A to verify this.)

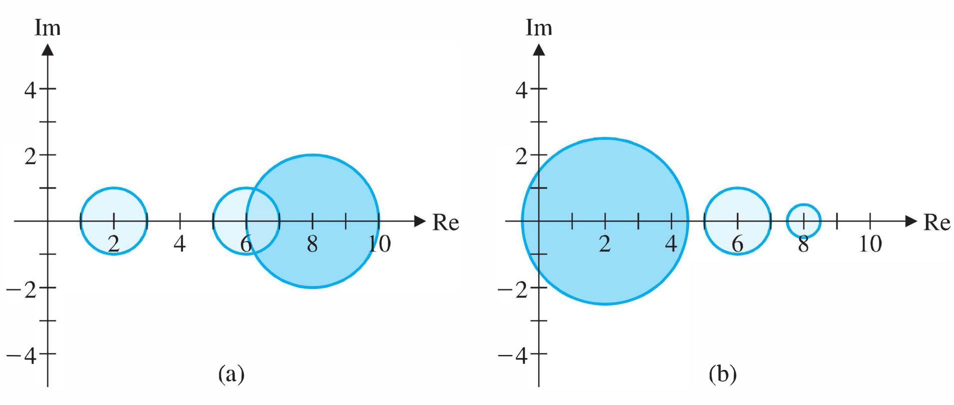


Figure 4.17

CAS

Exercises 4.5

In Exercises 1–4, a matrix A is given along with an iterate $\mathbf{x}_5$*, produced as in Example 4.30.*
(a) Use these data to approximate a dominant eigenvector whose first component is 1 and a corresponding dominant eigenvalue. (Use three-decimal-place accuracy.)
(b) Compare your approximate eigenvalue in part (a) with the actual dominant eigenvalue.

1. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 4443 \\ 11109 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 4 \\ -3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 7811 \\ -3904 \end{bmatrix}$

3. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 144 \\ 89 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 & 0.5 \\ 2.0 & 3.0 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} 60.625 \\ 239.500 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 5–8, a matrix A is given along with an iterate $\mathbf{x}_k$*, produced using the power method, as in Example 4.31. (a) Approximate the dominant eigenvalue and eigenvector by computing the corresponding* m_k *and* $\mathbf{y}_k$*. (b) Verify that you have approximated an eigenvalue and an eigenvector of A by comparing* $A\mathbf{y}_k$ *with* $m_k\mathbf{y}_k$*.*

5. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ -3 & 10 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_5 = \begin{bmatrix} -3.667 \\ 11.001 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} 5.530 \\ 1.470 \end{bmatrix}$

7. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 6 \\ -1 & 3 & 1 \\ 6 & 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_8 = \begin{bmatrix} 10.000 \\ 0.001 \\ 10.000 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -2 \\ 1 & 1 & -3 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_{10} = \begin{bmatrix} 3.415 \\ 2.914 \\ -1.207 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 9–14, use the power method to approximate the dominant eigenvalue and eigenvector of A. Use the given initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$*, the specified number of iterations k, and three-decimal-place accuracy.*

9. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 14 & 12 \\ 5 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, k = 5$

10. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 8 & -2 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, k = 6$

11. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 2 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, k = 6$

12. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3.5 & 1.5 \\ 1.5 & -0.5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, k = 6$

13. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 9 & 4 & 8 \\ 4 & 15 & -4 \\ 8 & -4 & 9 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, k = 5$

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, k = 6$

In Exercises 15 and 16, use the power method to approximate the dominant eigenvalue and eigenvector of A to two-decimal-place accuracy. Choose any initial vector you like (but keep the first Remark after Example 4.31 in mind!) and apply the method until the digit in the second decimal place of the iterates stops changing.

15. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

16. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 6 & -6 \\ 2 & 0 & -2 \\ -6 & 6 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$

Rayleigh quotients are described on page 316. In Exercises 17–20, to see how the Rayleigh quotient method approximates the dominant eigenvalue more rapidly than the ordinary power method, compute the successive Rayleigh quotients $R(\mathbf{x}_i)$ *for* $i = 1, \ldots, k$ *for the matrix A in the given exercise.*

17. Exercise 11

18. Exercise 12

19. Exercise 13

20. Exercise 14

The matrices in Exercises 21–24 either are not diagonalizable or do not have a dominant eigenvalue (or both). Apply the power method anyway with the given initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$*, performing eight iterations in each case. Compute the exact eigenvalues and eigenvectors and explain what is happening.*

21. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

22. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

23. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

24. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 25–28, the power method does not converge to the dominant eigenvalue and eigenvector. Verify this, using the given initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$. Compute the exact eigenvalues and eigenvectors and explain what is happening.

25. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

26. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

27. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 1 & 7 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 7 & 1 & -5 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

28. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 29–32, apply the shifted power method to approximate the second eigenvalue of the matrix A in the given exercise. Use the given initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$, k iterations, and three-decimal-place accuracy.

29. Exercise 9

30. Exercise 10

31. Exercise 13

32. Exercise 14

In Exercises 33–36, apply the inverse power method to approximate, for the matrix A in the given exercise, the eigenvalue that is smallest in magnitude. Use the given initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$, k iterations, and three-decimal-place accuracy.

33. Exercise 9

34. Exercise 10

35. Exercise 7, $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, k = 5$

36. Exercise 14

In Exercises 37–40, use the shifted inverse power method to approximate, for the matrix A in the given exercise, the eigenvalue closest to α.

37. Exercise 9, $\alpha = 0$

38. Exercise 12, $\alpha = 0$

39. Exercise 7, $\alpha = 5$

40. Exercise 13, $\alpha = -2$

Exercise 32 in Section 4.3 demonstrates that every polynomial is (plus or minus) the characteristic polynomial of its own companion matrix. Therefore, the roots of a polynomial p are the eigenvalues of $C(p)$. Hence, we can use the methods of this section to approximate the roots of any polynomial when exact results are not readily available. In Exercises 41–44, apply the shifted inverse power method to the companion matrix $C(p)$ of p to approximate the root of p closest to α to three decimal places.

41. $p(x) = x^2 + 2x - 2, \alpha = 0$

42. $p(x) = x^2 - x - 3, \alpha = 2$

43. $p(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + 1, \alpha = 0$

44. $p(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + x + 1, \alpha = 5$

45. Let λ be an eigenvalue of A with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$. If $\alpha \neq \lambda$ and α is not an eigenvalue of A, show that $1/(\lambda - \alpha)$ is an eigenvalue of $(A - \alpha I)^{-1}$ with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$. (Why must $A - \alpha I$ be invertible?)

46. If A has a dominant eigenvalue λ_1, prove that the eigenspace E_{λ_1} is one-dimensional.

a + bi *In Exercises 47–50, draw the Gerschgorin disks for the given matrix.*

47. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 4 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 1 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$

48. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -i & 0 \\ 1 & 2i & 1+i \\ 0 & 1 & -2i \end{bmatrix}$

49. $\begin{bmatrix} 4-3i & i & 2 & -2 \\ i & -1+i & 0 & 0 \\ 1+i & -i & 5+6i & 2i \\ 1 & -2i & 2i & -5-5i \end{bmatrix}$

50. $\begin{bmatrix} 2 & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{4} & 4 & \frac{1}{4} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{6} & 6 & \frac{1}{6} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{8} & 8 \end{bmatrix}$

51. A square matrix is ***strictly diagonally dominant*** if the absolute value of each diagonal entry is greater than the sum of the absolute values of the remaining entries in that row. (See Section 2.5.) Use Gerschgorin's Disk Theorem to prove that a strictly diagonally dominant matrix must be invertible. [*Hint:* See the third Remark after Theorem 4.29.]

52. If A is an $n \times n$ matrix, let $\|A\|$ denote the maximum of the sums of the absolute values of the rows of A; that is, $\|A\| = \max_{1 \le i \le n} \left(\sum_{j=1}^{n} |a_{ij}| \right)$. (See Section 7.2.) Prove that if λ is an eigenvalue of A, then $|\lambda| \le \|A\|$.

53. Let λ be an eigenvalue of a stochastic matrix A (see Section 3.7). Prove that $|\lambda| \le 1$. [*Hint:* Apply Exercise 52 to A^T.]

54. Prove that the eigenvalues of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 5 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 3 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{3}{4} & 7 \end{bmatrix}$ are all real, and locate each of these eigenvalues within a closed interval on the real line.

4.6 Applications and the Perron-Frobenius Theorem

In this section, we will explore several applications of eigenvalues and eigenvectors. We begin by revisiting some applications from previous chapters.

Markov Chains

Section 3.7 introduced Markov chains and made several observations about the transition (stochastic) matrices associated with them. In particular, we observed that if P is the transition matrix of a Markov chain, then P has a steady state vector $\mathbf{x}$. That is, there is a vector $\mathbf{x}$ such that $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$. This is equivalent to saying that P has 1 as an eigenvalue. We are now in a position to prove this fact.

Theorem 4.30 If P is the $n \times n$ transition matrix of a Markov chain, then 1 is an eigenvalue of P.

Proof Recall that every transition matrix is stochastic; hence, each of its columns sums to 1. Therefore, if $\mathbf{j}$ is a row vector consisting of n 1s, then $\mathbf{j}P = \mathbf{j}$. (See Exercise 13 in Section 3.7.) Taking transposes, we have

$$P^T\mathbf{j}^T = (\mathbf{j}P)^T = \mathbf{j}^T$$

which implies that $\mathbf{j}^T$ is an eigenvector of P^T with corresponding eigenvalue 1. By Exercise 19 in Section 4.3, P and P^T have the same eigenvalues, so 1 is also an eigenvalue of P.

In fact, much more is true. For most transition matrices, *every* eigenvalue λ satisfies $|\lambda| \leq 1$ and the eigenvalue 1 is *dominant;* that is, if $\lambda \neq 1$, then $|\lambda| < 1$. We need the following two definitions: A matrix is called ***positive*** if all of its entries are positive, and a square matrix is called ***regular*** if some power of it is positive. For example, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is positive but $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is not. However, B is regular, since $B^2 = \begin{bmatrix} 11 & 3 \\ 6 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ is positive.

Theorem 4.31 Let P be an $n \times n$ transition matrix with eigenvalue λ.

a. $|\lambda| \leq 1$
b. If P is regular and $\lambda \neq 1$, then $|\lambda| < 1$.

Proof As in Theorem 4.30, the trick to proving this theorem is to use the fact that P^T has the same eigenvalues as P.

(a) Let $\mathbf{x}$ be an eigenvector of P^T corresponding to λ and let x_k be the component of $\mathbf{x}$ with the largest absolute value m. Then $|x_i| \leq |x_k| = m$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$. Comparing the kth components of the equation $P^T\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, we have

$$p_{1k}x_1 + p_{2k}x_2 + \cdots + p_{nk}x_n = \lambda x_k$$

(Remember that the rows of P^T are the columns of P.) Taking absolute values, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} |\lambda| m = |\lambda||x_k| = |\lambda x_k| &= |p_{1k}x_1 + p_{2k}x_2 + \cdots + p_{nk}x_n| \\ &\le |p_{1k}x_1| + |p_{2k}x_2| + \cdots + |p_{nk}x_n| \\ &= p_{1k}|x_1| + p_{2k}|x_2| + \cdots + p_{nk}|x_n| \\ &\le p_{1k}m + p_{2k}m + \cdots + p_{nk}m \\ &= (p_{1k} + p_{2k} + \cdots + p_{nk})m = m \end{aligned} \tag{1}$$

The first inequality follows from the Triangle Inequality in $\mathbb{R}$, and the last equality comes from the fact that the rows of P^T sum to 1. Thus, $|\lambda| m \le m$. After dividing by m, we have $|\lambda| \le 1$, as desired.

(b) We will prove the equivalent implication: If $|\lambda| = 1$, then $\lambda = 1$. First, we show that it is true when P (and therefore P^T) is a positive matrix. If $|\lambda| = 1$, then all of the inequalities in Equations (1) are actually equalities. In particular,

$$p_{1k}|x_1| + p_{2k}|x_2| + \cdots + p_{nk}|x_n| = p_{1k}m + p_{2k}m + \cdots + p_{nk}m$$

Equivalently,

$$p_{1k}(m - |x_1|) + p_{2k}(m - |x_2|) + \cdots + p_{nk}(m - |x_n|) = 0 \tag{2}$$

Now, since P is positive, $p_{ik} > 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$. Also, $m - |x_i| \ge 0$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$. Therefore, each summand in Equation (2) must be zero, and this can happen only if $|x_i| = m$ for $i = 1, 2, \ldots, n$. Furthermore, we get equality in the Triangle Inequality in $\mathbb{R}$ if and only if all of the summands are positive or all are negative; in other words, the $p_{ik}x_i$'s all have the same sign. This implies that

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} m \\ m \\ \vdots \\ m \end{bmatrix} = m\mathbf{j}^T \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -m \\ -m \\ \vdots \\ -m \end{bmatrix} = -m\mathbf{j}^T$$

where $\mathbf{j}$ is a row vector of n 1s, as in Theorem 4.30. Thus, in either case, the eigenspace of P^T corresponding to λ is $E_\lambda = \text{span}(\mathbf{j}^T)$.

But, using the proof of Theorem 4.30, we see that $\mathbf{j}^T = P^T\mathbf{j}^T = \lambda\mathbf{j}^T$, and, comparing components, we find that $\lambda = 1$. This handles the case where P is positive.

If P is regular, then some power of P is positive—say, P^k. It follows that P^{k+1} must also be positive. (Why?) Since λ^k and λ^{k+1} are eigenvalues of P^k and P^{k+1}, respectively, by Theorem 4.18, we have just proved that $\lambda^k = \lambda^{k+1} = 1$. Therefore, $\lambda^k(\lambda - 1) = 0$, which implies that $\lambda = 1$, since $\lambda = 0$ is impossible if $|\lambda| = 1$.

We can now explain some of the behavior of Markov chains that we observed in Chapter 3. In Example 3.64, we saw that for the transition matrix

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.7 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}$$

and initial state vector $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.6 \\ 0.4 \end{bmatrix}$, the state vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ converge to the vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$, a steady state vector for P (i.e., $P\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$). We are going to prove that for regular

Markov chains, this always happens. Indeed, we will prove much more. Recall that the state vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ satisfy $\mathbf{x}_k = P^k\mathbf{x}_0$. Let's investigate what happens to the powers P^k as P becomes large.

Example 4.37

The transition matrix $P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.7 & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}$ has characteristic equation

$$0 = \det(P - \lambda I) = \begin{vmatrix} 0.7 - \lambda & 0.2 \\ 0.3 & 0.8 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = \lambda^2 - 1.5\lambda + 0.5 = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 0.5)$$

so its eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = 1$ and $\lambda_2 = 0.5$. (Note that, thanks to Theorems 4.30 and 4.31, we knew in advance that 1 would be an eigenvalue and the other eigenvalue would be less than 1 in absolute value. However, we still needed to compute λ_2.) The eigenspaces are

$$E_1 = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad E_{0.5} = \text{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

So, taking $Q = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$, we know that $Q^{-1}PQ = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix} = D$. From the method used in Example 4.29 in Section 4.4, we have

$$P^k = QD^kQ^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1^k & 0 \\ 0 & (0.5)^k \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1}$$

Now, as $k \to \infty$, $(0.5)^k \to 0$, so

$$D^k \to \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad P^k \to \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 & 0.4 \\ 0.6 & 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$$

(Observe that the columns of this "limit matrix" are identical and each is a steady state vector for P.) Now let $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ be any initial probability vector (i.e., $a + b = 1$). Then

$$\mathbf{x}_k = P^k\mathbf{x}_0 \to \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 & 0.4 \\ 0.6 & 0.6 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4a + 0.4b \\ 0.6a + 0.6b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$$

Not only does this explain what we saw in Example 3.64, it also tells us that the state vectors $\mathbf{x}_k$ will converge to the steady state vector $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.4 \\ 0.6 \end{bmatrix}$ for *any* choice of $\mathbf{x}_0$!

There is nothing special about Example 4.37. The next theorem shows that this type of behavior *always* occurs with regular transition matrices. Before we can present the theorem, we need the following lemma.

Lemma 4.32 Let P be a regular $n \times n$ transition matrix. If P is diagonalizable, then the dominant eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 1$ has algebraic multiplicity 1.

Proof The eigenvalues of P and P^T are the same. From the proof of Theorem 4.31(b), $\lambda_1 = 1$ has geometric multiplicity 1 as an eigenvalue of P^T. Since P is diagonalizable, so is P^T, by Exercise 41 in Section 4.4. Therefore, the eigenvalue $\lambda_1 = 1$ has algebraic multiplicity 1, by the Diagonalization Theorem.

Theorem 4.33 Let P be a regular $n \times n$ transition matrix. Then as $k \to \infty$, P^k approaches an $n \times n$ matrix L whose columns are identical, each equal to the same vector $\mathbf{x}$. This vector $\mathbf{x}$ is a steady state probability vector for P.

See *Finite Markov Chains* by J. G. Kemeny and J. L. Snell (New York: Springer-Verlag, 1976).

Proof To simplify the proof, we will consider only the case where P is diagonalizable. The theorem is true, however, without this assumption.

We diagonalize P as $Q^{-1}PQ = D$ or, equivalently, $P = QDQ^{-1}$, where

$$D = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix}$$

From Theorems 4.30 and 4.31, we know that each eigenvalue λ_i either is 1 or satisfies $|\lambda_i| < 1$. Hence, as $k \to \infty$, λ_i^k approaches 1 or 0 for $i = 1, \ldots, n$. It follows that D^k approaches a diagonal matrix—say, D^*—each of whose diagonal entries is 1 or 0. Thus, $P^k = QD^kQ^{-1}$ approaches $L = QD^*Q^{-1}$. We write

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} P^k = L$$

Observe that

$$PL = P \lim_{k\to\infty} P^k = \lim_{k\to\infty} PP^k = \lim_{k\to\infty} P^{k+1} = L$$

We are taking some liberties with the notion of a limit. Nevertheless, these steps should be intuitively clear. Rigorous proofs follow from the properties of limits, which you may have encountered in a calculus course. Rather than get sidetracked with a discussion of matrix limits, we will omit the proofs.

Therefore, each column of L is an eigenvector of P corresponding to $\lambda_1 = 1$. To see that each of these columns is a *probability* vector (i.e., L is a stochastic matrix), we need only observe that, if $\mathbf{j}$ is the row vector with n 1s, then

$$\mathbf{j}L = \mathbf{j} \lim_{k\to\infty} P^k = \lim_{k\to\infty} \mathbf{j}P^k = \lim_{k\to\infty} \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j}$$

since P^k is a stochastic matrix, by Exercise 14 in Section 3.7. Exercise 13 in Section 3.7 now implies that L is stochastic.

We need only show that the columns of L are identical. The ith column of L is just $L\mathbf{e}_i$, where $\mathbf{e}_i$ is the ith standard basis vector. Let $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_n$ be eigenvectors of P forming a basis of $\mathbb{R}^n$, with $\mathbf{v}_1$ corresponding to $\lambda_1 = 1$. Write

$$\mathbf{e}_i = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n\mathbf{v}_n$$

for scalars $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_n$. Then, by Theorem 4.19,

$$P^k\mathbf{e}_i = c_1 1^k \mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\lambda_2^k\mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + c_n\lambda_n^k\mathbf{v}_n$$

By Lemma 4.32, $\lambda_j \neq 1$ for $j \neq 1$, so, by Theorem 4.31(b), $|\lambda_j| < 1$ for $j \neq 1$. Hence, $\lambda_j^k \to 0$ as $k \to \infty$, for $j \neq 1$. It follows that

$$L\mathbf{e}_i = \lim_{k\to\infty} P^k\mathbf{e}_i = c_1\mathbf{v}_1$$

In other words, column i of L is an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda_1 = 1$. But we have shown that the columns of L are probability vectors, so $L\mathbf{e}_i$ is the *unique* multiple $\mathbf{x}$ of $\mathbf{v}_1$ whose components sum to 1. Since this is true for each column of L, it implies that all of the columns of L are identical, each equal to this vector $\mathbf{x}$.

Remark Since L is a stochastic matrix, we can interpret it as the ***long range transition matrix*** of the Markov chain. That is, L_{ij} represents the probability of being in state i, having started from state j, *if the transitions were to continue indefinitely*. The fact that the columns of L are identical says that the *starting state does not matter*, as the next example illustrates.

Example 4.38

Recall the rat in a box from Example 3.65. The transition matrix was

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & \frac{2}{3} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We determined that the steady state probability vector was

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{3}{8} \\ \frac{3}{8} \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence, the powers of P approach

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} & \frac{1}{4} \\ \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{8} \\ \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{8} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.250 & 0.250 & 0.250 \\ 0.375 & 0.375 & 0.375 \\ 0.375 & 0.375 & 0.375 \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we can see that the rat will *eventually* spend 25% of its time in compartment 1 and 37.5% of its time in each of the other two compartments.

We conclude our discussion of regular Markov chains by proving that the steady state vector $\mathbf{x}$ is independent of the initial state. The proof is easily adapted to cover the case of state vectors whose components sum to an arbitrary constant—say, s. In the exercises, you are asked to prove some other properties of regular Markov chains.

Theorem 4.34

Let P be a regular $n \times n$ transition matrix, with $\mathbf{x}$ the steady state probability vector for P, as in Theorem 4.33. Then, for any initial probability vector $\mathbf{x}_0$, the sequence of iterates $\mathbf{x}_k$ approaches $\mathbf{x}$.

Proof Let

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$$

where $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n = 1$. Since $\mathbf{x}_k = P^k\mathbf{x}_0$, we must show that $\lim_{k\to\infty} P^k\mathbf{x}_0 = \mathbf{x}$. Now, by Theorem 4.33, the long range transition matrix is $L = [\mathbf{x}\ \ \mathbf{x}\ \ \cdots\ \ \mathbf{x}]$ and $\lim_{k\to\infty} P^k = L$. Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned}\lim_{k\to\infty} P^k\mathbf{x}_0 &= (\lim_{k\to\infty} P^k)\mathbf{x}_0 = L\mathbf{x}_0\\ &= [\mathbf{x}\ \ \mathbf{x}\ \ \cdots\ \ \mathbf{x}]\begin{bmatrix} x_1\\ x_2\\ \vdots\\ x_n\end{bmatrix}\\ &= x_1\mathbf{x} + x_2\mathbf{x} + \cdots + x_n\mathbf{x}\\ &= (x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n)\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}\end{aligned}$$

Population Growth

We return to the Leslie model of population growth, which we first explored in Section 3.7. In Example 3.67 in that section, we saw that for the Leslie matrix

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3\\ 0.5 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 0.25 & 0\end{bmatrix}$$

iterates of the population vectors began to approach a multiple of the vector

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 18\\ 6\\ 1\end{bmatrix}$$

In other words, the three age classes of this population eventually ended up in the ratio 18:6:1. Moreover, once this state is reached, it is stable, since the ratios for the following year are given by

$$L\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & 3\\ 0.5 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 0.25 & 0\end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 18\\ 6\\ 1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 27\\ 9\\ 1.5\end{bmatrix} = 1.5\mathbf{x}$$

and the components are still in the ratio 27:9:1.5 = 18:6:1. Observe that 1.5 represents the *growth rate* of this population when it has reached its steady state.

We can now recognize that $\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of L corresponding to the eigenvalue $\lambda = 1.5$. Thus, the steady state growth rate is a *positive* eigenvalue of L, and an eigenvector corresponding to this eigenvalue represents the *relative* sizes of the age classes when the steady state has been reached. We can compute these directly, without having to iterate as we did before.

Example 4.39

Find the steady state growth rate and the corresponding ratios between the age classes for the Leslie matrix L above.

Solution We need to find all positive eigenvalues and corresponding eigenvectors of L. The characteristic polynomial of L is

$$\det(L - \lambda I) = \begin{vmatrix} -\lambda & 4 & 3\\ 0.5 & -\lambda & 0\\ 0 & 0.25 & -\lambda\end{vmatrix} = -\lambda^3 + 2\lambda + 0.375$$

so we must solve $-\lambda^3 + 2\lambda + 0.375 = 0$ or, equivalently, $8\lambda^3 - 16\lambda - 3 = 0$. Factoring, we have

$$(2\lambda - 3)(4\lambda^2 + 6\lambda + 1) = 0$$

(See Appendix D.) Since the second factor has only the roots $(-3 + \sqrt{5})/4 \approx -0.19$ and $(-3 - \sqrt{5})/4 \approx -1.31$, the only positive root of this equation is $\lambda = \frac{3}{2} = 1.5$. The corresponding eigenvectors are in the null space of $L - 1.5I$, which we find by row reduction:

$$[L - 1.5I \,|\, 0] = \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} -1.5 & 4 & 3 & 0 \\ 0.5 & -1.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & -1.5 & 0 \end{array}\right] \longrightarrow \left[\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -18 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -6 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array}\right]$$

Thus, if $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$ is an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda = 1.5$, it satisfies $x_1 = 18x_3$ and $x_2 = 6x_3$. That is,

$$E_{1.5} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 18x_3 \\ 6x_3 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} \right\} = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 18 \\ 6 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

Hence, the steady state growth rate is 1.5, and when this rate has been reached, the age classes are in the ratio 18 : 6 : 1, as we saw before.

In Example 4.39, there was only one candidate for the steady state growth rate: the unique positive eigenvalue of L. But what would we have done if L had had more than one positive eigenvalue or none? We were also apparently fortunate that there was a corresponding eigenvector all of whose components were positive, which allowed us to relate these components to the size of the population. We can prove that this situation is not accidental; that is, *every* Leslie matrix has exactly one positive eigenvalue and a corresponding eigenvector with positive components.

Recall that the form of a Leslie matrix is

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 & b_2 & b_3 & \cdots & b_{n-1} & b_n \\ s_1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & s_2 & 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_3 & \cdots & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & s_{n-1} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \tag{3}$$

Since the entries s_j represent survival probabilities, we will assume that they are all nonzero (otherwise, the population would rapidly die out). We will also assume that at least one of the birth parameters b_i is nonzero (otherwise, there would be no births and, again, the population would die out). With these standing assumptions, we can now prove the assertion we made above as a theorem.

Theorem 4.35 Every Leslie matrix has a unique positive eigenvalue and a corresponding eigenvector with positive components.

Proof Let L be as in Equation (3). The characteristic polynomial of L is

$$\begin{aligned} c_L(\lambda) &= \det(L - \lambda I) \\ &= (-1)^n(\lambda^n - b_1\lambda^{n-1} - b_2s_1\lambda^{n-2} - b_3s_1s_2\lambda^{n-3} - \cdots - b_ns_1s_2\cdots s_{n-1}) \\ &= (-1)^n f(\lambda) \end{aligned}$$

(You are asked to prove this in Exercise 16.) The eigenvalues of L are therefore the roots of $f(\lambda)$. Since at least one of the birth parameters b_i is positive and all of the survival probabilities s_j are positive, the coefficients of $f(\lambda)$ change sign exactly once. By Descartes's Rule of Signs (Appendix D), therefore, $f(\lambda)$ has exactly one positive root. Let us call it λ_1.

By direct calculation, we can check that an eigenvector corresponding to λ_1 is

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ s_1/\lambda_1 \\ s_1s_2/\lambda_1^2 \\ s_1s_2s_3/\lambda_1^3 \\ \vdots \\ s_1s_2s_3\cdots s_{n-1}/\lambda_1^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

(You are asked to prove this in Exercise 18.) Clearly, all of the components of $\mathbf{x}_1$ are positive.

In fact, more is true. With the additional requirement that *two consecutive* birth parameters b_i and b_{i+1} are positive, it turns out that the unique positive eigenvalue λ_1 of L is *dominant;* that is, every other (real or complex) eigenvalue λ of L satisfies $|\lambda| < \lambda_1$. (It is beyond the scope of this book to prove this result, but a partial proof is outlined in Exercise 27 for readers who are familiar with the algebra of complex numbers.) This explains why we get convergence to a steady state vector when we iterate the population vectors: It is just the power method working for us!

The Perron-Frobenius Theorem

In the previous two applications, Markov chains and Leslie matrices, we saw that the eigenvalue of interest was positive and dominant. Moreover, there was a corresponding eigenvector with positive components. It turns out that a remarkable theorem guarantees that this will be the case for a large class of matrices, including many of the ones we have been considering. The first version of this theorem is for positive matrices.

Oskar Perron (1880–1975) was a German mathematician who did work in many fields of mathematics, including analysis, differential equations, algebra, geometry, and number theory. Perron's Theorem was published in 1907 in a paper on continued fractions.

First, we need some terminology and notation. Let's agree to refer to a vector as *positive* if all of its components are positive. For two $m \times n$ matrices $A = [a_{ij}]$ and $B = [b_{ij}]$, we will write $A \geq B$ if $a_{ij} \geq b_{ij}$ for all i and j. (Similar definitions will apply for $A > B$, $A \leq B$, and so on.) Thus, a positive vector $\mathbf{x}$ satisfies $\mathbf{x} > \mathbf{0}$. Let us define $|A| = [|a_{ij}|]$ to be the matrix of the absolute values of the entries of A.

Theorem 4.36 **Perron's Theorem**

Let A be a positive $n \times n$ matrix. Then A has a real eigenvalue λ_1 with the following properties:

a. $\lambda_1 > 0$
b. λ_1 has a corresponding positive eigenvector.
c. If λ is any other eigenvalue of A, then $|\lambda| \leq \lambda_1$.

Intuitively, we can see why the first two statements should be true. Consider the case of a 2×2 positive matrix A. The corresponding matrix transformation maps the first quadrant of the plane properly into itself, since all components are positive. If we repeatedly allow A to act on the images we get, they necessarily converge toward some ray in the first quadrant (Figure 4.18). A direction vector for this ray will be a positive vector $\mathbf{x}$, which must be mapped into some positive multiple of itself (say, λ_1), since A leaves the ray fixed. In other words, $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda_1\mathbf{x}$, with $\mathbf{x}$ and λ_1 both positive.

Proof For some nonzero vectors $\mathbf{x}$, $A\mathbf{x} \geq \lambda\mathbf{x}$ for some scalar λ. When this happens, then $A(k\mathbf{x}) \geq \lambda(k\mathbf{x})$ for all $k > 0$; thus, we need only consider *unit* vectors $\mathbf{x}$. In Chapter 7, we will see that A maps the set of all unit vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ (the *unit sphere*) into a "generalized ellipsoid." So, as $\mathbf{x}$ ranges over the nonnegative vectors on this unit sphere, there will be a maximum value of λ such that $A\mathbf{x} \geq \lambda\mathbf{x}$. (See Figure 4.19.) Denote this number by λ_1 and the corresponding unit vector by $\mathbf{x}_1$.

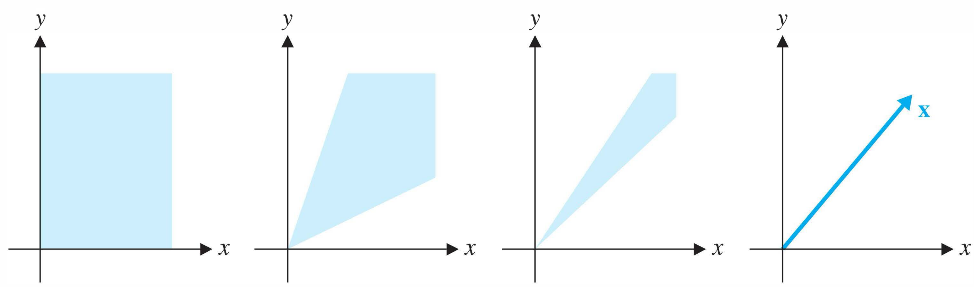


Figure 4.18

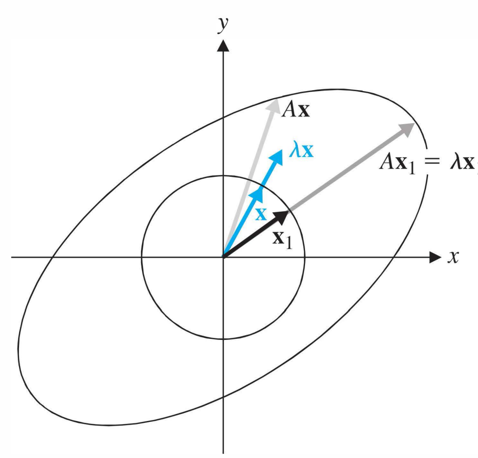


Figure 4.19

We now show that $A\mathbf{x}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{x}_1$. If not, then $A\mathbf{x}_1 > \lambda_1\mathbf{x}_1$, and, applying A again, we obtain

$$A(A\mathbf{x}_1) > A(\lambda_1\mathbf{x}_1) = \lambda_1(A\mathbf{x}_1)$$

where the inequality is preserved, since A is positive. (See Exercise 40 and Section 3.7 Exercise 36.) But then $\mathbf{y} = (1/\|A\mathbf{x}_1\|)A\mathbf{x}_1$ is a unit vector that satisfies $A\mathbf{y} > \lambda_1\mathbf{y}$, so there will be some $\lambda_2 > \lambda_1$ such that $A\mathbf{y} \geq \lambda_2\mathbf{y}$. This contradicts the fact that λ_1 was the maximum value with this property. Consequently, it must be the case that $A\mathbf{x}_1 = \lambda_1\mathbf{x}_1$; that is, λ_1 is an eigenvalue of A.

Now A is positive and $\mathbf{x}_1$ is positive, so $\lambda_1\mathbf{x}_1 = A\mathbf{x}_1 > \mathbf{0}$. This means that $\lambda_1 > 0$ and $\mathbf{x}_1 > \mathbf{0}$, which completes the proof of (a) and (b).

To prove (c), suppose λ is any other (real or complex) eigenvalue of A with corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{z}$. Then $A\mathbf{z} = \lambda\mathbf{z}$, and, taking absolute values, we have

$$A|\mathbf{z}| = |A|\,|\mathbf{z}| \geq |A\mathbf{z}| = |\lambda\mathbf{z}| = |\lambda|\,|\mathbf{z}| \tag{4}$$

where the middle inequality follows from the Triangle Inequality. (See Exercise 40.) Since $|\mathbf{z}| > \mathbf{0}$, the unit vector $\mathbf{u}$ in the direction of $|\mathbf{z}|$ is also positive and satisfies $A\mathbf{u} \geq |\lambda|\mathbf{u}$. By the maximality of λ_1 from the first part of this proof, we must have $|\lambda| \leq \lambda_1$.

In fact, more is true. It turns out that λ_1 is dominant, so $|\lambda| < \lambda_1$ for any eigenvalue $\lambda \neq \lambda_1$. It is also the case that λ_1 has algebraic, and hence geometric, multiplicity 1. We will not prove these facts.

Perron's Theorem can be generalized from positive to certain nonnegative matrices. Frobenius did so in 1912. The result requires a technical condition on the matrix. A square matrix A is called ***reducible*** if, subject to some permutation of the rows and the same permutation of the columns, A can be written in block form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ O & D \end{bmatrix}$$

where B and D are square. Equivalently, A is reducible if there is some permutation matrix P such that

$$PAP^T = \begin{bmatrix} B & C \\ O & D \end{bmatrix}$$

(See page 187.) For example, the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 4 & 2 & 1 & 5 & 5 \\ 1 & 2 & 7 & 3 & 0 \\ 6 & 0 & 0 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 7 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

is reducible, since interchanging rows 1 and 3 and then columns 1 and 3 produces

$$\left[\begin{array}{cc:ccc} 7 & 2 & 1 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 4 & 5 & 5 \\ \hdashline 0 & 0 & 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 6 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 7 & 2 \end{array}\right]$$

(This is just PAP^T, where

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Check this!)

A square matrix A that is not reducible is called ***irreducible.*** If $A^k > O$ for some k, then A is called ***primitive.*** For example, every regular Markov chain has a primitive transition matrix, by definition. It is not hard to show that every primitive matrix is irreducible. (Do you see why? Try showing the contrapositive of this.)

Theorem 4.37 **The Perron-Frobenius Theorem**

Let A be an irreducible nonnegative $n \times n$ matrix. Then A has a real eigenvalue λ_1 with the following properties:

a. $\lambda_1 > 0$
b. λ_1 has a corresponding positive eigenvector.
c. If λ is any other eigenvalue of A, then $|\lambda| \leq \lambda_1$. If A is primitive, then this inequality is strict.
d. If λ is an eigenvalue of A such that $|\lambda| = \lambda_1$, then λ is a (complex) root of the equation $\lambda^n - \lambda_1^n = 0$.
e. λ_1 has algebraic multiplicity 1.

See *Matrix Analysis* by R. A. Horn and C. R. Johnson (Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1985).

The interested reader can find a proof of the Perron-Frobenius Theorem in many texts on nonnegative matrices or matrix analysis. The eigenvalue λ_1 is often called the ***Perron root*** of A, and a corresponding *probability* eigenvector (which is necessarily unique) is called the ***Perron eigenvector*** of A.

Linear Recurrence Relations

The ***Fibonacci numbers*** are the numbers in the sequence 0, 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, . . . , where, after the first two terms, each new term is obtained by summing the two terms preceding it. If we denote the nth Fibonacci number by f_n, then this sequence is completely defined by the equations $f_0 = 0, f_1 = 1$, and, for $n \geq 2$,

$$f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$$

This last equation is an example of a linear recurrence relation. We will return to the Fibonacci numbers, but first we will consider linear recurrence relations somewhat more generally.

Leonardo of Pisa (1170–1250), pictured left, is better known by his nickname, Fibonacci, which means "son of Bonaccio." He wrote a number of important books, many of which have survived, including *Liber abaci* and *Liber quadratorum*. The Fibonacci sequence appears as the solution to a problem in *Liber abaci:* "A certain man put a pair of rabbits in a place surrounded on all sides by a wall. How many pairs of rabbits can be produced from that pair in a year if it is supposed that every month each pair begets a new pair which from the second month on becomes productive?" The name *Fibonacci numbers* was given to the terms of this sequence by the French mathematician Edouard Lucas (1842–1891).

Definition Let $(x_n) = (x_0, x_1, x_2, \ldots)$ be a sequence of numbers that is defined as follows:

1. $x_0 = a_0, x_1 = a_1, \ldots, x_{k-1} = a_{k-1}$, where $a_0, a_1, \ldots, a_{k-1}$ are scalars.
2. For all $n \geq k$, $x_n = c_1x_{n-1} + c_2x_{n-2} + \cdots + c_kx_{n-k}$, where $c_1, c_2, \ldots, c_k$ are scalars.

If $c_k \neq 0$, the equation in (2) is called a ***linear recurrence relation of order k.*** The equations in (1) are referred to as the ***initial conditions*** of the recurrence.

Thus, the Fibonacci numbers satisfy a linear recurrence relation of order 2.

Remarks

- If, in order to define the nth term in a recurrence relation, we require the $(n - k)$th term but no term before it, then the recurrence relation has order k.
- The number of initial conditions is the order of the recurrence relation.
- It is not necessary that the first term of the sequence be called x_0. We could start at x_1 or anywhere else.
- It is possible to have even more general linear recurrence relations by allowing the coefficients c_i to be *functions* rather than scalars and by allowing an extra, isolated coefficient, which may also be a function. An example would be the recurrence

$$x_n = 2x_{n-1} - n^2x_{n-2} + \frac{1}{n}x_{n-3} + n$$

We will not consider such recurrences here.

Example 4.40

Consider the sequence (x_n) defined by the initial conditions $x_1 = 1$, $x_2 = 5$ and the recurrence relation $x_n = 5x_{n-1} - 6x_{n-2}$ for $n \geq 2$. Write out the first five terms of this sequence.

Solution We are given the first two terms. We use the recurrence relation to calculate the next three terms. We have

$$\begin{aligned} x_3 &= 5x_2 - 6x_1 = 5 \cdot 5 - 6 \cdot 1 = 19 \\ x_4 &= 5x_3 - 6x_2 = 5 \cdot 19 - 6 \cdot 5 = 65 \\ x_5 &= 5x_4 - 6x_3 = 5 \cdot 65 - 6 \cdot 19 = 211 \end{aligned}$$

so the sequence begins $1, 5, 19, 65, 211, \ldots$.

Clearly, if we were interested in, say, the 100th term of the sequence in Example 4.40, then the approach used there would be rather tedious, since we would have to apply the recurrence relation 98 times. It would be nice if we could find an *explicit* formula for x_n as a function of n. We refer to finding such a formula as ***solving*** the recurrence relation. We will illustrate the process with the sequence from Example 4.40.

To begin, we rewrite the recurrence relation as a matrix equation. Let

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and introduce vectors $\mathbf{x}_n = \begin{bmatrix} x_n \\ x_{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$ for $n \geq 2$. Thus, $\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} x_2 \\ x_1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} x_3 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 19 \\ 5 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}_4 = \begin{bmatrix} x_4 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 65 \\ 19 \end{bmatrix}$, and so on. Now observe that, for $n \geq 2$, we have

$$A\mathbf{x}_{n-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & -6 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} x_{n-1} \\ x_{n-2} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5x_{n-1} - 6x_{n-2} \\ x_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} x_n \\ x_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{x}_n$$

Notice that this is the same type of equation we encountered with Markov chains and Leslie matrices. As in those cases, we can write

$$\mathbf{x}_n = A\mathbf{x}_{n-1} = A^2\mathbf{x}_{n-2} = \cdots = A^{n-2}\mathbf{x}_2$$

We now use the technique of Example 4.29 to compute the powers of A.

The characteristic equation of A is

$$\lambda^2 - 5\lambda + 6 = 0$$

from which we find that the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = 3$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$. (Notice that the form of the characteristic equation follows that of the recurrence relation. If we write the recurrence as $x_n - 5x_{n-1} + 6x_{n-2} = 0$, it is apparent that the coefficients are exactly the same!) The corresponding eigenspaces are

$$E_3 = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad E_2 = \operatorname{span}\left(\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}\right)$$

Setting $P = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, we know that $P^{-1}AP = D = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$. Then $A = PDP^{-1}$ and

$$\begin{aligned} A^k = PD^kP^{-1} &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3^k & 0 \\ 0 & 2^k \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 3^k & 0 \\ 0 & 2^k \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -1 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} 3^{k+1} - 2^{k+1} & -2(3^{k+1}) + 3(2^{k+1}) \\ 3^k - 2^k & -2(3^k) + 3(2^k) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

It now follows that

$$\begin{bmatrix} x_n \\ x_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} = \mathbf{x}_n = A^{n-2}\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 3^{n-1} - 2^{n-1} & -2(3^{n-1}) + 3(2^{n-1}) \\ 3^{n-2} - 2^{n-2} & -2(3^{n-2}) + 3(2^{n-2}) \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 3^n - 2^n \\ 3^{n-1} - 2^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we read off the solution $x_n = 3^n - 2^n$. (To check our work, we could plug in $n = 1, 2, \ldots, 5$ to verify that this formula gives the same terms that we calculated using the recurrence relation. Try it!)

Observe that x_n is a linear combination of powers of the eigenvalues. This is necessarily the case as long as the eigenvalues are distinct [as Theorem 4.38(a) will make explicit]. Using this observation, we can save ourselves some work. Once we have computed the eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = 3$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$, we can immediately write

$$x_n = c_1 3^n + c_2 2^n$$

where c_1 and c_2 are to be determined. Using the initial conditions, we have

$$1 = x_1 = c_1 3^1 + c_2 2^1 = 3c_1 + 2c_2$$

when $n = 1$ and

$$5 = x_2 = c_1 3^2 + c_2 2^2 = 9c_1 + 4c_2$$

when $n = 2$. We now solve the system

$$\begin{aligned} 3c_1 + 2c_2 &= 1 \\ 9c_1 + 4c_2 &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

for c_1 and c_2 to obtain $c_1 = 1$ and $c_2 = -1$. Thus, $x_n = 3^n - 2^n$, as before.

This is the method we will use in practice. We now illustrate its use to find an explicit formula for the Fibonacci numbers.

Example 4.41

Solve the Fibonacci recurrence $f_0 = 0, f_1 = 1$, and $f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$ for $n \geq 2$.

Solution Writing the recurrence as $f_n - f_{n-1} - f_{n-2} = 0$, we see that the characteristic equation is $\lambda^2 - \lambda - 1 = 0$, so the eigenvalues are

$$\lambda_1 = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}$$

It follows from the discussion above that the solution to the recurrence relation has the form

$$f_n = c_1\lambda_1^n + c_2\lambda_2^n = c_1\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n + c_2\left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n$$

for some scalars c_1 and c_2.

Using the initial conditions, we find

$$0 = f_0 = c_1\lambda_1^0 + c_2\lambda_2^0 = c_1 + c_2$$

and
$$1 = f_1 = c_1\lambda_1^1 + c_2\lambda_2^1 = c_1\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right) + c_2\left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)$$

Solving for c_1 and c_2, we obtain $c_1 = 1/\sqrt{5}$ and $c_2 = -1/\sqrt{5}$. Hence, an explicit formula for the nth Fibonacci number is

$$f_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\left(\frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n - \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}}\left(\frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}\right)^n \tag{5}$$

Jacques Binet (1786–1856) made contributions to matrix theory, number theory, physics, and astronomy. He discovered the rule for matrix multiplication in 1812. Binet's formula for the Fibonacci numbers is actually due to Euler, who published it in 1765; however, it was forgotten until Binet published his version in 1843. Like Cauchy, Binet was a royalist, and he lost his university position when Charles X abdicated in 1830. He received many honors for his work, including his election, in 1843, to the Académie des Sciences.

Formula (5) is a remarkable formula, because it is defined in terms of the *irrational* number $\sqrt{5}$ yet the Fibonacci numbers are all integers! Try plugging in a few values for n to see how the $\sqrt{5}$ terms cancel out to leave the integer values f_n. Formula (5) is known as ***Binet's formula.***

The method we have just outlined works for any second order linear recurrence relation whose associated eigenvalues are all distinct. When there is a repeated eigenvalue, the technique must be modified, since the diagonalization method we used may no longer work. The next theorem summarizes both situations.

Theorem 4.38

Let $x_n = ax_{n-1} + bx_{n-2}$ be a recurrence relation that is satisfied by a sequence (x_n). Let λ_1 and λ_2 be the eigenvalues of the associated characteristic equation $\lambda^2 - a\lambda - b = 0$.

a. If $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then $x_n = c_1\lambda_1^n + c_2\lambda_2^n$ for some scalars c_1 and c_2.
b. If $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \lambda$, then $x_n = c_1\lambda^n + c_2 n\lambda^n$ for some scalars c_1 and c_2.

In either case, c_1 and c_2 can be determined using the initial conditions.

Proof (a) Generalizing our discussion above, we can write the recurrence as $\mathbf{x}_n = A\mathbf{x}_{n-1}$, where

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \begin{bmatrix} x_n \\ x_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Since A has distinct eigenvalues, it can be diagonalized. The rest of the details are left for Exercise 53.

(b) We will show that $x_n = c_1\lambda^n + c_2 n\lambda^n$ satisfies the recurrence relation $x_n = ax_{n-1} + bx_{n-2}$ or, equivalently,

$$x_n - ax_{n-1} - bx_{n-2} = 0 \tag{6}$$

if $\lambda^2 - a\lambda - b = 0$. Since

$$x_{n-1} = c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2(n-1)\lambda^{n-1} \quad \text{and} \quad x_{n-2} = c_1\lambda^{n-2} + c_2(n-2)\lambda^{n-2}$$

substitution into Equation (6) yields

$$\begin{aligned} x_n - ax_{n-1} - bx_{n-2} &= (c_1\lambda^n + c_2 n\lambda^n) - a(c_1\lambda^{n-1} + c_2(n-1)\lambda^{n-1}) \\ &\quad - b(c_1\lambda^{n-2} + c_2(n-2)\lambda^{n-2}) \\ &= c_1(\lambda^n - a\lambda^{n-1} - b\lambda^{n-2}) + c_2(n\lambda^n - a(n-1)\lambda^{n-1} \\ &\quad - b(n-2)\lambda^{n-2}) \\ &= c_1\lambda^{n-2}(\lambda^2 - a\lambda - b) + c_2 n\lambda^{n-2}(\lambda^2 - a\lambda - b) + c_2\lambda^{n-2}(a\lambda + 2b) \\ &= c_1\lambda^{n-2}(0) + c_2 n\lambda^{n-2}(0) + c_2\lambda^{n-2}(a\lambda + 2b) \\ &= c_2\lambda^{n-2}(a\lambda + 2b) \end{aligned}$$

But, since λ is a double root of $\lambda^2 - a\lambda - b = 0$, we must have $a^2 + 4b = 0$ and $\lambda = a/2$, using the quadratic formula. Consequently, $a\lambda + 2b = a^2/2 + 2b = -4b/2 + 2b = 0$, so

$$x_n - ax_{n-1} - bx_{n-2} = c_2\lambda^{n-2}(a\lambda + 2b) = c_2\lambda^{n-2}(0) = 0$$

Suppose the initial conditions are $x_0 = r$ and $x_1 = s$. Then, in either (a) or (b) there is a unique solution for c_1 and c_2. (See Exercise 54.)

Example 4.42 Solve the recurrence relation $x_0 = 1$, $x_1 = 6$, and $x_n = 6x_{n-1} - 9x_{n-2}$ for $n \geq 2$.

Solution The characteristic equation is $\lambda^2 - 6\lambda + 9 = 0$, which has $\lambda = 3$ as a double root. By Theorem 4.38(b), we must have $x_n = c_1 3^n + c_2 n 3^n = (c_1 + c_2 n)3^n$. Since $1 = x_0 = c_1$ and $6 = x_1 = (c_1 + c_2)3$, we find that $c_2 = 1$, so

$$x_n = (1 + n)3^n$$

The techniques outlined in Theorem 4.38 can be extended to higher order recurrence relations. We state, without proof, the general result.

Theorem 4.39 Let $x_n = a_{m-1}x_{n-1} + a_{m-2}x_{n-2} + \cdots + a_0 x_{n-m}$ be a recurrence relation of order m that is satisfied by a sequence (x_n). Suppose the associated characteristic polynomial

$$\lambda^m - a_{m-1}\lambda^{m-1} - a_{m-2}\lambda^{m-2} - \cdots - a_0$$

factors as $(\lambda - \lambda_1)^{m_1}(\lambda - \lambda_2)^{m_2} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_k)^{m_k}$, where $m_1 + m_2 + \cdots + m_k = m$. Then x_n has the form

$$\begin{aligned} x_n = {} & (c_{11}\lambda_1^n + c_{12}n\lambda_1^n + c_{13}n^2\lambda_1^n + \cdots + c_{1m_1}n^{m_1-1}\lambda_1^n) + \cdots \\ & + (c_{k1}\lambda_k^n + c_{k2}n\lambda_k^n + c_{k3}n^2\lambda_k^n + \cdots + c_{km_k}n^{m_k-1}\lambda_k^n) \end{aligned}$$

Systems of Linear Differential Equations

In calculus, you learn that if $x = x(t)$ is a differentiable function satisfying a differential equation of the form $x' = kx$, where k is a constant, then the general solution is $x = Ce^{kt}$, where C is a constant. If an initial condition $x(0) = x_0$ is specified, then, by substituting $t = 0$ in the general solution, we find that $C = x_0$. Hence, the unique solution to the differential equation that satisfies the initial condition is

$$x = x_0 e^{kt}$$

Suppose we have n differentiable functions of t—say, $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$—that satisfy a ***system of differential equations***

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n \\ x_2' &= a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n \\ &\vdots \\ x_n' &= a_{n1}x_1 + a_{n2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{nn}x_n \end{aligned}$$

We can write this system in matrix form as $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$, where

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} x_1(t) \\ x_2(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_n(t) \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{x}'(t) = \begin{bmatrix} x_1'(t) \\ x_2'(t) \\ \vdots \\ x_n'(t) \end{bmatrix}, \quad \text{and} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

Now we can use matrix methods to help us find the solution.

First, we make a useful observation. Suppose we want to solve the following system of differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= 2x_1 \\ x_2' &= 5x_2 \end{aligned}$$

Each equation can be solved separately, as above, to give

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= C_1 e^{2t} \\ x_2 &= C_2 e^{5t} \end{aligned}$$

where C_1 and C_2 are constants. Notice that, in matrix form, our equation $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ has a *diagonal* coefficient matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

and the eigenvalues 2 and 5 occur in the exponentials e^{2t} and e^{5t} of the solution. This suggests that, for an arbitrary system, we should start by diagonalizing the coefficient matrix, if possible.

Example 4.43

Solve the following system of differential equations:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1' &= x_1 + 2x_2 \\ x_2' &= 3x_1 + 2x_2 \end{aligned}$$

Solution Here the coefficient matrix is $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$, and we find that the eigenvalues are $\lambda_1 = 4$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$, with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, respectively. Therefore, A is diagonalizable, and the matrix P that does the job is

$$P = [\mathbf{v}_1 \;\; \mathbf{v}_2] = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We know that

$$P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = D$$

Let $\mathbf{x} = P\mathbf{y}$ (so that $\mathbf{x}' = P\mathbf{y}'$) and substitute these results into the original equation $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ to get $P\mathbf{y}' = AP\mathbf{y}$ or, equivalently,

$$\mathbf{y}' = P^{-1}AP\mathbf{y} = D\mathbf{y}$$

This is just the system

$$\begin{aligned} y_1' &= 4y_1 \\ y_2' &= -y_2 \end{aligned}$$

whose general solution is

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= C_1 e^{4t} \\ y_2 &= C_2 e^{-t} \end{aligned} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} C_1 e^{4t} \\ C_2 e^{-t} \end{bmatrix}$$

To find $\mathbf{x}$, we just compute

$$\mathbf{x} = P\mathbf{y} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} C_1 e^{4t} \\ C_2 e^{-t} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2C_1 e^{4t} - C_2 e^{-t} \\ 3C_1 e^{4t} + C_2 e^{-t} \end{bmatrix}$$

so $x_1 = 2C_1 e^{4t} - C_2 e^{-t}$ and $x_2 = 3C_1 e^{4t} + C_2 e^{-t}$. (Check that these values satisfy the given system.)

Remark Observe that we could also express the solution in Example 4.43 as

$$\mathbf{x} = C_1 e^{4t} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} + C_2 e^{-t} \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = C_1 e^{4t} \mathbf{v}_1 + C_2 e^{-t} \mathbf{v}_2$$

This technique generalizes easily to $n \times n$ systems where the coefficient matrix is diagonalizable. The next theorem, whose proof is left as an exercise, summarizes the situation.

Theorem 4.40 Let A be an $n \times n$ diagonalizable matrix and let $P = [\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \mathbf{v}_n]$ be such that

$$P^{-1}AP = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Then the general solution to the system $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ is

$$\mathbf{x} = C_1 e^{\lambda_1 t} \mathbf{v}_1 + C_2 e^{\lambda_2 t} \mathbf{v}_2 + \cdots + C_n e^{\lambda_n t} \mathbf{v}_n$$

The next example involves a biological model in which two species live in the same ecosystem. It is reasonable to assume that the growth rate of each species depends on the sizes of *both* populations. (Of course, there are other factors that govern growth, but we will keep our model simple by ignoring these.)

If $x_1(t)$ and $x_2(t)$ denote the sizes of the two populations at time t, then $x_1'(t)$ and $x_2'(t)$ are their rates of growth at time t. Our model is of the form

$$\begin{aligned} x_1'(t) &= ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \\ x_2'(t) &= cx_1(t) + dx_2(t) \end{aligned}$$

where the coefficients a, b, c, and d depend on the conditions.

Example 4.44 Raccoons and squirrels inhabit the same ecosystem and compete with each other for food, water, and space. Let the raccoon and squirrel populations at time t years be given by $r(t)$ and $s(t)$, respectively. In the absence of squirrels, the raccoon growth rate is $r'(t) = 2.5r(t)$, but when squirrels are present, the competition slows the raccoon growth rate to $r'(t) = 2.5r(t) - s(t)$. The squirrel population is similarly affected by the raccoons. In the absence of raccoons, the growth rate of the squirrel population is $s'(t) = 2.5s(t)$, and the population growth rate for squirrels when they are sharing the ecosystem with raccoons is $s'(t) = -0.25r(t) + 2.5s(t)$. Suppose that initially there are 60 raccoons and 60 squirrels in the ecosystem. Determine what happens to these two populations.

Solution Our system is $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$, where

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t) = \begin{bmatrix} r(t) \\ s(t) \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 2.5 & -1.0 \\ -0.25 & 2.5 \end{bmatrix}$$

The eigenvalues of A are $\lambda_1 = 3$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$, with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. By Theorem 4.40, the general solution to our system is

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = C_1 e^{3t}\mathbf{v}_1 + C_2 e^{2t}\mathbf{v}_2 = C_1 e^{3t}\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + C_2 e^{2t}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{7}$$

The initial population vector is $\mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} r(0) \\ s(0) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 60 \\ 60 \end{bmatrix}$, so, setting $t = 0$ in Equation (7), we have

$$C_1\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + C_2\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 60 \\ 60 \end{bmatrix}$$

Solving this equation, we find $C_1 = 15$ and $C_2 = 45$. Hence,

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = 15e^{3t}\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + 45e^{2t}\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

from which we find $r(t) = -30e^{3t} + 90e^{2t}$ and $s(t) = 15e^{3t} + 45e^{2t}$. Figure 4.20 shows the graphs of these two functions, and you can see clearly that the raccoon population dies out after a little more than 1 year. (Can you determine *exactly* when it dies out?)

We now consider a similar example, in which one species is a source of food for the other. Such a model is called a ***predator-prey model.*** Once again, our model will be drastically oversimplified in order to illustrate its main features.

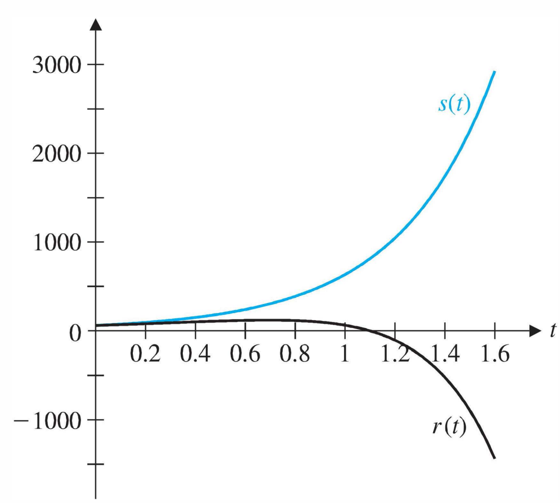


Figure 4.20

Raccoon and squirrel populations

$a + bi$ **Example 4.45**

Robins and worms cohabit an ecosystem. The robins eat the worms, which are their only source of food. The robin and worm populations at time t years are denoted by $r(t)$ and $w(t)$, respectively, and the equations governing the growth of the two populations are

$$\begin{aligned} r'(t) &= w(t) - 12 \\ w'(t) &= -r(t) + 10 \end{aligned} \tag{8}$$

If initially 6 robins and 20 worms occupy the ecosystem, determine the behavior of the two populations over time.

Solution The first thing we notice about this example is the presence of the extra constants, -12 and 10, in the two equations. Fortunately, we can get rid of them with a simple change of variables. If we let $r(t) = x(t) + 10$ and $w(t) = y(t) + 12$, then $r'(t) = x'(t)$ and $w'(t) = y'(t)$. Substituting into Equations (8), we have

$$\begin{aligned} x'(t) &= y(t) \\ y'(t) &= -x(t) \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

which is easier to work with. Equations (9) have the form $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$, where $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Our new initial conditions are

$$x(0) = r(0) - 10 = 6 - 10 = -4 \quad \text{and} \quad y(0) = w(0) - 12 = 20 - 12 = 8$$

so $\mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}$.

Proceeding as in the last example, we find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of A. The characteristic polynomial is $\lambda^2 + 1$, which has no real roots. What should we do? We have no choice but to use the complex roots, which are $\lambda_1 = i$ and $\lambda_2 = -i$. The corresponding eigenvectors are also complex—namely, $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{bmatrix}$. By Theorem 4.40, our solution has the form

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = C_1e^{it}\mathbf{v}_1 + C_2e^{-it}\mathbf{v}_2 = C_1e^{it}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{bmatrix} + C_2e^{-it}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{bmatrix}$$

From $\mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}$, we get

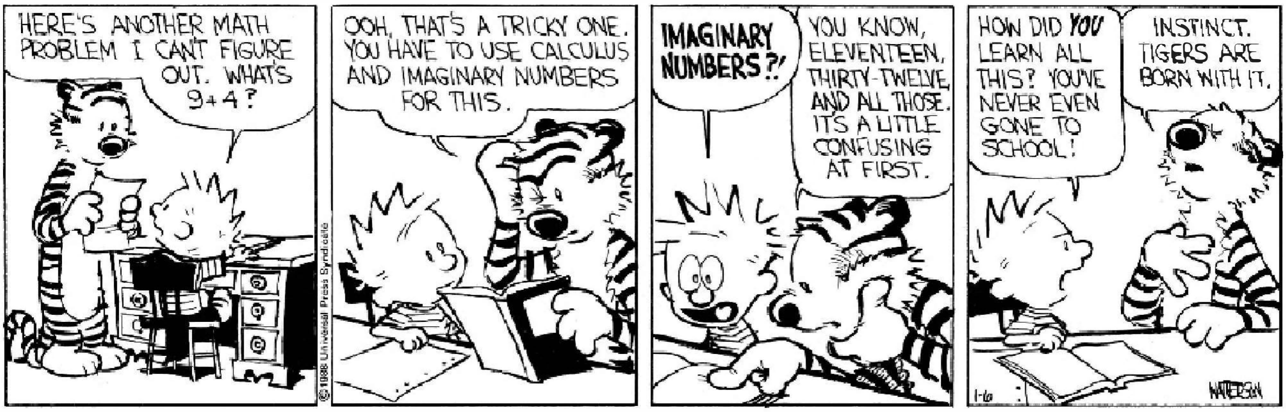
$$C_1\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{bmatrix} + C_2\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -4 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

whose solution is $C_1 = -2 - 4i$ and $C_2 = -2 + 4i$. So the solution to system (9) is

$$\mathbf{x}(t) = (-2 - 4i)e^{it}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ i \end{bmatrix} + (-2 + 4i)e^{-it}\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -i \end{bmatrix}$$

What are we to make of this solution? Robins and worms inhabit a real world—yet our solution involves complex numbers! Fearlessly proceeding, we apply Euler's formula

$$e^{it} = \cos t + i \sin t$$



(Appendix C) to get $e^{-it} = \cos(-t) + i\sin(-t) = \cos t - i\sin t$. Substituting, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{x}(t) &= (-2-4i)(\cos t + i\sin t)\begin{bmatrix}1\\ i\end{bmatrix} + (-2+4i)(\cos t - i\sin t)\begin{bmatrix}1\\ -i\end{bmatrix}\\ &= \begin{bmatrix}(-2\cos t + 4\sin t) + i(-4\cos t - 2\sin t)\\ (4\cos t + 2\sin t) + i(-2\cos t + 4\sin t)\end{bmatrix}\\ &\quad + \begin{bmatrix}(-2\cos t + 4\sin t) + i(4\cos t + 2\sin t)\\ (4\cos t + 2\sin t) + i(2\cos t - 4\sin t)\end{bmatrix}\\ &= \begin{bmatrix}-4\cos t + 8\sin t\\ 8\cos t + 4\sin t\end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

This gives $x(t) = -4\cos t + 8\sin t$ and $y(t) = 8\cos t + 4\sin t$. Putting everything in terms of our original variables, we conclude that

$$r(t) = x(t) + 10 = -4\cos t + 8\sin t + 10$$

and $$w(t) = y(t) + 12 = 8\cos t + 4\sin t + 12$$

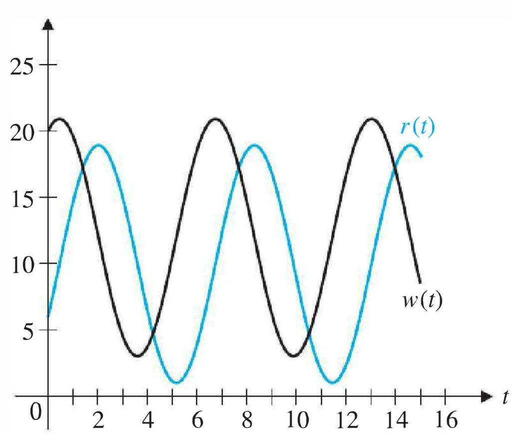


Figure 4.21
Robin and worm populations

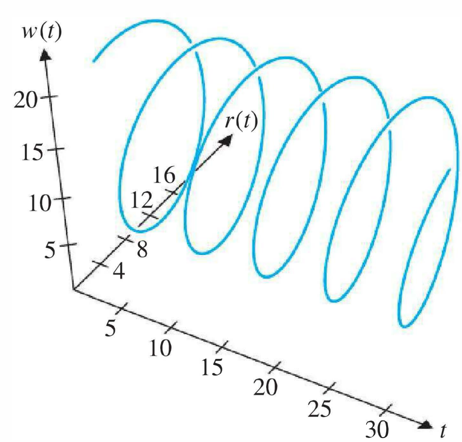


Figure 4.22

So our solution is real after all! The graphs of $r(t)$ and $w(t)$ in Figure 4.21 show that the two populations oscillate periodically. As the robin population increases, the worm population starts to decrease, but as the robins' only food source diminishes, their numbers start to decline as well. As the predators disappear, the worm population begins to recover. As its food supply increases, so does the robin population, and the cycle repeats itself. This oscillation is typical of examples in which the eigenvalues are complex.

Plotting robins, worms, and time on separate axes, as in Figure 4.22, clearly reveals the cyclic nature of the two populations.

We conclude this section by looking at what we have done from a different point of view. If $x = x(t)$ is a differentiable function of t, then the general solution of the ordinary differential equation $x' = ax$ is $x = ce^{at}$, where c is a scalar. The systems of linear differential equations we have been considering have the form $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$, so if we simply plowed ahead without thinking, we might be tempted to deduce that the solution would be $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{c}e^{At}$, where $\mathbf{c}$ is a vector. But what on earth could this mean? On the right-hand side, we have the *number* e raised to the power of a *matrix*. This appears to be nonsense, yet you will see that there is a way to make sense of it.

Let's start by considering the expression e^A. In calculus, you learn that the function e^x has a power series expansion

$$e^x = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

that converges for every real number x. By analogy, let us define

$$e^A = I + A + \frac{A^2}{2!} + \frac{A^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

The right-hand side is just defined in terms of powers of A, and it can be shown that it converges for any real matrix A. So now e^A is a matrix, called the ***exponential*** of A. But how can we compute e^A or e^{At}? For diagonal matrices, it is easy.

Example 4.46

Compute e^{Dt} for $D = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution From the definition, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
e^{Dt} &= I + Dt + \frac{(Dt)^2}{2!} + \frac{(Dt)^3}{3!} + \cdots \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 4t & 0 \\ 0 & -t \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{2!}\begin{bmatrix} (4t)^2 & 0 \\ 0 & (-t)^2 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{3!}\begin{bmatrix} (4t)^3 & 0 \\ 0 & (-t)^3 \end{bmatrix} + \cdots \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 1 + (4t) + \frac{1}{2!}(4t)^2 + \frac{1}{3!}(4t)^3 + \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 + (-t) + \frac{1}{2!}(-t)^2 + \frac{1}{3!}(-t)^3 + \cdots \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} e^{4t} & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-t} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

The matrix exponential is also nice if A is diagonalizable.

Example 4.47

Compute e^A for $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$.

Solution In Example 4.43, we found the eigenvalues of A to be $\lambda_1 = 4$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$, with corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, respectively. Hence, with $P = [\mathbf{v}_1 \quad \mathbf{v}_2] = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, we have $P^{-1}AP = D = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$. Since $A = PDP^{-1}$, we have $A^k = PD^kP^{-1}$, so

$$
\begin{aligned}
e^A &= I + A + \frac{A^2}{2!} + \frac{A^3}{3!} + \cdots \\
&= PIP^{-1} + PDP^{-1} + \frac{1}{2!}PD^2P^{-1} + \frac{1}{3!}PD^3P^{-1} + \cdots \\
&= P\left(I + D + \frac{D^2}{2!} + \frac{D^3}{3!} + \cdots\right)P^{-1} \\
&= Pe^DP^{-1} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} e^4 & 0 \\ 0 & e^{-1} \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \\
&= \frac{1}{5}\begin{bmatrix} 2e^4 + 3e^{-1} & 2e^4 - 2e^{-1} \\ 3e^4 - 3e^{-1} & 3e^4 + 2e^{-1} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}
$$

We are now in a position to show that our bold (and seemingly foolish) guess at an "exponential" solution of $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ was not so far off after all!

Theorem 4.41

Let A be an $n \times n$ diagonalizable matrix with eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \ldots, \lambda_n$. Then the general solution to the system $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ is $\mathbf{x} = e^{At}\mathbf{c}$, where $\mathbf{c}$ is an arbitrary constant vector. If an initial condition $\mathbf{x}(0)$ is specified, then $\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{x}(0)$.

Proof Let P diagonalize A. Then $A = PDP^{-1}$, and, as in Example 4.47,

$$e^{At} = Pe^{Dt}P^{-1}$$

Hence, we need to check that $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x}$ is satisfied by $\mathbf{x} = Pe^{Dt}P^{-1}\mathbf{c}$. Now, everything is constant except for e^{Dt}, so

$$\mathbf{x}' = \frac{d\mathbf{x}}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt}(Pe^{Dt}P^{-1}\mathbf{c}) = P\frac{d}{dt}(e^{Dt})P^{-1}\mathbf{c} \tag{10}$$

If
$$D = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix}$$

then
$$e^{Dt} = \begin{bmatrix} e^{\lambda_1 t} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{\lambda_2 t} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & e^{\lambda_n t} \end{bmatrix}$$

Taking derivatives, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{d}{dt}(e^{Dt}) &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{d}{dt}(e^{\lambda_1 t}) & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{d}{dt}(e^{\lambda_2 t}) & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \frac{d}{dt}(e^{\lambda_n t}) \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 e^{\lambda_1 t} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 e^{\lambda_2 t} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n e^{\lambda_n t} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \lambda_n \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} e^{\lambda_1 t} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & e^{\lambda_2 t} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & e^{\lambda_n t} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= De^{Dt}
\end{aligned}$$

Substituting this result into Equation (10), we obtain

$$\mathbf{x}' = PDe^{Dt}P^{-1}\mathbf{c} = PDP^{-1}Pe^{Dt}P^{-1}\mathbf{c} = (PDP^{-1})(Pe^{Dt}P^{-1})\mathbf{c} = Ae^{At}\mathbf{c} = A\mathbf{x}$$

as required.

The last statement follows easily from the fact that if $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}(t) = e^{At}\mathbf{c}$, then

$$\mathbf{x}(0) = e^{A\cdot 0}\mathbf{c} = e^{O}\mathbf{c} = I\mathbf{c} = \mathbf{c}$$

since $e^{O} = I$. (Why?)

In fact, Theorem 4.41 is true even if A is not diagonalizable, but we will not prove this. Computation of matrix exponentials for nondiagonalizable matrices requires the *Jordan normal form* of a matrix, a topic that may be found in more advanced linear algebra texts.

For example, see *Linear Algebra* by S. H. Friedberg, A. J. Insel, and L. E. Spence (Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice-Hall, 1979).

Ideally, this short digression has served to illustrate the power of mathematics to generalize and the value of creative thinking. Matrix exponentials turn out to be very important tools in many applications of linear algebra, both theoretical and applied.

a + bi

Discrete Linear Dynamical Systems

We conclude this chapter as we began it—by looking at dynamical systems. Markov chains and the Leslie model of population growth are examples of ***discrete linear dynamical systems.*** Each can be described by a matrix equation of the form

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$$

where the vector $\mathbf{x}_k$ records the state of the system at "time" k and A is a square matrix. As we have seen, the long-term behavior of these systems is related to the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of the matrix A. The power method exploits the iterative nature of such dynamical systems to approximate eigenvalues and eigenvectors, and the Perron-Frobenius Theorem gives specialized information about the long-term behavior of a discrete linear dynamical system whose coefficient matrix A is nonnegative.

When A is a 2×2 matrix, we can describe the evolution of a dynamical system geometrically. The equation $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ is really an infinite collection of equations. Beginning with an initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0$, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}_1 &= A\mathbf{x}_0 \\ \mathbf{x}_2 &= A\mathbf{x}_1 \\ \mathbf{x}_3 &= A\mathbf{x}_2 \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

The set $\{\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \ldots\}$ is called a ***trajectory*** of the system. (For graphical purposes, we will identify each vector in a trajectory with its head so that we can plot it as a point.) Note that $\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0$.

Example 4.48

Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}$. For the dynamical system $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$, plot the first five points in the trajectories with the following initial vectors:

(a) $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -5 \end{bmatrix}$ (c) $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (d) $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution (a) We compute $\mathbf{x}_1 = A\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 2.5 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}_2 = A\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1.25 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}_3 = A\mathbf{x}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.625 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{x}_4 = A\mathbf{x}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.3125 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$. These are plotted in Figure 4.23, and the points are connected to highlight the trajectory. Similar calculations produce the trajectories marked (b), (c), and (d) in Figure 4.23.

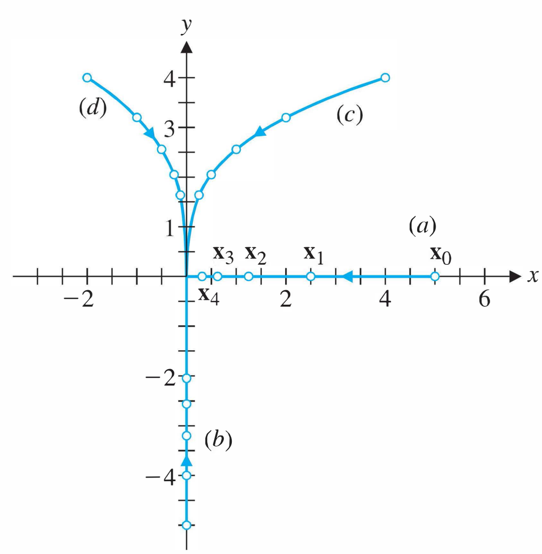


Figure 4.23

In Example 4.48, every trajectory converges to **0**. The origin is called an ***attractor*** in this case. We can understand why this is so from Theorem 4.19. The matrix A in Example 4.48 has eigenvectors $\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$ corresponding to its eigenvalues 0.5 and 0.8, respectively. (Check this.) Accordingly, for any initial vector

$$\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix}c_1\\c_2\end{bmatrix} = c_1\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$$

we have

$$\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1(0.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}1\\0\end{bmatrix} + c_2(0.8)^k\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$$

Because both $(0.5)^k$ and $(0.8)^k$ approach zero as k gets large, $\mathbf{x}_k$ approaches **0** for any choice of $\mathbf{x}_0$. In addition, we know from Theorem 4.28 that because 0.8 is the dominant eigenvalue of A, $\mathbf{x}_k$ will approach a multiple of the corresponding eigenvector $\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$ as long as $c_2 \neq 0$ (the coefficient of $\mathbf{x}_0$ corresponding to $\begin{bmatrix}0\\1\end{bmatrix}$). In other words, all trajectories except those that begin on the x-axis (where $c_2 = 0$) will approach the y-axis, as Figure 4.23 shows.

Example 4.49

Discuss the behavior of the dynamical system $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ corresponding to the matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix}0.65 & -0.15\\-0.15 & 0.65\end{bmatrix}$.

Solution The eigenvalues of A are 0.5 and 0.8 with corresponding eigenvectors $\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix}$, respectively. (Check this.) Hence for an initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix}$, we have

$$\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1(0.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix} + c_2(0.8)^k\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix}$$

Once again the origin is an attractor, because $\mathbf{x}_k$ approaches **0** for any choice of $\mathbf{x}_0$. If $c_2 \neq 0$, the trajectory will approach the line through the origin with direction vector $\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix}$. Several such trajectories are shown in Figure 4.24. The vectors $\mathbf{x}_0$ where $c_2 = 0$ are on the line through the origin with direction vector $\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix}$, and the corresponding trajectory in this case follows this line into the origin.

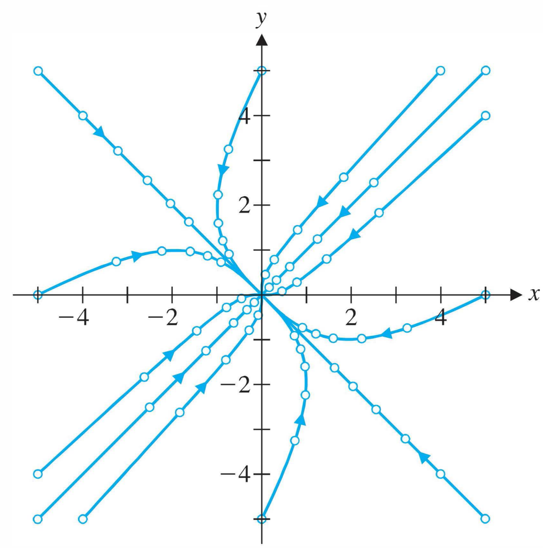


Figure 4.24

Example 4.50

Discuss the behavior of the dynamical systems $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ corresponding to the following matrices:

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 1 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$ (b) $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0.5 \\ 0.5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

Solution (a) The eigenvalues of A are 5 and 3 with corresponding eigenvectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, respectively. Hence for an initial vector $\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, we have

$$\mathbf{x}_k = A^k\mathbf{x}_0 = c_1 5^k\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_2 3^k\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

As k becomes large, so do both 5^k and 3^k. Hence, $\mathbf{x}_k$ tends away from the origin. Because the dominant eigenvalue of 5 has corresponding eigenvector $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, all trajectories for which $c_1 \neq 0$ will eventually end up in the first or the third quadrant. Trajectories with $c_1 = 0$ start and stay on the line $y = -x$ whose direction vector is $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. See Figure 4.25(a).

(b) In this example, the eigenvalues are 1.5 and 0.5 with corresponding eigenvectors $\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, respectively. Hence,

$$\mathbf{x}_k = c_1(1.5)^k\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_2(0.5)^k\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{if} \quad \mathbf{x}_0 = c_1\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_2\begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

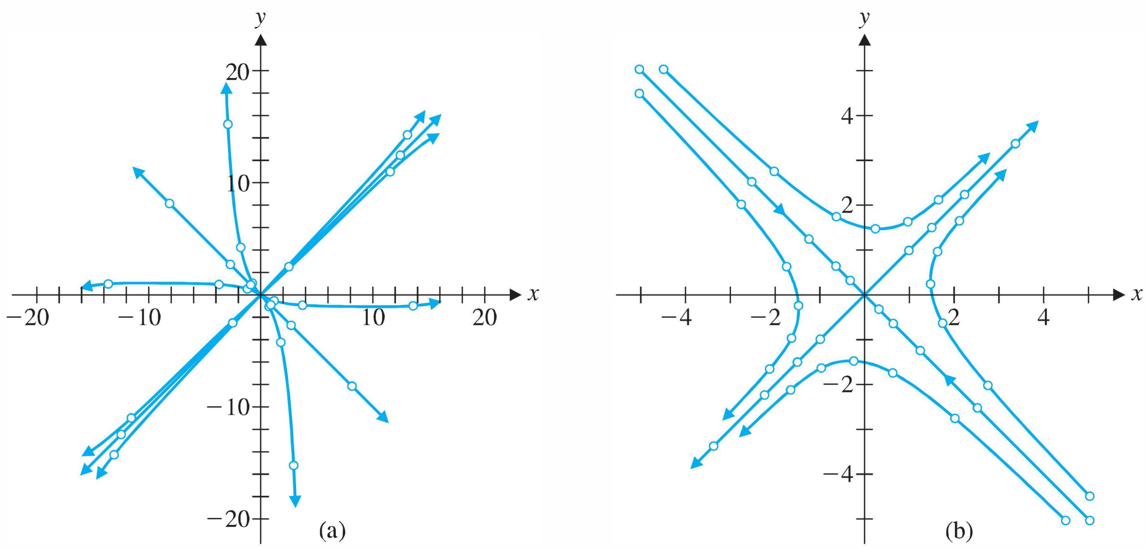


Figure 4.25

If $c_1 = 0$, then $\mathbf{x}_k = c_2(0.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix} \to \begin{bmatrix}0\\0\end{bmatrix}$ as $k \to \infty$. But if $c_1 \neq 0$, then

$$\mathbf{x}_k = c_1(1.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix} + c_2(0.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}-1\\1\end{bmatrix} \approx c_1(1.5)^k\begin{bmatrix}1\\1\end{bmatrix} \quad \text{as} \quad k \to \infty$$

and such trajectories asymptotically approach the line $y = x$. See Figure 4.25(b).

In Example 4.50(a), all points that start out near the origin become increasingly large in magnitude because $|\lambda| > 1$ for both eigenvalues; $\mathbf{0}$ is called a ***repeller.*** In Example 4.50(b), $\mathbf{0}$ is called a ***saddle point*** because the origin attracts points in some directions and repels points in other directions. In this case, $|\lambda_1| < 1$ and $|\lambda_2| > 1$.

The next example shows what can happen when the eigenvalues of a real 2×2 matrix are complex (and hence conjugates of one another).

Example 4.51

Plot the trajectory beginning with $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix}4\\4\end{bmatrix}$ for the dynamical systems $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ corresponding to the following matrices:

(a) $A = \begin{bmatrix}0.5 & -0.5\\0.5 & 0.5\end{bmatrix}$ (b) $A = \begin{bmatrix}0.2 & -1.2\\0.6 & 1.4\end{bmatrix}$

Solution The trajectories are shown in Figure 4.26(a) and (b), respectively. Note that (a) is a trajectory spiraling into the origin, whereas (b) appears to follow an elliptical orbit.

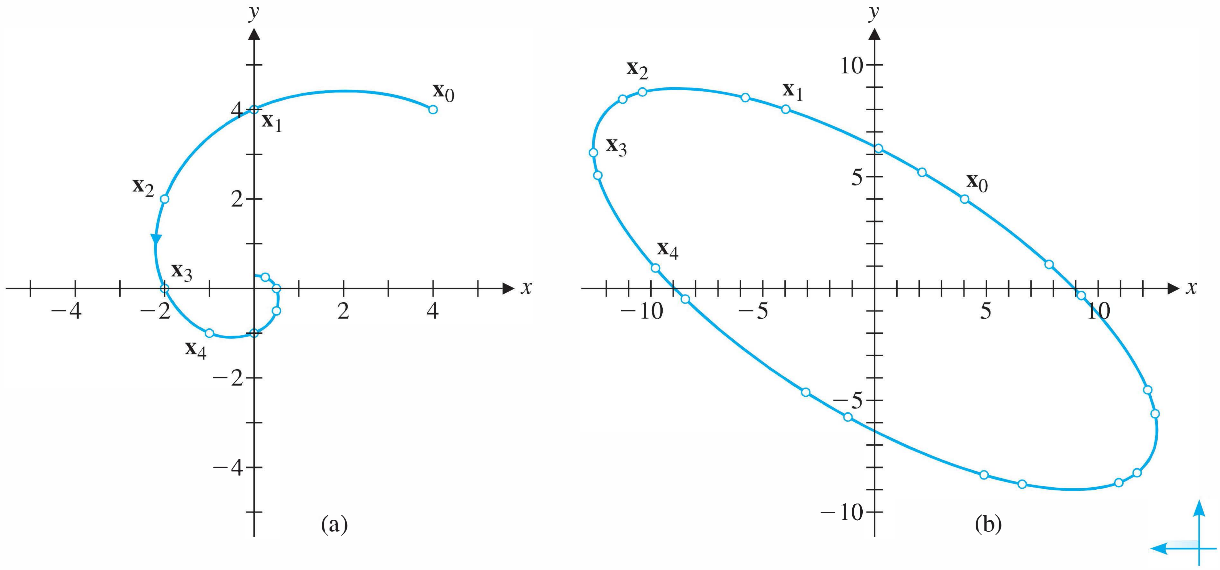


Figure 4.26

The following theorem explains the spiral behavior of the trajectory in Example 4.51(a).

Theorem 4.42 Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}$. The eigenvalues of A are $\lambda = a \pm bi$, and if a and b are not both zero, then A can be factored as

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r & 0 \\ 0 & r \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

where $r = |\lambda| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ and θ is the principal argument of $a + bi$.

Proof The eigenvalues of A are

$$\lambda = \tfrac{1}{2}(2a \pm \sqrt{4(-b^2)}) = \tfrac{1}{2}(2a \pm 2\sqrt{b^2}\sqrt{-1}) = a \pm |b|i = a \pm bi$$

by Exercise 35(b) in Section 4.1. Figure 4.27 displays $a + bi$, r, and θ. It follows that

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix} = r\begin{bmatrix} a/r & -b/r \\ b/r & a/r \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} r & 0 \\ 0 & r \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

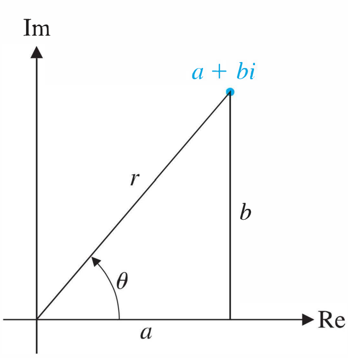


Figure 4.27

Remark Geometrically, Theorem 4.42 implies that when $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix} \neq O$, the linear transformation $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ is the composition of a rotation $R = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$ through the angle θ followed by a scaling $S = \begin{bmatrix} r & 0 \\ 0 & r \end{bmatrix}$ with factor r (Figure 4.28). In Example 4.51(a), the eigenvalues are $\lambda = 0.5 \pm 0.5i$ so $r = |\lambda| = \sqrt{2}/2 \approx 0.707 < 1$, and hence the trajectories all spiral inward toward $\mathbf{0}$.

The next theorem shows that, in general, when a real 2×2 matrix has complex eigenvalues, it is similar to a matrix of the form $\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}$. For a complex vector

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} z \\ w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a + bi \\ c + di \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} c \\ d \end{bmatrix}i$$

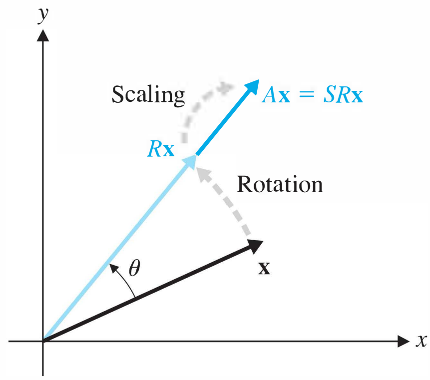


Figure 4.28
A rotation followed by a scaling

we define the real part, Re $\mathbf{x}$, and the imaginary part, Im $\mathbf{x}$, of $\mathbf{x}$ to be

$$\operatorname{Re}\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \operatorname{Re} z \\ \operatorname{Re} w \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \operatorname{Im}\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} c \\ d \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \operatorname{Im} z \\ \operatorname{Im} w \end{bmatrix}$$

Theorem 4.43 Let A be a real 2×2 matrix with a complex eigenvalue $\lambda = a - bi$ (where $b \neq 0$) and corresponding eigenvector $\mathbf{x}$. Then the matrix $P = [\operatorname{Re}\mathbf{x} \quad \operatorname{Im}\mathbf{x}]$ is invertible and

$$A = P\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}P^{-1}$$

Proof Let $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}i$ so that Re $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u}$ and Im $\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{v}$. From $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} A\mathbf{u} + A\mathbf{v}i = A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x} &= (a - bi)(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}i) \\ &= a\mathbf{u} + a\mathbf{v}i - b\mathbf{u}i + b\mathbf{v} = (a\mathbf{u} + b\mathbf{v}) + (-b\mathbf{u} + a\mathbf{v})i \end{aligned}$$

Equating real and imaginary parts, we obtain

$$A\mathbf{u} = a\mathbf{u} + b\mathbf{v} \quad \text{and} \quad A\mathbf{v} = -b\mathbf{u} + a\mathbf{v}$$

Now $P = [\mathbf{u} \mid \mathbf{v}]$, so

$$\begin{aligned} P\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix} = [\mathbf{u} \mid \mathbf{v}]\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix} &= [a\mathbf{u} + b\mathbf{v} \mid -b\mathbf{u} + a\mathbf{v}] = [A\mathbf{u} \mid A\mathbf{v}] = A[\mathbf{u} \mid \mathbf{v}] \\ &= AP \end{aligned}$$

To show that P is invertible, it is enough to show that $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are linearly independent. If $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ were not linearly independent, then it would follow that $\mathbf{v} = k\mathbf{u}$ for some (nonzero complex) scalar k, because neither $\mathbf{u}$ nor $\mathbf{v}$ is $\mathbf{0}$. Thus,

$$\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}i = \mathbf{u} + k\mathbf{u}i = (1 + ki)\mathbf{u}$$

Now, because A is real, $A\mathbf{x} = \lambda\mathbf{x}$ implies that

$$A\overline{\mathbf{x}} = \overline{A}\,\overline{\mathbf{x}} = \overline{A\mathbf{x}} = \overline{\lambda\mathbf{x}} = \overline{\lambda}\,\overline{\mathbf{x}}$$

so $\overline{\mathbf{x}} = \mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}i$ is an eigenvector corresponding to the other eigenvalue $\overline{\lambda} = a + bi$. But

$$\overline{\mathbf{x}} = \overline{(1 + ki)\mathbf{u}} = (1 - \overline{k}i)\mathbf{u}$$

because $\mathbf{u}$ is a real vector. Hence, the eigenvectors $\mathbf{x}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{x}}$ of A are both nonzero multiples of $\mathbf{u}$ and therefore are multiples of one another. This is impossible because eigenvectors corresponding to distinct eigenvalues must be linearly independent by Theorem 4.20. (This theorem is valid over the complex numbers as well as the real numbers.)

This contradiction implies that $\mathbf{u}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are linearly independent and hence P is invertible. It now follows that

$$A = P\begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}P^{-1}$$

Theorem 4.43 serves to explain Example 4.51(b). The eigenvalues of $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & -1.2 \\ 0.6 & 1.4 \end{bmatrix}$ are $0.8 \pm 0.6i$. For $\lambda = 0.8 - 0.6i$, a corresponding eigenvector is

$$\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} -1-i \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}i$$

From Theorem 4.43, it follows that for $P = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $C = \begin{bmatrix} 0.8 & -0.6 \\ 0.6 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}$, we have

$$A = PCP^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad P^{-1}AP = C$$

For the given dynamical system $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$, we perform a change of variable. Let

$$\mathbf{x}_k = P\mathbf{y}_k \qquad (\text{or, equivalently, } \mathbf{y}_k = P^{-1}\mathbf{x}_k)$$

Then

$$P\mathbf{y}_{k+1} = \mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k = AP\mathbf{y}_k$$

so

$$\mathbf{y}_{k+1} = \mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k = P^{-1}AP\mathbf{y}_k = C\mathbf{y}_k$$

Now C has the same eigenvalues as A (why?) and $|0.8 \pm 0.6i| = 1$. Thus, the dynamical system $\mathbf{y}_{k+1} = C\mathbf{y}_k$ simply rotates the points in every trajectory in a circle about the origin by Theorem 4.42.

To determine a trajectory of the dynamical system in Example 4.51(b), we iteratively apply the linear transformation $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x} = PCP^{-1}\mathbf{x}$. The transformation can be thought of as the composition of a change of variable ($\mathbf{x}$ to $\mathbf{y}$), followed by the rotation determined by C, followed by the reverse change of variable ($\mathbf{y}$ back to $\mathbf{x}$). We will encounter this idea again in the application to graphing quadratic equations in Section 5.5 and, more generally, as "change of basis" in Section 6.3. In Exercise 74 of Section 5.5, you will show that the trajectory in Example 4.51(b) is indeed an ellipse, as it appears to be from Figure 4.26(b).

To summarize then: If a real 2×2 matrix A has complex eigenvalues $\lambda = a \pm bi$, then the trajectories of the dynamical system $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ spiral inward if $|\lambda| < 1$ ($\mathbf{0}$ is a ***spiral attractor***), spiral outward if $|\lambda| > 1$ ($\mathbf{0}$ is a ***spiral repeller***), and lie on a closed orbit if $|\lambda| = 1$ ($\mathbf{0}$ is an ***orbital center***).

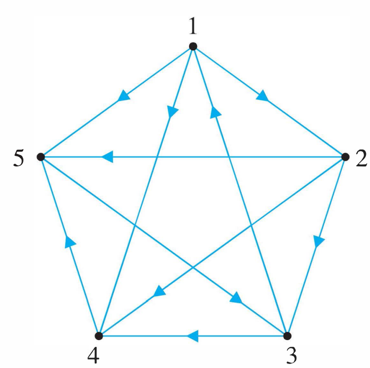
Vignette

Ranking Sports Teams and Searching the Internet

In any competitive sports league, it is not necessarily a straightforward process to rank the players or teams. Counting wins and losses alone overlooks the possibility that one team may accumulate a large number of victories against weak teams, while another team may have fewer victories but all of them against strong teams. Which of these teams is better? How should we compare two teams that never play one another? Should points scored be taken into account? Points against?

Despite these complexities, the ranking of athletes and sports teams has become a commonplace and much-anticipated feature in the media. For example, there are various annual rankings of U.S. college football and basketball teams, and golfers and tennis players are also ranked internationally. There are many copyrighted schemes used to produce such rankings, but we can gain some insight into how to approach the problem by using the ideas from this chapter.

To establish the basic idea, let's revisit Example 3.69. Five tennis players play one another in a round-robin tournament. Wins and losses are recorded in the form of a digraph in which a directed edge from i to j indicates that player i defeats player j. The corresponding adjacency matrix A therefore has $a_{ij} = 1$ if player i defeats player j and has $a_{ij} = 0$ otherwise.



$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

We would like to associate a ranking r_i with player i in such a way that $r_i > r_j$ indicates that player i is ranked more highly than player j. For this purpose, let's require that the r_i's be probabilities (that is, $0 \leq r_i \leq 1$ for all i, and $r_1 + r_2 + r_3 + r_4 + r_5 = 1$) and then organize the rankings in a *ranking vector*

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{bmatrix} r_1 \\ r_2 \\ r_3 \\ r_4 \\ r_5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Furthermore, let's insist that player i's ranking should be proportional to the sum of the rankings of the players defeated by player i. For example, player 1 defeated players 2, 4, and 5, so we want

$$r_1 = \alpha(r_2 + r_4 + r_5)$$

where α is the constant of proportionality. Writing out similar equations for the other players produces the following system:

$$\begin{aligned} r_1 &= \alpha(r_2 + r_4 + r_5) \\ r_2 &= \alpha(r_3 + r_4 + r_5) \\ r_3 &= \alpha(r_1 + r_4) \\ r_4 &= \alpha r_5 \\ r_5 &= \alpha r_3 \end{aligned}$$

Observe that we can write this system in matrix form as

$$\begin{bmatrix} r_1 \\ r_2 \\ r_3 \\ r_4 \\ r_5 \end{bmatrix} = \alpha \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} r_1 \\ r_2 \\ r_3 \\ r_4 \\ r_5 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \mathbf{r} = \alpha A \mathbf{r}$$

Equivalently, we see that the ranking vector $\mathbf{r}$ must satisfy $A\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{\alpha}\mathbf{r}$. In other words, $\mathbf{r}$ is an eigenvector corresponding to the matrix A!

Furthermore, A is a primitive nonnegative matrix, so the Perron-Frobenius Theorem guarantees that there is a *unique* ranking vector $\mathbf{r}$. In this example, the ranking vector turns out to be

$$\mathbf{r} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.29 \\ 0.27 \\ 0.22 \\ 0.08 \\ 0.14 \end{bmatrix}$$

so we would rank the players in the order 1, 2, 3, 5, 4.

By modifying the matrix A, it is possible to take into account many of the complexities mentioned in the opening paragraph. However, this simple example has served to indicate one useful approach to the problem of ranking teams.

The same idea can be used to understand how an Internet search engine such as Google works. Older search engines used to return the results of a search *unordered*. Useful sites would often be buried among irrelevant ones. Much scrolling was often needed to uncover what you were looking for. By contrast, Google returns search results *ordered* according to their likely relevance. Thus, a method for ranking websites is needed.

Instead of teams playing one another, we now have websites linking to one another. We can once again use a digraph to model the situation, only now an edge from i to j indicates that website i links to (or refers to) website j. So whereas for the sports team digraph, incoming directed edges are bad (they indicate losses), for the Internet digraph, incoming directed edges are good (they indicate links from other sites). In this setting, we want the ranking of website i to be proportional to sum of the rankings of all the websites that link to i.

Using the digraph on page 356 to represent just five websites, we have

$$r_4 = \alpha(r_1 + r_2 + r_3)$$

for example. It is easy to see that we now want to use the *transpose* of the adjacency matrix of the digraph. Therefore, the ranking vector $\mathbf{r}$ must satisfy $A^T\mathbf{r} = \frac{1}{a}\mathbf{r}$ and will thus be the Perron eigenvector of A^T. In this example, we obtain

$$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{r} = \begin{bmatrix} 0.14 \\ 0.08 \\ 0.22 \\ 0.27 \\ 0.29 \end{bmatrix}$$

so a search that turns up these five sites would list them in the order 5, 4, 3, 1, 2.

Google actually uses a variant of the method described here and computes the ranking vector via an iterative method very similar to the power method (Section 4.5).

Exercises 4.6

Markov Chains

Which of the stochastic matrices in Exercises 1–6 are regular?

1. $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

2. $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

3. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & 1 \\ \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

4. $\begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

5. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & 0 & 0.5 \\ 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0.4 & 0 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$

6. $\begin{bmatrix} 0.5 & 1 & 0 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 7–9, P is the transition matrix of a regular Markov chain. Find the long range transition matrix L of P.

7. $P = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{6} \\ \frac{2}{3} & \frac{5}{6} \end{bmatrix}$

8. $P = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{6} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{3} \\ 0 & \frac{1}{6} & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

9. $P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.3 & 0.4 \\ 0.6 & 0.1 & 0.4 \\ 0.2 & 0.6 & 0.2 \end{bmatrix}$

10. Prove that the steady state probability vector of a regular Markov chain is unique. [*Hint:* Use Theorem 4.33 or Theorem 4.34.]

Population Growth

In Exercises 11–14, calculate the positive eigenvalue and a corresponding positive eigenvector of the Leslie matrix L.

11. $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2 \\ 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

12. $L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1.5 \\ 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

13. $L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 7 & 4 \\ 0.5 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $L = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 & 3 \\ \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{2}{3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

15. If a Leslie matrix has a unique positive eigenvalue λ_1, what is the significance for the population if $\lambda_1 > 1$? $\lambda_1 < 1$? $\lambda_1 = 1$?

16. Verify that the characteristic polynomial of the Leslie matrix L in Equation (3) is

$$c_L(\lambda) = (-1)^n(\lambda^n - b_1\lambda^{n-1} - b_2s_1\lambda^{n-2} - b_3s_1s_2\lambda^{n-3} - \cdots - b_ns_1s_2\cdots s_{n-1})$$

[*Hint:* Use mathematical induction and expand $\det(L - \lambda I)$ along the last column.]

17. If all of the survival rates s_i are nonzero, let

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & s_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & s_1s_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \cdots & s_1s_2\cdots s_{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

Compute $P^{-1}LP$ and use it to find the characteristic polynomial of L. [*Hint:* Refer to Exercise 32 in Section 4.3.]

18. Verify that an eigenvector of L corresponding to λ_1 is

$$\mathbf{x}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ s_1/\lambda_1 \\ s_1s_2/\lambda_1^2 \\ s_1s_2s_3/\lambda_1^3 \\ \vdots \\ s_1s_2s_3\cdots s_{n-1}/\lambda_1^{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

[*Hint:* Combine Exercise 17 above with Exercise 32 in Section 4.3 and Exercise 46 in Section 4.4.]

CAS *In Exercises 19–21, compute the steady state growth rate of the population with the Leslie matrix L from the given exercise. Then use Exercise 18 to help find the corresponding distribution of the age classes.*

19. Exercise 39 in Section 3.7

20. Exercise 40 in Section 3.7

21. Exercise 44 in Section 3.7

CAS **22.** Many species of seal have suffered from commercial hunting. They have been killed for their skin, blubber, and meat. The fur trade, in particular, reduced some seal populations to the point of extinction. Today, the greatest threats to seal populations are decline of fish stocks due to overfishing, pollution, disturbance of habitat, entanglement in marine debris, and culling by fishery owners. Some seals have been declared endangered species; other species are carefully managed. Table 4.7 gives the birth and survival rates for the northern fur seal, divided into 2-year age classes. [The data are based on A. E. York and J. R. Hartley, "Pup Production Following Harvest of Female Northern Fur Seals," *Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Science, 38* (1981), pp. 84–90.]

© iStockphoto.com/Irena Mamaeva

Table 4.7

Age (years)	Birth Rate	Survival Rate
0–2	0.00	0.91
2–4	0.02	0.88
4–6	0.70	0.85
6–8	1.53	0.80
8–10	1.67	0.74
10–12	1.65	0.67
12–14	1.56	0.59
14–16	1.45	0.49
16–18	1.22	0.38
18–20	0.91	0.27
20–22	0.70	0.17
22–24	0.22	0.15
24–26	0.00	0.00

(a) Construct the Leslie matrix L for these data and compute the positive eigenvalue and a corresponding positive eigenvector.

(b) In the long run, what percentage of seals will be in each age class and what will the growth rate be?

Exercise 23 shows that the long-run behavior of a population can be determined directly from the entries of its Leslie matrix.

23. The *net reproduction rate* of a population is defined as

$$r = b_1 + b_2s_1 + b_3s_1s_2 + \cdots + b_ns_1s_2\cdots s_{n-1}$$

where the b_i are the birth rates and the s_j are the survival rates for the population.

(a) Explain why r can be interpreted as the average number of daughters born to a single female over her lifetime.

(b) Show that $r = 1$ if and only if $\lambda_1 = 1$. (This represents *zero population growth*.) [*Hint:* Let

$$g(\lambda) = \frac{b_1}{\lambda} + \frac{b_2s_1}{\lambda^2} + \frac{b_3s_1s_2}{\lambda^3} + \cdots + \frac{b_ns_1s_2\cdots s_{n-1}}{\lambda^n}$$

Show that λ is an eigenvalue of L if and only if $g(\lambda) = 1$.]

(c) Assuming that there is a unique positive eigenvalue λ_1, show that $r < 1$ if and only if the population is decreasing and $r > 1$ if and only if the population is increasing.

A sustainable harvesting policy is a procedure that allows a certain fraction of a population (represented by a population distribution vector $\mathbf{x}$*) to be harvested so that the population returns to* $\mathbf{x}$ *after one time interval (where a time interval is the length of one age class). If h is the fraction of each age class that is harvested, then we can express the harvesting procedure mathematically as follows: If we start with a population vector* $\mathbf{x}$*, after one time interval we have* $L\mathbf{x}$*; harvesting removes* $hL\mathbf{x}$*, leaving*

$$L\mathbf{x} - hL\mathbf{x} = (1 - h)L\mathbf{x}$$

Sustainability requires that

$$(1 - h)L\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}$$

24. If λ_1 is the unique positive eigenvalue of a Leslie matrix L and h is the sustainable harvest ratio, prove that $h = 1 - 1/\lambda_1$.

CAS **25. (a)** Find the sustainable harvest ratio for the woodland caribou in Exercise 44 in Section 3.7.

(b) Using the data in Exercise 44 in Section 3.7, reduce the caribou herd according to your answer to part (a). Verify that the population returns to its original level after one time interval.

26. Find the sustainable harvest ratio for the seal in Exercise 22. (Conservationists have had to harvest seal populations when overfishing has reduced the available food supply to the point where the seals are in danger of starvation.)

a + bi **27.** Let L be a Leslie matrix with a unique positive eigenvalue λ_1. Show that if λ is any other (real or complex) eigenvalue of L, then $|\lambda| \le \lambda_1$. [*Hint:* Write $\lambda = r(\cos\theta + i\sin\theta)$ and substitute it into the equation $g(\lambda) = 1$, as in part (b) of Exercise 23. Use De Moivre's Theorem and then take the real part of both sides. The Triangle Inequality should prove useful.]

The Perron-Frobenius Theorem

In Exercises 28–31, find the Perron root and the corresponding Perron eigenvector of A.

28. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **29.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

30. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **31.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

It can be shown that a nonnegative $n \times n$ matrix is irreducible if and only if $(I + A)^{n-1} > O$. In Exercises 32–35, use this criterion to determine whether the matrix A is irreducible. If A is reducible, find a permutation of its rows and columns that puts A into the block form

$$\left[\begin{array}{c|c} B & C \\ \hline O & D \end{array}\right]$$

32. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **33.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

34. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **35.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

36. **(a)** If A is the adjacency matrix of a graph G, show that A is irreducible if and only if G is connected. (A graph is ***connected*** if there is a path between every pair of vertices.)

(b) Which of the graphs in Section 4.0 have an irreducible adjacency matrix? Which have a primitive adjacency matrix?

37. Let G be a bipartite graph with adjacency matrix A.

(a) Show that A is not primitive.

(b) Show that if λ is an eigenvalue of A, so is $-\lambda$. [*Hint:* Use Exercise 80 in Section 3.7 and partition an eigenvector for λ so that it is compatible with this partitioning of A. Use this partitioning to find an eigenvector for $-\lambda$.]

38. A graph is called ***k-regular*** if k edges meet at each vertex. Let G be a k-regular graph.

(a) Show that the adjacency matrix A of G has $\lambda = k$ as an eigenvalue. [*Hint:* Adapt Theorem 4.30.]

(b) Show that if A is primitive, then the other eigenvalues are all less than k in absolute value. [*Hint:* Adapt Theorem 4.31.]

39. Explain the results of your exploration in Section 4.0 in light of Exercises 36–38 and Section 4.5.

In Exercise 40, the absolute value of a matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ is defined to be the matrix $|A| = [|a_{ij}|]$.

40. Let A and B be $n \times n$ matrices, $\mathbf{x}$ a vector in $\mathbb{R}^n$, and c a scalar. Prove the following matrix inequalities:

(a) $|cA| = |c|\,|A|$ **(b)** $|A + B| \le |A| + |B|$

(c) $|A\mathbf{x}| \le |A|\,|\mathbf{x}|$ **(d)** $|AB| \le |A|\,|B|$

41. Prove that a 2×2 matrix $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ is reducible if and only if $a_{12} = 0$ or $a_{21} = 0$.

42. Let A be a nonnegative, irreducible matrix such that $I - A$ is invertible and $(I - A)^{-1} \ge O$. Let λ_1 and $\mathbf{v}_1$ be the Perron root and Perron eigenvector of A.

(a) Prove that $0 < \lambda_1 < 1$. [*Hint*: Apply Exercise 22 in Section 4.3 and Theorem 4.18(b).]

(b) Deduce from (a) that $\mathbf{v}_1 > A\mathbf{v}_1$.

Linear Recurrence Relations

In Exercises 43–46, write out the first six terms of the sequence defined by the recurrence relation with the given initial conditions.

43. $x_0 = 1,\ x_n = 2x_{n-1}$ for $n \ge 1$

44. $a_1 = 128,\ a_n = a_{n-1}/2$ for $n \ge 2$

45. $y_0 = 0,\ y_1 = 1,\ y_n = y_{n-1} - y_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 2$

46. $b_0 = 1,\ b_1 = 1,\ b_n = 2b_{n-1} + b_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 2$

In Exercises 47–52, solve the recurrence relation with the given initial conditions.

47. $x_0 = 0,\ x_1 = 5,\ x_n = 3x_{n-1} + 4x_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 2$

48. $x_0 = 0,\ x_1 = 1,\ x_n = 4x_{n-1} - 3x_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 2$

49. $y_1 = 1,\ y_2 = 6,\ y_n = 4y_{n-1} - 4y_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 3$

50. $a_0 = 4,\ a_1 = 1,\ a_n = a_{n-1} - a_{n-2}/4$ for $n \ge 2$

51. $b_0 = 0,\ b_1 = 1,\ b_n = 2b_{n-1} + 2b_{n-2}$ for $n \ge 2$

a + bi **52.** The recurrence relation in Exercise 45. Show that your solution agrees with the answer to Exercise 45.

53. Complete the proof of Theorem 4.38(a) by showing that if the recurrence relation $x_n = ax_{n-1} + bx_{n-2}$ has distinct eigenvalues $\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$, then the solution will be of the form

$$x_n = c_1\lambda_1^n + c_2\lambda_2^n$$

[*Hint:* Show that the method of Example 4.40 works in general.]

54. **(a)** Show that for any choice of initial conditions $x_0 = r$ and $x_1 = s$, the scalars c_1 and c_2 can be found, as stated in Theorem 4.38(a) and (b).

(b) If the eigenvalues λ_1 and λ_2 are distinct and the initial conditions are $\mathbf{x}_0 = 0$, $\mathbf{x}_1 = 1$, show that

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \left(\frac{1}{\lambda_1 - \lambda_2}\right)(\lambda_1^n - \lambda_2^n).$$

55. The Fibonacci recurrence $f_n = f_{n-1} + f_{n-2}$ has the associated matrix equation $\mathbf{x}_n = A\mathbf{x}_{n-1}$, where

$$\mathbf{x}_n = \begin{bmatrix} f_n \\ f_{n-1} \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

(a) With $f_0 = 0$ and $f_1 = 1$, use mathematical induction to prove that

$$A^n = \begin{bmatrix} f_{n+1} & f_n \\ f_n & f_{n-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

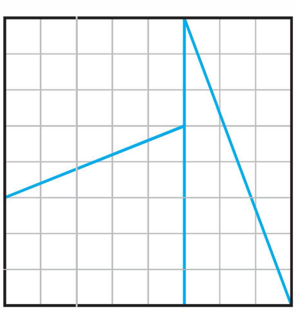
for all $n \geq 1$.

(b) Using part (a), prove that

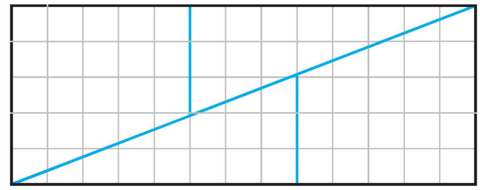
$$f_{n+1}f_{n-1} - f_n^2 = (-1)^n$$

for all $n \geq 1$. [This is called ***Cassini's Identity***, after the astronomer Giovanni Domenico Cassini (1625–1712). Cassini was born in Italy but, on the invitation of Louis XIV, moved in 1669 to France, where he became director of the Paris Observatory. He became a French citizen and adopted the French version of his name: Jean-Dominique Cassini. Mathematics was one of his many interests other than astronomy. Cassini's Identity was published in 1680 in a paper submitted to the Royal Academy of Sciences in Paris.]

(c) An 8×8 checkerboard can be dissected as shown in Figure 4.29(a) and the pieces reassembled to form the 5×13 rectangle in Figure 4.29(b).



(a)



(b)

Figure 4.29

The area of the square is 64 square units, but the rectangle's area is 65 square units! Where did the extra square come from? [*Hint:* What does this have to do with the Fibonacci sequence?]

56. You have a supply of three kinds of tiles: two kinds of 1×2 tiles and one kind of 1×1 tile, as shown in Figure 4.30.

Figure 4.30

Let t_n be the number of different ways to cover a $1 \times n$ rectangle with these tiles. For example, Figure 4.31 shows that $t_3 = 5$.

(a) Find $t_1, \ldots, t_5$. (Does t_0 make any sense? If so, what is it?)

(b) Set up a second order recurrence relation for t_n.

(c) Using t_1 and t_2 as the initial conditions, solve the recurrence relation in part (b). Check your answer against the data in part (a).

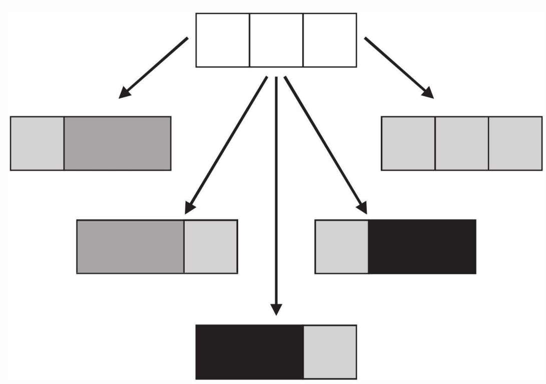


Figure 4.31
The five ways to tile a 1×3 rectangle

57. You have a supply of 1×2 dominoes with which to cover a $2 \times n$ rectangle. Let d_n be the number of different ways to cover the rectangle. For example, Figure 4.32 shows that $d_3 = 3$.

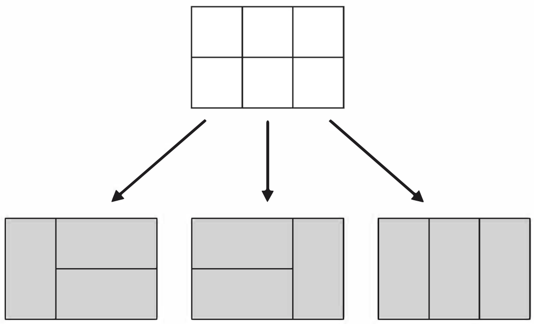


Figure 4.32
The three ways to cover a 2×3 rectangle with 1×2 dominoes

(a) Find $d_1, \ldots, d_5$.
(Does d_0 make any sense? If so, what is it?)
(b) Set up a second order recurrence relation for d_n.
(c) Using d_1 and d_2 as the initial conditions, solve the recurrence relation in part (b). Check your answer against the data in part (a).

58. In Example 4.41, find eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ corresponding to $\lambda_1 = \dfrac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$ and $\lambda_2 = \dfrac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}$. With $\mathbf{x}_k = \begin{bmatrix} f_k \\ f_{k-1} \end{bmatrix}$, verify formula (2) in Section 4.5. That is, show that, for some scalar c_1,

$$\lim_{k\to\infty} \frac{\mathbf{x}_k}{\lambda_1^k} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1$$

Systems of Linear Differential Equations

In Exercises 59–64, find the general solution to the given system of differential equations. Then find the specific solution that satisfies the initial conditions. (Consider all functions to be functions of t.)

59. $\begin{aligned} x' &= x + 3y, & x(0) &= 0 \\ y' &= 2x + 2y, & y(0) &= 5 \end{aligned}$

60. $\begin{aligned} x' &= 2x - y, & x(0) &= 1 \\ y' &= -x + 2y, & y(0) &= 1 \end{aligned}$

61. $\begin{aligned} x_1' &= x_1 + x_2, & x_1(0) &= 1 \\ x_2' &= x_1 - x_2, & x_2(0) &= 0 \end{aligned}$

62. $\begin{aligned} y_1' &= y_1 - y_2, & y_1(0) &= 1 \\ y_2' &= y_1 + y_2, & y_2(0) &= 1 \end{aligned}$

63. $\begin{aligned} x' &= y - z, & x(0) &= 1 \\ y' &= x + z, & y(0) &= 0 \\ z' &= x + y, & z(0) &= -1 \end{aligned}$

64. $\begin{aligned} x' &= x + 3z, & x(0) &= 2 \\ y' &= x - 2y + z, & y(0) &= 3 \\ z' &= 3x + z, & z(0) &= 4 \end{aligned}$

65. A scientist places two strains of bacteria, X and Y, in a petri dish. Initially, there are 400 of X and 500 of Y. The two bacteria compete for food and space but do not feed on each other. If $x = x(t)$ and $y = y(t)$ are the numbers of the strains at time t days, the growth rates of the two populations are given by the system

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= 1.2x - 0.2y \\ y' &= -0.2x + 1.5y \end{aligned}$$

(a) Determine what happens to these two populations by solving the system of differential equations.
(b) Explore the effect of changing the initial populations by letting $x(0) = a$ and $y(0) = b$. Describe what happens to the populations in terms of a and b.

66. Two species, X and Y, live in a *symbiotic* relationship. That is, neither species can survive on its own and each depends on the other for its survival. Initially, there are 15 of X and 10 of Y. If $x = x(t)$ and $y = y(t)$ are the sizes of the populations at time t months, the growth rates of the two populations are given by the system

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= -0.8x + 0.4y \\ y' &= 0.4x - 0.2y \end{aligned}$$

Determine what happens to these two populations.

In Exercises 67 and 68, species X preys on species Y. The sizes of the populations are represented by $x = x(t)$ and $y = y(t)$. The growth rate of each population is governed by the system of differential equations $\mathbf{x}' = A\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{b}$, where $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{b}$ is a constant vector. Determine what happens to the two populations for the given A and $\mathbf{b}$ and initial conditions $\mathbf{x}(0)$. (First show that there are constants a and b such that the substitutions $x = u + a$ and $y = v + b$ convert the system into an equivalent one with no constant terms.)

67. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -30 \\ -10 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} 20 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix}$

68. $A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 40 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{x}(0) = \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 30 \end{bmatrix}$

69. Let $x = x(t)$ be a twice-differentiable function and consider the *second order differential equation*

$$x'' + ax' + bx = 0 \qquad (11)$$

(a) Show that the change of variables $y = x'$ and $z = x$ allows Equation (11) to be written as a system of two linear differential equations in y and z.

(b) Show that the characteristic equation of the system in part (a) is $\lambda^2 + a\lambda + b = 0$.

70. Show that there is a change of variables that converts the nth *order differential equation*

$$x^{(n)} + a_{n-1}x^{(n-1)} + \cdots + a_1x' + a_0 = 0$$

into a system of n linear differential equations whose coefficient matrix is the companion matrix $C(p)$ of the polynomial $p(\lambda) = \lambda^n + a_{n-1}\lambda^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1\lambda + a_0$. [The notation $x^{(k)}$ denotes the kth derivative of x. See Exercises 26–32 in Section 4.3 for the definition of a companion matrix.]

In Exercises 71 and 72, use Exercise 69 to find the general solution of the given equation.

71. $x'' - 5x' + 6x = 0$ **72.** $x'' + 4x' + 3x = 0$

In Exercises 73–76, solve the system of differential equations in the given exercise using Theorem 4.41.

73. Exercise 59 **74.** Exercise 60

75. Exercise 63 **76.** Exercise 64

Discrete Linear Dynamical Systems

In Exercises 77–84, consider the dynamical system $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$.

(a) Compute and plot $\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \mathbf{x}_3$ for $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$.

(b) Compute and plot $\mathbf{x}_0, \mathbf{x}_1, \mathbf{x}_2, \mathbf{x}_3$ for $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$.

(c) Using eigenvalues and eigenvectors, classify the origin as an attractor, repeller, saddle point, or none of these.

(d) Sketch several typical trajectories of the system.

77. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$ **78.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.5 & -0.5 \\ 0 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$

79. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$ **80.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 2 \\ 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

81. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1.5 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **82.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & 0.9 \\ 0.5 & 0.5 \end{bmatrix}$

83. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.4 \\ -0.2 & 0.8 \end{bmatrix}$ **84.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1.5 \\ 1.2 & 3.6 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 85–88, the given matrix is of the form $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}$. *In each case, A can be factored as the product of a scaling matrix and a rotation matrix. Find the scaling factor r and the angle θ of rotation. Sketch the first four points of the trajectory for the dynamical system* $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ *with* $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ *and classify the origin as a spiral attractor, spiral repeller, or orbital center.*

85. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **86.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0.5 \\ -0.5 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

87. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \sqrt{3} \\ -\sqrt{3} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ **88.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} -\sqrt{3}/2 & -1/2 \\ 1/2 & -\sqrt{3}/2 \end{bmatrix}$

In Exercises 89–92, find an invertible matrix P and a matrix C of the form $C = \begin{bmatrix} a & -b \\ b & a \end{bmatrix}$ *such that* $A = PCP^{-1}$. *Sketch the first six points of the trajectory for the dynamical system* $\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = A\mathbf{x}_k$ *with* $\mathbf{x}_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ *and classify the origin as a spiral attractor, spiral repeller, or orbital center.*

89. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.1 & -0.2 \\ 0.1 & 0.3 \end{bmatrix}$ **90.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

91. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ **92.** $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & \sqrt{3} \end{bmatrix}$

Chapter Review

Key Definitions and Concepts

adjoint of a matrix, 276
algebraic multiplicity of an eigenvalue, 294
characteristic equation, 292
characteristic polynomial, 292
cofactor expansion, 266
Cramer's Rule, 274–275
determinant, 263–265
diagonalizable matrix, 303
eigenvalue, 254
eigenvector, 254
eigenspace, 256
Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices, 296
geometric multiplicity of an eigenvalue, 294
Gerschgorin disk, 319
Gerschgorin's Disk Theorem, 321
Laplace Expansion Theorem, 266
power method (and its variants), 311–319
properties of determinants, 269–274
similar matrices, 301

Review Questions

1. Mark each of the following statements true or false:

(a) For all square matrices A, $\det(-A) = -\det A$.
(b) If A and B are $n \times n$ matrices, then $\det(AB) = \det(BA)$.
(c) If A and B are $n \times n$ matrices whose columns are the same but in different orders, then $\det B = -\det A$.
(d) If A is invertible, then $\det(A^{-1}) = \det A^T$.
(e) If 0 is the only eigenvalue of a square matrix A, then A is the zero matrix.
(f) Two eigenvectors corresponding to the same eigenvalue must be linearly dependent.
(g) If an $n \times n$ matrix has n distinct eigenvalues, then it must be diagonalizable.
(h) If an $n \times n$ matrix is diagonalizable, then it must have n distinct eigenvalues.
(i) Similar matrices have the same eigenvectors.
(j) If A and B are two $n \times n$ matrices with the same reduced row echelon form, then A is similar to B.

2. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & 5 \\ 3 & 5 & 7 \\ 7 & 9 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Compute $\det A$ by cofactor expansion along any row or column.
(b) Compute $\det A$ by first reducing A to triangular form.

3. If $\begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} = 3$, find $\begin{vmatrix} 3d & 2e - 4f & f \\ 3a & 2b - 4c & c \\ 3g & 2h - 4i & i \end{vmatrix}$.

4. Let A and B be 4×4 matrices with $\det A = 2$ and $\det B = -\frac{1}{4}$. Find $\det C$ for the indicated matrix C:

(a) $C = (AB)^{-1}$ **(b)** $C = A^2B(3A^T)$

5. If A is a skew-symmetric $n \times n$ matrix and n is odd, prove that $\det A = 0$.

6. Find all values of k for which $\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & k \\ 2 & 4 & k^2 \end{vmatrix} = 0$.

In Questions 7 and 8, show that **x** *is an eigenvector of A and find the corresponding eigenvalue.*

7. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 4 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$

8. $\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -1 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$, $A = \begin{bmatrix} 13 & -60 & -45 \\ -5 & 18 & 15 \\ 10 & -40 & -32 \end{bmatrix}$

9. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -6 & 3 \\ 3 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$.

(a) Find the characteristic polynomial of A.
(b) Find all of the eigenvalues of A.
(c) Find a basis for each of the eigenspaces of A.
(d) Determine whether A is diagonalizable. If A is not diagonalizable, explain why not. If A is diagonalizable, find an invertible matrix P and a diagonal matrix D such that $P^{-1}AP = D$.

10. If A is a 3×3 diagonalizable matrix with eigenvalues -2, 3, and 4, find $\det A$.

11. If A is a 2×2 matrix with eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = \frac{1}{2}$, $\lambda_2 = -1$, and corresponding eigenvectors $\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $\mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$, find $A^{-5}\begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}$.

12. If A is a diagonalizable matrix and all of its eigenvalues satisfy $|\lambda| < 1$, prove that A^n approaches the zero matrix as n gets large.

In Questions 13–15, determine, with reasons, whether A is similar to B. If $A \sim B$, give an invertible matrix P such that $P^{-1}AP = B$.

13. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 2 \\ 3 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

14. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

15. $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$, $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

16. Let $A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & k \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$. Find all values of k for which:

(a) A has eigenvalues 3 and -1.
(b) A has an eigenvalue with algebraic multiplicity 2.
(c) A has no real eigenvalues.

17. If $A^3 = A$, what are the possible eigenvalues of A?

18. If a square matrix A has two equal rows, why must A have 0 as one of its eigenvalues?

19. If **x** is an eigenvector of A with eigenvalue $\lambda = 3$, show that **x** is also an eigenvector of $A^2 - 5A + 2I$. What is the corresponding eigenvalue?

20. If A is similar to B with $P^{-1}AP = B$ and **x** is an eigenvector of A, show that $P^{-1}\mathbf{x}$ is an eigenvector of B.

5 Orthogonality

. . . that sprightly Scot of Scots, Douglas, that runs a-horseback up a hill perpendicular—

—William Shakespeare
Henry IV, Part I
Act II, Scene IV

5.0 Introduction: Shadows on a Wall

In this chapter, we will extend the notion of orthogonal projection that we encountered first in Chapter 1 and then again in Chapter 3. Until now, we have discussed only projection onto a single vector (or, equivalently, the one-dimensional subspace spanned by that vector). In this section, we will see if we can find the analogous formulas for projection onto a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$. Figure 5.1 shows what happens, for example, when parallel light rays create a shadow on a wall. A similar process occurs when a three-dimensional object is displayed on a two-dimensional screen, such as a computer monitor. Later in this chapter, we will consider these ideas in full generality.

To begin, let's take another look at what we already know about projections. In Section 3.6, we showed that, in $\mathbb{R}^2$, the standard matrix of a projection onto the line through the origin with direction vector $\mathbf{d} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1 \\ d_2 \end{bmatrix}$ is

$$P = \frac{1}{d_1^2 + d_2^2}\begin{bmatrix} d_1^2 & d_1d_2 \\ d_1d_2 & d_2^2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} d_1^2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) & d_1d_2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) \\ d_1d_2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) & d_2^2/(d_1^2 + d_2^2) \end{bmatrix}$$

Hence, the projection of the vector $\mathbf{v}$ onto this line is just $P\mathbf{v}$.

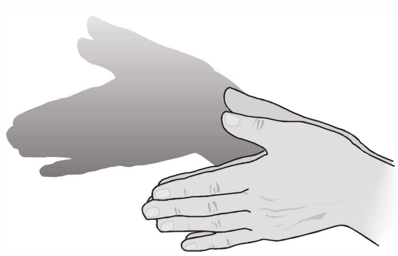


Figure 5.1
Shadows on a wall are projections

Problem 1 Show that P can be written in the equivalent form

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} \cos^2\theta & \cos\theta\sin\theta \\ \cos\theta\sin\theta & \sin^2\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

(What does θ represent here?)

Problem 2 Show that P can also be written in the form $P = \mathbf{u}\mathbf{u}^T$, where $\mathbf{u}$ is a *unit* vector in the direction of $\mathbf{d}$.

Problem 3 Using Problem 2, find P and then find the projection of $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ -4 \end{bmatrix}$ onto the lines with the following unit direction vectors:

$$\text{(a)}\ \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{(b)}\ \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{4}{5} \\ \frac{3}{5} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{(c)}\ \mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{3}{5} \\ \frac{4}{5} \end{bmatrix}$$

Problem 4 Using the form $P = \mathbf{u}\mathbf{u}^T$, show that (a) $P^T = P$ (i.e., P is symmetric) and (b) $P^2 = P$ (i.e., P is idempotent).

Problem 5 Explain why, if P is a 2×2 projection matrix, the line onto which it projects vectors is the column space of P.

Now we will move into $\mathbb{R}^3$ and consider projections onto planes through the origin. We will explore several approaches.

Figure 5.2 shows one way to proceed. If $\mathcal{P}$ is a plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$ with normal vector $\mathbf{n}$ and if $\mathbf{v}$ is a vector in $\mathbb{R}^3$, then $\mathbf{p} = \text{proj}_{\mathcal{P}}(\mathbf{v})$ is a vector in $\mathcal{P}$ such that $\mathbf{v} - c\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{p}$ for some scalar c.

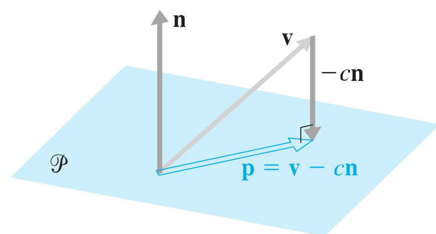


Figure 5.2
Projection onto a plane

Problem 6 Using the fact that $\mathbf{n}$ is orthogonal to every vector in $\mathcal{P}$, solve $\mathbf{v} - c\mathbf{n} = \mathbf{p}$ for c to find an expression for $\mathbf{p}$ in terms of $\mathbf{v}$ and $\mathbf{n}$.

Problem 7 Use the method of Problem 6 to find the projection of

$$\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

onto the planes with the following equations:

$$\text{(a)}\ x + y + z = 0 \quad \text{(b)}\ x - 2z = 0 \quad \text{(c)}\ 2x - 3y + z = 0$$

Another approach to the problem of finding the projection of a vector onto a plane is suggested by Figure 5.3. We can decompose the projection of $\mathbf{v}$ onto $\mathcal{P}$ into the *sum* of its projections onto the direction vectors for $\mathcal{P}$. This works only if the direction vectors are orthogonal unit vectors. Accordingly, let $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ be direction vectors for $\mathcal{P}$ with the property that

$$\|\mathbf{u}_1\| = \|\mathbf{u}_2\| = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{u}_1 \cdot \mathbf{u}_2 = 0$$

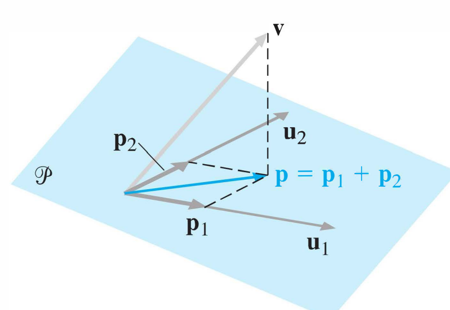


Figure 5.3

By Problem 2, the projections of $\mathbf{v}$ onto $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ are

$$\mathbf{p}_1 = \mathbf{u}_1\mathbf{u}_1^T\mathbf{v} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{p}_2 = \mathbf{u}_2\mathbf{u}_2^T\mathbf{v}$$

respectively. To show that $\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2$ gives the projection of $\mathbf{v}$ onto $\mathcal{P}$, we need to show that $\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2)$ is orthogonal to $\mathcal{P}$. It is enough to show that $\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2)$ is orthogonal to both $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$. (Why?)

Problem 8 Show that $\mathbf{u}_1 \cdot (\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2)) = 0$ and $\mathbf{u}_2 \cdot (\mathbf{v} - (\mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2)) = 0$. [*Hint:* Use the alternative form of the dot product, $\mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}$, together with the fact that $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ are orthogonal unit vectors.]

It follows from Problem 8 and the comments preceding it that the matrix of the projection onto the subspace $\mathcal{P}$ of $\mathbb{R}^3$ spanned by orthogonal unit vectors $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ is

$$P = \mathbf{u}_1\mathbf{u}_1^T + \mathbf{u}_2\mathbf{u}_2^T \tag{1}$$

Problem 9 Repeat Problem 7, using the formula for P given by Equation (1). Use the same $\mathbf{v}$ and use $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$, as indicated below. (First, verify that $\mathbf{u}_1$ and $\mathbf{u}_2$ are orthogonal unit vectors in the given plane.)

(a) $x + y + z = 0$ with $\mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -2/\sqrt{6} \\ 1/\sqrt{6} \\ 1/\sqrt{6} \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{2} \\ -1/\sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}$

(b) $x - 2z = 0$ with $\mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2/\sqrt{5} \\ 0 \\ 1/\sqrt{5} \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$

(c) $2x - 3y + z = 0$ with $\mathbf{u}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{3} \\ -1/\sqrt{3} \\ 1/\sqrt{3} \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{u}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2/\sqrt{6} \\ 1/\sqrt{6} \\ -1/\sqrt{6} \end{bmatrix}$

Problem 10 Show that a projection matrix given by Equation (1) satisfies properties (a) and (b) of Problem 4.

Problem 11 Show that the matrix P of a projection onto a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$ can be expressed as

$$P = AA^T$$

for some 3×2 matrix A. [*Hint:* Show that Equation (1) is an outer product expansion.]

Problem 12 Show that if P is the matrix of a projection onto a plane in $\mathbb{R}^3$, then $\operatorname{rank}(P) = 2$.

In this chapter, we will look at the concepts of orthogonality and orthogonal projection in greater detail. We will see that the ideas introduced in this section can be generalized and that they have many important applications.

5.1 Orthogonality in $\mathbb{R}^n$

In this section, we will generalize the notion of orthogonality of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ from two vectors to sets of vectors. In doing so, we will see that two properties make the standard basis $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ of $\mathbb{R}^n$ easy to work with: First, any two distinct vectors in the set are orthogonal. Second, each vector in the set is a unit vector. These two properties lead us to the notion of orthogonal bases and orthonormal bases—concepts that we will be able to fruitfully apply to a variety of applications.

Orthogonal and Orthonormal Sets of Vectors

Definition A set of vectors $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is called an ***orthogonal set*** if all pairs of distinct vectors in the set are orthogonal—that is, if

$$\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_j = 0 \quad \text{whenever} \quad i \neq j \quad \text{for } i, j = 1, 2, \ldots, k$$

The standard basis $\{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{e}_n\}$ of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is an orthogonal set, as is any subset of it. As the first example illustrates, there are many other possibilities.

Example 5.1

Show that $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ is an orthogonal set in $\mathbb{R}^3$ if

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

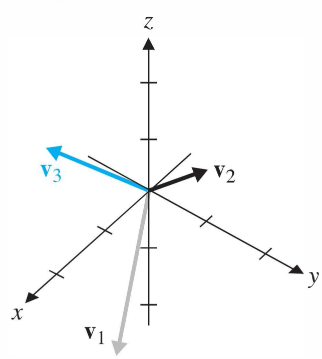


Figure 5.4
An orthogonal set of vectors

Solution We must show that every pair of vectors from this set is orthogonal. This is true, since

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_2 &= 2(0) + 1(1) + (-1)(1) = 0 \\ \mathbf{v}_2 \cdot \mathbf{v}_3 &= 0(1) + 1(-1) + (1)(1) = 0 \\ \mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_3 &= 2(1) + 1(-1) + (-1)(1) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Geometrically, the vectors in Example 5.1 are mutually perpendicular, as Figure 5.4 shows.

One of the main advantages of working with orthogonal sets of vectors is that they are necessarily linearly independent, as Theorem 5.1 shows.

Theorem 5.1 If $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is an orthogonal set of nonzero vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then these vectors are linearly independent.

Proof If $c_1, \ldots, c_k$ are scalars such that $c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k = \mathbf{0}$, then

$$(c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k) \cdot \mathbf{v}_i = 0 \cdot \mathbf{v}_i = 0$$

or, equivalently,

$$c_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) + \cdots + c_i(\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) + \cdots + c_k(\mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) = 0 \tag{1}$$

Since $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is an orthogonal set, all of the dot products in Equation (1) are zero, except $\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i$. Thus, Equation (1) reduces to

$$c_i(\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) = 0$$

Now, $\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i \neq 0$ because $\mathbf{v}_i \neq \mathbf{0}$ by hypothesis. So we must have $c_i = 0$. The fact that this is true for all $i = 1, \ldots, k$ implies that $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is a linearly independent set.

Remark Thanks to Theorem 5.1, we know that if a set of vectors is orthogonal, it is automatically linearly independent. For example, we can immediately deduce that the three vectors in Example 5.1 are linearly independent. Contrast this approach with the work needed to establish their linear independence directly!

Definition An ***orthogonal basis*** for a subspace W of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a basis of W that is an orthogonal set.

Example 5.2

The vectors

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{v}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

from Example 5.1 are orthogonal and, hence, linearly independent. Since any three linearly independent vectors in $\mathbb{R}^3$ form a basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$, by the Fundamental Theorem of Invertible Matrices, it follows that $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ is an orthogonal basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Remark In Example 5.2, suppose only the orthogonal vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ were given and you were asked to find a third vector $\mathbf{v}_3$ to make $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ an orthogonal basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$. One way to do this is to remember that in $\mathbb{R}^3$, the cross product of two vectors $\mathbf{v}_1$ and $\mathbf{v}_2$ is orthogonal to each of them. (See Exploration: The Cross Product in Chapter 1.) Hence we may take

$$\mathbf{v}_3 = \mathbf{v}_1 \times \mathbf{v}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Note that the resulting vector is a multiple of the vector $\mathbf{v}_3$ in Example 5.2, as it must be.

Example 5.3

Find an orthogonal basis for the subspace W of $\mathbb{R}^3$ given by

$$W = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} : x - y + 2z = 0 \right\}$$

Solution Section 5.3 gives a general procedure for problems of this sort. For now, we will find the orthogonal basis by brute force. The subspace W is a plane through the origin in $\mathbb{R}^3$. From the equation of the plane, we have $x = y - 2z$, so W consists of vectors of the form

$$\begin{bmatrix} y - 2z \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = y\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + z\begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

It follows that $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$ are a basis for W, but they are *not* orthogonal. It suffices to find another nonzero vector in W that is orthogonal to either one of these.

Suppose $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ is a vector in W that is orthogonal to $\mathbf{u}$. Then $x - y + 2z = 0$, since $\mathbf{w}$ is in the plane W. Since $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{w} = 0$, we also have $x + y = 0$. Solving the linear system

$$\begin{aligned} x - y + 2z &= 0 \\ x + y \qquad &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

we find that $x = -z$ and $y = z$. (Check this.) Thus, any nonzero vector $\mathbf{w}$ of the form

$$\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} -z \\ z \\ z \end{bmatrix}$$

will do. To be specific, we could take $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$. It is easy to check that $\{\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{w}\}$ is an orthogonal set in W and, hence, an orthogonal basis for W, since $\dim W = 2$.

Another advantage of working with an orthogonal basis is that the coordinates of a vector with respect to such a basis are easy to compute. Indeed, there is a formula for these coordinates, as the following theorem establishes.

Theorem 5.2 Let $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ be an orthogonal basis for a subspace W of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let $\mathbf{w}$ be any vector in W. Then the unique scalars $c_1, \ldots, c_k$ such that

$$\mathbf{w} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$$

are given by

$$c_i = \frac{\mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{v}_i}{\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i} \quad \text{for } i = 1, \ldots, k$$

Proof Since $\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$ is a basis for W, we know that there are unique scalars $c_1, \ldots, c_k$ such that $\mathbf{w} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k$ (from Theorem 3.29). To establish the formula for c_i, we take the dot product of this linear combination with $\mathbf{v}_i$ to obtain

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{w} \cdot \mathbf{v}_i &= (c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + \cdots + c_k\mathbf{v}_k) \cdot \mathbf{v}_i \\ &= c_1(\mathbf{v}_1 \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) + \cdots + c_i(\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) + \cdots + c_k(\mathbf{v}_k \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) \\ &= c_i(\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i) \end{aligned}$$

since $\mathbf{v}_j \cdot \mathbf{v}_i = 0$ for $j \neq i$. Since $\mathbf{v}_i \neq \mathbf{0}$, $\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i \neq 0$. Dividing by $\mathbf{v}_i \cdot \mathbf{v}_i$, we obtain the desired result.

Example 5.4

Find the coordinates of $\mathbf{w} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix}$ with respect to the orthogonal basis $\mathcal{B} = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{v}_3\}$ of Examples 5.1 and 5.2.

Solution Using Theorem 5.2, we compute

$$c_1 = \frac{\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{v}_1}{\mathbf{v}_1\cdot\mathbf{v}_1} = \frac{2+2-3}{4+1+1} = \frac{1}{6}$$

$$c_2 = \frac{\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{v}_2}{\mathbf{v}_2\cdot\mathbf{v}_2} = \frac{0+2+3}{0+1+1} = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$c_3 = \frac{\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{v}_3}{\mathbf{v}_3\cdot\mathbf{v}_3} = \frac{1-2+3}{1+1+1} = \frac{2}{3}$$

Thus,

$$\mathbf{w} = c_1\mathbf{v}_1 + c_2\mathbf{v}_2 + c_3\mathbf{v}_3 = \tfrac{1}{6}\mathbf{v}_1 + \tfrac{5}{2}\mathbf{v}_2 + \tfrac{2}{3}\mathbf{v}_3$$

(Check this.) With the notation introduced in Section 3.5, we can also write the above equation as

$$[\mathbf{w}]_{\mathcal{B}} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{6} \\ \frac{5}{2} \\ \frac{2}{3} \end{bmatrix}$$

Compare the procedure in Example 5.4 with the work required to find these coordinates directly and you should start to appreciate the value of orthogonal bases.

As noted at the beginning of this section, the other property of the standard basis in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is that each standard basis vector is a unit vector. Combining this property with orthogonality, we have the following definition.

Definition A set of vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$ is an ***orthonormal set*** if it is an orthogonal set of unit vectors. An ***orthonormal basis*** for a subspace W of $\mathbb{R}^n$ is a basis of W that is an orthonormal set.

Remark If $S = \{\mathbf{q}_1, \ldots, \mathbf{q}_k\}$ is an orthonormal set of vectors, then $\mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_j = 0$ for $i \neq j$ and $\|\mathbf{q}_i\| = 1$. The fact that each $\mathbf{q}_i$ is a unit vector is equivalent to $\mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_i = 1$. It follows that we can summarize the statement that S is orthonormal as

$$\mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_j = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

Example 5.5

Show that $S = \{\mathbf{q}_1, \mathbf{q}_2\}$ is an orthonormal set in $\mathbb{R}^3$ if

$$\mathbf{q}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{3} \\ -1/\sqrt{3} \\ 1/\sqrt{3} \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{q}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{6} \\ 2/\sqrt{6} \\ 1/\sqrt{6} \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution We check that

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{q}_1 \cdot \mathbf{q}_2 &= 1/\sqrt{18} - 2/\sqrt{18} + 1/\sqrt{18} = 0\\ \mathbf{q}_1 \cdot \mathbf{q}_1 &= 1/3 + 1/3 + 1/3 = 1\\ \mathbf{q}_2 \cdot \mathbf{q}_2 &= 1/6 + 4/6 + 1/6 = 1\end{aligned}$$

If we have an orthogonal set, we can easily obtain an orthonormal set from it: We simply normalize each vector.

Example 5.6 Construct an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$ from the vectors in Example 5.1.

Solution Since we already know that $\mathbf{v}_1$, $\mathbf{v}_2$, and $\mathbf{v}_3$ are an orthogonal basis, we normalize them to get

$$\mathbf{q}_1 = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{v}_1\|}\mathbf{v}_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}}\begin{bmatrix} 2\\ 1\\ -1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2/\sqrt{6}\\ 1/\sqrt{6}\\ -1/\sqrt{6}\end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{q}_2 = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{v}_2\|}\mathbf{v}_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{bmatrix} 0\\ 1\\ 1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0\\ 1/\sqrt{2}\\ 1/\sqrt{2}\end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathbf{q}_3 = \frac{1}{\|\mathbf{v}_3\|}\mathbf{v}_3 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}\begin{bmatrix} 1\\ -1\\ 1\end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1/\sqrt{3}\\ -1/\sqrt{3}\\ 1/\sqrt{3}\end{bmatrix}$$

Then $\{\mathbf{q}_1, \mathbf{q}_2, \mathbf{q}_3\}$ is an orthonormal basis for $\mathbb{R}^3$.

Since any orthonormal set of vectors is, in particular, orthogonal, it is linearly independent, by Theorem 5.1. If we have an orthonormal basis, Theorem 5.2 becomes even simpler.

Theorem 5.3 Let $\{\mathbf{q}_1, \mathbf{q}_2, \ldots, \mathbf{q}_k\}$ be an orthonormal basis for a subspace W of $\mathbb{R}^n$ and let $\mathbf{w}$ be any vector in W. Then

$$\mathbf{w} = (\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{q}_1)\mathbf{q}_1 + (\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{q}_2)\mathbf{q}_2 + \cdots + (\mathbf{w}\cdot\mathbf{q}_k)\mathbf{q}_k$$

and this representation is unique.

Proof Apply Theorem 5.2 and use the fact that $\mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_i = 1$ for $i = 1, \ldots, k$.

Orthogonal Matrices

Matrices whose columns form an orthonormal set arise frequently in applications, as you will see in Section 5.5. Such matrices have several attractive properties, which we now examine.

Theorem 5.4 The columns of an $m \times n$ matrix Q form an orthonormal set if and only if $Q^TQ = I_n$.

Proof We need to show that

$$(Q^TQ)_{ij} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

Let $\mathbf{q}_i$ denote the ith column of Q (and, hence, the ith row of Q^T). Since the (i, j) entry of Q^TQ is the dot product of the ith row of Q^T and the jth column of Q, it follows that

$$(Q^TQ)_{ij} = \mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_j \tag{2}$$

by the definition of matrix multiplication.

Now the columns Q form an orthonormal set if and only if

$$\mathbf{q}_i \cdot \mathbf{q}_j = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

which, by Equation (2), holds if and only if

$$(Q^TQ)_{ij} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

This completes the proof.

If the matrix Q in Theorem 5.4 is a *square* matrix, it has a special name.

Orthogonal matrix is an unfortunate bit of terminology. "Orthonormal matrix" would clearly be a better term, but it is not standard. Moreover, there is no term for a nonsquare matrix with orthonormal columns.

Definition An $n \times n$ matrix Q whose columns form an orthonormal set is called an ***orthogonal matrix.***

The most important fact about orthogonal matrices is given by the next theorem.

Theorem 5.5 A square matrix Q is orthogonal if and only if $Q^{-1} = Q^T$.

Proof By Theorem 5.4, Q is orthogonal if and only if $Q^TQ = I$. This is true if and only if Q is invertible and $Q^{-1} = Q^T$, by Theorem 3.13.

Example 5.7

Show that the following matrices are orthogonal and find their inverses:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

Solution The columns of A are just the standard basis vectors for $\mathbb{R}^3$, which are clearly orthonormal. Hence, A is orthogonal and

$$A^{-1} = A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

For B, we check directly that

$$B^TB = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}\begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & -\sin\theta \\ \sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \cos^2\theta + \sin^2\theta & -\cos\theta\sin\theta + \sin\theta\cos\theta \\ -\sin\theta\cos\theta + \cos\theta\sin\theta & \sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = I$$

Therefore, B is orthogonal, by Theorem 5.5, and

$$B^{-1} = B^T = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\theta & \sin\theta \\ -\sin\theta & \cos\theta \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark Matrix A in Example 5.7 is an example of a permutation matrix, a matrix obtained by permuting the columns of an identity matrix. In general, any $n \times n$ permutation matrix is orthogonal (see Exercise 25). Matrix B is the matrix of a rotation through the angle θ in $\mathbb{R}^2$. Any rotation has the property that it is a *length-preserving* transformation (known as an ***isometry*** in geometry). The next theorem shows that every orthogonal matrix transformation is an isometry. Orthogonal matrices also preserve dot products. In fact, orthogonal matrices are characterized by either one of these properties.

The word *isometry* literally means "length preserving," since it is derived from the Greek roots *isos* ("equal") and *metron* ("measure").

Theorem 5.6 Let Q be an $n \times n$ matrix. The following statements are equivalent:

a. Q is orthogonal.
b. $\|Q\mathbf{x}\| = \|\mathbf{x}\|$ for every $\mathbf{x}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.
c. $Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{y}$ for every $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$.

Proof We will prove that (a) ⇒ (c) ⇒ (b) ⇒ (a). To do so, we will need to make use of the fact that if $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ are (column) vectors in $\mathbb{R}^n$, then $\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y}$.

(a) ⇒ (c) Assume that Q is orthogonal. Then $Q^TQ = I$, and we have

$$Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{y} = (Q\mathbf{x})^TQ\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}^TQ^TQ\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}^TI\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}^T\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{y}$$

(c) ⇒ (b) Assume that $Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{y}$ for every $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. Then, taking $\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{x}$, we have $Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x}$, so $\|Q\mathbf{x}\| = \sqrt{Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{x}} = \sqrt{\mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{x}} = \|\mathbf{x}\|$.

(b) ⇒ (a) Assume that property (b) holds and let $\mathbf{q}_i$ denote the ith column of Q. Using Exercise 63 in Section 1.2 and property (b), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{x}\cdot\mathbf{y} &= \tfrac{1}{4}(\|\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{y}\|^2 - \|\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y}\|^2) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4}(\|Q(\mathbf{x}+\mathbf{y})\|^2 - \|Q(\mathbf{x}-\mathbf{y})\|^2) \\ &= \tfrac{1}{4}(\|Q\mathbf{x}+Q\mathbf{y}\|^2 - \|Q\mathbf{x}-Q\mathbf{y}\|^2) \\ &= Q\mathbf{x}\cdot Q\mathbf{y} \end{aligned}$$

for all $\mathbf{x}$ and $\mathbf{y}$ in $\mathbb{R}^n$. [This shows that (b) ⇒ (c).]

Now if $\mathbf{e}_i$ is the ith standard basis vector, then $\mathbf{q}_i = Q\mathbf{e}_i$. Consequently,

$$\mathbf{q}_i\cdot\mathbf{q}_j = Q\mathbf{e}_i\cdot Q\mathbf{e}_j = \mathbf{e}_i\cdot\mathbf{e}_j = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } i \neq j \\ 1 & \text{if } i = j \end{cases}$$

Thus, the columns of Q form an orthonormal set, so Q is an orthogonal matrix.